# Venus-C1a/C1b (Machine Code: B132/B181/B200)

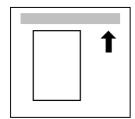
# **SERVICE MANUAL**

31 March 2005 Subject to change Ricoh Technical Service

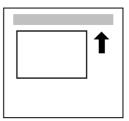
#### Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
•	Refer to section number
CT	See Core Tech Manual for details
<u>F</u>	Screw
E P	Connector
S	E-ring
$\langle n \rangle$	Clip ring
	Clamp



Lengthwise, SEF (Short Edge Feed)



Sideways, LEF (Long Edge Feed)

#### Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

#### 

FAILURE TO OBEY WARNING INFORMATION COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.

#### 

Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

#### Important

• Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.

IMPORTANT

- ALWAYS OBEY THESE GUIDELINES TO AVOID SERIOUS PROBLEMS SUCH AS MISFEEDS, DAMAGE TO ORIGINALS, LOSS OF VALUABLE DATA AND TO PREVENT DAMAGE TO THE MACHINE. BOLD IS ADDED FOR EMPHASIS.
- **NOTE:** This information provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

#### Commonly Used Terms

In the SP tables, the finishers are referred to by number (1, 2, 3), and some devices that appear in the SP tables are not supported overseas:

Finisher 1 3000/2000-Sheet Finisher B700/B701. The B700 supports corner stapling, booklet stapling and booklet folding. The B701 supports corner stapling only. Finisher 2 3000-Sheet Finisher B706. 3000-Sheet Finisher B468/B469. This finisher is not supported by models Finisher 3 overseas. However, the SP codes for this peripheral device appear in the firmware of this machine. Please ignore references to "Finisher 3" or "Fin 3". Z-Fold This refers to the Z-Folding unit. The copier does not support this peripheral device at this time. Please ignore references to "Z-Fold" in the SP tables. ITB Image Transfer Belt Paper Transfer Roller PTR

# 2. GENERAL SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

For your safety, please read this manual carefully before you use this product. Keep this manual handy for future reference.

#### **Safety Information**

Always obey the following safety precautions when using this product.

#### Safety During Operation

In this manual, the following important symbols and notations are used.

#### 

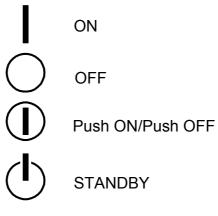
A Warning indicates a potentially hazardous situation. Failure to obey a Warning could result in death or serious injury.

#### 

A Caution indicates a potentially hazardous situation. Failure to obey a Caution could result in minor or moderate injury or damage to the machine or other property.

#### Switches and Symbols

Where symbols are used on or near switches on machines for Europe and other areas, the meaning of each symbol conforms with IEC60417.



SAFE-SYM.WMF

# 2.1 RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CUSTOMER ENGINEER

### 2.1.1 CUSTOMER ENGINEER

Maintenance shall be done only by trained customer engineers who have completed service training for the machine and all optional devices designed for use with the machine.

### 2.1.2 REFERENCE MATERIAL FOR MAINTENANCE

Maintenance shall be done using the special tools and procedures prescribed for maintenance of the machine described in the reference materials (service manuals, technical bulletins, operating instructions, and safety guidelines for customer engineers).

In regard to other safety issues not described in this document, all customer engineers shall strictly obey procedures and recommendations described the "CE Safety Guide".

Use only consumable supplies and replacement parts designed for use of the machine.

# 2.2 BEFORE INSTALLATION, MAINTENANCE

### 2.2.1 SHIPPING AND MOVING THE MACHINE

#### 

- 1. Work carefully when lifting or moving the machine. If the machine is heavy, two or more customer engineers may be required to prevent injuries (muscle strains, spinal injuries, etc.) or damage to the machine if it is dropped or tipped over.
- 2. Personnel moving or working around the machine should always wear proper clothing and footwear. Never wear loose fitting clothing or accessories (neckties, loose sweaters, bracelets, etc.) or casual footwear (slippers, sandals, etc.) when lifting or moving the machine.
- 3. Always unplug the power cord from the power source before you move the product. Before you move the product, arrange the power cord so it will not fall under the product.

### 2.2.2 **POWER**

#### **M**Warning

- 1. Always disconnect the power plug before doing any maintenance procedure. After switching off the machine, power is still supplied to the main machine and other devices. To prevent electrical shock, switch the machine off, wait for a few seconds, then unplug the machine from the power source.
- 2. Before you do any checks or adjustments after turning the machine off, work carefully to avoid injury. After removing covers or opening the machine to do checks or adjustments, never touch electrical components or moving parts (gears, timing belts, etc.).
- 3. After turning the machine on with any cover removed, keep your hands away from electrical components and moving parts. Never touch the cover of the fusing unit, gears, timing belts, etc.

### 2.2.3 INSTALLATION, DISASSEMBLY, AND ADJUSTMENTS

#### 

- 1. After installation, maintenance, or adjustment, always check the operation of the machine to make sure that it is operating normally. This ensures that all shipping materials, protective materials, wires and tags, metal brackets, etc., removed for installation, have been removed and that no tools remain inside the machine. This also ensures that all release interlock switches have been restored to normal operation.
- 2. Never use your fingers to check moving parts causing spurious noise. Never use your fingers to lubricate moving parts while the machine is operating.

### 2.2.4 SPECIAL TOOLS

- 1. Use only standard tools approved for machine maintenance.
- 2. For special adjustments, use only the special tools and lubricants described in the service manual. Using tools incorrectly, or using tools that could damage parts, could damage the machine or cause injuries.

## 2.3 DURING MAINTENANCE

### 2.3.1 GENERAL

#### 

- 1. Before you begin a maintenance procedure:
  - Switch the machine off.
  - Disconnect the power plug from the power source.
  - Allow the machine to cool for at least 10 minutes.
- 2. Avoid touching the components inside the machine that are labeled as hot surfaces.

### 2.3.2 SAFETY DEVICES

- 1. Never remove any safety device unless it requires replacement. Always replace safety devices immediately.
- 2. Never do any procedure that defeats the function of any safety device. Modification or removal of a safety device (fuse, switch, etc.) could lead to a fire and personal injury. Always test the operation of the machine to ensure that it is operating normally and safely after removal and replacement of any safety device.
- 3. For replacements use only the correct fuses or circuit breakers rated for use with the machine. Using replacement devices not designed for use with the machine could lead to a fire and personal injuries.

### 2.3.3 ORGANIC CLEANERS

### 

- 1. During preventive maintenance, never use any organic cleaners (alcohol, etc.) other than those described in the service manual.
- 2. Make sure the room is well ventilated before using any organic cleaner. Use organic solvents in small amounts to avoid breathing the fumes and becoming nauseous.
- 3. Switch the machine off, unplug it, and allow it to cool before doing preventive maintenance. To avoid fire or explosion, never use an organic cleaner near any part that generates heat.
- 4. Wash your hands thoroughly after cleaning parts with an organic cleaner to contamination of food, drinks, etc. which could cause illness.
- 5. Clean the floor completely after accidental spillage of silicone oil or other materials to prevent slippery surfaces that could cause accidents leading to hand or leg injuries. Use "My Ace" Silicone Oil Remover (or dry rags) to soak up spills. For more details, please refer to Technical Bulletin "Silicone Oil Removal" (A024-50).

### 2.3.4 LITHIUM BATTERIES

#### 

- 1. Always replace a lithium battery on a PCB with the same type of battery prescribed for use on that board. Replacing a lithium battery with any type other than the one prescribed for use on the board could lead to an explosion or damage to the PCB.
- 2. Never discard used batteries by mixing them with other trash. Remove them from the work site and dispose of them in accordance with local laws and regulations regarding the disposal of such items.

### 2.3.5 OZONE FILTERS

#### 

1. Always replace ozone filters as soon as their service life expires (as described in the service manual). An excessive amount of ozone can build up around machines that use ozone filters if they are not replaced at the prescribed time. Excessive ozone could cause personnel working around the machine to feel unwell.

### 2.3.6 POWER PLUG AND POWER CORD

- 1. Before serving the machine (especially when responding to a service call), always make sure that the power plug has been inserted completely into the power source. A partially inserted plug could lead to heat generation (due to a power surge caused by high resistance) and cause a fire or other problems.
- 2. Always check the power plug and make sure that it is free of dust and lint. Clean it if necessary. A dirty plug can generate heat which could cause a fire.
- 3. Inspect the length of the power cord for cuts or other damage. Replace the power cord if necessary. A frayed or otherwise damaged power cord can cause a short circuit which could lead to a fire or personal injury from electrical shock.
- 4. Check the length of the power cord between the machine and power supply. Make sure the power cord is not coiled or wrapped around any object such as a table leg. Coiling the power cord can cause excessive heat to build up and could cause a fire.
- 5. Make sure that the area around the power source is free of obstacles so the power cord can be removed quickly in case of an emergency.
- 6. Make sure that the power cord is grounded (earthed) at the power source with the ground wire on the plug.
- 7. Connect the power cord directly into the power source. Never use an extension cord.
- 8. When you disconnect the power plug from the power source, always pull on the plug, not the cable.

# 2.4 AFTER INSTALLATION, SERVICING

### 2.4.1 DISPOSAL OF USED ITEMS

#### 

Never incinerate used toner or toner cartridges. Toner or toner cartridges thrown into a fire can ignite or explode and cause serious injury. At the work site always carefully wrap used toner and toner cartridges with plastic bags to avoid spillage before disposal or removal.

- 1. Always dispose of used items (developer, toner, toner cartridges, OPC drums, etc.) in accordance with the local laws and regulations regarding the disposal of such items.
- 2. To protect the environment, never dispose of this product or any kind of waste from consumables at a household waste collection point. Dispose of these items at one of our dealers or at an authorized collection site.
- 3. Return used selenium drums to the service center for handling in accordance with company policy regarding the recycling or disposal of such items.

### 2.4.2 POINTS TO CONFIRM WITH OPERATORS

At the end of installation or a service call, instruct the user about use of the machine. Emphasize the following points.

- Show operators how to remove jammed paper and troubleshoot other minor problems by following the procedures described in the operating instructions.
- Point out the parts inside the machine that they should never touch or attempt to remove.
- Confirm that operators know how to store and dispose of consumables.
- Make sure that all operators have access to an operating instruction manual for the machine.
- Confirm that operators have read and understand all the safety instructions described in the operating instructions.
- Demonstrate how to turn off the power and disconnect the power plug (by pulling the plug, not the cord) if any of the following events occur:
  - 1) Something has spilled into the product.
  - 2) Service or repair of the product is necessary.
  - 3) The product cover has been damaged.
- Caution operators about removing paper fasteners around the machine. They should never allow paper clips, staples, or any other small metallic objects to fall into the machine.

# 2.5 SPECIAL SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS FOR TONER

This section describes information for users in regard to the use of toner.

### 2.6 ACCIDENTAL PHYSICAL EXPOSURE

### 

- 1. Work carefully when removing paper jams or replacing toner bottles or cartridges to avoid spilling toner on clothing or the hands.
- 2. If toner is inhaled, immediately gargle with large amounts of cold water and move to a well ventilated location. If there are signs of irritation or other problems, seek medical attention.
- 3. If toner gets on the skin, wash immediately with soap and cold running water.
- 4. If toner gets into the eyes, flush the eyes with cold running water or eye wash. If there are signs of irritation or other problems, seek medical attention.
- 5. If toner is swallowed, drink a large amount of cold water to dilute the ingested toner. If there are signs of any problem, seek medical attention.
- 6. If toner spills on clothing, wash the affected area immediately with soap and cold water. Never use hot water! Hot water can cause toner to set and permanently stain fabric.

# 2.7 HANDLING AND STORING TONER

#### 

Toner, used toner, and developer are extremely flammable. Never store toner, developer, toner cartridges, or toner bottles (including empty toner bottles or cartridges) in a location where they will be exposed to high temperature or an open flame.

- 1. Always store toner and developer supplies such as toner and developer packages, cartridges, and bottles (including used toner and empty bottles and cartridges) out of the reach of children.
- 2. Always store fresh toner supplies or empty bottles or cartridges in a cool, dry location that is not exposed to direct sunlight.

# 2.8 TONER DISPOSAL

- 1. Never attempt to incinerate toner, used toner, or empty toner containers (bottles or cartridges). Burning toner can explode and scatter, causing serious burns.
- 2. Always wrap used toner and empty toner bottles and cartridges in plastic bags to avoid spillage. Follow the local laws and regulations regarding the disposal of such items.
- 3. Dispose of used toner and toner cartridges at one of our dealers or at an authorized collection site. Always dispose of used toner cartridges and toner bottles in accordance with the local laws and regulations regarding the disposal of such items.

### 2.8.1 SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS FOR THIS MACHINE

# **MIMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES**

#### PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

- 1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
- 2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
- 3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
- 4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
- 5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

#### HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

- 1. Never operate the copier without the ozone filters installed.
- 2. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

#### **OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS**

- 1. The copier and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
- 2. The NVRAM on the system control board has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the NVRAM only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends replacing the entire NVRAM. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used NVRAM must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

#### SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL

- 1. Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
- 2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductors in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
- 3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
- 4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

### LASER SAFETY

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

#### 

Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

#### 

WARNING: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

**Caution Label:** 



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INSTALLATION	1-1
1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS	
1.1.1 OPERATING ENVIRONMENT	.1-1
1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL	.1-2
1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS	
1.1.4 DIMENSIONS	.1-4
1.1.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS	.1-5
1.2 COPIER AND PERIPHERALS	.1-6
1.3 COPIER B132/B181/B200	.1-7
1.3.1 ACCESSORIES	.1-7
1.3.2 INSTALLATION	.1-8
Tapes and packing material	.1-8
Shipping Retainer Removal	1-12
Developer Cartridge Installation	1-15
Reassemble the PCU	
Reattach the Face Plate	
Remove the Retainers in the Drawer Unit	1-23
Reinstall the Toner Hopper	
STC (Soft Toner Cartridge) Installation	1-27
Make the Machine Level	1-28
Attach the PCU Stand Rack	1-29
Attach Decals	
Initializing Developer and Toner	
Load the Paper Trays	
Make a Test Color Print	
ACC (Automatic Color Calibration) Adjustment	
Counter Display Setting	
Print an SMC Report	
Connect the Upper and Lower Tray Heaters	
1.4 COPY TRAY (B756)	
1.4.1 ACCESSORIES	
1.4.2 INSTALLATION	
1.5 A3/11" X 17" PAPER SIZE TRAY (B331)	
1.5.1 ACCESSORIES	
1.5.2 INSTALLATION	
1.6 KEY CARD BRACKET (B498), KEY COUNTER BRACKET (B452)	
1.6.1 KEY CARD BRACKET B498 ACCESSORIES	
1.6.2 KEY COUNTER BRACKET B452 ACCESSORIES	
1.6.3 INSTALLATION	
Assemble the Key Counter Bracket	1-49
Install the Key Card Bracket and Assembled Key Counter	1-50

1.7 LCT (B473), LCT ADAPTER (B699)	1-52
1.7.1 ACCESSORIES	1-52
LCT (B473)	1-52
LCT Adapter (B699)	1-53
1.7.2 INSTALLATION	
Removing Tape and Accessories	1-54
LCT Adapter (B699) Installation	1-55
LCT Installation	
1.8 81/2" X 14"/B4 PAPER SIZE TRAY (B474)	1-59
1.8.1 ACCESSORIES	1-59
1.8.2 INSTALLATION	
LCT Connected to the Machine	1-60
1.9 2000/3000 SHEET FINISHERS (B700/B701)	1-63
1.9.1 ACCESSORIES	
1.9.2 INSTALLATION	1-64
Removing Tapes and Packing Materials	1-64
Docking the Finisher to the Copier	
Attaching the Trays	
Leveling the Finisher	
De-curler Plate	1-72
Selecting the Staple Supply Name	1-73
Enabling Booklet Binding (B700 Only)	
1.10 PUNCH UNIT (B702)	
1.10.1 ACCESSORIES	
1.10.2 INSTALLATION	1-75
1.11 MAIL BOX (B762)	1-78
1.11.1 ACCESSORIES	
1.11.2 INSTALLATION	
1.12 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B706), FINISHER ADAPTER (B698)	1-82
1.12.1 ACCESSORIES	1-82
3000-Sheet Finisher B706 Accessories	1-82
Finisher Adapter Kit B698 Accessories	1-83
1.12.2 INSTALLATION	1-84
Shipping tape and retainers	1-84
Finisher Adapter Kit B698 Installation	1-86
Finisher Installation	1-90
Selecting the Staple Supply Name	1-93
1.13 PUNCH UNIT B531/A821	
1.13.1 ACCESSORIES	1-94
1.13.2 INSTALLATION	
1.14 OUTPUT JOGGER UNIT (B703/B513)	1-99
1.14.1 ACCESSORIES	
1.14.2 INSTALLATION1	
1.15 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY (B704)1	
1.15.1 ACCESSORIES1	
1.15.2 INSTALLATION1	
Removing Tapes and Packing Materials1	
Preparing the Finisher (B700/B701/B706)1	
Attaching the Extensions for the B7061	-105

Attaching the Extensions for the B700/B701	1-108
Attaching the Interposer Tray (B700/B701/B706)	
Attaching the Corner Plates for the B706	1-110
Docking Finisher/Interposer with the Machine (B700/B701/B706)	1-112
1.16 MFP CONTROLLER OPTIONS	1-114
1.16.1 OVERVIEW	
1.16.2 ACCESSORY CARDS	1-115
1.16.3 APPLICATIONS PROVIDED ON SD CARDS	1-116
1.16.4 HANDLING DIMMS AND SD CARDS	1-117
DIMMs	1-117
SD cards	
1.16.5 MERGING APPLICATIONS ON ONE SD CARD	1-118
Overview	1-118
Merging Applications	1-119
Undo Exec	
Storing SD Application Cards on Site	1-121
1.16.6 PRINTER/SCANNER B737 AND INTERFACE UNIT	1-122
Accessories	1-122
Installation	1-123
USB SP Settings	1-125
1.16.7 IEEE 1284 INTERFACE BOARD B679 (CENTRONICS)	1-126
Accessories	
1.16.8 IEEE 1394 INTERFACE BOARD B581 (FIREWIRE)	1-127
Accessories	
UP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394	
SP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394	
1.16.9 BLUETOOTH INTERFACE UNIT B736-11	
Accessories	
Installation Procedure	
1.16.10 IEEE 802.11B INTERFACE UNIT G813-04, -05	
Accessories	
Installation	
UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN	1-134
SP Mode Settings for 802.11b Wireless LAN	
1.16.11 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER B609	
Accessory Check	
Installation	
1.16.12 POSTSCRIPT3 B761	
1.16.13 DOS UNIT TYPE C (B735)	
Accessory Check	
Before You Begin	
Seal Check And Removal	
Installation Procedure	
1.16.14 COPIER CONNECTION KIT B328	
1.16.15 EFI V G815 EXTERNAL CONTROLLER	1-145

2.	PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE	2-1
	2.1 OVERVIEW	
	2.2 PM COUNTER	
	2.2.1 DISPLAYING THE PM COUNTER	2-2
	2.2.2 PM PARTS SCREEN DETAILS	2-3
	All PM Parts list: Main Menu	
	Number button submenu	
	Parts list for PM yield indicator	2-5
	2.3 PM TABLES	
	2.3.1 MAIN MACHINE	
	Copier PM Parts	
	ARDF PM Parts	
	2.3.2 2000/3000-SHEET BOOKLET FINISHER B700/B701	2-11
	2.3.3 PUNCH B702	2-11
	2.3.4 3000-SHEET FINISHER B706	
	2.3.5 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B704	2-12
	2.3.6 LCT B473	2-12
	2.4 LUBRICATION POINTS	2-13
	2.4.1 COPIER	
	OPC, ITB Replacement	2-13
	Fusing Unit	2-14
•		0.4
3.	REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	
	3.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS	
	3.1.1 DRUM	
	3.1.2 PCU UNIT	
	3.1.3 TRANSFER BELT UNIT	
	3.1.4 SCANNER UNIT	
	3.1.5 LASER UNIT	
	3.1.6 DEVELOPMENT	
	3.1.7 CLEANING	
	3.1.8 FUSING UNIT	
	3.1.9 PAPER FEED	
	3.1.10 USED TONER	
	3.2 COMMON REMOVAL PROCEDURES	
	3.2.2 OPERATION PANEL, TOP COVERS	
	3.2.3 LEFT COVERS	
	3.2.4 FRONT DOOR	
	3.2.5 RIGHT COVERS	
	3.2.6 REAR COVERS 3.2.7 TONER HOPPER, FACEPLATE, PCU	
	Removing Hopper, Faceplate, PCU	
	Reinstalling PCU, Faceplate, Toner Hopper	
	3.2.8 IMAGE TRANSFER UNIT	
	3.2.9 DRAWER UNIT	
	3.2.10 DUPLEX UNIT	
	J.Z. IT OF LINING AND LOUKING THE CONTROLLER DUA GUVER	

3.2.12 SD CARD STORAGE	3-24
3.3 SCANNER UNIT	3-25
3.3.1 EXPOSURE GLASS	
3.3.2 LENS BLOCK, PAPER SIZE SENSORS	
3.3.3 EXPOSURE LAMP	
3.3.4 SCANNER MOTOR	3-28
3.3.5 SCANNER HP SENSOR	
3.3.6 SCANNER INTERFACE BOARD (SIOB)	
3.3.7 SCANNER WIRE	
Scanner Wire Removal	
Scanner Wire Reinstallation and Scanner Position Adjustment	
3.4 LASER UNIT	
3.4.1 CAUTION DECALS	
3.4.2 POLYGON MOTOR	
3.4.3 LASER UNIT	
Adjustments After Laser Unit Replacement	
3.4.4 LASER SYNCHRONIZATION DETECTOR	
3.5 PCU	
3.5.1 DEVELOPER REPLACEMENT	
3.5.2 DEVELOPMENT GEARS	
3.5.3 CHARGE ROLLER UNIT	
3.5.4 DRUM AND CLEANING BLADE	
Removing the OPC Drum	
Removing the Cleaning Blade	
3.5.5 PCU CLEANING UNIT	
3.5.6 TD SENSOR	
3.5.7 AFTER REPLACING THE PCU COMPONENTS	
AND DEVELOPER	3-57
3.6 TONER SUPPLY	
3.6.1 STC PORT CLEANING	
3.6.2 CONNECTOR BOARD (CNB)	
3.6.3 TONER PUMP	
3.6.4 TONER END SENSOR	
3.6.5 TONER SUPPLY MOTOR	
3.7 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT	
3.7.1 RELAY SENSOR	
3.7.2 DOUBLE-FEED SENSORS, REGISTRATION SENSORS	
3.7.3 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT	
3.7.4 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER, DISCHARGE PLATE	
3.7.5 LUBRICANT BAR	
3.7.6 CLEANING BLADE	
3.7.7 CLEANING BRUSH ROLLER	
3.7.8 PAPER TRANSPORT BELT, PAPER SEPARATION PP	
3.7.9 REGISTRATION MOTOR	
3.7.10 DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION LED	

3.8 IMAGE TRANSFER UNIT	3	-75
3.8.1 ITB, BELT CLEANING UNIT	3	-75
Disassembly and ITB Replacement	3	-75
Reassembly of the Image ITB Unit and Belt Cleaning Unit		
Dusting the ITB with Lubricant Powder	3	-79
3.8.2 ITB CLEANING BLADE, DUST COLLECTION UNIT	3	-81
3.8.3 ITB CLEANING ROLLER, SCRAPER BLADE		
3.8.4 MUSIC AND ID SENSORS		
3.8.5 IMAGE TRANSFER POWER PACK	3	-84
3.8.6 BELT POSITION SENSORS	3	-85
3.9 FUSING UNIT		
3.9.1 FUSING BELT STRIPPERS	3	-86
3.9.2 FUSING UNIT		
3.9.3 FUSING EXIT SENSOR, ACCORDION JAM SENSOR	3	-88
3.9.4 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOSTATS, THERMISTOR	3	-89
3.9.5 FUSING CLEANING UNIT	3	-90
3.9.6 FUSING BELT THERMOSTATS		
3.9.7 FUSING THERMISTORS, HEATING ROLLER		
TEMPERATURE SENSOR	3	-92
3.9.8 FUSING BELT OIL SUPPLY ROLLER, CLEANING ROLLERS		
3.9.9 PRESSURE ROLLER CLEANING FELT PADS		
3.9.10 HOT ROLLER, HEATING ROLLER FUSING LAMPS	3	-95
3.9.11 PRESSURE ROLLER FUSING LAMP		
3.9.12 HEATING ROLLER, FUSING BELT, HOT ROLLER	3	-98
3.9.13 PRESSURE ROLLER		
3.9.14 PRESSURE ROLLER SEPARATION PAWLS	.3-1	101
3.10 DUPLEX UNIT		
3.10.1 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR	.3-1	102
3.10.2 DUPLEX TRANSPORT MOTOR	.3-1	103
3.10.3 DUPLEX UNIT SENSORS	.3-1	104
Duplex Entrance Sensor		
Transport Sensors 1, 2	3-1	105
Transport Sensor 3	3-1	107
3.10.4 DUPLEX JOGGER MOTOR	3-1	108
3.10.5 DUPLEX JOGGER BELT	3-1	109
3.11 TANDEM TRAY (TRAY 1)	3-1	110
3.11.1 TANDEM TRAY	3-1	110
3.11.2 REAR FENCE RETURN SENSOR REPLACEMENT	.3-1	112
3.11.3 REAR FENCE HP SENSOR REPLACEMENT		
3.11.4 TANDEM RIGHT TRAY PAPER SENSOR REPLACEMENT	.3-1	114
3.11.5 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT WIRE REPLACEMENT	.3-1	115
3.11.6 TANDEM TRAY PAPER SIZE CHANGE	3-1	117
3.12 PAPER FEED (TRAYS 2, 3)		
3.12.1 PICKUP, FEED, REVERSE ROLLERS	3-1	120
3.12.2 PAPER FEED UNIT	3-1	121
3.12.3 SEPARATION ROLLER PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT	.3-1	23
3.12.4 PAPER END, TRAY LIFT, PAPER FEED SENSORS	.3-1	24
3.12.5 VERTICAL TRANSPORT SENSOR	3-1	125

3.13 BYPASS UNIT	3-126
3.13.1 BYPASS PICKUP, FEED, REVERSE ROLLERS	3-126
3.13.2 BYPASS AUTO PAPER SIZE DETECTION SWITCHES	3-127
3.13.3 BYPASS UNIT	3-128
3.13.4 BYPASS PAPER END SENSOR, FEED SENSOR	
3.13.5 BYPASS FEED CLUTCH	
3.14 BOARDS	
3.14.1 CONTROLLER UNIT	
3.14.2 CONTROLLER BOARD, 256 MB MEMORY, NVRAM	
3.14.3 NVRAM REPLACEMENT	
Upload NVRAM Data à SD Card	
Replace NVRAM	
Restore NVRAM Data to the New NVRAM	
3.14.4 CONTROLLER BOX COVER, BICU, IOB	
3.14.5 RDS BOARD JUMPER	
3.14.6 INTERFACE BOARD, MOTHER BOARD	
3.14.7 HVPS, PFC BOARD	
3.14.8 PSU	
3.14.9 AC DRIVE BOARD	
3.14.10 TRANSFER MOTOR, DRIVE, DRIVE MOTOR BOARDS	
3.15 HDD UNIT	
Disposal of HDD Units	
Reinstallation	
3.16 MOTORS	
3.16.1 PCU MOTOR, DRUM MOTOR	
3.16.2 PAPER TRANSFER MOTOR	
3.16.3 IMAGE TRANSFER MOTOR	
3.16.4 USED TONER MOTOR, TRANSPORT MOTOR	
3.16.5 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT MOTOR (TRAYS 2, 3)	
3.16.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR	
3.17 AIR FILTERS	
3.17.1 TONER HOPPER FILTER	
3.17.2 OZONE FILTER, AIR FILTERS	
3.17.3 SCANNER FILTER	
3.18 ARDF	
3.18.1 ARDF COVERS	3-153
3.18.2 ORIGINAL FEED UNIT	3-154
3.18.3 FEED BELT, PICKUP ROLLER	3-155
3.18.4 BOTTOM PLATE POSITION SENSOR	
3.18.5 INTERVAL, ORIGINAL WIDTH, SKEW	
CORRECTION SEPARATION SENSORS	3-157
3.18.6 ORIGINAL LENGTH SENSORS	
3.18.7 COVER OPEN, ORIGINAL SET, BOTTOM PLATE,	
PICKUP ROLLER HP, FEED-OUT SENSORS	3-159
3.18.8 ARDF POSITION SENSOR, APS START SENSOR	
3.18.9 ORIGINAL REGISTRATION, EXIT SENSORS	
3.18.10 ARDF SEPARATION ROLLER	

3.18.11 ARDF TRANSPORT BELT	3-165
Removing the ARDF Transport Belt Assembly	3-165
Removing the Belt	3-166
Reinstalling the Belt	3-168
Reattaching the White Cover	
3.18.12 ARDF CONTROL BOARD	3-170
3.18.13 ARDF BOTTOM PLATE LIFT MOTOR	3-171
3.18.14 ARDF FEED MOTOR, ARDF TRANSPORT MOTOR	3-172
3.18.15 ARDF PICKUP ROLLER LIFT MOTOR	
3.19 IMAGE ADJUSTMENTS	3-174
3.19.1 SCANNING	3-174
Scanner sub-scan magnification	3-174
Scanner leading edge and side-to-side registration	3-174
Main scan dot position correction	
3.19.2 ARDF	
ARDF side-to-side and leading edge registration	3-176
3.19.3 REGISTRATION	
Image Area	3-177
Leading Edge	3-177
Side to Side	3-177
Adjustment Standards	3-177
Paper Registration Standard	3-177
Adjustment Procedure	3-178
3.19.4 COLOR REGISTRATION	
Forced MUSIC Adjustment	3-179
Adjustment of Line Speed for Thick Paper	
Color Registration Test and Error Adjustment	
3.19.5 SKEW ADJUSTMENT AFTER LASER UNIT REPLACEM	ENT .3-180
3.19.6 PRINTER GAMMA CORRECTION	3-182
Copy Mode	3-182
Printer Mode	
Adjustment Reference For Gamma Correction	3-187
3.20 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION	

4. TROUBLESHOOTING	4-1
4.1 PROGRAM DOWNLOAD	4-1
4.1.1 OVERVIEW	4-1
4.1.2 RECOVERY METHODS	4-1
4.1.3 DOWNLOAD ERROR CODES	4-2
4.1.4 IMPORTANT SP CODES	4-5
4.2 SPECIAL PROCEDURES	
4.2.1 SP2181 030 (ALIGNMENT RESULT) ERRORS	4-6
4.2.2 COLOR REGISTRATION ERROR ADJUSTMENT	4-9
Color Registration Error Correction	4-9
Color Skew Error Correction	
Overall Check	
Color Registration at the Left and Right Folds of the Test Pattern	
4.2.3 SP3812 001 (DEVSETUP EXECUTE) ERRORS	
4.2.4 PROCESS CONTROL TROUBLESHOOTING	
Summary of Process Control SC Codes	
Process Control Self-Check: SP3821	
4.2.5 COLOR ADJUSTMENT FOR CONNECTED COPIERS	
4.3 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS	
4.3.1 SERVICE MODE LOCK/UNLOCK	
4.3.2 SERIES SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS	
4.3.3 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS	
SC codes Group 1: Scanning	
SC codes Group 2: Exposure	
SC Codes Group 3: Image Development – 1	
SC codes Group 4: Image Development - 2	
SC codes Group 5: Paper Feed	
SC codes Group 6: Device Communication	
SC codes Group 7: Peripherals	
SC800: Overall System	
4.3.4 ADDITIONAL SC CODES PRINTED IN SMC REPORTS	4-/4

5.	SERVICE TABLES	5-1
	5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE	5-1
	5.1.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE OPERATION	5-1
	Service Mode Lock/Unlock	5-1
	To Enter and Exit the Service Mode	5-2
	To Switch to the Copy Window for Test Printing	5-2
	Using the SP Mode	5-2
	SP Mode Button Summary	
	SP Mode Print (SMC Print)	
	5.2 RESETS	
	5.2.1 MEMORY ALL CLEAR: SP5801	
	5.2.2 SOFTWARE AND SETTING RESET	
	Software Reset	
	Resetting the User Tool Settings	
	Resetting Copy/Document Server Features Only	
	Resetting Scanner Features Only	
	5.3 TEST PATTERN PRINTING.	
	5.3.1 PRINTING TEST PATTERN: SP2109 002	
	Test Pattern Table	
	5.3.2 IPU TEST PATTERNS: SP4417	
	5.4 FIRMWARE UPDATE DOCEDUDE	
	5.4.1 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE	
	Firmware Update Procedure	
	Verifying the Firmware Update 5.4.2 DOWNLOADING STAMP DATA	
	5.4.3 UPLOADING AND DOWNLOADING NVRAM DATA	
	Uploading NVRAM Data to an SD card	
	Downloading an SD Card to NVRAM	
	5.5 SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES	5-20
	5.5.1 SERVICE TABLE KEY	
	5.5.2 COPIER SERVICE TABLES	
	Group 1000	
	Group 2000	5-33
	Group 3000	
	Group 4000	
	Group 5000	
	Group 6000	
	Group 7000	
	Group 8000	5-151
	5.5.3 PRINTER SERVICE TABLE	5-186
	Group 1 (Printer)	5-186
	5.5.4 SCANNER SERVICE TABLE	5-188
	Group 1 (Scanner)	
	Group 2 (Scanner)	
	5.6 COPIER INPUT/OUTPUT CHECK	
	5.6.1 COPIER INPUT CHECK: SP5803	
	5.6.2 COPIER OUTPUT CHECK: SP5804	5-198

5.7 ARDF INPUT/OUTPUT CHECK	5-200
5.7.1 ADF INPUT CHECK: SP6007	5-200
5.7.2 ADF OUTPUT CHECK: SP6008	5-201
5.8 FINISHER 1 (B700/B701) INPUT/OUTPUT CHECK	5-202
5.8.1 INPUT CHECK: FINISHER 1 (B700/B701) SP6121	5-202
5.8.2 OUTPUT CHECK FINISHER 1: (B700/B701) SP6123	
5.9 FINISHER 2 (B706) INPUT/OUTPUT CHECK	
5.9.1 INPUT CHECK FINISHER 2: (B706) SP6122	
5.9.2 OUTPUT CHECK FINISHER 2 (B706) SP6125	
5.10 USING THE DEBUG LOG	
5.10.1 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG	
5.10.2 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD	
5.10.3 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY	
5.10.4 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES	
SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key	
SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log	
SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log	
5.11 USER TOOLS	
5.11.1 OVERVIEW	
5.11.2 SYSTEM SETTINGS	
5.11.3 MAINTENANCE	
5.11.4 COPIER/DOCUMENT SERVER FEATURES	
5.11.5 PRINTER FEATURES	
5.11.6 SCANNER FEATURES	
5.11.7 INQUIRY	
5.11.8 COUNTER	5-222

6.	DETAILS	6-1
	6.1 GENERAL OVERVIEW	6-1
	6.1.1 MAIN MACHINE	
	6.1.2 PAPER PATH: COVER INTERPOSER TRAY	6-3
	6.1.3 PAPER PATH: 9-BIN MAILBOX	6-4
	6.1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT	6-5
	6.2 BOARDS	6-6
	6.2.1 BLOCK DIAGRAM	6-6
	6.2.2 COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS	6-7
	6.2.3 CONTROLLER BOX VENTILATION	6-9
	6.3 COPY PROCESS OVERVIEW	6-10
	6.4 ARDF	6-13
	6.4.1 OVERVIEW	6-13
	6.4.2 ARDF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS	6-14
	Components View 1: Sensors	6-14
	Components View 2: Motors, Sensors, Other	6-15
	ARDF Components View 3: Drive Motors	
	6.4.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION	
	6.4.4 PICK-UP ROLLER	
	6.4.5 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT	
	6.4.6 ORIGINAL FEED AND SEPARATION	
	6.4.7 ORIGINAL FEED AND SKEW CORRECTION	
	6.4.8 SLIP DETECTION	
	6.4.9 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT (ONE-SIDED)	6-25
	6.4.10 DUPLEX SCANNING	
	6.4.11 ARDF JAM DETECTION	
	Jam Detection Sensor Layout	
	Jam Detection Table	
	6.5 SCANNER UNIT	
	6.5.1 OVERVIEW	
	6.5.2 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION	
	Detection Timing 6.5.3 SCANNER DRIVE	6-33
	6.5.4 SCANNER UNIT FANS AND ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER.	
	6.5.5 DUST DETECTION	
	Overview	
	What Happens if Dust is Detected?	
	How is the Dust Detected?	
	The Effects of SP Mode Settings on Dust Detection	
	6.6 IMAGE PROCESSING	
	6.6.1 OVERVIEW	
	6.6.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)	
	SBU	
	Operation Summary	
	Storing Operation Settings	
	SBU Test Mode	
	6.6.3 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)	

6.7 LASER UNIT	6-43
6.7.1 OVERVIEW	6-43
6.7.2 LD UNIT	
Dual Beam Writing	6-44
LD Safety Switches	6-44
6.7.3 OPTIĆAL PATHS	6-45
Optical Path	
6.7.4 IMAGE POSITION CORRECTION (MUSIC)	6-47
What does MUSIC do?	6-47
When is MUSIC done?	
Location of the MUSIC Sensors	6-48
How is MUSIC Done?	6-49
3rd Mirror Position Adjustment	6-51
Exposure Unit Temperature Sensors	6-51
6.8 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNITS (PCU)	6-52
6.8.1 OVERVIEW OF TANDEM PCU UNITS	6-52
6.8.2 AROUND THE DRUM	6-53
Drum Drive	6-54
Drum Charge	6-55
Drum Cleaning	6-56
Drum Ventilation	6-57
Ozone Ventilation	
6.8.3 DEVELOPMENT UNIT	6-60
Overview	
Development Unit Operation	
Development, PCU Unit Drive	
6.9 TONER SUPPLY	
6.9.1 OVERVIEW	
6.9.2 TONER SUPPLY MECHANISM	
6.9.3 TONER CARTRIDGE	
6.9.4 TONER END SENSORS	
Toner near-end	
Toner end	
Toner End Recovery	
6.10 WASTE TONER COLLECTION	
6.10.1 WASTE TONER PATH	
6.10.2 WASTE TONER UNIT MOTORS	
6.10.3 WASTE TONER COLLECTION UNIT SENSORS	
6.11 PROCESS CONTROL	
6.11.2 COMPONENTS USED DURING PROCESS CONTROL	
Potential Sensor	
ID Sensors	
TD Sensor	
Temperature/Humidity Sensors	
List of Process Control Acronyms	
Important SP Codes Related to Process Control	

6.11.3 POTENTIAL CONTROL	6	-82
When is Potential Control Done?	6-	-82
What is Done During Potential Control?	6-	-83
6.11.4 TONER SUPPLY CONTROL		
Overview	6	-87
Toner Supply Operation Flow		
6.12 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER TRANSFER	6	-90
6.12.1 OVERVIEW	6	-90
6.12.2 ITB DRIVE	6	-93
6.12.3 ITB LIFT		
6.12.4 TRANSFER POWER PACK	6	-96
6.12.5 PAPER TRANSFER AND SEPARATION	6	-97
6.12.6 PTR CLEANING	6	-98
6.12.7 ITB CLEANING	6	-99
6.12.8 ITB SPEED CONTROL	6-1	00
6.12.9 ITB VENTILATION	6-1	01
6.13 PAPER FEED	6-1	02
6.13.1 OVERVIEW	6-1	02
6.13.2 DRIVE	6-1	04
6.13.3 TRAY AND PAPER LIFT MECHANISM – TRAY 2,3	6-1	05
Bottom Plate Lift	6-1	05
Lift Sensor		
6.13.4 PAPER FEED AND SEPARATION MECHANISM	6-1	07
Feed and Separation at Standby: No Paper Present	6-1	07
Paper Feed and Separation	6-1	80
Separation Roller Release Mechanism		
6.13.5 PAPER NEAR-END AND PAPER END – TRAYS 2 AND 3	6-1	10
6.13.6 PAPER SIZE DETECTION		
Tandem Tray (Tray 1)		
Universal Cassettes (Tray 2, 3)		
6.13.7 PAPER TRAY HEATERS	6-1	13
6.13.8 TANDEM TRAY – TRAY 1		
Overview		
Connecting the Left and Right Sides of the Tray		
Paper Lift/Remaining Paper Detection		
Fence Drive		
Rear Fence Drive		
Tray Side-to-side Positioning		
6.13.9 TRAY POSITIONING MECHANISM – TRAYS 1 TO 3		
6.13.10 BY-PASS TRAY		
By-pass Feed and Separation		
By-pass Tray Paper End Detection		
By-pass Paper Size Detection		
6.13.11 PAPER REGISTRATION		
Overview		
Paper Registration Drive		
Jam Removal at Paper Registration	6-1	28
6.13.12 PAPER TYPE AND DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION	6-1	29

6.14 FUSING, PAPER EXIT	6-132
6.14.1 OVERVIEW	6-132
6.15 THERMISTORS, THERMOSTATS	6-134
6.15.1 FUSING UNIT DRIVE	6-135
6.15.2 LUBRICATION AND CLEANING	
Stripper Retraction	6-137
6.15.3 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL	6-138
Basic Temperature Control	6-138
Correction for Machine Internal Temperature	6-140
Copy Speed Reduction (CPM Down Mode)	6-140
6.15.4 FUSING UNIT VENTILATION	6-141
6.16 DUPLEX UNIT	6-142
6.16.1 OVERVIEW	
6.16.2 DUPLEX DRIVE	6-143
6.16.3 INVERTER OPERATION	6-144
Inverter Feed-in and Jogging	6-144
Inverter Feed-out	6-145
6.16.4 DUPLEX TRAY FEED	6-146
6.16.5 DUPLEX INTERLEAVE FEED	6-147
6.16.6 DUPLEX UNIT VENTILATION	6-149
6.17 PAPER EXIT	
6.17.1 FACE UP EXIT MECHANISM	
6.17.2 DE-CURL MECHANISM	6-151
6.17.3 PAPER EXIT COOLING	
6.17.4 ENERGY SAVER MODES	6-153

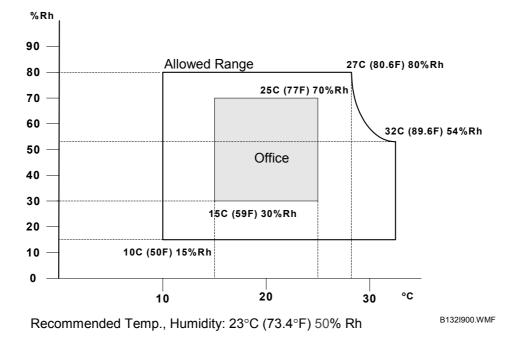
SPECIFICATIONS	SPEC-1
1. MAINFRAME	SPEC-1
1.1 COPYING	SPEC-1
Paper Sizes	SPEC-3
1.2 PRINTING	SPEC-4
1.3 SCANNER	SPEC-5
2. ARDF B652	SPEC-6
3. OPTIONAL PERIPHERALS	
3.1 LARGE CAPACITY TRAY B473	SPEC-7
3.2 81/2 X 14" PAPER SIZE TRAY B474	SPEC-7
3.3 9-BIN MAILBOX B762	SPEC-8
3.4 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B704	SPEC-8
3.5 3000-SHEET FINISHER B706	SPEC-9
3.6 PUNCH UNIT B531	SPEC-10
3.7 3000-SHEET FINISHER B701	SPEC-11
3.8 2000-SHEET FINISHER B700	SPEC-13
3.9 PUNCH UNIT B702	SPEC-15
3.10 A3/11" X 17" TRAY B331	SPEC-16
3.11 COPY TRAY B476	SPEC-16
4. MACHINE CONFIGURATION	SPEC-17
4.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS	SPEC-18
4.2 COPIER	SPEC-18
5. ARDF	SPEC-31

# 1. INSTALLATION

### **1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

#### **1.1.1 OPERATING ENVIRONMENT**

- 1. Temperature Range: Recommended Temp.: 23°C (73.4°) Allowed Temp.: 10°C to 32°C (50°F to 90°F) \*<sup>1</sup>
- 2. Humidity Range: 15% to 80% Rh
- 3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1,500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight or strong light.)
- 4. Ventilation: Air must be replaced a minimum of 3 times per hour
- 5. Ambient Dust: Less than 0.10 mg/m<sup>3</sup>
- \*1 If the machine is installed in a location where the ambient temperature is more that 30°C (86°F):
- Do not run full color copying longer than 2 hours.
- Never turn the main power switch off immediately after a long copy job. Leave the machine on so the fans can expel the hot air from the machine and cool the electronic components.



#### Temperature and Humidity for Operation

- 6. If the installation area has air-conditioners or heaters, put the machine in a location that agrees with these conditions:
  - a) Where there are no sudden temperature changes from low to high, or high to low.
  - b) Where it will not be directly exposed to cool air from an air conditioner in the summer.
  - c) Where it will not be directly exposed to reflected heat from a heater in the winter
- 7. Do not put the machine where it will be exposed to gases that can cause corrosion.
- 8. Put the copier on a strong and level surface. The front and rear of the machine must be less than  $\pm 5$  mm (0.2") away from level.
- 9. Do not put the machine where there could be strong vibrations.
- 10. Do not connect the machine to the same power source as other electrical devices.
- 11. The machine can make an electromagnetic field, and this can cause interference with radio or television reception.

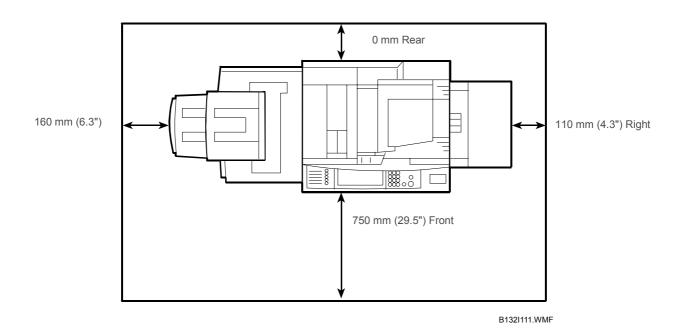
#### **1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL**

- 1. Front to rear: Less than  $\pm 5 \text{ mm} (0.2")$  away from level
- 2. Right to left: Less than  $\pm 5 \text{ mm} (0.2")$  away from level

The machine legs can be turned to adjust them up or down, to make the machine level. Put a carpenter's level on the exposure glass.

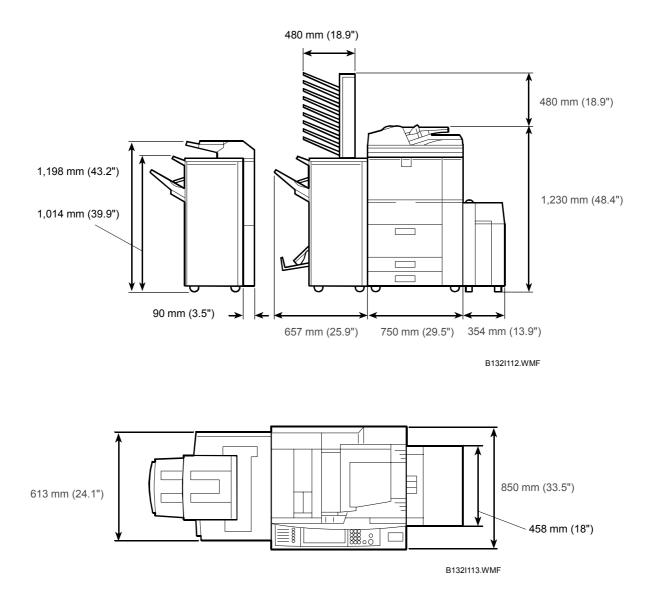
### **1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS**

Put the copier near the power source. Minimum clearance must be as shown below. The same amount of clearance is necessary when optional peripheral devices are installed.



1-3

### **1.1.4 DIMENSIONS**



# **1.1.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS**

### **WARNING**!

- 1. Make sure that the wall outlet is near the main machine and that you can get access to it easily. Make sure the plug is tightly connected to the outlet.
- 2. Do not connect more than one electrical device to the same power outlet.
- 3. Be sure to ground the machine.
- 4. Do not put objects on the power cord.

Input voltage level	North America 120 V, 60 Hz: More than 20 A	
	Europe/Asia 220 V ~ 240 V, 50/60 Hz: more than 10 A	
Permissible voltage fluctuation	±10%	

### 

Do not turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To prevent damage to the hard disk or memory, push the operation switch to turn the power off, then do nothing until the power LED goes off, and then turn the main power switch off.

There are two power switches on the machine:

#### • Main Power Switch.

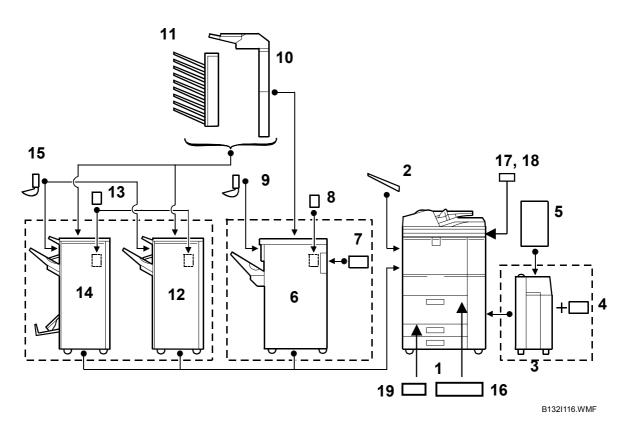
This is located on the front left corner of the machine and has a plastic cover. This switch must always be on unless a technician does work on the machine.

### • Operation switch.

This is located on the right side of the operation panel. This is the switch that the customer uses to turn the machine on and off.

Installation

# **1.2 COPIER AND PERIPHERALS**



This is a list of the peripheral devices that can be installed with the copier.

No.	Model	Name	Comments
1	B132/B181/B200	Copier	Main machine
2	B756	Copy Tray	Attached to main machine
3	B473	LCT	Large capacity tray
4	B699	LCT Adapter	Required for LCT
5	B474	81/2" x 14"/B4 Paper Size Tray	LCT Option
6	B706	3000-Sheet Finisher	No saddle-stitching (100-sheet stapling)
7	B698	Finisher Adapter	Replacement motor for B706
8	B531/A821	Punch Unit	For B706 only
9	B513	Output Jogger Unit	For B706 only.
10	B704	Cover Interposer Tray	For B700, B701, B706
11	B762	Mail Box	For B700, B701 only
12	B701	3000-Sheet Finisher	No saddle-stitching, Tray x1, 50-sheet stapling
13	B702	Punch Unit	For B700, B701
14	B700	2000-Sheet Booklet Finisher	Saddle-stitching, Trays x2, 50-sheet stapling
15	B703	Output Jogger Unit	For B700, B701
16	B331	A3 /11"x17" Paper Size Tray	For Tandem Tray (Tray 1)
17	B452	Key Counter Bracket	
18	B498	Key Card Bracket	
19	B499	Tab Sheet Holder	

# 1.3 COPIER B132/B181/B200

# **1.3.1 ACCESSORIES**

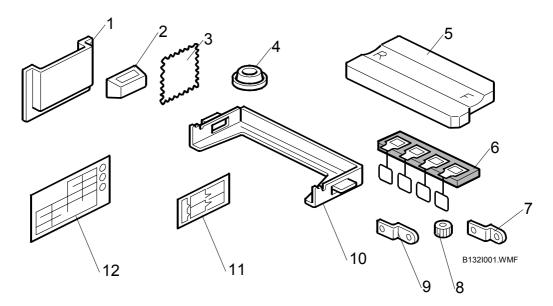
Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

## Description

<b>.</b>
Q'ty

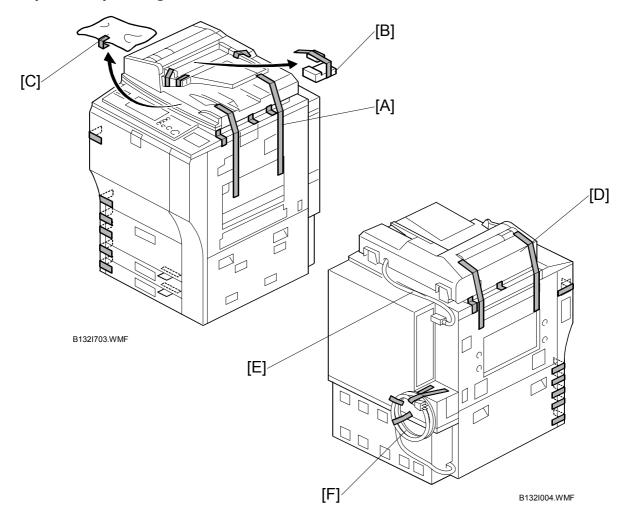
•	
1. Instructions Pocket	1
2. Exposure glass cloth holder	1
3. Exposure glass cloth	1
4. Leveling Shoes	4
5. PCU stand	1
6. PCU Caps Set (Not Used)* <sup>1</sup>	1
7. Lock Plate: Development Roller	1
8. Development Roller Gear	1
9. Lock Plate: Drum Shaft	1
10. PCU Stand Holder	1
11. Decal: Paper Loading	1
12. Decal: Paper Size	1

\*1 Attach the PCU caps to the PCU toner ports before you return PCUs to the factory. They are not used during installation or servicing.



# **1.3.2 INSTALLATION**

### Tapes and packing material



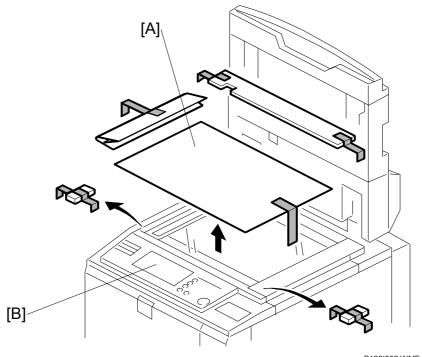
### **WARNING**!

Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do these procedures.

Remove all tapes and packing material from the main machine:

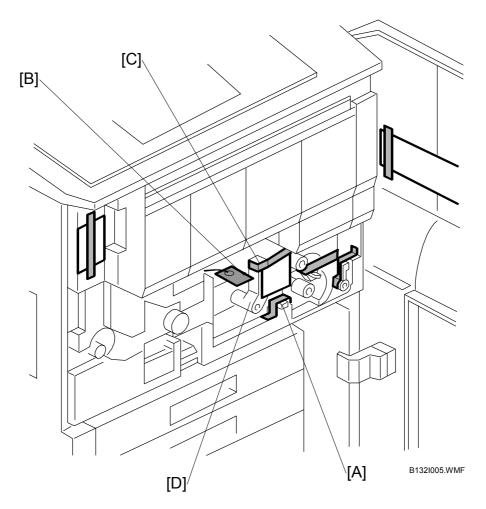
- [A]: ARDF, right side
- [B]: Packing block inside ARDF
- [C]: Accessories bag. Remove other accessory bags from Tray 2, Tray 3.
- [D]: ARDF, left side
- [E]: ARDF connector cord. Remove tape and connect the cord
- [F]: Power cord

### COPIER B132/B181/B200



B132I002.WMF

- [A]: Under ARDF[B]: Operation panel film

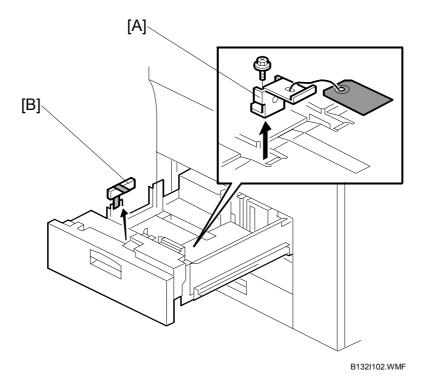


1. Open the front door and, and remove the transfer belt release lever [A](1 tape). We will install this in the correct location later.

#### Important

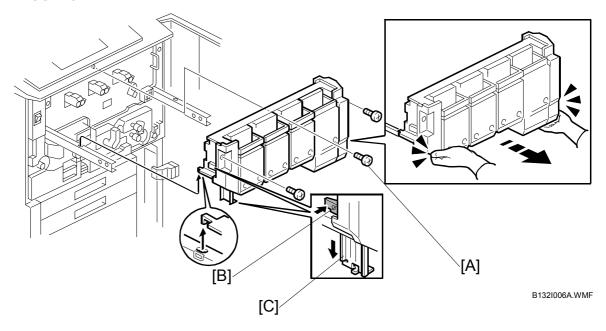
- DO NOT TOUCH [B], [C], OR [D] AT THIS TIME. THESE ITEMS ARE REMOVED AFTER YOU REMOVE THE FACEPLATE.
- TO PREVENT DAMAGE TO THE ITB, NEVER TURN DOWN LEVER [D] TO PULL OUT THE DRAWER UNIT UNTIL AFTER YOU HAVE REMOVED THE <u>ROD</u> WITH THE RED TAG AND WIRE [B]. THE DRAWER MUST REMAIN INSIDE THE MACHINE UNTIL AFTER THE DEVELOPER IS INSTALLED IN THE DEVELOPER CARTRIDGES OF THE **PCU**S.
- THE ROD IS REMOVED AFTER THE FACE PLATE IS REMOVED TO INSTALL THE DEVELOPER CARTRIDGES. (
  PG.1-12)

#### COPIER B132/B181/B200



- 2. From Tray 1 remove:
  [A]: Block, tape
  [B]: Retainer, tag, wire (≅<sup>IJ</sup> x1)
- 3. Remove all retainers and accessories from Trays 2, Tray 3.

Shipping Retainer Removal



- 1. Prepare an open space on the floor for the hopper.
- 2. Remove the screws of the toner hopper cover [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 3$ ).
- 3. Put your hands under the left and right corners of the toner hopper, and slowly pull it out on its rails until it stops.
- 4. Push the lock [B] then pull down the support leg [C].
- 5. Make sure that the support leg is down and locked.

### 

Always make sure that the support leg is down and locked before you remove the hopper.

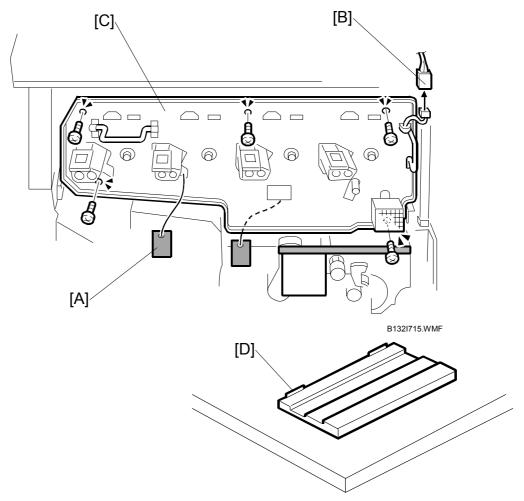
6. Hold the toner hopper using the handles at the top left and right sides. Then lift the toner hopper off its rails and set it on the floor.

## 

The hopper is heavy! Lift it carefully. Make sure that it disengages fully from the rails on the left and right, and then set it on the floor.

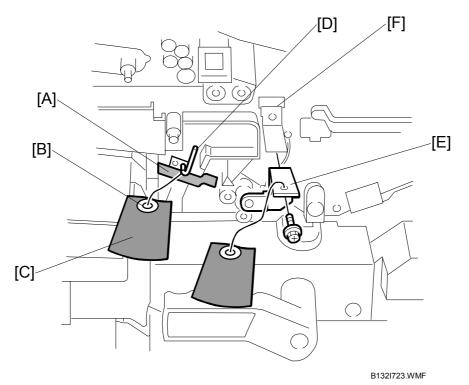
Push the hopper rails into the machine.
 NOTE: Push in the rails until approximately an inch is out of the machine. If you push the rails in fully, you must use a pair of needle-nose (radio) pliers to pull them out again.

Installation



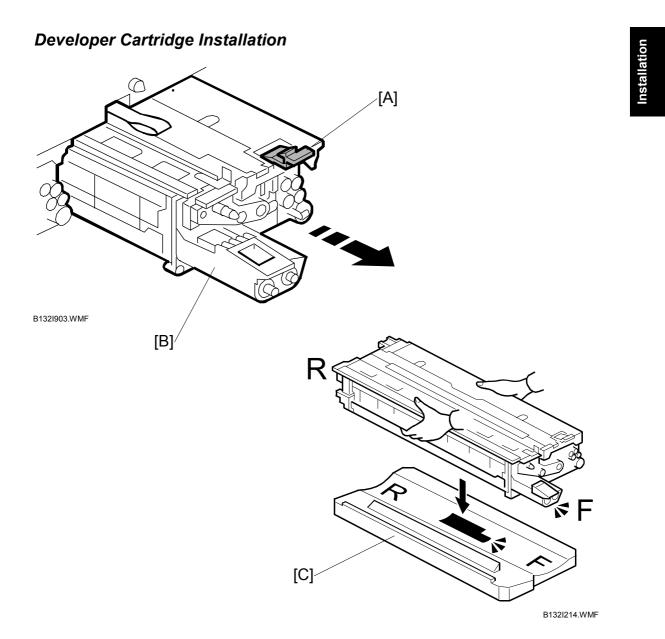
B132I902.WMFF

- 8. Remove the tag, and rod [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ).
- 9. Disconnect the fan connector [B].
- 10. Remove the face plate [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x 5).
- 11. Put the PCU stand [D] on a flat, clean surface.
- 12. Use a clean cloth to remove dust from the surface of the stand.



## Important:

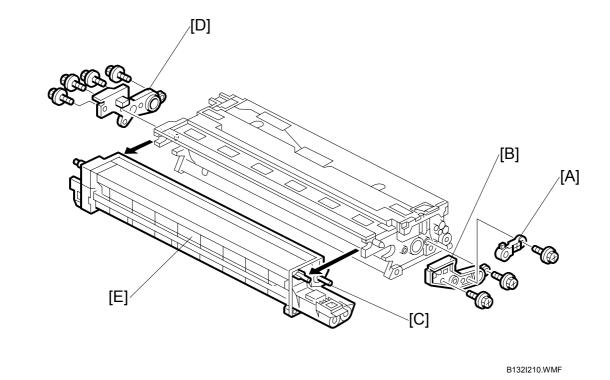
- DO NOT TRY TO PULL OUT THE DRAWER UNIT UNTIL AFTER YOU REMOVE THE FOLLOWING RETAINERS.
- 13. Remove the tape [A].
- Pull on the <u>reinforced part</u> [B] on tag [C] to remove the stabilizing rod [D].
   NOTE: If you do not pull on the reinforced part [B], you will tear the tag or pull the wire off.
- 15. Remove the bracket [E], red tag, and wire ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ). **NOTE:** <u>Do not remove bracket [F].</u>



### Important

- The OPC drum is exposed on the bottom of the PCU.
- Do not put your hand under the PCU when you hold the PCU.
- Always use the PCU stand. Do not put the PCU on other surfaces.
- 1. Push down the tab [A] above the Yellow PCU.
- 2. Hold the Yellow PCU [B] by its sides, and pull it out of the machine.
- 3. Set the PCU on the PCU stand [C]. (In the diagram, F is 'front', R is 'rear'.)
- 4. Put a piece of clean paper on top of the PCU to protect the drum from light.

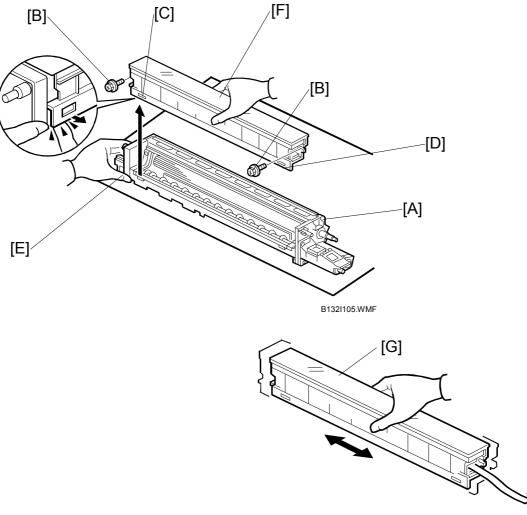
E.



- 5. On the front end of the PCU, remove the shaft cap [A] and lock plate [B] ( $\hat{\not} x$  3). **Important:** After you remove the shaft cap, make sure that you do not turn the shaft [C] of the development roller.
- 6. On the rear end of the PCU, remove the lock plate [D] ( $\hat{k}^2 \times 4$ ).
- 7. Remove the development unit [E] from the PCU.

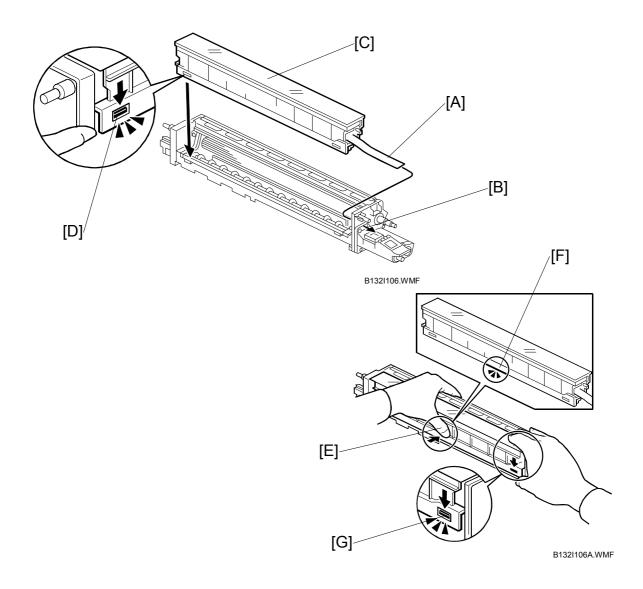
#### COPIER B132/B181/B200

nstallation

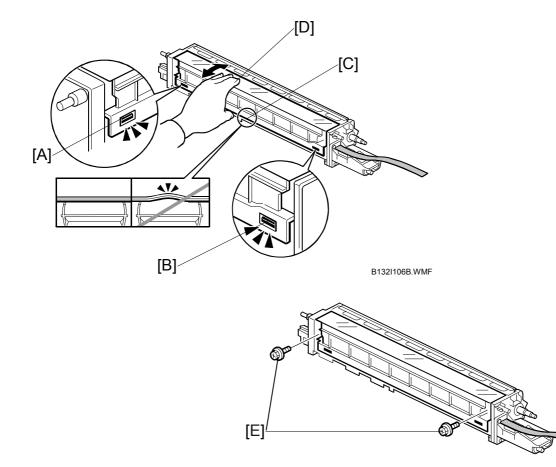


B132I105A.WMF

- 8. Place the development unit [A] on a clean sheet of A3/DLT paper [B].
- 9. Remove the screws from the dummy cartridge [B] ( $\hat{k}$  x 2).
- 10. With a fingernail, release the tabs on the left [C] and right [D]. **Important**: The development unit is top-heavy and falls easily. Hold it on the left side.
- 11. While holding the unit steady with one hand on the left [E], remove the dummy cartridge [F] from the development unit.
- 12. Shake the new yellow developer cartridge [G] from side to side about 6 times.



- 13. Thread the film seal [A] through hole [B].
- 14. Slide the developer cartridge down [C] on the left so the holes and tabs [D] are aligned.
- 15. Press in on the middle of the developer cartridge [E] to lock the tabs inside [F].
- 16. Press down on the right end of the developer cartridge until the tabs [G] on the right lock.



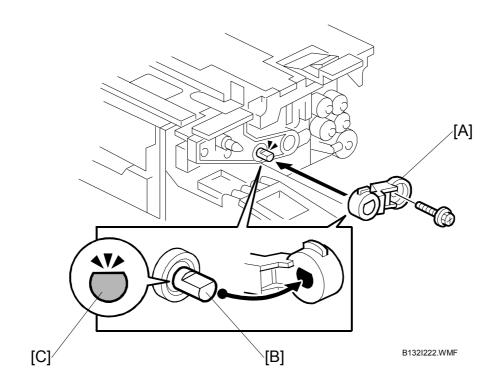
Installation

B132I106C.WMF

[F]

- 17. Check the following to points to be sure that the developer cartridge is set properly.
  - Tabs [A] and [B] should be locked.
  - The developer cartridge edge [C] should be flat and not bulging or floating away from the side of the development unit
  - Pull gently on the developer cartridge at [D] to make sure that it does not part from the development unit.
- 18. Fasten the cartridge [E] ( $\hat{P}$  x2).

IMPORTANT: DO NOT REMOVE THE FILM SEAL [F] ON THE DEVELOPER CARTRIDGE AT THIS TIME.



## Reassemble the PCU

1. Attach the shaft cap [A].

If you cannot attach the cap, then check the end of the development roller shaft [B]. The flat side of the shaft must point up and must be level.

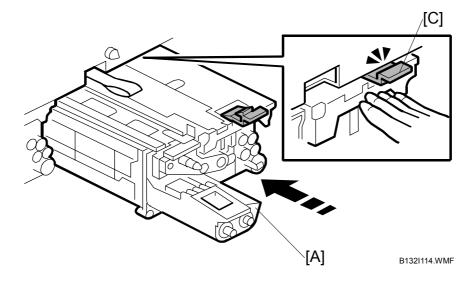
## Important

- When you turn the shaft:
  - a) Use your fingers to turn the front and rear ends of the development roller shaft until the end of the shaft is as shown [C].
  - b) Make sure that you hold the shaft and not the sleeve (the sleeve does not turn).
  - c) To prevent damage to the shaft, do not hold the end of the shaft with pliers.
- 2. Reattach the development unit to the PCU.

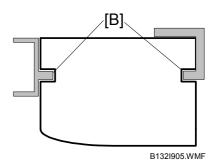
### Important!

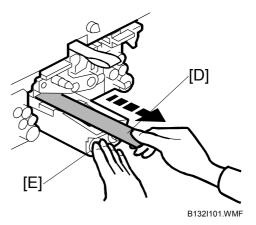
• HANDLE THE DEVELOPMENT UNIT CAREFULLY WHEN YOU REATTACH IT TO THE PCU TO AVOID DAMAGING THE DRUM INSIDE THE PCU.

**nstallation** 

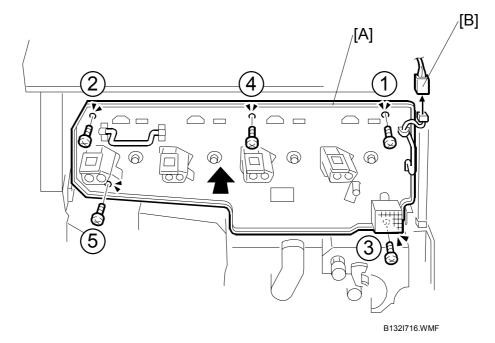


- 3. Hold the PCU [A] in front of the slot where you removed it.
- 4. Engage the rails [B] with the slots in the sides of the PCU.
- Slowly push the PCU into the slot. Make sure the tab [C] above the PCU is locked.
   NOTE: If the PCU does not go in smoothly, make sure the rails [B] and grooves are engaged correctly.
- To release the developer into the PCU, pull out the film seal [D].
   NOTE: Put your other hand on the PCU [E] to keep it stable it while you pull on the film seal.
- 7. Repeat Steps 1 to 25 for the other PCUs (Cyan, Magenta, Black).





## Reattach the Face Plate

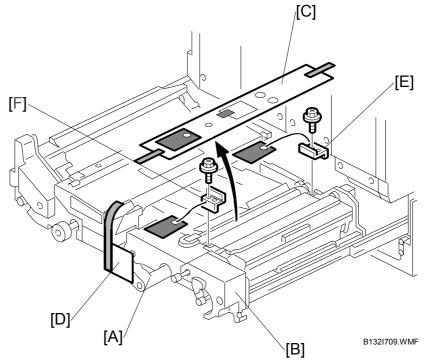


1. Attach the face plate [A] with the screws in the sequence shown by the numbers above ( $\hat{\beta}^2 \times 5$ ).

### Important:

- Do not tighten these screws too much.
- Make sure the fan connector [B] is not pinched behind the face plate.
- 2. Connect the fan again [B] (⊑<sup>J</sup> x 1).

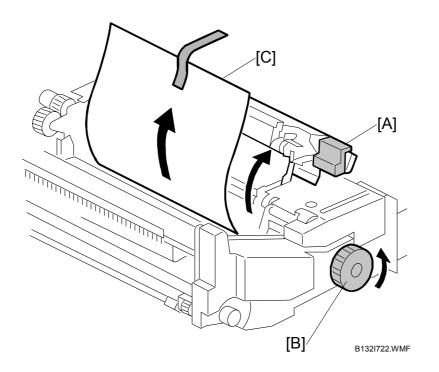
## Remove the Retainers in the Drawer Unit



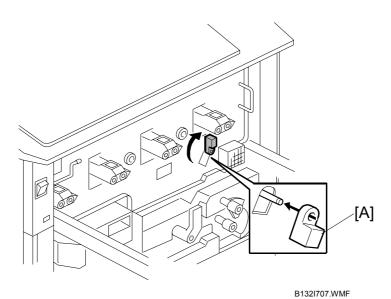
- 1. Turn the lever [A] down to the left, and pull the drawer unit [B] out of the machine until it stops.
- 2. Remove the instruction sheets [C] and [D].
- 3. Remove the bracket and tag [E] at the rear.
- 4. Remove the bracket and tag [F] at the front.

## Important

• A sheet of paper protects the ITB if you accidentally pull the drawer out without first removing the rod. Do not push the drawer into the machine. Follow the procedure on the instruction sheet to remove the rod and paper.



- 5. Raise lever D2 [A].
- 6. Turn knob **D1** [B] in the direction shown by the arrow.
- 7. Remove protective sheet [C].
- 8. Lower lever D2 [A].
- 9. Push the drawer into the machine until it stops.
- 10. Rotate handle **B2** up and to the right until it stops.

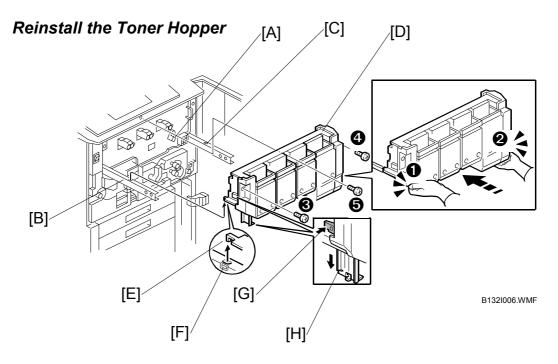


- 11. Locate the transfer belt release lever [A]. It was removed earlier with the shipping tape.
- 12. Attach the transfer belt release lever.
- 13. Turn it to the vertical position and make sure that it locks.

#### Important:

- The transfer belt release lever must be turned up and locked in position before you install the toner hopper.
- IF YOU FORGET TO ATTACH THE TRANSFER BELT RELEASE LEVER [A], THIS WILL CAUSE AN ID SENSOR ERROR (SC410 TO SC413).

Installation

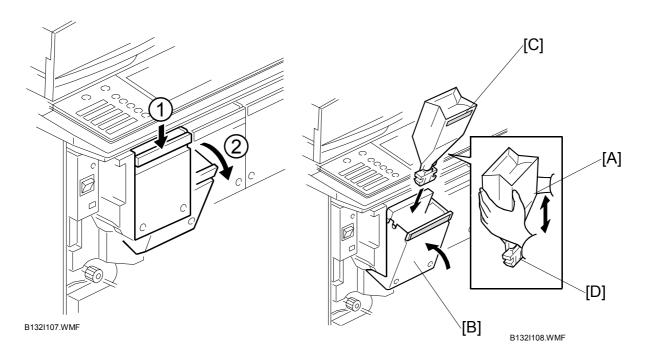


- 1. Make sure that the transfer belt release lever [A] is up and locked before you attach the hopper.
- Pull the toner hopper left rail [B] and right rail [C] until they are fully extended.
   NOTE: If the rails were pushed in fully, it could be necessary to use a pair of needle-nose pliers to pull them out of the machine.
- Set the toner hopper [D] on the rails.
   Important: Make sure the steel tabs [E] of the hopper are put fully into the left rail hole and the right rail hole [F].
- Push the lock [G] and push the support leg [H].
   Important: Make sure that the support leg is up and locked before you push the toner hopper into the machine.
- Put your hands at the bottom of the toner hopper at ① and ② and then push the hopper into the machine against the face plate.
   Important: To prevent damage to the hopper, do not push the top of the toner hopper when you do this step.
- Make sure that the hopper is flat against the face plate on the right side.
   NOTE: If the toner hopper [D] is not flat against the face plate on the right side, pull it out a short distance and make sure that the transfer belt release lever is turned up fully.
- 7. Attach the toner hopper ( $\mathscr{F} \times 3$ ). Attach the screws in this sequence: **606**

## STC (Soft Toner Cartridge) Installation

#### Important:

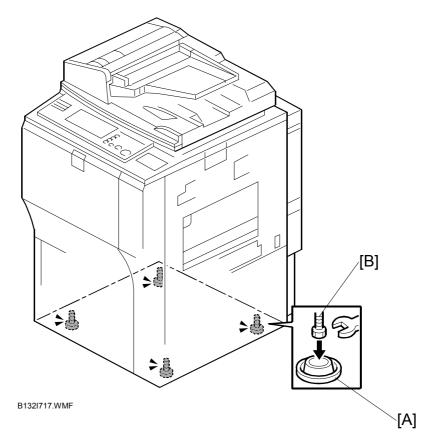
- Make sure that you install each STC in the correct bin.
- The label on the toner cartridge must face the front of the machine.
- From left to right, the bins are for Yellow $\rightarrow$  Cyan $\rightarrow$  Magenta $\rightarrow$  Black.
- The name of the color for each bin is on the decals that are attached to the bin release levers.



- Push down the lock lever ① on the top edge of the Yellow bin (the bin at the far left) to release it. Then pull the bin ② in the direction of the front to open it.
   Important: To prevent damage to the bin door, do not try to pull a bin directly out. Push down on its top edge first to release it, then pull it to open it.
- 2. Remove the Yellow STC (Soft Toner Cartridge) from its box.
- Shake the STC [A] up and down about 10 times. Do not squeeze or knead the toner cartridge (this will make clumps in the toner).
   NOTE: The bottom of the cartridge [C] must face down.
- Set the Yellow STC in the bin [B].
   NOTE: Make sure that the color ID label [C] and ID chip terminals [D] are facing toward you.
- 5. Push the Yellow STC bin to close and lock it.
- 6. Do Steps 1 to 6 for the other three STCs (C, M, K)

**Important**: Make sure that the color of each STC agrees with the label on the bin door before you install it.

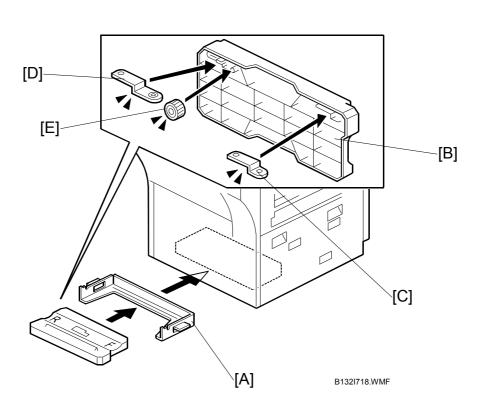
### Make the Machine Level



- 1. Attach the leveling shoes [A] to the machine.
- 2. Place a level on the exposure glass.
- 3. Use a wrench to lift or lower the nuts [B] on the leveling shoes until the machine is less than 5 mm from level (measure it from front to rear and from left to right).

**Installation** 

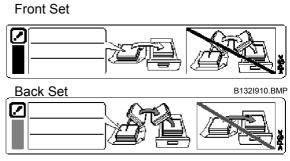
## Attach the PCU Stand Rack



- 1. Hold the PCU stand rack [A] with its open end pointed as shown, and put it below the machine.
- 2. Attach the rack to the bottom of the machine with the magnets on the rack.
- 3. Make sure that the following accessories are attached to the bottom of the PCU stand [B]. Then they will be available for the next servicing:
  - [C] Lock plate (short): Necessary for drum motor replacement
  - [D] Lock plate (long): Necessary for developer replacement to lock the front side of the development roller.
  - [E] Development roller gear: Necessary for developer replacement to turn the development gears.
- 4. Put the PCU stand in the rack below the copier.

## Attach Decals

- 1. Attach the paper-installation decals to the trays. These tell you how to add new paper.
  - Front set decal: Attach this decal to the LCT if it is installed. 'Front set' means that the paper should be face up in the tray.
  - Back set decal: Attach these decals to the trays of the copier. 'Back set' means that the paper should be face down in the tray.

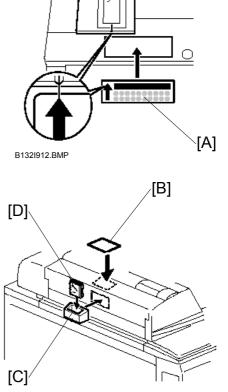


B132I911.BMP

B132I913.BMPMP

2. Attach exposure-glass-cleaning decal [A] at the front edge of the ARDF exposure glass.

- 3. Attach the original-caution decal [B], and the silicone cloth holder [C].
- 4. Put the silicone cloth [D] in the holder.

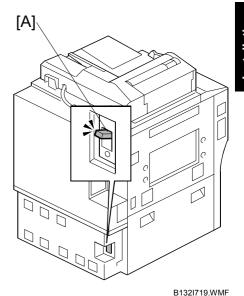




### Initializing Developer and Toner

1. At the left rear corner of the machine, make sure that the manual breaker switch [A] is UP.

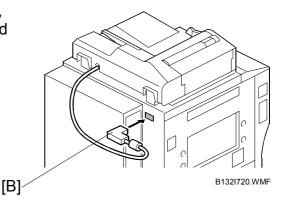
**Important:** When the breaker switch is UP, the copier is ready to be turned on. The "I" mark can be seen.



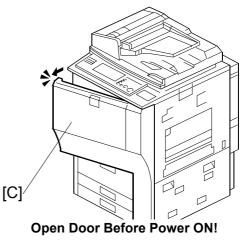
Installation

**Important**: Before you turn the copier on, make sure that the ARDF [B] is connected to the copier at the left rear corner.

2. Connect the power cord of the copier to a power outlet.



- 3. Open the front door [C]. Important!
  - TURN ON THE MACHINE WITH THE FRONT DOOR OPEN TO PREVENT THE MACHINE FROM PERFORMING THE INITIAL PROCESS CONTROL SELF-CHECK.
  - IF THE FRONT DOOR IS NOT OPEN, THE DRUMS WILL TURN WITH NO TONER IN THE PCUS.
  - IF THE DRUMS TURN WITH NO TONER IN THE PCUS, THIS CAN CAUSE THE CLEANING BLADES TO CATCH ON A DRY DRUM AND DAMAGE THE DRUM SURFACES.
- 4. With the front door <u>open</u>, turn on the main power switch.



B132I721.WMF

- 5. Close the front door after "Open Cover" appears on the display.
- 6. Enter the SP mode and do **3811 001**.
- 7. Push [Execute]. Approximately 4 minutes is necessary for this operation.

### SP3811 001 does these tasks:

- Makes sure that all the seals are removed from each developer cartridge and that there is developer in each PCU.
- Turns toner supply on, and sends toner to the sub hopper of each PCU.
- Sends toner to the PCU to give the drum a layer of toner. If this is not done, the cleaning blades will bend and scratch the drums.
- Initializes the TD sensor.
- Starts the process control self-check to set the target for development gamma, and adjusts toner density.

### Very Important:

### ONLY INITIALIZE THE TD SENSOR ONE TIME. DO NOT DO IT MORE THAN ONE TIME.

Only initialize the TD sensor at the following times:

- At installation, exactly as explained in the installation procedure.
  - NEVER DO TD SENSOR INITIALIZATION SP3801 001~006 AFTER SP3811-001.
  - SP3811-001 DOES NOT ONLY INITIALIZE THE DEVELOPER. IT ALSO INITIALIZES THE TD SENSOR. IF YOU DO SP3801 AFTER SP3811, TD SENSOR INITIALIZATION WILL BE DONE TWICE. THIS CAN CAUSE A FATAL ERROR IN TONER SUPPLY CONTROL.
- After you replace developer (only initialize the TD sensor for the colour that you replaced)
- As instructed in specific troubleshooting procedures.

If you do not obey the above instructions, you will get toner scattering inside the machine.

- 8. When the message tells you that the initialization is completed, touch [Close].
- 9. Do SP3812 001 to make sure that SP3811 001 was done correctly.

This operation panel shows "**1111**". A "**1**" shows that each PCU was initialized correctly.

**NOTE:** If "1111" is not shown, see section 4.2.3 in, "4. Troubleshooting". **Important**: From left to right, the 1s show the status of the PCUs in this sequence: KMCY.

- 10. Do **SP2111 001** to force correct color toner position alignment (MUSIC). This operation requires about 65 seconds to finish.
- 11. Do SP2181 030 to make sure that SP2111 001 was done correctly.

The operation panel shows "1". This shows that the position of each color toner is aligned correctly.

**NOTE:** If "1" is not shown, see "4.2.2 Color Registration Error Adjustment".

## Load the Paper Trays

For each paper cassette tray:

- 1. Move the side fence and bottom fence to the correct positions for the paper.
- 2. Add paper to the trays.
- 3. Attach the paper size decals to the front of the paper cassette trays and the tandem tray.
  - **NOTE:** It is not necessary to input the paper size setting for trays 2 and 3. This is detected automatically.

## Make a Test Color Print

- Make sure that A3 or DLT paper is put in one of the trays.
   NOTE: Use the same type of paper that the customer normally uses for color outputs.
- 2. Put a "Color Chart C-4" on the exposure glass.
- 3. Select full color mode and print one copy of the chart. You will use this in the ACC procedure, if ACC is necessary.
- 4. Check the results of the copy with the customer.
  - If the quality of the color is satisfactory, ACC adjustment is not necessary.
  - If the quality of the color is not satisfactory, do the ACC adjustment described below.

## ACC (Automatic Color Calibration) Adjustment

Automatic color calibration is done at the factory with the procedure given below. Do this procedure only if the color quality is not satisfactory for the customer.

- 1. Push [User Tools] (
- 2. To print a color pattern, select Maintenance> Auto Color Calibration
- 3. Touch "Start".

```
Machine will start self-check before
printing test pattern
Press [Start Printing].
```

4. Touch "Start Printing".

Now self-checking. Test pattern will be printed. Please wait.

The machine does process control, then it prints a test pattern.

Place Test Pattern on the exposure glass correctly. Then press [Start Scanning]

- 5. Remove the C-4 test chart from the exposure glass (this was put on the exposure glass during the previous procedure 'Make a Test Color Print').
- 6. Place the color test pattern face-down (this is the test pattern that you made in step 4). The arrow and notation ("Face down and align the arrow with the rear left corner of the exposure glass.") must be at the rear left corner.
- 7. Touch [Start Scanning] on the display. The machine scans the pattern one time. Scanning...

Please wait.

If you see this error:

Scanning failed. Place test pattern on the exposure glass correctly. Then press [Start Scanning].

Make sure that the arrow on the test pattern is in the upper left corner of the exposure glass.

- 8. Remove the pattern from the exposure glass and replace it with the Color Chart C-4.
- 9. Touch "Exit" three times to return to the Copy mode screen.
- 10. Make a full-color copy of the test chart.
- 11. Compare the results of the 1st copy (made in step 3 of "Make a Test Color Print") and the 2nd copy (made in step 10 above):

If the results of the 2nd copy are better than the results of the 1st copy, you are finished.

-or-

If the results of the 2nd copy are worse than the results of the 1st copy:

- Push the [User Tools] key
- Touch Maintenance> Auto Color Calibration> Previous Setting.
- 12. Remove the color chart from the exposure glass.
- 13. If the customer is not satisfied with the 1st copy or the 2nd copy, you must do the printer gamma adjustment (see section 3.20.5).

## Counter Display Setting

The default setting for the counter is "0" (development). Do the SP setting below to set the counter for copy/print (paper count).

- 1. Enter the SP mode.
- 2. Do SP5045 001 (Counter Display Setting).
- 3. Select the counter to use:
  - **0** Development counter (Default)
  - 1 Page counter

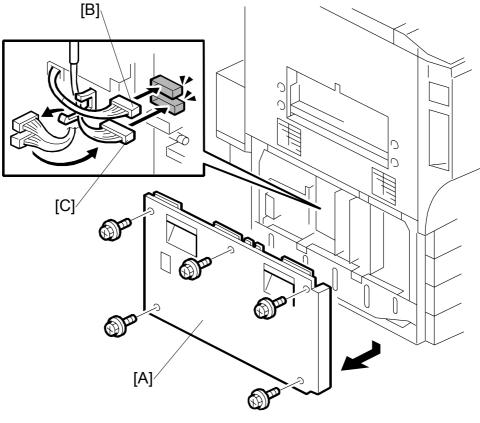
#### Important!

• THIS SETTING CAN BE DONE ONLY ONCE. AFTER IT IS SET TO "1", THE COUNTER SETTING CANNOT BE CHANGED. IF THE WRONG SETTING IS SELECTED BY MISTAKE, CONTACT YOUR TECHNICAL SUPERVISOR.

### Print an SMC Report

- 1. Go into the SP mode.
- 2. Do **SP5990 001** to print a full SMC report. Keep it in a safe location, with the factory setting sheet.

## Connect the Upper and Lower Tray Heaters



B132I009.WMF

The machine comes from the factory with the tray heaters disconnected.

- **NOTE:** Heater connection is optional, but the heaters must be connected if the location has high humidity. Speak with the customer before you connect the tray heaters.
- 1. Remove the left lower cover [A] ( $\hat{\not}$  x 5).
- 2. Attach the connectors HT5 [B] and HT6 [C] (🗟 x 1, 🗊 x 2)

# 1.4 COPY TRAY (B756)

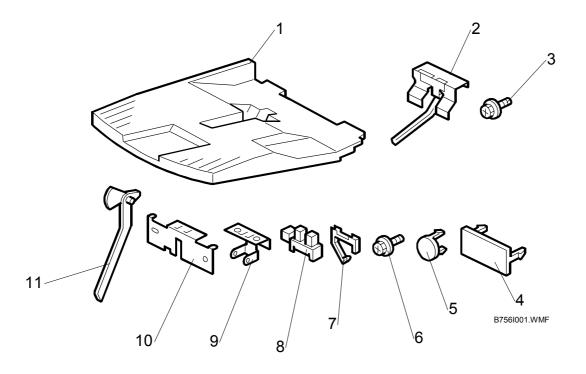
# **1.4.1 ACCESSORIES**

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

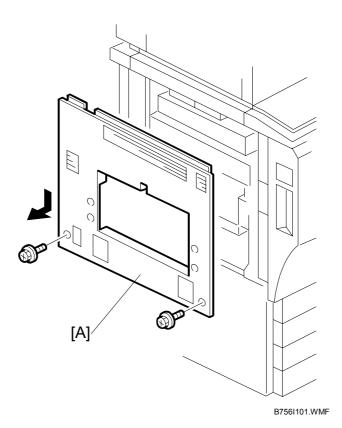
## Description

# Q'ty

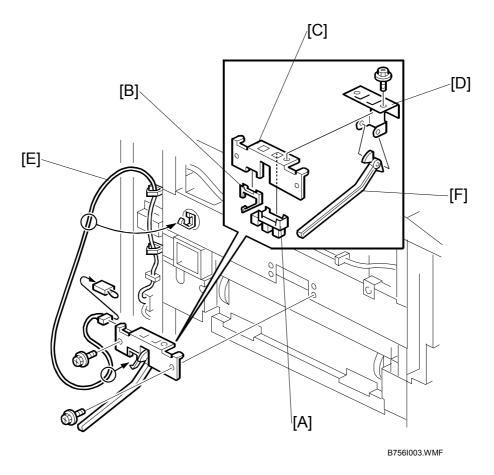
-	-
1. Copy Tray	1
2. Actuator Arm and Bracket (not used)	1
3. Tapping Screw (not used)	2
4. Large Cap	1
5. Small Cap	4
6. Tapping Screw (M4 x 8)	1
7. Harness Clamp	1
8. Paper Height Sensor	1
9. Actuator Arm Bracket	1
10. Sensor Bracket	1
11. Actuator Arm	1



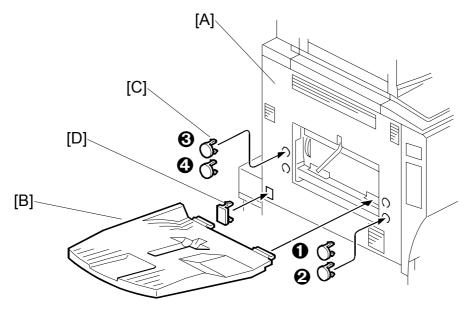
# 1.4.2 INSTALLATION



1. Remove the left upper cover [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).



- 2. Attach the paper height sensor [A] and harness clamp [B] to the sensor bracket [C].
- 3. Attach the sensor bracket and actuator arm bracket [D] to the copier ( $\hat{\beta}$  x3).
- 4. Attach the sensor harness [E] (  $x_1, x_2$ ).
- 5. Attach the actuator [F] to the arms of the actuator arm bracket.



B756I002.WMF

- 6. Reattach the left upper cover [A] ( $\hat{\beta}^{2} x^{2}$ ).
- 7. Attach the tray [B].
- 8. Attach the small caps [C] to the holes **①**, **②**, **③**, **④**.
- 9. Install the large cap [D] in the finisher power connection point.

Qty

# 1.5 A3/11" X 17" PAPER SIZE TRAY (B331)

The A3/11" x 17" Paper Size Tray is installed in tray 1 of the B132/B181/B200 copier.

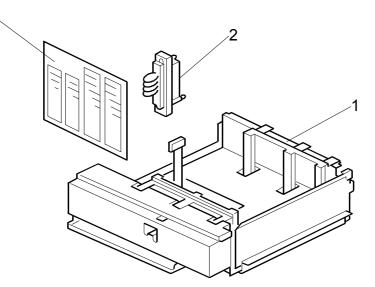
# **1.5.1 ACCESSORIES**

3

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

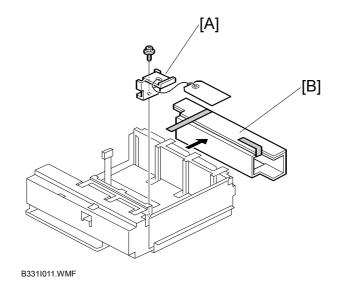
#### Description

1. A3/DLT Tray12. Short Connector13. Paper Size Decal1



B331I001.WMF

# **1.5.2 INSTALLATION**

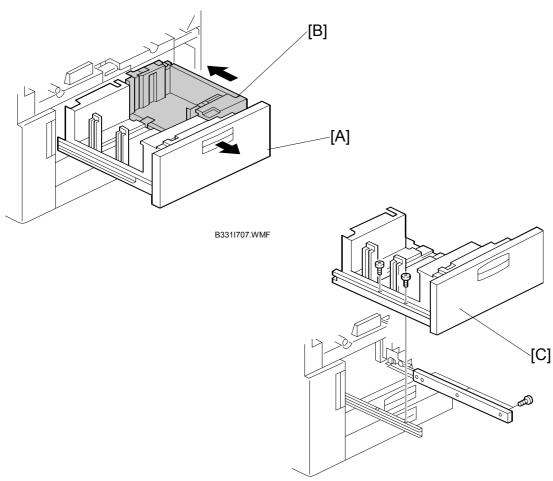


**WARNING!** 

Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

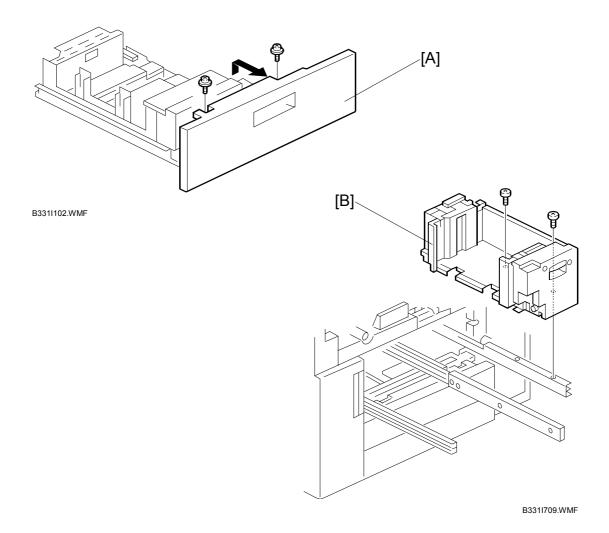
- 1. Remove the metal retainer [A] and packing material [B] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ).
- 2. Check the position of the front and rear fences, and make sure that they are set for DLT or A3.

Installation



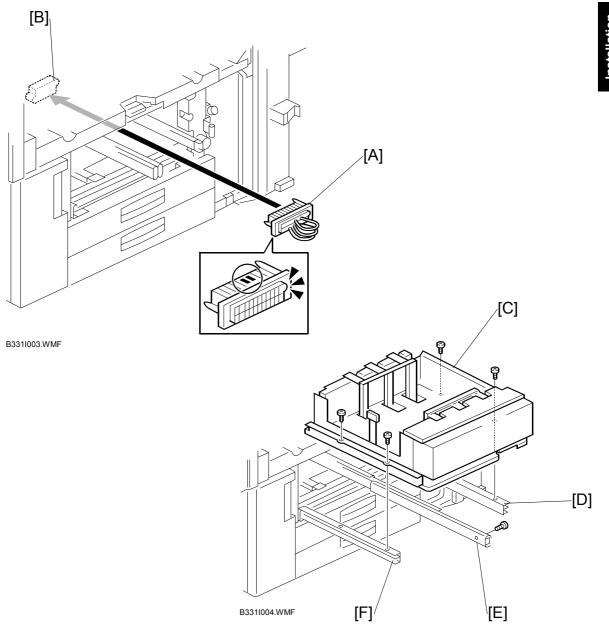
B331I708.WMF

- 3. Open the front doors.
- 4. Pull out the tandem feed tray [A] fully.
- 5. Push the right tandem tray [B] into the machine.
- 6. Remove the left tandem tray [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$  left,  $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 3$  right).

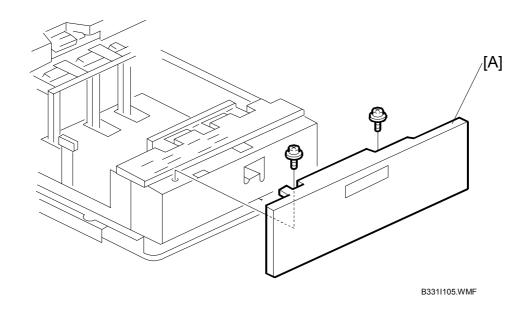


- 7. From the left tandem tray, remove the front cover [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- 8. Pull out the right tandem tray [B], then remove it. ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).

#### A3/11" X 17" PAPER SIZE TRAY (B331)



- 9. Put the short connector [A] into the socket in the machine [B]. **NOTE:** Hold the connector as shown in the illustration.
- 10. Install the A3/DLT tray [C] on the right rail [D], center rail [E], and left rail [F]. Use the screws that you removed in Steps 6 and 8.
  - **NOTE:** You must use the short, silver screws on the left and right rails. If you use one of the longer screws, it will stop the movement of the tray on the rails.



- 11. Install the front cover [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ) that was removed from the left tandem tray.
- 12. Use SP5959 001 to select the paper size for Tray 1 (A3 or DLT).
- 13. After you select the paper size, turn the machine off and on to change the indicator on the operation panel.

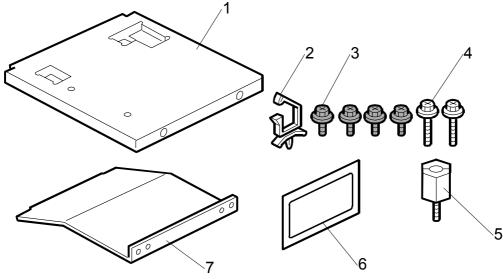
# 1.6 KEY CARD BRACKET (B498), KEY COUNTER BRACKET (B452)

# 1.6.1 KEY CARD BRACKET B498 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

## Description

	-
1. Key Card Table	1
2. Harness Clamp	1
3. Tapping Screws (M3 x 8)	4
4. Tapping Screws (M4 x 14)	2
5. Stud	1
6. Decal	1
7. Key Card Table Support	1



B498I001.WMF

Qty

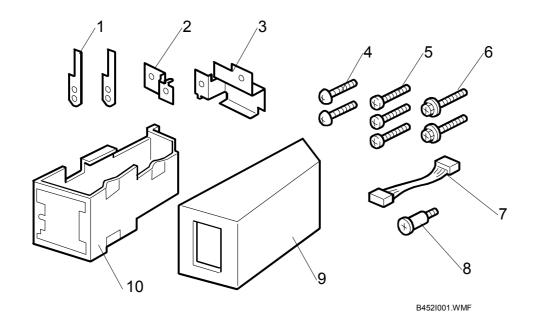
Qty

# **1.6.2 KEY COUNTER BRACKET B452 ACCESSORIES**

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

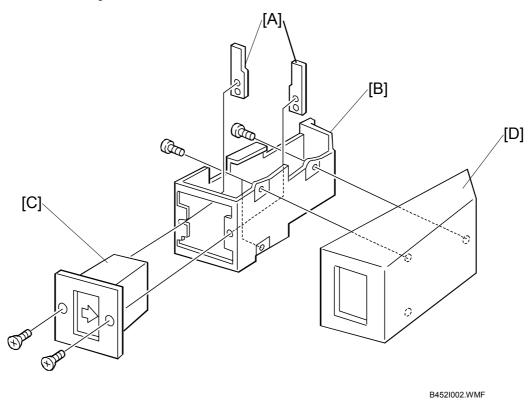
## Description

1. Plate nuts 2	
2. Rear Bracket 1	
3. Front Bracket 1	
4. Tapping Screws (M3 x 6) 2	
5. Tapping Screws (M4 x 8) 3	
6. Tapping Screws (M4 x 16) 2	
7. Harness 1	
8. Shoulder Screw1	
9. Key Counter Bracket Cover 1	
10. Key Counter Bracket	

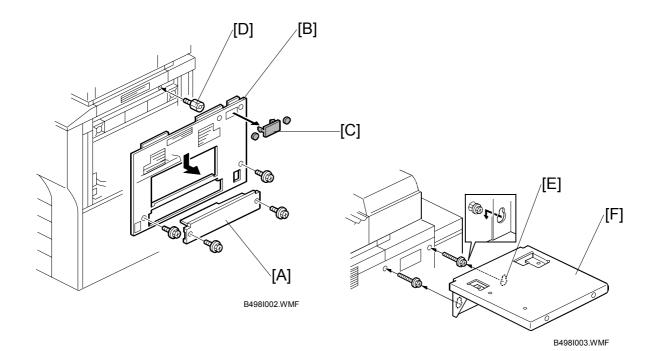


# **1.6.3 INSTALLATION**

#### Assemble the Key Counter Bracket



- 1. Hold the key counter plate nuts [A] on the inner surface of the key counter bracket [B].
- 2. Attach the key counter holder [C] to the key counter bracket ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x^2$ ).
- 3. Attach the key counter bracket cover [D] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).

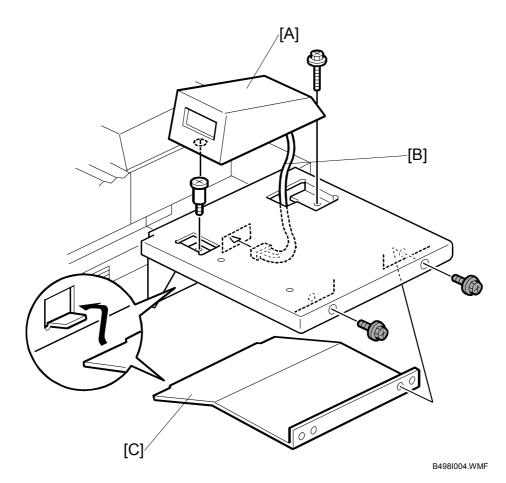


# Install the Key Card Bracket and Assembled Key Counter

# **WARNING!** Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.

- 1. Remove the cover [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 2. Remove the right upper cover [B] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 3. Remove the three caps [C].
- 4. Attach the stud [D].

#### KEY CARD BRACKET (B498), KEY COUNTER BRACKET (B452)



- 6. Attach the key counter bracket [A] ( $\hat{\not}$  x 2).
- 7. Attach the harness [B] to the key counter bracket and the machine (x = 1).
- 8. Attach the bracket support [C] to the side of the copier ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).

# 1.7 LCT (B473), LCT ADAPTER (B699)

# **1.7.1 ACCESSORIES**

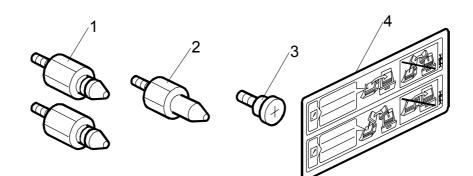
Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

## LCT (B473)

#### Description

- Qty

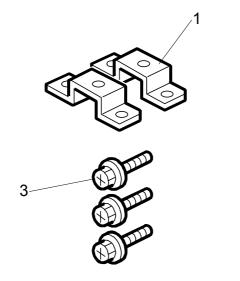
- 4. Paper Set Decal..... 1

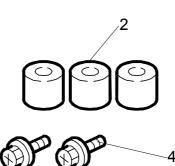


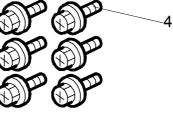
B473I101.WMF

# LCT Adapter (B699)

Description		
1.	Brackets	2
2.	Supports	3
3.	Machine Screws (M3x8)	3
4.	Machine Screws (M4x8)	6



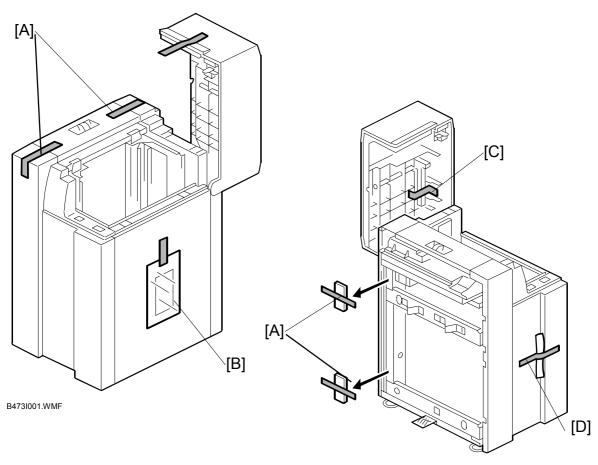




B699I101.WMF

# **1.7.2 INSTALLATION**

#### **Removing Tape and Accessories**



B473I002.WMF

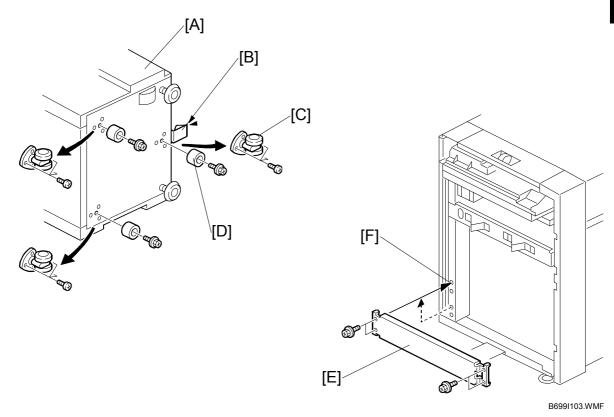
#### **AWARNING!**

Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.

- 1. Remove the filament tape [A].
- 2. Remove the decals [B].
- 3. Remove the tape under the lid [C].
- 4. Remove the docking pins [D] (attached to the rear with tape).
- 5. Remove the docking pins [E].

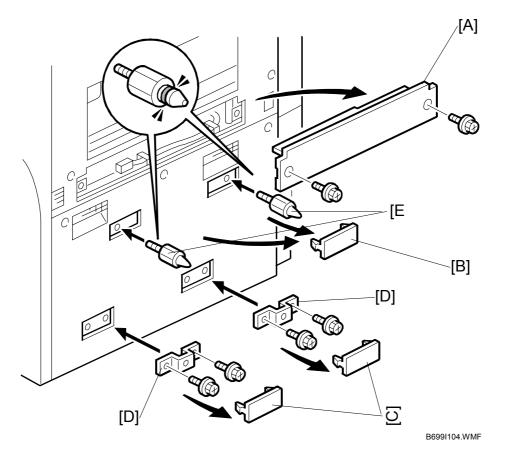
# LCT Adapter (B699) Installation

The LCT Adapter Kit B699 must be installed before you install the LCT.



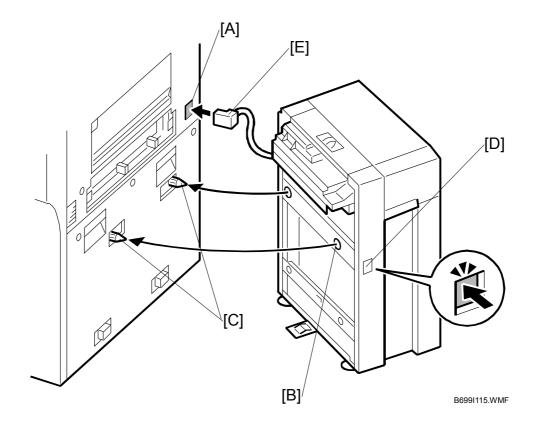
- B699i102.WMF
   Important! Do not put the LCT on its right side (the open side), or you will bend the ground plate [B].
- 2. Remove the 3 casters [C] ( $\hat{\not{e}}$  x 3 each).
- 3. Attach the 3 supports [D] ( $\mathscr{F} \times 1 \text{ each} M3x8$  thin screws).
- 4. Set the LCT in a vertical position.
- 5. Remove the stay [E] ( $\hat{\beta}^2 \times 4$ ).
- 6. Attach the stay at [F] ( $\hat{\beta}^2 \times 4$ ).

#### LCT Installation



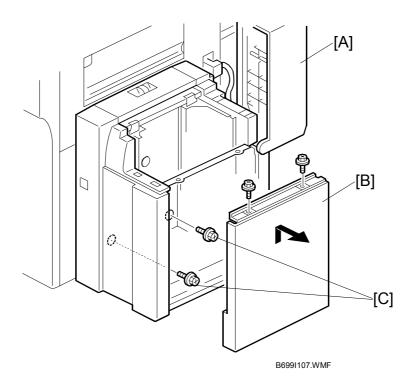
- 1. Remove the LCT installation cover [A] from the right side of the machine.  $(\hat{\beta} \times 2)$ .
- 2. Remove the upper covers [B].
- 3. Remove the lower covers [C].
- 4. Attach the brackets [D] that are supplied with the LCT Adapter (B699) ( $\hat{\beta}$  x 2 each M4 x 8).
- Attach the two grooved docking pins [E].
   NOTE: The docking pin without a groove is not necessary for this installation.

Installation



- 6. Remove the connector cover [A].
- 7. Align the holes on the side of the LCT [B] with the docking pins [C] on the side of the machine.
- Slowly push the LCT onto the pins.
   NOTE: The release button [D] is used to unlock the LCT.
- 9. Connect the plug [E] of the LCT power connector to the side of the machine.

1-57



- 10. Open the upper cover [A].
- 11. Remove the cover [B] ( $\hat{\beta} x 2$ ).
- 12. Attach screws [C] to the brackets on the side of the machine.
- 13. Attach the cover [B] with the screw that you removed in Step 11.
- 14. Turn the machine on.
- 15. Go into the SP mode.
- 16. Do SP5959 005.
  - **NOTE:** The side fences of the NA model are set for 81/2 x 11 paper and the EU model for A4 paper. You must select the paper size with this SP.
- 17. Input "0" for A4 LEF or "4" for 81/2" x 11" LEF.
- 18. Turn the machine off and on to enable the setting.

# 1.8 81/2" X 14"/B4 PAPER SIZE TRAY (B474)

The 81/2" x 14"/B4 (B474) is installed in the LCT (B473).

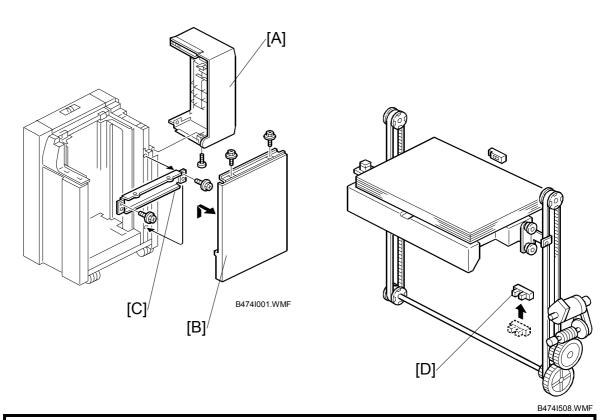
## 1.8.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

# 

## **1.8.2 INSTALLATION**

#### LCT Connected to the Machine



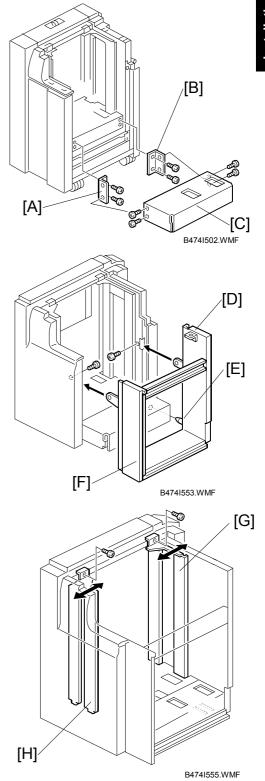
# **WARNING!** Turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you start this procedure.

- 1. If the LCT is connected to the copier:
  - Open the cover and remove the paper.
  - Close the cover.
  - Turn the main power switch off.
  - Disconnect the LCT from the copier.
- 2. Remove the LCT cover [A] ( $\beta^2 \times 1$ ).
- 3. Remove the right cover [B] ( $\hat{\beta}^2 \times 2$ ).
- 4. Remove the right stay [C] and attach it below ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- 5. Change the position of the lower limit sensor [D] ( $\hat{P} \times 1$ ).
- 6. Attach the harness clamp (not shown) to the rear of the plate. Use this clamp to hold the sensor connector wire.

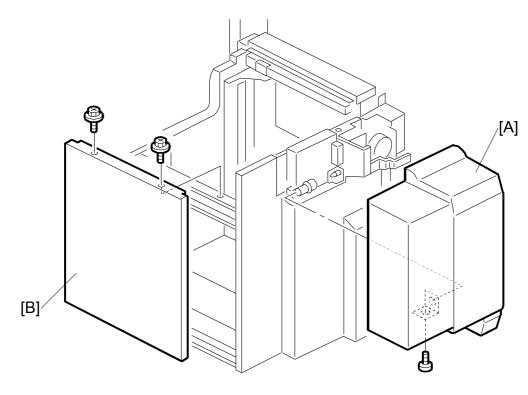
#### 81/2" X 14"/B4 PAPER SIZE TRAY (B474)

- 31 March 2005
- 7. Attach the front bracket [A] with the beveled corner down (⅔ x 2).
  NOTE: If the brackets are not easy to install, lift the bottom plate with your hand.
- Attach the rear bracket [B] with the beveled corner down (<sup>A</sup> x 2).
- 9. Attach the bottom plate extension [C] with the hex screws ( $\hat{\beta}^{3} \times 4$ ).
- 10. Remove the casters from the bottom of the B4/LG frame [D]
- 11. Align the positioning pin [E].
- 12. Attach the B4/LG frame [F] with the hex screws (ℰ x 2).

13. Move the front side fence [G] and rear side fence [H] to the B4 or 81/2" position and attach it ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ).



# Installation



B474I506.WMF

- 14. Attach the cover [A] (81/2" x 14"/B4) ( 🖗 x 1).
- 15. Attach the right cover [B] ( $\hat{\beta}$  x 2).
- 16. Connect the LCT to the machine.
- 17. Turn the machine on.
- 18. Go into the SP mode.
- 19. Do **SP5959 005**.
- 20. Input "5" for B4 SEF or "6" for 81/2" x 14" SEF.

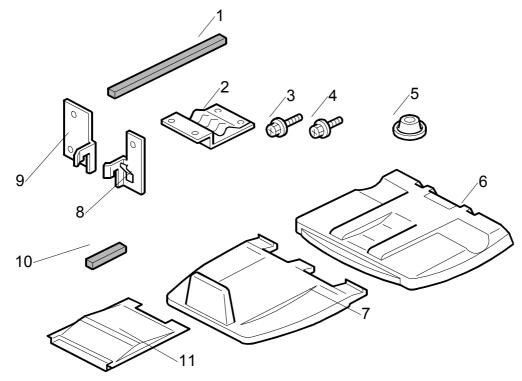
# 1.9 2000/3000 SHEET FINISHERS (B700/B701)

# **1.9.1 ACCESSORIES**

## Description

# Q'ty

1.	Cushion (with double-sided tape)	1
2.	Ground (earth) plate	1
3.	Tapping screws - M4 x16	4
4.	Tapping screws - M4 x 8	2
5.	Leveling Shoes	3
6.	Upper output tray	1
7.	Lower output tray (B700 Only)	1
8.	Front joint bracket	1
9.	Rear joint bracket	1
10.	Gasket Seal	1
11.	Support Plate	1



B700I201.WMF

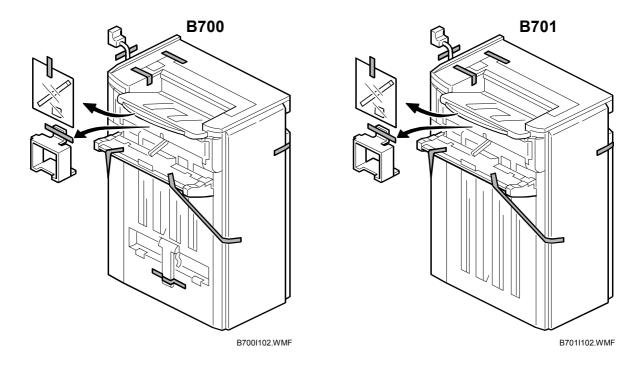
# 1.9.2 INSTALLATION

This section shows the installation instructions for two finishers:

- **B700 Booklet Finisher:** This can do punching, shifting, stapling, and saddlestitching with staples. This booklet finisher can be used with the B132, B181, or B200.
- **B701 Finisher**, capable of punching, shifting, and stapling but with no saddlestitching unit. This finisher can be used with the B132, B181, or B200.

NOTE: Differences in the installation procedures are shown as "B700" or "B701".

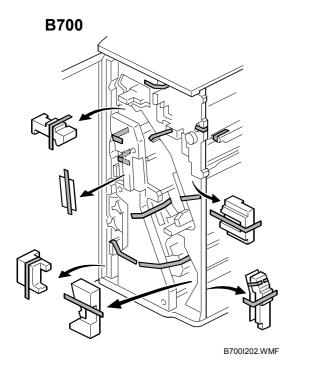
#### **Removing Tapes and Packing Materials**

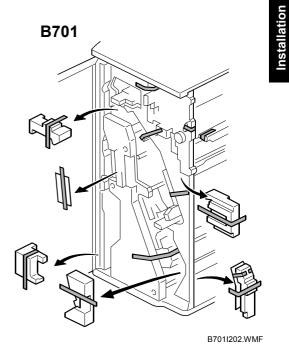


# **WARNING!** Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do these procedures.

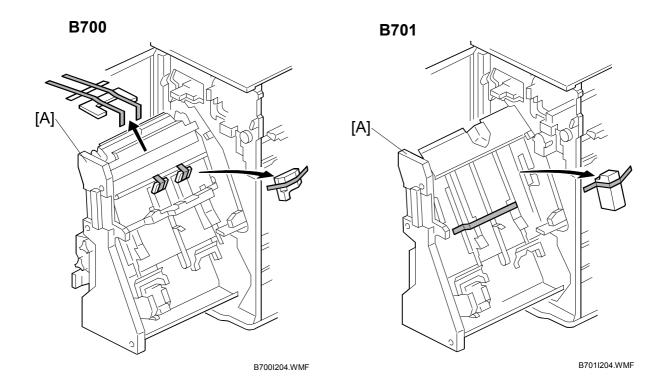
- 1. Remove the machine from its box, and remove all the wrapping.
- 2. Remove all filament tape and packing material from the finisher.

#### 2000/3000 SHEET FINISHERS (B700/B701)



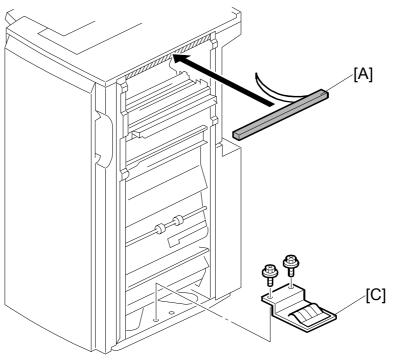


- 3. Open the front door.
- 4. Remove all tapes and packing materials inside the finisher.



- 5. Pull the jogger unit [A] out of the finisher.
- 6. Remove the tapes and retainers.

#### Docking the Finisher to the Copier



B700I106.WMF

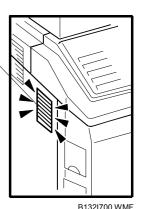
[B]

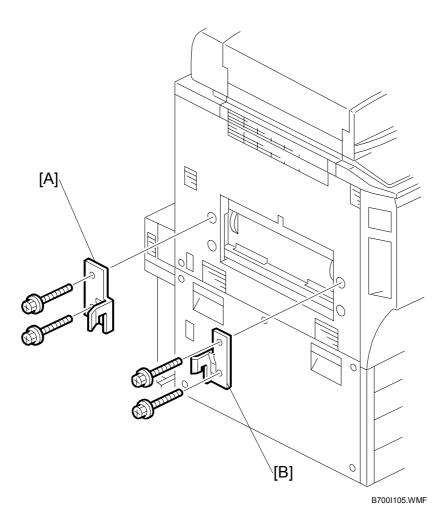
- 1. If you will not install the Cover Interposer B704:
  - Remove the strip from the sponge cushion [A] and attach it to the finisher, then go to Step 2.

**Important!** Do not put the sponge in a position that will prevent air flow through the air duct [B] on the copier after the finisher is connected to the copier.

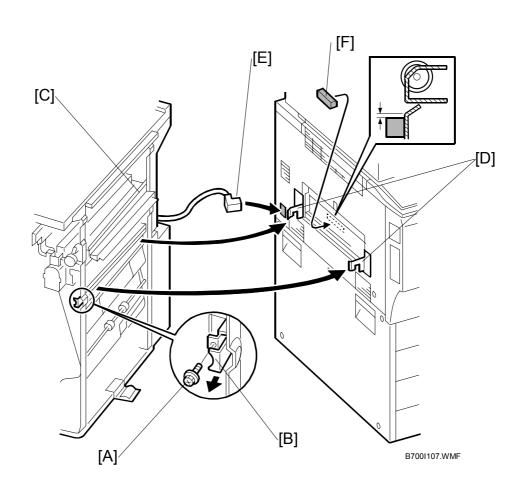
If you will install the Cover Interposer B704:

- Do not attach the sponge cushion to the finisher. It must be attached to the cover interposer.
- Do not attach the grounding plate [C] to the finisher. It must be attached to the cover interposer.
- Install the interposer on the finisher before you dock the finisher to the copier.
   (<1.15: do the complete procedure.) Then come back to the procedure for the B700/B701 finisher, and continue from 'Attaching the Trays'.</li>



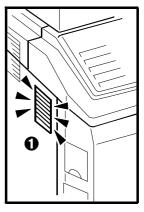


- 2. Attach the rear bracket [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ , M4 x 14).
- 3. Attach the front bracket [B] ( $\beta$  x 2, M4 x 14).



- 4. Remove the screw [A] to release the lock lever [B] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ).
- 5. Slowly push the finisher against the side of the machine until the brackets [D] go into their slots. If you do this too quickly, you will bend and cause damage to the paper-entrance guide plates [C].
- 6. Attach and tighten the screw removed in Step 5.
- 7. Connect finisher connector [E] to the main frame.
- 8. Attach the gasket seal [F] as shown.

**Important!** Check the duct **①** on the left side of the machine. Make sure that the sponge does not block this duct.



B132I736.WMF

# 

# Attaching the Trays

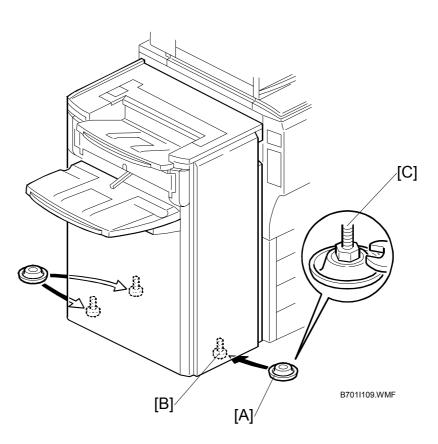
#### **B700**

- Attach the upper output tray [A] ( x 1, M3 x 6).
   NOTE: Make sure that the metal plate [B] is on the top of the tray.
- 2. Attach the lower output tray [C].

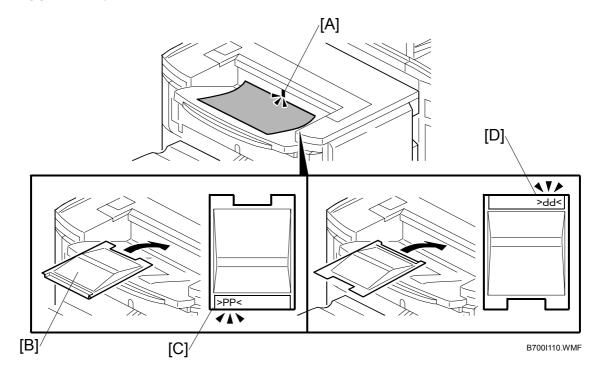
# B701

1. Attach the output tray [A]. **NOTE:** Make sure that the metal plate [B] is on the top of the tray.

# Leveling the Finisher



- 1. Put the leveling shoes [A] (x 3) below the feet [B].
- 2. Use a wrench to adjust the height of the screws [C] to make the machine level.



#### Support Tray

Take the following steps if the "Exit Tray Full" message displays even though the exit tray is not full. (The message is caused by the trailing edges of excessively curled paper activating the tray full sensor [A] before the tray is actually full.)

- 1. Remove the paper form the paper feed tray, turn it upside down, then print.
- 2. If Step 1 does not solve the problem, place the support tray [B] on the exit tray with the **>PP**< mark positioned as shown at [C].
- 3. If Step 2 does not solve the problem, place the support tray on the exit tray with the **>PP**< mark positioned as shown at [D].

## Selecting the Staple Supply Name

Go into the SP mode and input this information.

1		
5841	Supply Name Setting	These names show when the user prints the Inquiry List Push the Counter key, then push 'Print Inquiry List'. Push the Inquiry button on the initial User Tools screen.
013	Staple Std3	Input the name of the staples that are used for standard stapling (not booklet stapling). This setting should be done for the B700 and B701.
022	Staple Bind2	Input the name of the staples that are used for booklet stapling (saddle-stitching). This setting is necessary only for the B700.

## Enabling Booklet Binding (B700 Only)

To enable booklet binding (saddle-stitching) for the B700, you must select the center stapling position.

- 1. Push the User Tools key.
- 2. Touch "Copier/Document Server Features".
- 3. Touch the "Input/Output" tab.
- 4. Touch a "Stapling Position" button and touch the center (saddle-stitch) stapling symbol.
- 5. Go out from the User Tools mode. Set the number of copies, touch the center stapling symbol on the operation panel, then start the print job.

**At** 

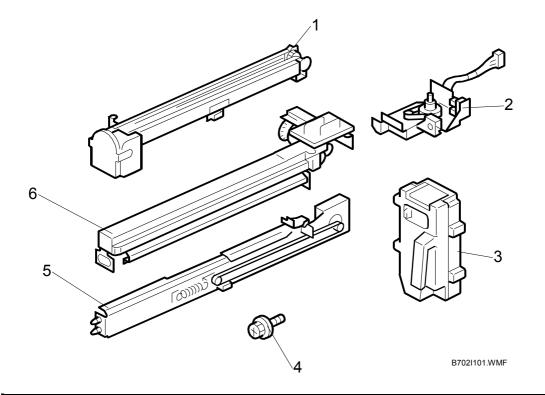
# 1.10 PUNCH UNIT (B702)

The Punch Unit B702 is installed in the 2000/3000 Sheet Finisher B700/B701. **1.10.1 ACCESSORIES** 

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

## Description

escription	QLY
1. Punchout Waste Unit	1
2. Slide Drive Unit	1
3. Punch Waste Hopper	1
4. Screws (M3 x 6)	5
5. Side-to-Side Detection Unit	1
6. Punching Unit	1

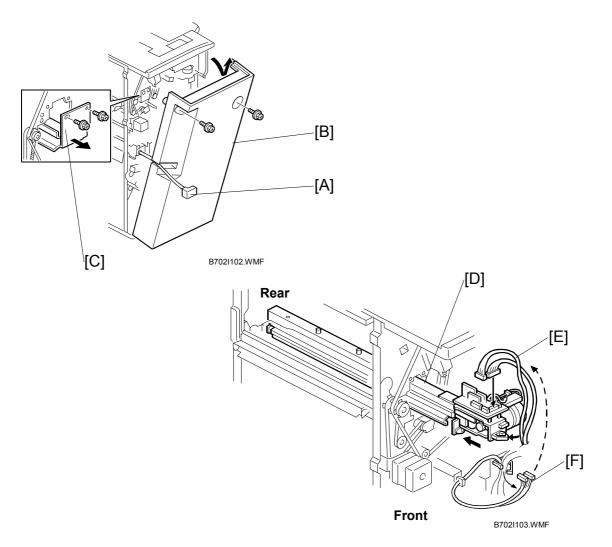


## **WARNING**!

Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.

nstallation

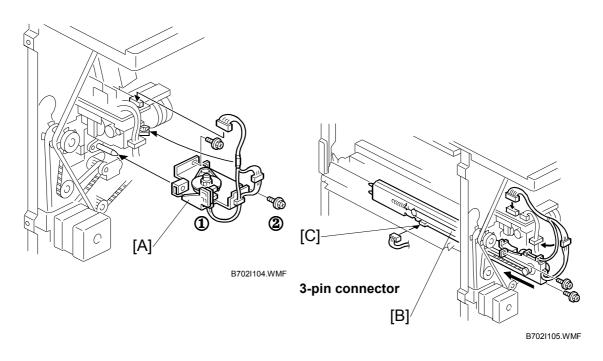
# 1.10.2 INSTALLATION



- 1. If the finisher is connected to the copier, disconnect the power connector [A] and move the finisher away from the copier.
- Remove the rear cover [B] ( x 2) and open the front door.
   NOTE: At the bottom of the rear cover, make sure to disconnect the tabs that attach the cover to the frame.
- 3. Remove the guide plate [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).

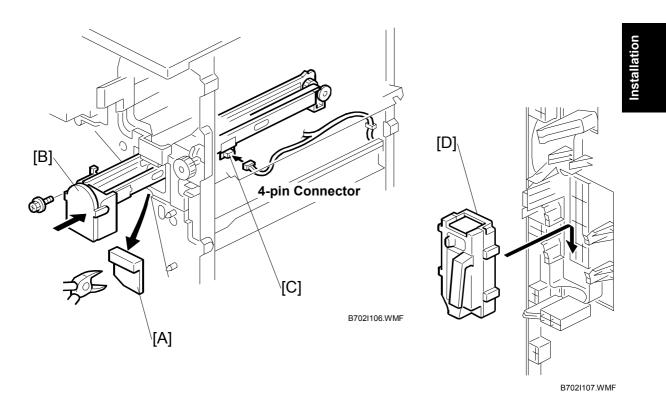
틷

- 4. Move the punch unit [D] along its rails into the finisher. Make sure that the pin engages correctly at the front and rear.
- 5. Connect and attach the punch unit [E] ( $\mathbb{P}$  x 2,  $\mathbb{P}$  x 1).
  - The cables [F] are coiled and attached to the PCB.
  - Attach connectors to CN601 and CN602.



- 7. Make sure that the punch unit moves freely and is not blocked by the screws.
- 8. Put the side-to-side detection unit [B] in the machine. Make sure that the two pins are engaged correctly at the front.
- 9. Make sure that the side-to-side detection unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with their grooves.
- 11. Pull the short connector out of the connector [C] then connect the cable ( x 1).

**NOTE:** This is the 3-pin connector.



- 12. At the front, use a pair of wire cutters to remove the part [A] of the cover.
- 13. Install the punch-waste transport unit [B] in the finisher.NOTE: Make sure that the punch-waste transport unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with the grooves.
- 14. Remove the short connector from the connector [C]. **NOTE:** This is the 4-pin connector.
- 15. Connect the cable and attach the punch-waste transport unit ( x = 1, x =
- 16. Set the hopper [D] in its holder.

# 1.11 MAIL BOX (B762)

The Mail Box B762 is installed on the 2000/3000 Sheet Finisher B700/B701.

# 1.11.1 ACCESSORIES

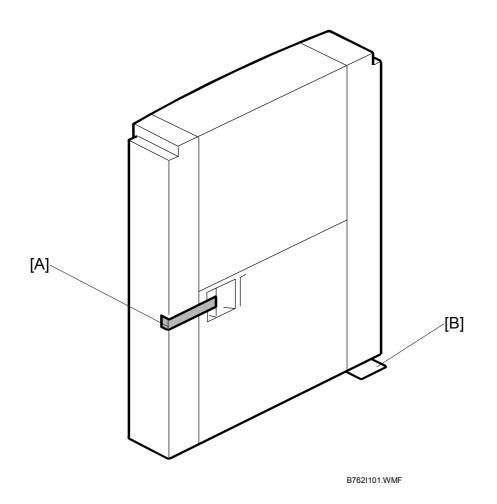
Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

#### Description

#### Qty

	•	-
1.	Trays	9
2.	Guide plate	1
3.	Decals (bin display)	1
4.	Tapping screws - M3x8	6

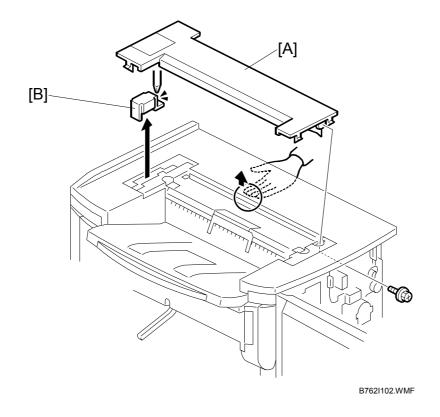
# 1.11.2 INSTALLATION



#### **WARNING**!

Turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you start this procedure.

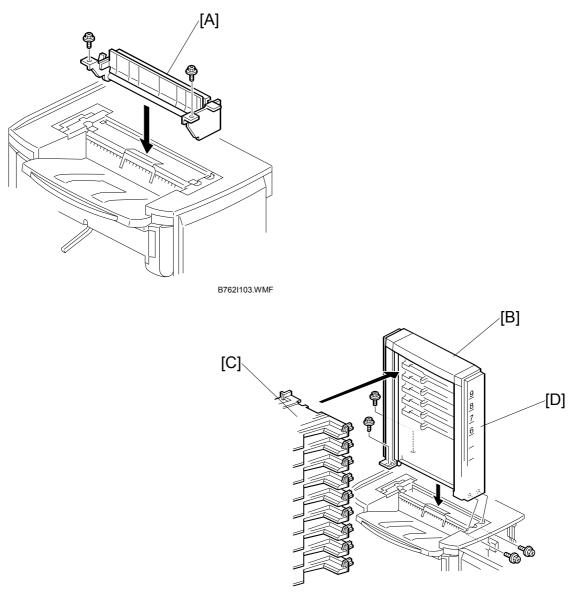
Remove the filament tape [A].
 Important: Move the mailbox carefully. It is easy to cause damage to the corner leaf plate [B].



- If the Cover Interposer Tray B704 is installed on the B700/B701, remove it. NOTE: The cover interposer tray and mailbox cannot be installed on the finisher at the same time.
- 3. Remove the top cover [A] of the finisher ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x1$ ).
- 4. Remove the bracket [B] ( $\mathscr{F} x1$ ).

#### MAIL BOX (B762)

Installation



B762I104.WMF

- 5. Attach the guide plate [A] to the top of the finisher ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x2, M3x8).
- 6. Attach the mailbox [B] to the top of the finisher ( $\beta$  x4, M3x8).
- 7. Attach the 9 trays [C] to the mailbox.
- 8. Give the decals [D] to the customer. The customer will write on these and attach them at the correct location.

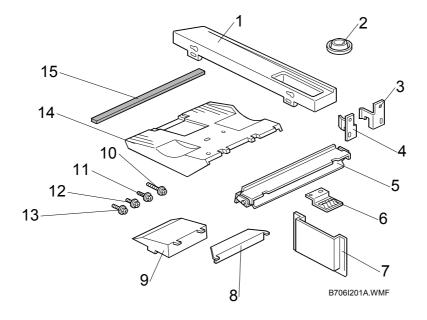
# 1.12 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B706), FINISHER ADAPTER (B698)

#### 1.12.1 ACCESSORIES

#### 3000-Sheet Finisher B706 Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

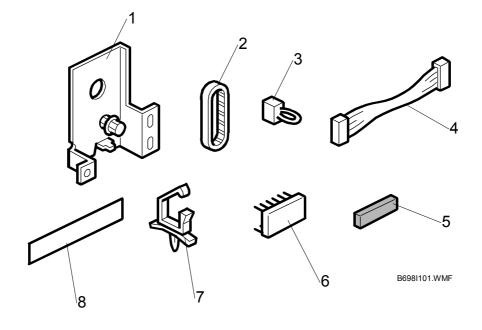
#### Description Q'ty 1. Table Extension ...... 1 4. Front Joint Bracket...... 1 6. Ground (Earth) Plate...... 1 7. Tray Holder (Not used for B132/B181/B200) ...... 1 8. Auxiliary Tray (Proof Tray) (Not used for B132/B181/B200).. 1 9. Auxiliary Tray (Shift Tray) (Not used for B132/B181/B200) ... 1 10. Phillips Screws w/washer - M4 x 14...... 4 11. Tapping Screws - M4 x 8 ...... 2 12. Tapping Screws - M3 x 6 ..... 4 13. Tapping Screws - M3 x 8 ..... 4 14. Shift Tray ...... 1 15. Sponge Cushion ..... 1



#### Finisher Adapter Kit B698 Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

# DescriptionQty1.Upper Transport Motor Bracket12.Timing Belt13.Short Connector14.Harness15.Gasket Seal16.EPROM17.Harness Clamps28.Serial Number Seal1

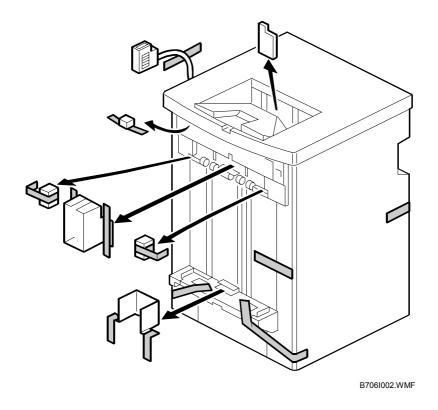


# 1.12.2 INSTALLATION

#### **AWARNING!**

Turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.

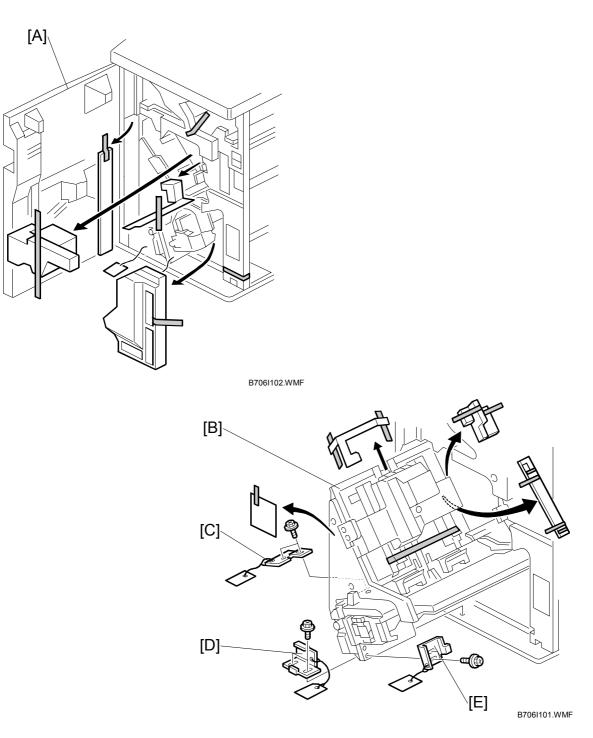
#### Shipping tape and retainers



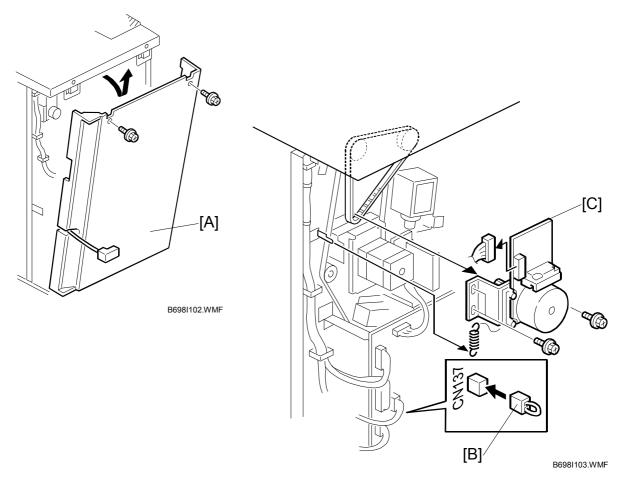
1. Remove the finisher from its box. Remove all tapes and packing materials.

#### 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B706), FINISHER ADAPTER (B698)

Installation

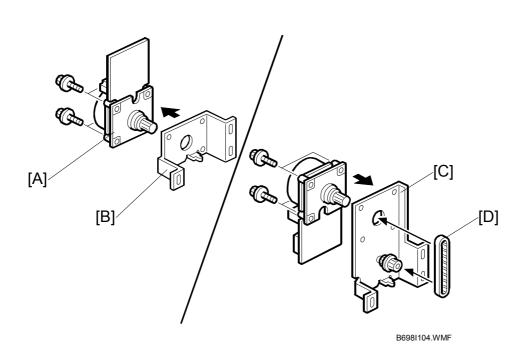


- 2. Open the front door [A] and remove tape and packing materials.
  - 3. Pull the jogger unit [B] out of the finisher.

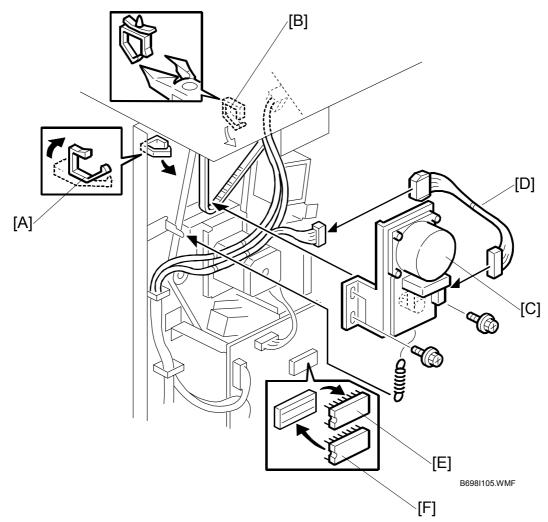


#### Finisher Adapter Kit B698 Installation

- 1. Remove the finisher rear cover [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 2. Connect the short connector [B] to CN137 on the finisher main board.
- 3. Remove the upper transport motor mount [C] ( $x_1$ ,  $x_3$ , spring x1).

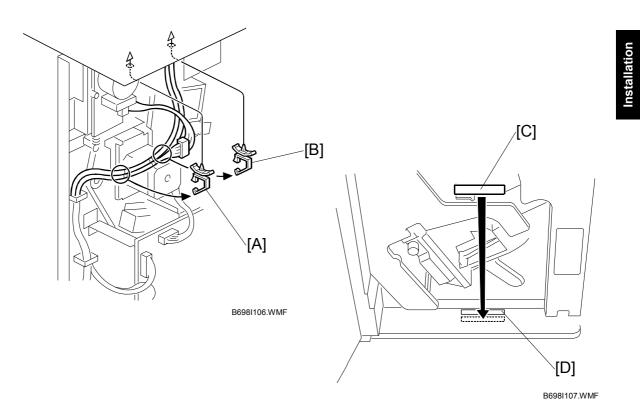


- 4. Remove the transport motor [A] from the original bracket [B] ( $\hat{\beta}$  x4).
- 5. Set the motor on the new bracket [C] supplied with the Finisher Adapter Kit B698.
- 6. Attach the timing belt [D].
- 7. Use the same screws to attach the transport motor to the new bracket ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x4$ ).



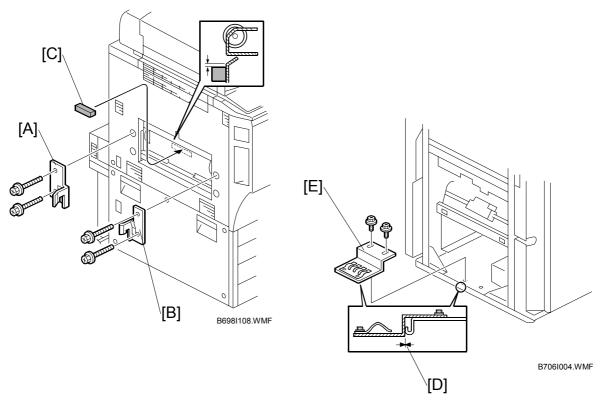
- 8. Remove the harness clamp [A].
- 9. Use wire cutters or radio pliers to remove harness clamp [B].
- - The harness [D] is supplied with the Finisher Adapter B698.
  - Attach the screws but do not tighten. Pull the spring slightly to apply tension, then tighten the screws.
- 11. Remove EPROM [E] and replace it with EPROM [F] that is supplied with the Finisher Adapter B698.

#### 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B706), FINISHER ADAPTER (B698)



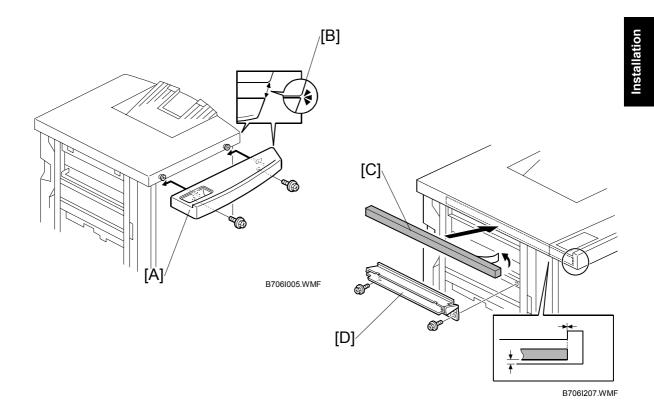
**Important**: Be sure to put the harness clamps in the holes as shown.

- 13. Install the harnesses through the clamps and close the clamps.
- 14. Make sure that the harnesses do not touch the motor.
- 15. Attach the finisher rear cover.
- 16. Open the front door. Attach the serial number decal [C] below the finisherserial-number [D] decal that is attached to the front, bottom support of the finisher frame.



#### Finisher Installation

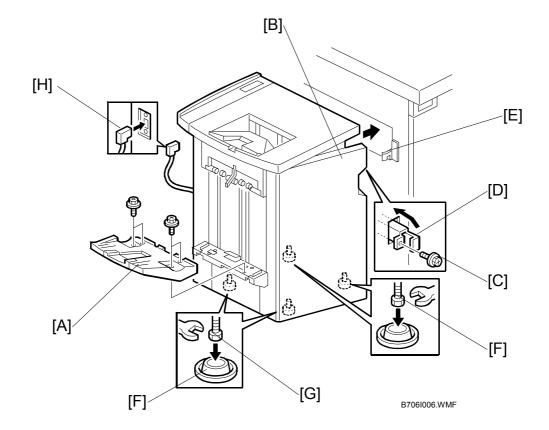
- 1. Attach the rear joint bracket [A] ( $\beta$  x 2).
- 2. Attach the front joint bracket [B] ( $\hat{\not}$  x 2).
- 3. Remove the connector cover [C].
- Attach the grounding plate [E] ( x 2) (M3 x 6).
   Important: Set the grounding plate so there is no gap [E] between the grounding plate and the bottom frame of the finisher.



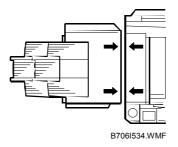
- 5. Install the table extension [A] ( $\hat{\beta}^{2} \times 2$ ) (M4 x 8).
  - 6. Make sure that the edge of the table extension is aligned with the edge of the finisher [B].
- 7. If you will not install the Cover Interposer B704:
  - Remove the strip from the sponge cushion [C], and attach it to the finisher.
  - Attach the entrance guide plate [D] (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>2</sub> x 2) (M3 x 6).

If you are going to install the Cover Interposer B704:

- Do not attach the sponge cushion.
- Do not attach the entrance guide plate [D] to the finisher.
- Install the interposer before you dock the finisher to the copier. Then come back to the procedure for the B706 finisher, and continue from 'Selecting the Staple Supply Name'.



- 8. Attach the tray [A] (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>7</sub> x 4) (M3 x 8).
- 9. Open the front door [B] of the finisher.
- 10. Remove the screw [C] from the lock lever [D], then pull out the locking lever.
- 11. Align the finisher on the joint brackets [E] and push the finisher against the side of the copier.
- 12. Make sure that the top edges of the finisher and the copier are parallel from front to rear as shown below:



- 13. Set the leveling shoes [F] (x4) below the feet [G].
- 14. Use a wrench to adjust the height of the feet [G] to make the machine level.
- 15. Push in the lock lever [D], attach it ( $\mathscr{F} \times 1$ ), then close the front door.
- 16. Connect the finisher cable [H] to the copier.

#### 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B706), FINISHER ADAPTER (B698)

# Selecting the Staple Supply Name

Go into the SP mode and input this information

5841	Supply Name Setting	These names show when the user prints the Inquiry List. To print this list push User Tools> [Inquiry]> [Print Inquiry List]> [Start].
012	Staple Std	Input the name of the staples that are used for corner stapling. This setting should be done for the B706 with B698.

Installation

# 1.13 PUNCH UNIT B531/A821

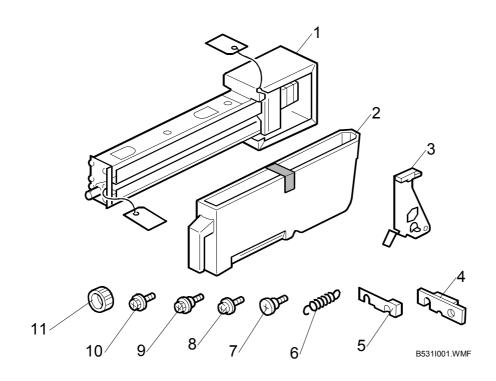
The Punch Unit B531/A821 is installed in the 3000-Sheet Finisher B706.

#### 1.13.1 ACCESSORIES

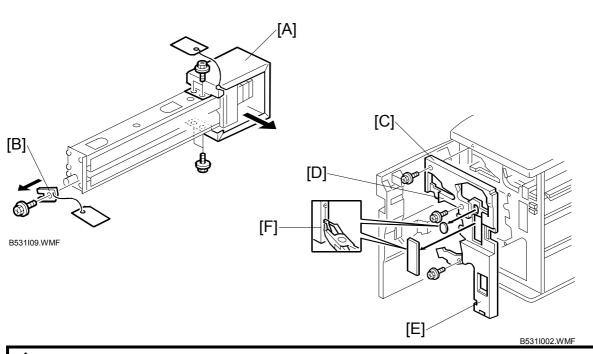
Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

#### Description

#### Qty 1. Punch unit...... 1 2. Punch Waste Hopper..... 1 3. Sensor Arm and Sensor ..... 1 4. Spacer (2 mm)..... 1 5. Spacer (1 mm)..... 2 6. Spring ..... 1 7. Step Screw (large) (M4 x 11)..... 1 8. Tapping Screw (M4 x 10)..... 2 9. Step Screw (small) (M3 x 4)..... 1 10. Machine Screw, Washer (M4 x 6)..... 1 11. Knob ...... 1

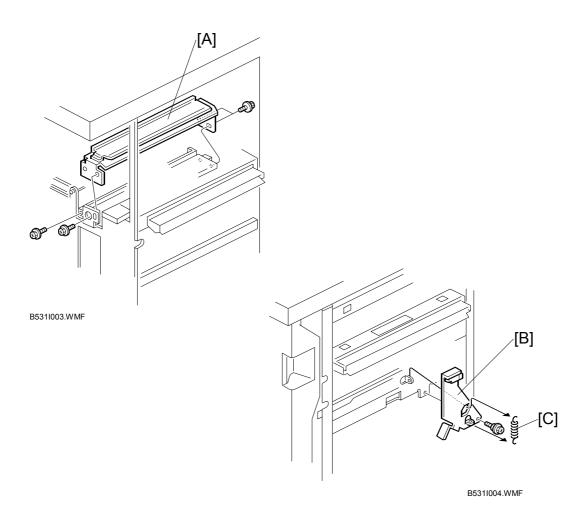


# 1.13.2 INSTALLATION

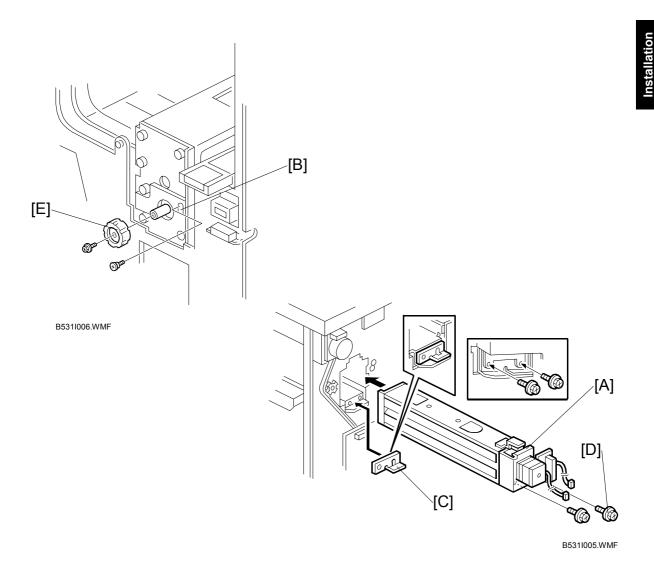


# **WARNING!** Turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you start this procedure.

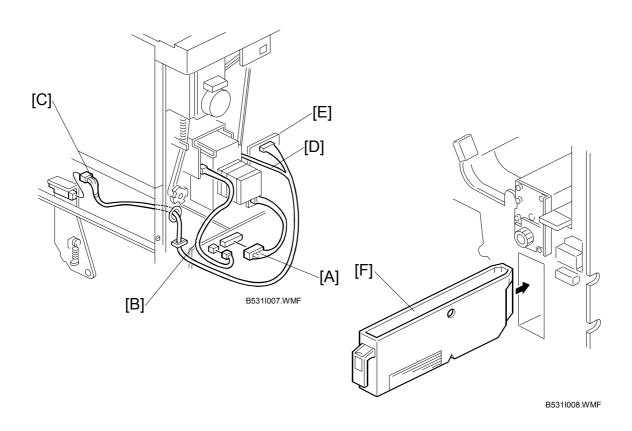
- 1. If the finisher is connected to the machine, disconnect it.
- 2. Open the front door and remove the rear cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- 3. Remove the punch unit from its packing materials. Remove the motor protector plate [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 4$ ) and the cam lock plate [B] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ).
- 4. Remove the inner cover [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 3$ ).
- 5. Behind the inner cover at [D] and [E], push the lock tabs to the right to release the inner cover from the frame.
- 6. Remove the plastic sections [F] from the cover.



- 7. Remove the paper guide [A] ( $\mathscr{F} \times 4$ ).
- 8. Install the sensor arm [B] ( $\hat{\beta}$  x 1, small step screw (M3 x 4). **NOTE:** Make sure that the sensor arm turns freely on the step screw.
- 9. Attach the spring [C].



- 10. At the rear of the rear of the finisher, put the punch unit [A] in the finisher.
- 11. At the front, attach the punch unit [B] with the large step screw ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ , M4 x 10).
- 12. At the rear, attach the 2 mm spacer [C] and attach the screws [D] to the punch unit (ℱ x 2, M4 x 10).
  - **NOTE:** At the hole immediately above the lock lever, use one of the screws from the paper guide removed above to attach the remaining two spacers to the frame. These two spacers are used to adjust the horizontal position of the punch holes.
- 13. At the front, attach the punch unit knob [E] ( $\hat{\not}$  x 1).



- 14. Connect the PCB harness connector [A] to CN129 of the finisher PCB and to CN600 of the punch unit PCB.
- 15. Connect the HP Sensor 2 harness connector [B] to CN130 of the finisher PCB and to HP Sensor 2.
- 16. Connect the end of the hopper-full-sensor cable that has one connector [C] to the hopper full sensor on the arm ( I x 1, clamp x 1). Then connect the other two connectors to HP Sensor 1 [D] and CN620 [E] of the punch PCB.
  NOTE: No special DIP switch settings are necessary for this punch unit. The punch unit sends an identification signal to the machine. Then the machine knows the type of punch unit that is installed.
- 17. Put the hopper [F] in the finisher.
- 18. Attach the inner cover and rear cover.
- 19. Close the front door and connect the finisher to the machine.

Qty

# 1.14 OUTPUT JOGGER UNIT (B703/B513)

The Output Jogger Unit B703 is installed in the 2000/3000 Sheet Finisher B700/B701.

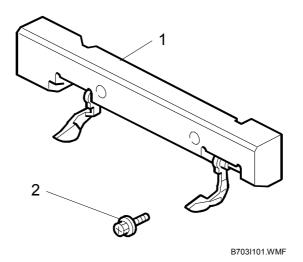
The Output Jogger Unit B513 is installed in the 3000-Sheet Finisher B706.

# 1.14.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

#### Description

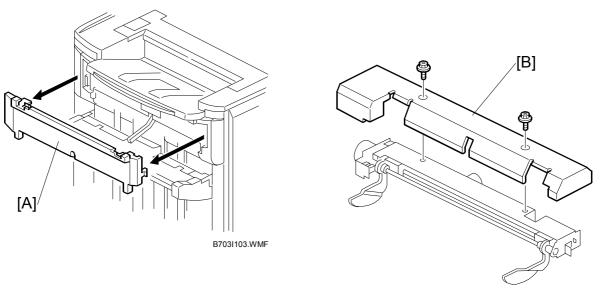
1.	Jogger Unit	1
2.	Tapping Screws - M3 x 6	2



#### **WARNING!**

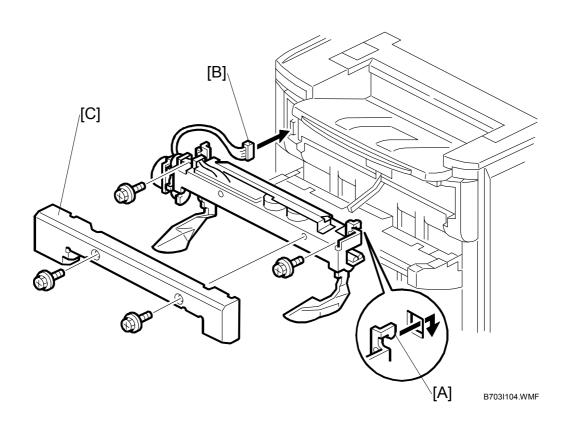
Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.

# 1.14.2 INSTALLATION



B703I102.WMF

- 1. Turn the main machine switch off.
- 2. Disconnect the finisher from the main frame.
- 3. Use the flat head of a screwdriver to remove the left upper cover [A].
- 4. Remove the cover plate [B] ( $\hat{\beta}$  x 2). Keep the screws.



- 5. While you hold the jogger unit with the connector on the left, put the hooks of the frame of the jogger unit [A] into the holes in the left and right side of the finisher frame.
- 6. Fasten connector [B] to the socket (I > x 1).
- 7. Attach the jogger unit to the finisher ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- 8. Reattach the jogger unit cover [C] to the jogger unit ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).

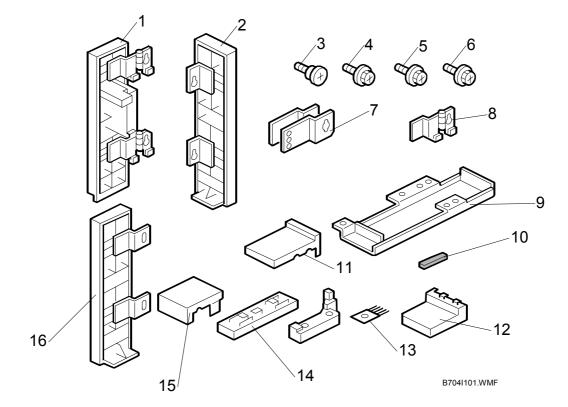
# 1.15 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY (B704)

### 1.15.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

#### Description

Q'ty 1. Front door extension (top) ..... 1 2. Rear cover extension (bottom) ...... 1 5. Tapping screws – M3 x 8..... 2 6. Tapping screws – M3 x 6..... 5 7. Adjuster plates (B706 Only)..... 2 8. Hinge Bracket (B706 Only)..... 1 9. Plate Extension (bottom) ..... 1 10. Gasket Seals ..... 2 11. Right Rear Cover Plate (B706 only) ..... 1 12. Anti-Static Brush ..... 1 13. Spacer (B706 only)..... 1 14. Spacer\*<sup>1</sup> (B468/B469 only)..... 1 15. Right front corner plate (for B706) only)..... 2 16. Front door extension (bottom) ..... 1

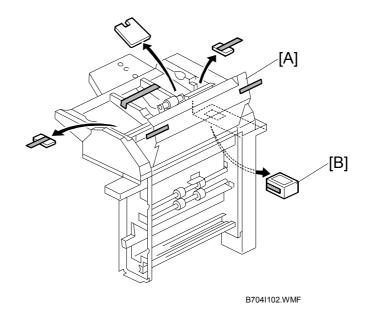


# 1.15.2 INSTALLATION

You can install the Cover Interposer Tray B704 on these finishers:

- 2000-Sheet Booklet Finisher B700
- 3000-Sheet Finisher B701
- 3000-Sheet Finisher B706

#### **Removing Tapes and Packing Materials**



#### **WARNING!**

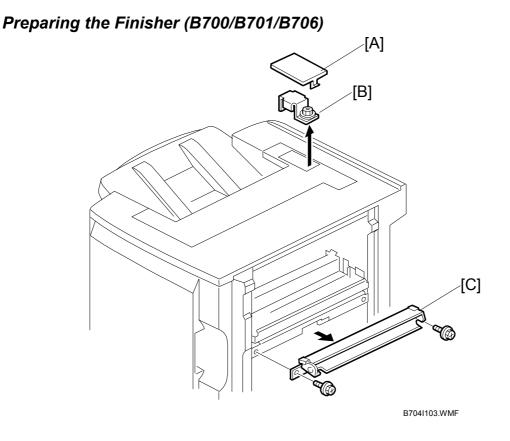
Make sure that the finisher is disconnected from the main machine, and that the copier is turned off and the power cord is disconnected, before you start this procedure.

1. If the finisher is connected to the machine, disconnect it.

#### 

After disconnecting the finisher, for safety remove the front and rear finisher connectors from the copier. Reattach them just before docking the finisher to the copier.

- 2. Remove all tape and retainers from the cover interposer tray [A].
- 3. Remove the tape and packing material [B] from the ground connector.



- 1. Remove the cover [A] of the relay connector.
- 2. Loosen the screw of the bracket [B] ( $\mathscr{F} \times 1$ ) then remove the bracket.
- 3. Remove the guide plate [C]. (You will attach this guide plate to the cover interposer. Do not discard it.)

**Important**: If you will install the cover interposer tray on a B700/B701/B706 finisher that was installed on the machine before this time, remove the sponge strip from the finisher. Keep this strip, because you will attach it later to the interposer tray.

4. If you will install the B700/B701, attach the extensions to the finisher without modification. Go to "Attaching the Extensions for the B700/B701" on page 1-108.

-or-

If you will install the B706, modify the extensions and attach them to the finisher. Go to "Attaching the Extensions for the B706" on page 1-105.

#### Attaching the Extensions for the B706

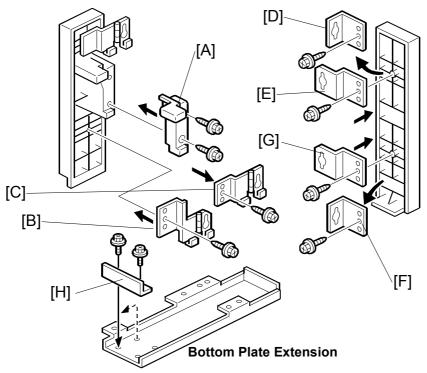
#### Important!

- The procedures in this section are for installation of the cover interposer with the B706 only.
- If you will install the cover interposer with the B700/B701, go to the next section.

#### Modify the Attachments for the B706

#### Front Door Extension (Top)

**Rear Cover Extension (Bottom)** 



B704I108.WMF

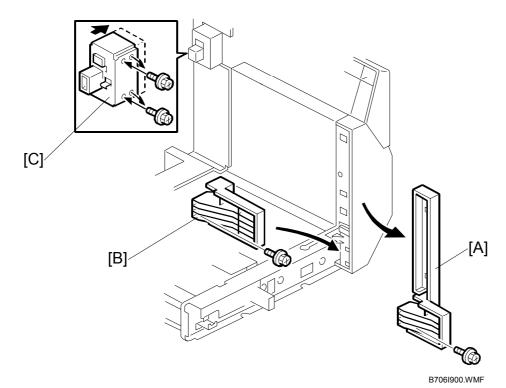
#### Front Door Extension:

- 1. Attach spacer [A] to the front door extension (top) ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- 2. Remove the lower hinge [B] and replace it with [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).

#### **Rear Cover Extension (Bottom):**

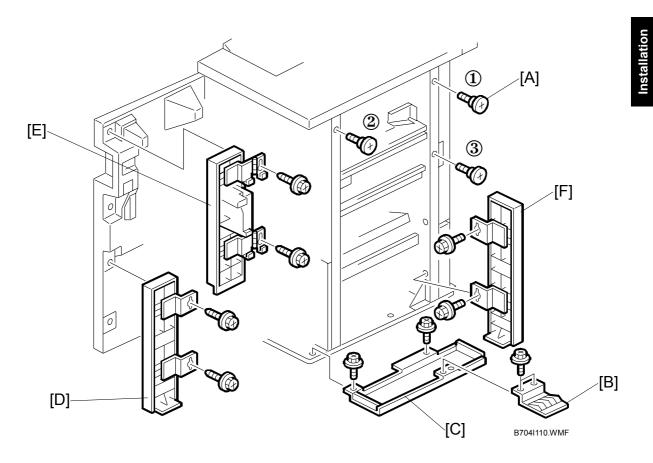
- 3. Remove [D] and replace it with [E] ( $\hat{P} \times 1$ ).
- 4. Remove [F] and replace it with [G] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ).

#### Plate Extension (Bottom):



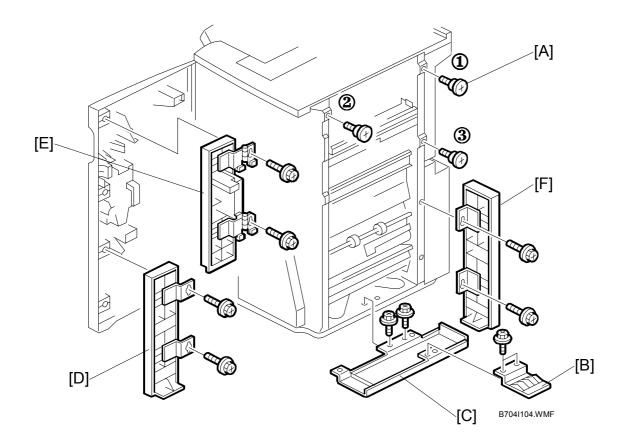
#### Prepare the Cover Interposer for the B706

- 1. Remove spacer [A] ( $\hat{\beta}$  x1).
- 2. Attach spacer [B] ( 2 x1).
- 3. Remove the screws from the connector casing [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 4. Push the connector casing in the direction of the arrow until the second set of holes is aligned with the holes below, then attach the screws.



#### Attach the Extensions to the B706

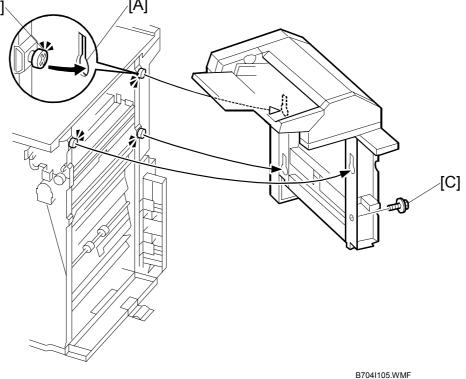
- 1. Attach the three shoulder screws [A] 123 (  $\cancel{3}$  x 3).
- 2. If the finisher was previously installed, remove the ground plate [B] from the finisher and keep the screws.
- 3. Attach the bottom plate [C] ( $\hat{\beta}^2 \times 2$ , M3 x 6).
- 4. Attach the ground plate to the bottom plate ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- 5. Attach the bottom front cover extension [D] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x 2, M4 x 8). **NOTE:** Attach this cover first.
- 6. Attach the top front cover extension [E] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ , M4 x 8).
- 7. Attach the rear cover extension [F] to the finisher ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ , M3 x 6).
- 8. Push up the bottom of the rear cover extension to close the gap at the top of the cover, then tighten the screws.



#### Attaching the Extensions for the B700/B701

- 1. Attach the three shoulder screws [A] 23 ( $\cancel{P} \times 3$ ).
- 2. If the finisher was previously installed, remove the ground plate [B] from the finisher and keep the screws.
- 3. Attach the bottom plate [C] (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>ℓ</sub> x 2, M3 x 6) then attach the ground plate to the bottom plate (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>ℓ</sub> x 2).
- 4. Attach the bottom front cover extension [D] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ , M4 x 8).
- 5. Attach the top front cover extension [E] ( $\hat{P} \times 2$ , M4 x 8).
- 6. Attach the rear cover extension [F] ( $\hat{P} \times 2$ , M3 x 6).

# Attaching the Interposer Tray (B700/B701/B706)



- 1. Lift the cover interposer tray. Then, align the keyholes [A] with the shoulder screws [B], and move the cover interposer down onto the screws.
- 2. Attach the cover interposer with the screw [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ , M3 x 6).
- If you will install the cover interposer tray on the B700/B701, do not do the next section. Go directly to "Docking Finisher/Interposer" on page 1-112.
   -or-

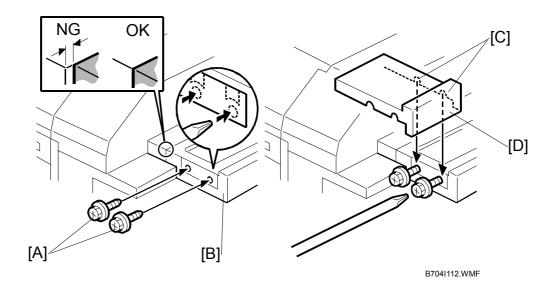
If you will install the cover interposer tray on the B706, go to the next section, install the corner plates on the B706, then go to "Docking Finisher/Interposer" on page 1-112.

#### Attaching the Corner Plates for the B706

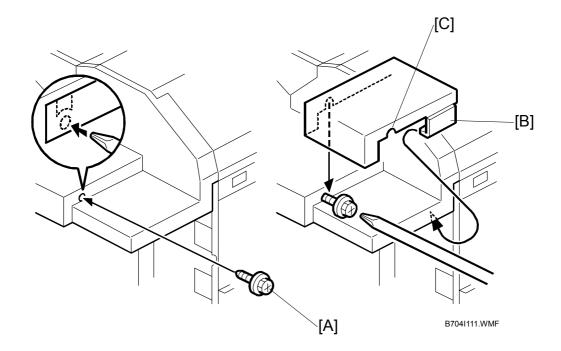
#### Important:

• The corner plates are installed on the B706 only.

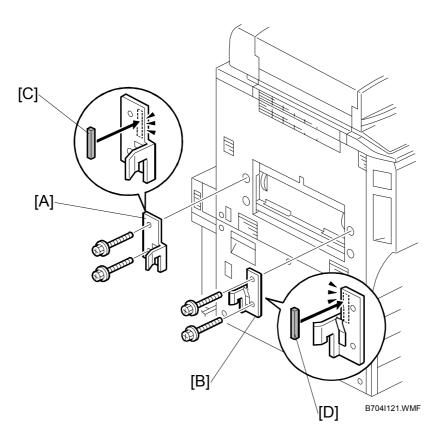
#### **Right Rear Corner Plate (B706 only)**



- Temporarily attach the screws [A] (with approximately two turns) to the right end of the finisher extension table [B] ( x 2, tapping M4 x 8)
   NOTE: You cannot see the holes, because they have tape on them. You can punch the screws through the tape.
- 2. Align the notches [C] in the right rear corner plate [D] with the screws and attach the plate.
- 3. Put a long screwdriver through the notches in the right rear corner plate [D]. Then, tighten the screws to attach the right rear corner plate to the table extension [B].

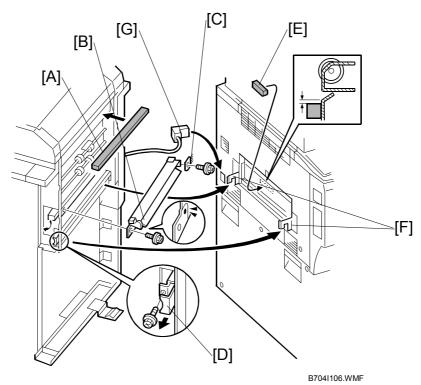


- 4. Temporarily attach the screw [A] (M4 x 8) with approximately two turns, to fasten to the panel at the right front corner.
  NOTE: You cannot see the hole, because it has tape on it. You can punch the screw through the tape.
- 5. With the clamp [B] below the edge of the corner, align the notch [C] in the right front corner plate with the screw, then put the panel into its position. You will hear a click when it is in the correct position.
- 6. Put a long screwdriver in the notch [C], and tighten the screw to attach the right front corner plate.



# Docking Finisher/Interposer with the Machine (B700/B701/B706)

- 1. Attach the rear bracket [A] ( $\hat{\beta}$  x 2, M4 x14).
- 2. Attach the front bracket [B] ( x 2, M4 x14).
- 3. Attach the gasket seals [C] and [D].



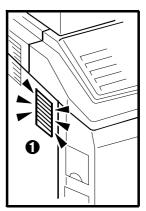
- 4. Attach the sponge strip [A] that is supplied with the finisher.
- 5. Attach the guide plate (removed from the finisher) to the cover interposer.
  - Attach the front end [B] of the plate (𝔅<sup>3</sup> x 1).
  - Attach the rear end of the plate with the anti-static brush [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ). **Important**: Use the two small tapping screws that are supplied, and not the machine screws removed from the finisher guide plate.
- 6. Release the lock lever [D] ( $\hat{P} \times 1$ ).
- 7. Attach the pad [E]. (This pad is provided with the finisher.)
- 8. Slowly push the finisher against the side of the machine until the brackets [F] go into the slots.

#### **WARNING!**

Move the finisher carefully, or you will bend the entrance guide plates.

- 9. Attach the lock lever [D] ( $\hat{\beta} x 1$ ).
- 10. Connect the connector [G] to the copier.

**Important!** Check the duct **①** on the left side of the machine. Make sure that the sponge does not prevent air flow through this duct.

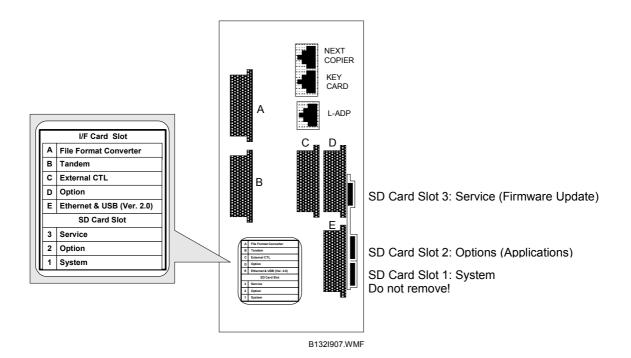


B132I734.WMF

# **1.16 MFP CONTROLLER OPTIONS**

## 1.16.1 OVERVIEW

The machine controller box has five board slots and 3 SD cards. Make sure that each board and SD card is put in the correct slot. For more, please see the decal on the controller box.



#### **Board Slots**

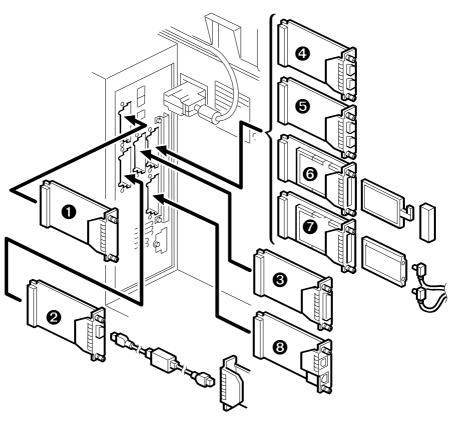
A	File Format Converter Type B B609
В	Copy Connector Type 2105 B328
C	EFI-V G815
D	IEEE1284 B679 (Centronics), IEEE1394 B581 (FireWire), IEEE802.11b B736-06, -07 (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth B736-11
E	Combo NIC B763 (10/100 BaseT Ethernet & USB 2.0)

#### **SD Card Slots**

3	Version updates, moving applications to other SD Cards.
2	Applications (1 or several applications combined on 1 SD Card).
1	System Controller SD Card. Never remove!

#### Important!

## 1.16.2 ACCESSORY CARDS



B737I102.WMF

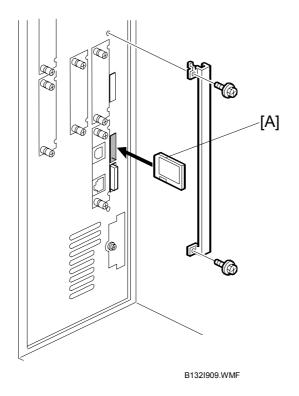
No.	Code	Name	Slot	Page
0	B609	File Format Converter	Α	1-137
0	B328	Copier Connection Kit	В	1-143
€	EFI-V G815	External Controller	С	1-145
4	B679	IEEE1284 Interface Board Type A	D	1-126
6	B581	IEEE1394 Interface Board Type B	D	1-127
6	B736-11	Bluetooth Interface Unit Type 3260	D	1-130
0	B736-06, -07	IEEE802.11b Interface Type D	D	1-132
8	B736-01	Combo NIC (Ethernet & USB 2.0)	ш	1-122

Note: Items ④, ⑤, ⑥, ⑦, must be in the same slot. Because of this, only one of these cards can be installed at the same time.

## Important!

• The B181 is supplied with the printer/scanner kit installed at the factory.

## 1.16.3 APPLICATIONS PROVIDED ON SD CARDS



These applications are available on SD cards [A]. You install them in Slot 2:

- Printer/Scanner Unit Type 3260 B737
- PostScript3 Unit Type 3260 B761
- Data Overwrite Security Unit Type C B735-17

Slot 2 is the only slot available for these application SD cards.

If the customer must use more than one application, then the applications must be put together on one SD card. (r1.16.5)

#### Important

- Slot 1 (the lower slot) is for the system SD card only. The system SD card must not be removed. The machine will show SC732 if a different SC card is put in Slot 1.
- Slot 2 holds the application SD card. It also holds the target SD card when applications are put together on one card.
- Slot 3 (the top slot) is used to update the machine firmware. It also holds the source SD card when applications are put together on one card.

## 1.16.4 HANDLING DIMMS AND SD CARDS

### 

Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you install a controller option.

### Important!

- To prevent damage to the controller box, always do your work carefully. Do not put your hand or a tool into the box when you remove the controller box or install an option.
- To prevent damage to the circuits on the boards, always touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you touch electronic components.

### DIMMs

- Hold the ROM DIMM. The edge connector [A] must point toward the slot and the notch [B] in the DIMM must be in the top right corner.
- 2. Put the edge connector [C] in the slot at a 30-degree angle from the surface of the board. If the angle is too low, the upper contact could bend.
- Carefully move the outer edge of the ROM DIMM up and down slightly until it goes into the connector. Then carefully push it down level with the controller board.

**Important**: If the upper contact is pushed in with force, and becomes bent, the connection will be defective, and the machine could stop.

## SD cards

#### To install and remove an SD Card:

SD cards are held in position by a small spring-lock mechanism.

- 1. To install an SD card, push it into the slot until it stops, then release it.
- 2. To remove an SD card, push the SD card in carefully to release it, and then remove it from the slot.

**Important**: To prevent damage to the SD card or the slot lock, always push the card in, to release it, before you try to remove it.

[C]

G338I901.WMF

Installation

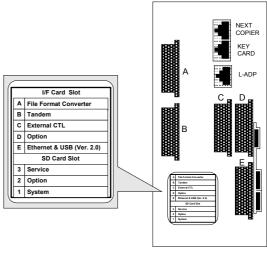
## 1.16.5 MERGING APPLICATIONS ON ONE SD CARD

#### Overview

Only one SD card slot is available for SD card applications.

The machine has three SD card slots. Slot 1 is used for the system card. Slot 2 is used for application programs, and Slot 3 is used for servicing only.

If the customer wants to use more than one application SD card, the applications must be put together on the same SD card.



B132I907.WMF

### Important

- The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program to the target SD card.
- Do not use an SD card if it was used with a computer before this time. Correct operation is not guaranteed if this type of SD card is used.
- The SD card is the only evidence that the customer is licensed to use the application program. The service technician may occasionally need to check the SD card and its data to solve problems. SD cards must be stored in the cover on the door of the copier. (
  Pg. 1-121)
- A licensing agreement prohibits copying of the PostScript SD card. However, you can copy an application from another SD card to the PS SD card.
- If an SD card was used to combine applications on that card, that SD card cannot be used for a different function.
- NEVER REMOVE THE SYSTEM SD CARD FROM SLOT 1.

## Merging Applications

Do this procedure to put more than one application on one SD card.

- 1. Turn off the copier.
- 2. Remove the SD card slot cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- Put the <u>Source SD card</u> in **Slot 3** (top slot). This card contains the application that you want to copy.
   NOTE: The PS SD card cannot be the source card, because it cannot be copied.
- 4. Put the <u>Target SD card</u> in **Slot 2** (middle slot). The application on the card in **Slot 3** will be copied to this card.
- 5. Open the front door.
- 6. Turn the copier on.
- 7. Go into the SP mode and select **SP5873 001**.
- 8. Touch "Execute".
- 9. Read the instructions on the display and touch "Execute" to start copying.
- 10. When the display tells you copying is completed, touch "Exit".
- 11. Turn the copier off.
- 12. Remove the Source SD card from **Slot 3**. Keep the target SD card in Slot 2.
- 13. Turn the copier on.
- 14. Go into the User Tools mode and check that all the applications on the SD card in Slot 2 are enabled:

User Tools> System Settings> Administrator Tools> Firmware Version> Next (5/5)

- 15. Turn the copier off again, then:
  - Attach the SD card slot cover.
  - Attach the rear cover of the machine.
  - Remove the cover from the front door, and store the SD card that was copied. (
     —Pg.1-121)

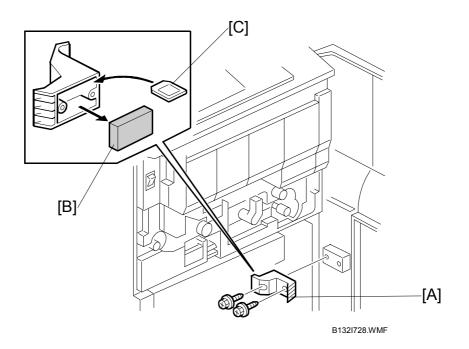
#### Important!

- After an SD card is copied, it cannot be used. But it must be stored in the front door, to serve as proof of purchase by the customer.
- The original card can also be used to perform an undo procedure (SP 5873 002). Before you put the card in the front cover, label it carefully so that you can identify it easily if you need to do the undo procedure (see the next page).

### Undo Exec

- 1. Turn the main switch off.
- 2. Put the SD card with the merged applications in SD Card Slot 2.
- Put the original destination SD card (the one stored in the front door) into Slot 3.
   NOTE: The SD card in Slot 3 must be the original SD card of the application you want to move from Slot 2 to Slot 3. You cannot use any blank SD card in Slot 3.
- 4. Turn the main switch on.
- 5. Go into the SP mode and do **SP5873-002** (Undo Exec)
- 6. Follow the messages on the operation panel to complete the procedure.
- 7. Turn the main switch off.
- 8. Remove the SD cards from the slots.
- 9. Turn the main switch on.

## Storing SD Application Cards on Site



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove the cover [A] on the door ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 3. Remove the block [B].
- 4. Store the SD cards [C] inside the cover.
- 5. Attach the cover to the machine.

## 1.16.6 PRINTER/SCANNER B737 AND INTERFACE UNIT

### Accessories

E

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

D	esci	ription Qty	,
	1.	Scanner/Printer DIMM (G338) or Printer DIMM (G339)	1
	2.	Centronics Interface	1
	3.	NIB	1
	4.	Screws - M3x8	2
	5.	Ferrite Core	1
	6.	Key Top Assembly	1
	7.	Operating Instructions – Printer	1
	8.	Installation Instructions	1
	9.	FCC Label	1
	10.	Software CD-ROM	3

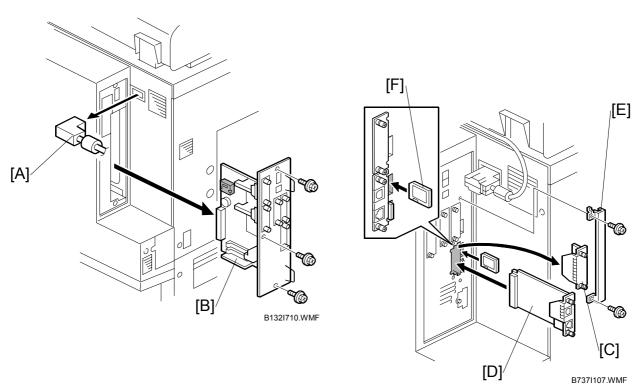


### Installation

### **AWARNING!**

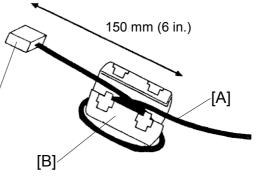
Turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you start this procedure.

**NOTE:** For the printer/scanner unit, the machine must have a minimum of 128 MB of memory (more is recommended). Memory chips are not supplied with this option.



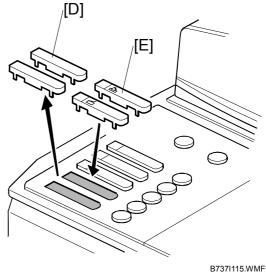
- Disconnect the ARDF cable [A] (
   <sup>™</sup> x1).
- 2. Remove the controller board [B] ( $\mathscr{F} x3$ ).
- 3. Connect the SDRAM DIMM (128 MB expansion memory) into RAM slot CN501 on the controller board.
- 4. Attach the controller board ( $\hat{\not}$  x3).
- 5. Remove the I/F Slot Cover E [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 6. Install the Interface Unit Board [D] (NIC/USB) B763 in Slot E.
- 7. Remove the SD card slot cover [E] ( x2)
- 8. Install the Printer/Scanner SD card [F] in SD Card Slot 2 (middle slot).
- 9. Attach the SD card slot cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).

- 10. Wind the Ethernet cable [A] around the ferrite core [B] as shown.
- 11. Make sure there is a minimum of 150 mm (6 in.) between the ferrite core and the end of the cable.
- 12. Close the ferrite core.
- 13. Connect the RJ45 plug [C] on the [C] Ethernet cable to the NIB.



B737I900.WMF

- 14. Replace the old key top assembly [D] with the new key tops [E].
- 15. Do the procedures in the operating instructions to make the user settings (for example, the IP address).



B737I115.WMF

16. Do the color calibration for the printer:

User Tools> Maintenance> Auto Color Calibration> Printer Function: Do all three test patterns.

## **USB SP Settings**

The following SP commands are available. But, only one setting can be adjusted, and this must only be done if the customer has USB data transmission errors.

**NOTE:** Do not change the settings marked "DFU". These settings are for design and factory use only.

To go into the SP mode:

- 1. Push 'Clear Modes' 😰
- 2. On the operation panel keypad, input **107**.
- 3. Hold down [Clear/Stop] (<sup>(Co)</sup>) for more than 3 seconds.
- 4. Push "Copy SP" on the touch-panel to open the SP command selection screen.

			14APR 2002 03:25
SP Mode	(Service) Open All	Close All Cop	by Window SP Direct X-XXX-XXX Exit
SP1XXX ►	Feed	Group	COPY: SP1-001-001
SP2XXX ►	Drum	Page	
SP3XXX ►	Process	Line	
SP4XXX 🕨	Scanner	<b></b>	
SP5XXX 🕨	Mode	Line	21
SP6XXX 🕨	Periphs	Page	Initial 0
SP7XXX ►	Data Log	V	
SP8XXX ►	Data Log2	Group	[ ↑ Prev Page ] ↓ Next Page ]

B0641999.WMF

#### 5. Input 5844.

SP No.	Name	Function	
5844 001	Transfer Rate	Adjusts the USB transfer rate. Do not change the setting unless there is a data transfer error with the USB high speed mode.	
		HS/FS:	High speed/Full speed auto adjust (480Mbps/12Mbps)
		FS:	Full speed (12Mbps fixed)
5844 002	Vendor ID	Displays the vendor ID. DFU	
5844 003	Product ID	Displays the product ID. DFU	
5844 004	Dev. Release Num	Displays the development release version number. DFU	

## 1.16.7 IEEE 1284 INTERFACE BOARD B679 (CENTRONICS)

#### Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

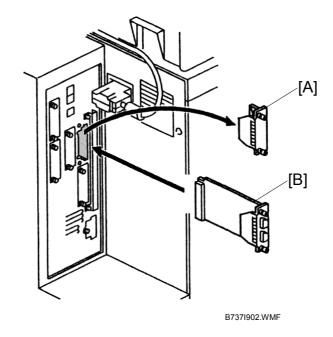
### Description

Qty

- 1. IEEE 1284 ...... 1
- 2. Conversion Plug IEEE 1284 Type C ..... 1

Only one interface slot is available for one of these options. Because of this, only one board can be installed at the same time:

- IEEE 1284 Interface Board B679 (Centronics)
- IEEE 1394 Interface Board B581 (FireWire)
- Bluetooth Interface Board B763
- IEEE 802.11b Interface Unit B736 (Wireless LAN)



- 1. Remove the I/F cover slot [A] of **Slot D** ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x^2$ ).
- 2. Touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you touch the interface card.
- 3. Put the interface board [B] in **Slot D** and attach it ( $\hat{\beta}$  x2).
- 4. Turn the machine off and on. Then do **SP5990** to print an SMC Report to check that the interface board is installed correctly.

Qtv

## 1.16.8 IEEE 1394 INTERFACE BOARD B581 (FIREWIRE)

## Accessories

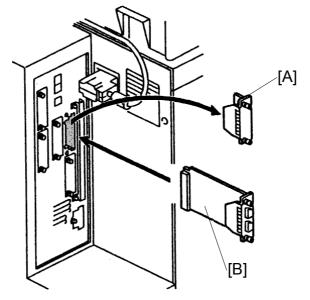
Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

### Description

- 3. IEEE-1394 Cable 2M 4-Pin ..... 1
- 4. IEEE-1394 Cable 2M 6-Pine ..... 1
- 5. PCB GW1394..... 1

Only one interface slot is available for one of these options. Because of this, only one board can be installed at the same time:

- IEEE 1284 Interface Board B679 (Centronics)
- IEEE 1394 Interface Board B581 (FireWire)
- Bluetooth Interface Board B763
- IEEE 802.11b Interface Unit B736 (Wireless LAN)



B737I903.WMF

- 1. Remove the I/F cover slot [A] of **Slot D** ( $\hat{P}$  x2).
- 2. Touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you touch the interface card.
- 3. Put the interface board [B] in **Slot D** and attach it ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x^2$ ).
- 4. Turn the machine off and on. Then do **SP5990** to print an SMC Report to check that the interface board is installed correctly.

## **UP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394**

Go into the UP mode and do the procedure below to make the initial interface settings for IEEE 1394. These settings are used each time that the machine is turned on.

- 1. Push User Tools/Counter.
- 2. On the touch panel, push System Settings.
- 3. Push Interface Settings.

System Intialization Settings					
Select the desired settings.					
Network Parallel Interface	IEEE 1394	IEEE 802.1b			
IP Address	0000.0000.0000.0000	SCSI Print Bi-directional	On		
Subnet Mask	0000.0000.0000.0000				
IP Over 1394	Enabled				
SCSI Print	Enabled				

B064I998.WMF

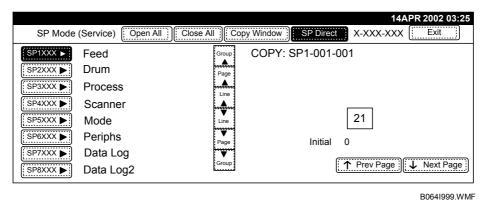
- 4. Push each key to input the following settings:
  - IP Address
  - Subnet Mask
  - IP Over 1394. Enable or disable this setting as necessary. This setting enables IP Over 1394 as the default setting for the printing method.
  - SCSI Print. Enable or disable this setting as necessary. This setting enables SCSI Print as the default setting for the printing method.
  - SCSI Print Bi-directional. Switch bi-directional printing on or off for SCSI print.

## SP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394

The following SP commands can be set for IEEE 1394.

To go into the SP mode:

- 1. Push Clear Modes 🔊
- 2. On the operation panel keypad, push **107**.
- 3. Hold down Clear/Stop <sup>(e)</sup> for more than 3 seconds.
- 4. Push "Copy SP" on the touch-panel to open the SP command selection screen.



5. Do the following settings in either User Tools or SP mode.

SP No.	Name	Function
5839 004	Device Name	Sets the names for all the physical devices connected to the IEEE 1394 firewire network.
5839 007	Cycle Master	Enables or disables cycle master function of the IEEE 1394 standard bus.
5839 008	BCR Mode	Sets the BCR (Broadcast Channel Register) setting for the Auto Node operation for the standard IEEE1394 bus for when IRM is not in use. Three settings are available: 00, 01, 11.
5839 009	IRM 1394a Check	Determines whether an IRM check for IEEE 1394 is conducted for the Auto Node when IRM is not used.
5839 010	Unique ID	Enables the "Node_Unique_Id" setting for enumeration on the standard IEEE 1394 bus.
5839 011	Logout	Determines how successive initiator login requests are handled during login for SBP-2.
5839 012	Login	Enables or disables exclusive login for SBP-2.
5839 013	Login MAX	Sets the limit for the number of logins for SBP-2. Range: 1 ~ 62.

## 1.16.9 BLUETOOTH INTERFACE UNIT B736-11

#### Accessories

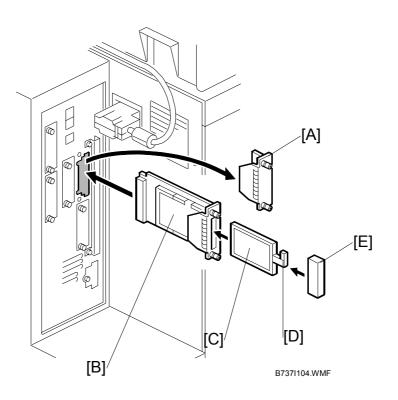
Check the quantity and condition of the accessories.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Bluetooth card	1
2	Bluetooth card cover	1
3	Bluetooth board	1

Only one PCI slot is available for one of these options:

- IEEE 801.11b (Wireless LAN)
- IEEE 1394 (FireWire)
- IEEE 1284
- Bluetooth

## Installation Procedure



- 1. Remove the I/F cover slot [A] of **Slot D** ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x^2$ ).
- 2. Touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you touch the interface card.
- 3. Put the interface board [B] in **Slot D**.
- 4. Check that the board is fully in the slot, then attach it ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 5. Put the Bluetooth card [C] in the slot of the interface board.
- 6. Push the antenna cap [D] to extend it.
- 7. Attach the card cover [E] (used to prevent static electricity).
- 8. Turn the machine off and on. Then do **SP5990** to print an SMC Report to check that the interface board is installed correctly.

## 1.16.10 IEEE 802.11B INTERFACE UNIT G813-04, -05

#### Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

### Description

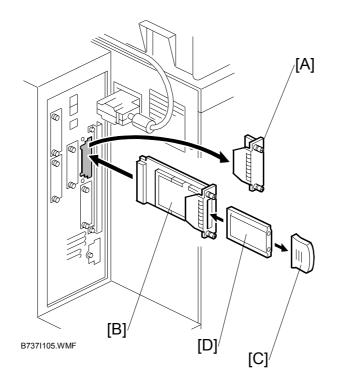
Qty

- 1. Wireless LAN PCB (GW-WLAN) ...... 1
- 2. Card (GW-WLAN) ..... 1
- 3. Wireless LAN Instructions ..... 1

Only one interface slot is available for one of these options. Because of this, only one board can be installed at the same time:

- IEEE 1284 Interface Board B679 (Centronics)
- IEEE 1394 Interface Board B581 (FireWire)
- Bluetooth Interface Board B763
- IEEE 802.11b Interface Unit B736 (Wireless LAN)

## Installation



- 1. Remove the I/F cover slot [A] of Slot D ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x2).
- 2. Touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you touch the interface card.
- 3. Put the interface board [B] in Slot D.
- 4. Check that the board is fully in the slot, then attach it ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 5. Remove the cap [C] and discard it.
- 6. Put the card [D] in the slot of the interface card.
- 7. Turn the machine off and on. Then do **SP5990** to print an SMC Report to check that the interface board is installed correctly.

## UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN

Enter the UP mode and follow the procedure below to perform the initial interface settings for IEEE 802.11. These settings take effect every time the machine is powered on.

NOTE: The wireless LAN cannot be used if Ethernet is being used.

- 1. Press the User Tools/Counter key.
- On the touch panel, press System Settings.
   NOTE: The Network I/F (default: Ethernet) must be set for either Ethernet or wireless LAN.
- 3. Select Interface Settings → Network (tab) → Network I/F Settting
- 4. Select either "Ethernet" or "IEEE 802.11b".
- 5. Press IEEE 802.11b. Only the wireless LAN options are displayed.

System Intialization Settings	System Intialization Settings End					
Select the desired settings.						
Network Parallel Interface	IEEE 1394	IEEE 802.1b				
Transmission Speed	802.11 Ad Hoc Mode		]			
SSID Setting	ASSID		]			
Channel	11	Bandwidth Status				
WEP (Privacy) Setting	Disabled		1/2	Previous V	Next	
				B0641997	WME	

- 6. Transmission Mode. Select either "Ad Hoc Mode" or "Infrastructure Mode".
- 7. SSID Setting. Enter the SSID setting. (The setting is case sensitive.)
- Channel. This setting is required when Ad Hoc Mode is selected. Range: 1 ~ 14 (default: 11)
   NOTE: The allowed range for the channel settings may vary for different countries.
- 9. **WEP (Privacy) Setting**. The WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) setting is designed to protect wireless data transmission. In order to unlock encoded data, the same WEP key is required on the receiving side. There are 64 bit and 128 bit WEP keys.

Range of Allowed Settings:

64 bit 10 characters

128 bit 26 characters

10. **Bandwidth Status**. This setting is enabled only for the Infrastructure Mode. Press here to display the current status of the bandwidth. One of the following is displayed to reflect the reception status of the wireless LAN:

Good	76 ~ 100%
Fair	41 ~ 75%
Poor	21 ~ 40%
Unavailable	0~20%

- 11. **Transmission Speed**. Press the Next button to display more settings, then select the transmission speed for the mode: Auto, 11 Mbps, 5.5 Mbps, 2 Mbps, 1 Mbps (default: Auto). This setting should match the distance between the closest machine or access point, depending on which mode is selected.
  - **NOTE:** For the Ad Hoc Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest PC in the network. For the Infrastructure Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest access point.

11 Mbps	140 m (153 yd.)
5.5 Mbps	200 m (219 yd.)
2 Mbps	270 m (295 yd.)
1 Mbps	400 m (437 yd.)

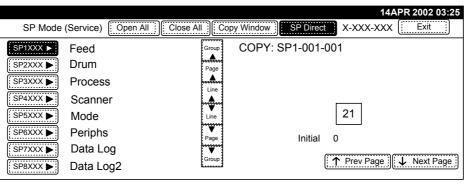
- 12. To initialize the wireless LAN settings, use page 2/2. Press Execute to initialize the following settings:
  - Transmission mode
  - Channel
  - Transmission Speed
  - WEP
  - SSID
  - WEP Key

Installation

### SP Mode Settings for 802.11b Wireless LAN

The following SP commands can be set for 802.11b

- 1. Push Clear Modes 🔊
- 2. On the operation panel keypad, push 107.
- 3. Hold down Clear/Stop <sup>(\*)</sup> for more than 3 seconds.
- 4. Push "Copy SP" on the touch-panel to open the SP command selection screen.



B064I999.WMF

#### 5. Input **5840**.

SP No.	Name	Function
5840 004	SSID	Used to confirm the current SSID setting.
5840 006	Channel MAX	Sets the maximum range of the channel settings for the country.
5840 007	Channel MIN	Sets the minimum range of the channels settings allowed for your country.
5840 010	WEP Key	Used to confirm the current WEP key setting.
5840 011	WEP Key Select	Used to select the WEP key (Default: 00).
5840 020	WEP Mode	Used to display the maximum length of the string that can be used for the WEP Key entry.

## 1.16.11 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER B609

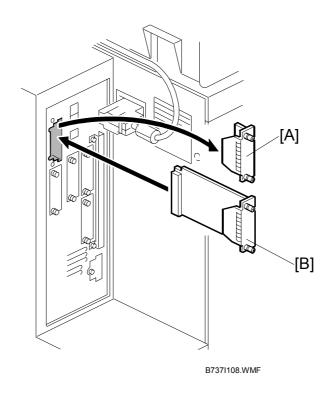
## Accessory Check

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list:

### Description

Q'ty

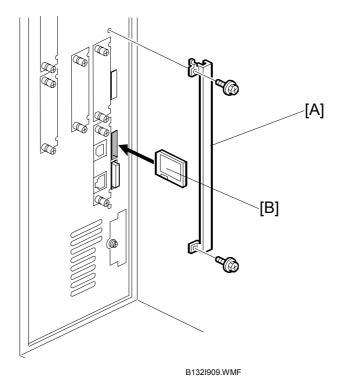
1. File Format Converter (MLB: Media Link Board) ...... 1



### Installation

- 1. Remove the I/F cover slot [A] of **Slot A** ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x2).
- 2. Touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you touch the interface card.
- 3. Put the interface board [B] in **Slot A**.
- 4. Check that the board is fully in the slot, then attach it ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x^2$ ).
- 5. Turn the machine off and on. Then do **SP5990** to print an SMC Report to check that the interface board is installed correctly.

## 1.16.12 POSTSCRIPT3 B761



- 1. Remove the slot cover [A].
- 2. Put the PostScript3 SD card [B] in SD card slot 2 (middle slot). Important
  - Only one SD card slot is available for applications.
  - If the customer wants to use one more application that must go in slot 2 (Printer/Scanner B737, for example), you must copy the contents of the printer/scanner SD card to the PostScript3 SD card. (~1.16.5)
  - The scanner/printer application must be copied to the PostScript3 SD card, because the PostScript3 SD card cannot be copied for copyright reasons.

Q'ty

## 1.16.13 DOS UNIT TYPE C (B735)

### Accessory Check

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list:

### Description

1. SD Card...... 1

## Before You Begin...

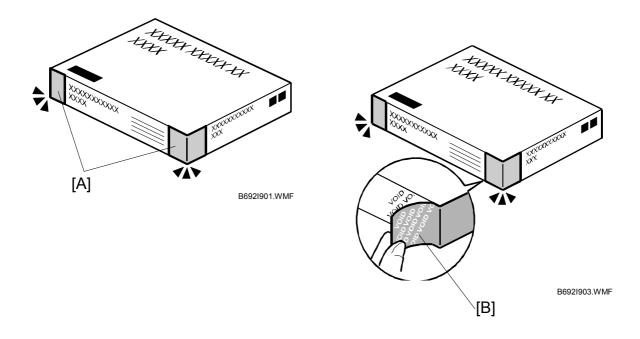
You must copy the DOS card to another application SD card. The original SD card, with the DOS application only, cannot be used.

For example, you can copy the contents of the printer/scanner SD card to the DOS (Data Overwrite Security B735) SD card. (~1.16.5).

Also, the DOS card application can be copied to the scanner/printer card.

After you copy the printer/scanner SD card or DOS card, store it behind the door. (
Pg.1-121). The application SD cards are the property of the customer and should remain at the site.

## Seal Check And Removal



## 

Before you start the installation, you must check the box seals to make sure that they were not removed after the items were sealed in the box at the factory.

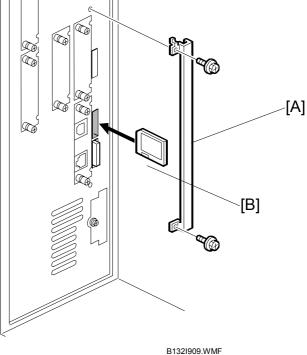
- 1. Check the box seals [A] on each corner of the box.
  - Make sure that a tape is attached to each corner.
  - The surfaces of the tapes must be blank. If you see "VOID" on the tapes, do not install the components in the box.
- 2. If the surfaces of the tapes do not show "VOID", remove them from the corners of the box.
- 3. When you remove each seal, the "VOID" marks [B] can be seen. In this condition, they cannot be attached to the box again.
- 4. Copy the DOS card to another application's SD card (for example, the printer/scanner or PostScript card).
- 5. After you copy the DOS card, store it behind the door. Use the combined DOS/other application SD card for the next part of the installation procedure.

## Installation Procedure

## 

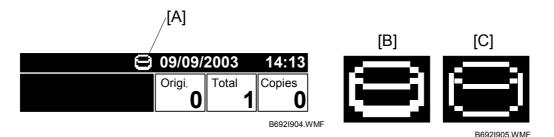
The machine should always be turned off and its power cord disconnected before you do this procedure.

- 1. If the machine is on, turn off the main power switch.
- 2. Disconnect the network cable (if the machine is connected to a network).
- 3. Remove the slot cover [A] ( $\hat{\beta}^2 \times 2$ ).
- 4. Install the SD Card [B] into slot 2, then attach the slot cover.
- 5. Connect the network cable (if the machine is connected to a network).
- 6. Turn the main power switch on.



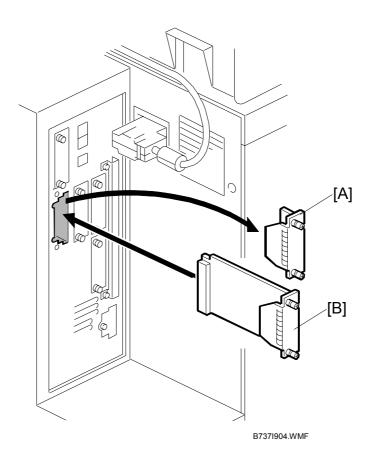
Installation

- 7. Go into the SP mode and do SP5878.
- 8. Go out of the SP mode, turn the operation switch off, then turn the main power switch off.
- 9. Turn the machine power on.
- 10. Go into the User Tools mode, and select System Settings> Administrator> Auto Erase Memory Setting> On.
- 11. Go out of the User Tools mode.

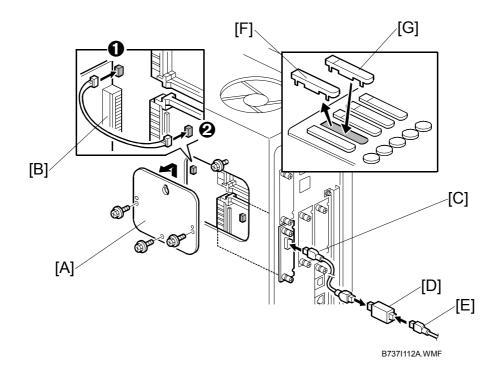


- 12. Check the display and make sure that the overwrite erase icon [A] is displayed.
- 13. Make a Sample Copy.
- 14. Check the overwrite erase icon.
  - The bottom of the icon becomes thicker [B].
  - "Next Copy" is shown for a short interval below the icon.
  - The icon goes back to its usual shape [C].
- 15. Remove the Document Server and Scanner key-tops, and replace them with the blank key-tops that are supplied with the kit.

## 1.16.14 COPIER CONNECTION KIT B328



- 1. Turn the machine off and unplug the machine before starting the following procedure.
- 2. Remove the cover [A] of **Slot B** ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x 2).
- 3. Install the Copier Connection Kit Board B328 [B] in **Slot B** and attach it with the screws.
- 4. Remove the rear upper cover. ( See 3.3.6)



- 5. Remove the controller box cover [C] ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x3$ ).
- 6. Connect the power repeater cable [B] to:
  ① CN594
  ② CN4
- 7. Reattach the controller box cover and rear upper cover.
- 8. Repeat Steps 1 to 7 to install the connection kit on the second machine.
- 9. Insert the end of the interface cable [C] to the connection PCB.
- 10. If additional cable is required, connect the cables [E] with repeater hubs [D].
- 11. On the operation panel of each machine, remove the second cover [F] from the bottom ("Printer").
- 12. Install the appropriate key on each machine.

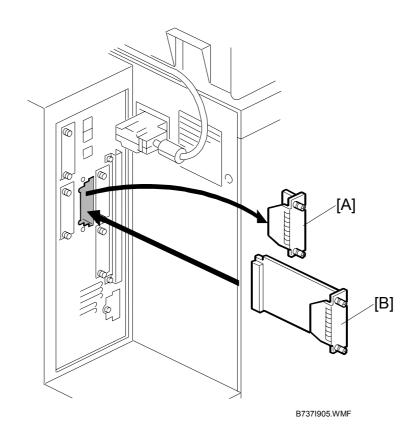
Attach the "Printer/Other Function" key [G] (or its equivalent symbol for EU) if the printer/scanner option is installed.

-or-

Attach the "Other Function" key [G] (or its equivalent symbol for EU) if the printer/scanner option is not installed.

13. Attach the other end of the connection cable to the connection PCB installed in the other machine.

## 1.16.15 EFI V G815 EXTERNAL CONTROLLER



- 1. Turn the machine off.
- 2. Remove the cover [A] of **Slot C** ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x 2).
- 3. Install the EFI-V G815 board [B] in **Slot C** and attach it with the screws.

# 2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

# 2.1 OVERVIEW

The amounts mentioned (K=1,000) as the PM interval indicate the number of prints or copies unless stated otherwise. These numbers are based on the PM counter.

### **Required Materials**

ltem	No.
Optical Cloth	A0129111
Alcohol	
Exposure Glass Cleaner	A1939310
Lubricant Powder	B1329700

### Important

- The Lubricant Powder (B1329700) (composed of Zinc Stearate) is specially designed for this machine (B132/B181/B200). If this lubricant powder is not available, please use this machine's yellow toner.
- Always use this lubricant powder to lubricate the drum and ITB during servicing.
- Never use the previous Setting Powder (54429101) in any service procedure for the B132/B181/B200. The composition of this Setting Powder and the Lubricant Powder is completely different.
- If you use Setting Powder (54429101) to service this machine, you will damage the drum charge roller and cause problems with image quality.

### 

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before performing any procedure in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage the eyes.

### Important!

• DO THE FORCED MUSIC ADJUSTMENT WITH SP 2111 001 (# 3.19.4).

# 2.2 PM COUNTER

The PM Counter main menu and submenu allows you to review the PM counts for both units and individual components.

## 2.2.1 DISPLAYING THE PM COUNTER

1. Push [Clear Modes] (◊)> "107"> [Clear/Stop] (<sup>(</sup>)).

SP mode	MAIN	1.03	Exit
Сору Sp			PM Counter
Printer Sp		Scanner Sp	

2. Touch [PM Counter].

	JAN 23,2002 6:29PM
SP Mode(PM Parts)	Prev. Menu Exit
Select item	
[	
(1) All PM Parts list	Counter clear for parts exceeding target yield
(2) Parts list for PM yield indicator	(3) Clear all PM settings
0	(4) Counterlist print out
Parts exceeding target yield	

B132P902.BMP

- All PM Parts List. Displays all PM items (all PM items, not only PM units). Lists all PM items regardless of PM yield indicator settings. (
  Pg.2-4)
- Parts list for PM yield indicator. Displays on the items with their PM yield indicator settings set to "Yes". (
  Pg.2-4)
- ③ Clear all PM settings. Resets all PM counter settings to "0" at the same time. PM items can be reset one by one with the [Clear] button. (
  Pg.2-4)
- (4) **Counter list print out**. Prints the PM counter on paper.

e ce

## 2.2.2 PM PARTS SCREEN DETAILS

## All PM Parts list: Main Menu

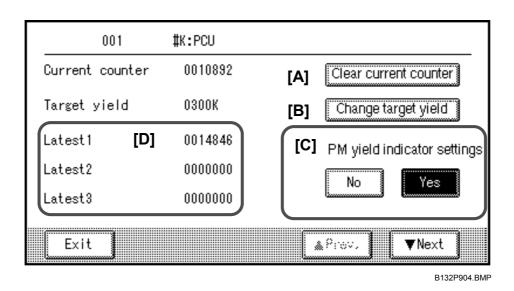
The "All PM Parts list" displays all PM units and individual items. This list shows all PM items, regardless of their "PM yield indicator settings". (•Pg.2-4)

			JAN	23,2002 10:02PM	ntiv nan
SP Mode(PM Parts)			Prev. Menu	Exit	Preventiv Maintenan
All PM Parts list		Select p	parts		P Ma
No Description	PM yieldCurre	nt Target			
001 #K:PCU	YES 0010	892 0300K	Clear		
002 K:PCU/Cleaning Blade	YES 0010	892 0150K	Clear		
003 K:PCU/Lubricant Bar	YES 0010	892 0150K	Clear	01/14	
004 K:Developer	YES 0010	892 0300K	Clear		
005 K:OPC Drum	YES 0010	892 0300K	Clear	≜ Prov	
006 K:Charge Unit	YES 0010	892 0300K	Clear		
007 K:Charge Roller	YES 0010	892 0300K	Clear	▼Next	
[A] [B]	[C] [[	) [E]	[F]	B132P903.BMP	

- [A]: Number buttons. Pressing a number button opens a submenu. (
  Pg.2-4)
- [B]: Descriptions. The # mark denotes a "unit" (not individual item).
- [C]: PM yield buttons. Function is the same as the "PM yield indicator settings" button. (
  Pg.2-4).
- [D]: Current PM counter value.
- [E]: Target PM interval. This can be changed by pressing a number button [A].
- [F]: PM counter clear button. Function is the same as the [Clear current counter] button.

#### Number button submenu

Press any number button to open the submenu for a part. In the example below, the number button [001] #K:PCU was pressed.



- [A]: Clear current counter. Press to reset the selected PM counter (in this example 001 #K:PCU) to "0". You can also clear the settings by pressing the [Clear] button on the right side of the PM Counter Main Menu ([F] on the previous page).
- [B]: **Change target yield**. Press the change the target PM yield. To change the setting:
  - Press [Change target yield]
  - Enter the number for the new target with the 10-key pad.
  - Press [#] on the operation panel.
- [C]: **PM yield indicator settings**. [Yes] is the default. Press [No] to remove the current item from the "Parts list for PM yield indicator".
  - When set to "Yes", items marked with the # mark (# = a unit) will not have their individual items displayed automatically in the "Parts list for PM yield indicator list".
  - When set to "No", items marked with the # mark (# = a unit) only the individual components will appear in the list (the units will not appear).
- [D]: PM counter history. This is a summary of the most recent counts
  - Latest 1. The latest PM count since the unit (or part) was replaced.
  - Latest 2. The previous PM count since the unit (or part) was replaced.
  - Latest 3. The previous but one PM count since the unit (or part) was replaced.

#### Parts list for PM yield indicator

This list shows the PM Parts Main Menu with only items set to "Yes" displayed.

				JAN 2	23,2002 11:09PM
SP Mode(PM Pa	rts)			Prev. Menu	Exit
Parts list for P	™yield indicator	_	Select par	ts	
No Description	Exceed	Current	Target		
001 #K:PCU	[A]	0010892	0300K	Clear	
017 #M:PCU		0005570	0300K	Clear	
033 #C:PCU		0005223	0300K	Clear	01/02
049 #Y:PCU		0005514	0300K	Clear	
065 ITB		0025738	0600K	Clear	≜ Prev
066 <b>#</b> ITB Cleaning	Unit	0025738	0300K	Clear	
070 #PTR Unit		0025738	0600K	Clear	▼Next

B132P905.BMP

aintenance

Note the following:

- The # mark denotes a unit.
- Items without the # (065 ITB) denote individual components.
- An asterisk \* will appear in the Exceed column [A] to show items that that have exceeded their target PM yields.

# 2.3 PM TABLES

#### 2.3.1 MAIN MACHINE

#### Symbol Key for PM Tables

- I: Inspect. Clean, replace, or lubricate as needed.
- **C:** Cleaning required.
- **R:** Replacement required.
- L: Lubrication required.

Silicone Grease 501 (52039502) Grease Barrierta – S552R (A2579300) Grease – KS660 – SHIN-ETSU Heat Resisting Grease MT-78 Launa Oil 40

#### **Copier PM Parts**

	150K	300K	600K	EM	Note
OPTICS					
Reflector		С			Optical cloth
1st Mirror		С			Optical cloth
2nd Mirror		С			Optical cloth
3rd Mirror		С			Optical cloth
Scanner Rails		С			Alcohol then dry cloth
Exposure Glass		С			Exposure glass cleaner
Toner Shield Glass		С			Optical cloth
APS Sensor		С			Dry cloth
ARDF Exposure Glass		С			Exposure glass cleaner
Dust Filters		С			Blow brush

Preventive Maintenance

	150K	300K	6	00K	E	N	Note
PCU							
Charge Roller Unit	R						
Drum Cleaning Blade	R						
Lubricant Bar	R						
Lubricant Brush		R					PCU Cleaning Unit
Toner Brush		R					(🖝3.5.5) PCU Cleaning Unit
		ĸ					( <b>•</b> 3.5.5)
PCU Joint		R					PCU Cleaning Unit
							( <b>~</b> 3.5.5)
Quenching LED	С	С		С			
Potential Sensor	С	С		С		I	Blower brush.
							Note: Never use a vacuum
						(	cleaner around this sensor.
Developer K	_	R					
Developer Y, M, C	R		_	~			
Development Roller Gear				С			Service Life: 1200K
Development Roller Idle			_	R			Blower brush Service Life: 600K
Gear				ĸ			Blower brush (🖝 3.5.2)
Development Unit			-	С			Service Life: 3000K
				C			Blower brush, dry cloth
	150	K 30	0K	600k	<	EM	Note
TONER SUPPLY							
Toner Supply Unit			С				Blower brush, dry cloth
	150	K 20	0K	600	(	EM	Note
TRANSFER UNIT	150	N 30	UN	000r	•		Note
ITRANSFER UNIT	1			R			
ITB Internal Rollers				C			Dry cloth
ITB Encoder Sensor			C	C			Alcohol then dry cloth
ID and MUSIC Sensors			<u> </u>				Alcohol then dry cloth
ITB Cleaning Roller			R				
ITB Cleaning Scraper Blade			R				
ITB Cleaning Blade			R				
			1				
	150	K 30	0K	600	<	EM	Note
PTR UNIT							
Paper Transfer Cleaning Blade	R						
Paper Transfer Cleaning Brush Roller	1		R				
Paper Transfer Lubricant Bar			R				
Paper Transfer Discharge Plate			R				
PTR (Paper Transfer Roller)	R						

E.

	150K	300K	600K	EM	Note
FUSING UNIT	1	1		1	
Fusing Belt			R		
Hot Roller			R		
Pressure Roller			R		
Hot Roller Cleaning Roller			R		
Cleaning Felt - Smail	R				<del>(@ 3.9.9</del> )
Cleaning Felt Large	R				(🕶 3.9.9)
Oil Supply Roller			R		
Heating Roller			C, L		
Heating Roller Shaft Bearings					Service Life: 1200K
Hot Roller Shaft Bearings			C, L		Service Life: 1200K
Pressure Roller Shaft Bearings			R		
Hot Roller Cleaning Roller Shaft Bearings			C, L		Service Life: 1200K
Stripper Pawls (Hot Roller/Pressure Roller)		C, L			Dry Cloth
Thermistors		С			

	150K	300K	600K	EM	Note
OTHER					
Circuit Breaker					Check the operation
					one a year.
Dust Filters		R			
Ozone Filters					Service Life: 1200K
Waste toner bottle	IR	IR	IR		Empty and clean every inspection.

F

	150K	300K	600K	EM	Note
PAPER FEED (Copier)					
Registration Rollers		С			Alcohol, dry cloth
Paper Dust Removal Unit		С			Dry cloth
Registration Sensor		С			Blower brush
Vertical Transport Roller		С			Blower brush
Sensors					
LCT Relay Sensor		С			Blower brush
Bypass Feed Sensor		С			Blower brush
Bypass Paper End Sensor		С			Blower brush

	150K	300K	600K	EM	Note
PAPER FEED (Trays)					
Feed Guide Plate		С			Dry cloth
Grip Rollers (Drive & Idle)		С			Alcohol, dry cloth
Pick-up Rollers (Tray 1 to Tray 3)					Service Life: 1000K
Paper Feed Rollers (Tray 1 to Tray 3)					Replace if jams, double-feeds occur
Separation Rollers (Tray 1 to Tray 3)					with increasing frequency.
Grip Roller (Drive Roller)		С			Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor		С			Blower brush
Vertical Feed Sensors		С			Blower brush
Paper-End Sensor		С			Blower brush

	150K	300K	600K	EM	Note
DUPLEX UNIT					
Inverter Roller		С			Blower brush
Reverse Rollers (Drive & Idle)		С			Alcohol, dry cloth
Duplex Rollers		С			Dry cloth
Transport Rollers (x4)		С			Dry cloth
Duplex Entrance Anti-Static Brush		С			Dry cloth
Inverter Junction Gate		С			Dry cloth
Inverter Roller		С			Dry cloth

	150K	300K	600K	EM	Note
PAPER EXIT					
Heat Dissipation Roller		С			Alcohol, dry cloth
Exit Anti-Static Brush		С			Inspect, replace if deformed.
Paper Exit Rollers (Upper, Lower)		С			Alcohol, dry cloth
Paper Exit Sensor		С			Blower brush
Transport Rollers		С			Blower brush

## ARDF PM Parts

**NOTE:** The "K" number in the table below is the number of originals that have been fed.

been fed.				
	Every PM Visit	Every 120K	EM	Note
External Covers	I, C			Alcohol or water, dry
Feed Belt	С	R	R	cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	R	R	
Separation Roller	С	R	R	
Original Length Sensors				Blower brush
Skew Correction Sensor	] [			
Interval Sensor	]			
Registration Sensor	] C [		С	
Paper Exit Sensor	1			
Lower Inverter Sensor	] [			
Separation Sensor	1			
Upper Inverter Sensor	1			
White Cover	C		С	Alcohol or water, dry
Transport Belt	C	R	С	cloth
Feed Drive Gears	L			G501 Grease
Grip Roller			С	Alcohol or water, dry
Transport Rollers			С	cloth
Scanner Rollers (Entrance/Exit)			С	]
Exit Rollers			С	
Inverter Rollers (Lower, Exit,			С	
Upper)				
Idle Rollers			С	

## 2.3.2 2000/3000-SHEET BOOKLET FINISHER B700/B701

	300K	2400K	3000K	4000K	EM	Note	1
FINISHER							
Covers					I,C	Alcohol or water, dry cloth	
Drive Rollers					С	Damp cloth, dry cloth	<b>.</b> 0
Idle Rollers					С	Damp cloth, dry cloth	Preventive Maintenance
Anti-Static Brush					С	Dry cloth	ent ena
Sensors					С	Blower brush	rev lint
Corner Stapler				R		Print an SMC report with <b>SP5990</b> . Replace the unit if the staple count is 500K.	P Ma
Booklet Stapler				R		Print an SMC report with <b>SP5990</b> . Replace the unit if the staple count is 200K.	

## 2.3.3 PUNCH B702

PUNCH	300K	2400K	3000K	4000K	EM	
Punch Waste Hopper	I	I	I	I	Ι	Remove and empty
Punch Unit						Replace after 1000k punches.

## 2.3.4 3000-SHEET FINISHER B706

	350K	700K	1050K	Note		
FINISHER						
Driver rollers	I	Ι		Alcohol		
Idle rollers	I	Ι				
Discharge brush	I	Ι				
Shaft Bearings	I	Ι		Lubricate with silicone oil if noisy.		
Sensors	I	Ι		Blower brush.		
Jogger fences	I	Ι		Make sure that the screws are tight.		
Staple waste hopper	С	С	С	Empty staple waste.		

PUNCH B531/A821	EM	300K	450K	600K	Note
Punch Waste Hopper		I	-	I	Remove and empty

# 2.3.5 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B704

	EM	60K	120K	180K	Note		
The PM interval is for the number of sheets that have been fed.							
Feed Belt		R	R	R	Replace as a set.		
Pick-up Roller		R	R	R			
Separation Roller		R	R	R			
Driver Rollers		С	С	С	Damp clean cloth.		
Idle Rollers		С	С	С			
Discharge Brush		С	С	С			
Sensors		С	С	С	Blower brush.		

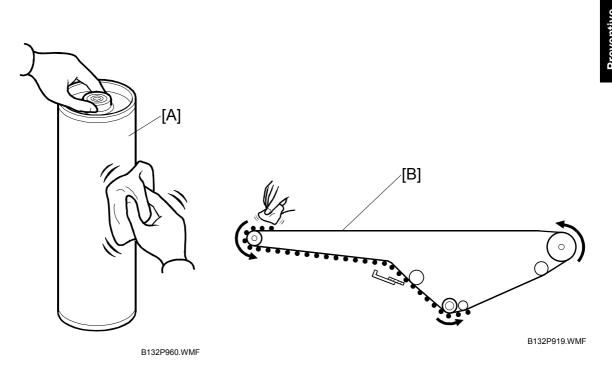
## 2.3.6 LCT B473

	1000K	2000K	3000K	Expected	Note
Paper feed roller	R	R	R		
Pick-up roller	R	R	R		
Separation roller	R	R	R		
Transport guide plate	Inspect and clean every 350K.				
Grip roller	Inspect and clean every 550K.				

# 2.4 LUBRICATION POINTS

#### 2.4.1 COPIER

#### **OPC, ITB Replacement**



Be sure to apply Lubricant Powder B1329700 when re-installing the drum[A] or ITB [B].

For more, please refer to section "3. Replacement and Adjustment".

# Fusing Unit <mark>|</mark>[В] [A]\ ,[G] [H] 6<sup>38</sup> A \ [I] [C· T [G]-60 [I] B132P906.WMF 'E] [F]、 [D]

B132P907.WMF

	Part Name	Lubricant	Comment
[A]	Hot Roller Drive Gear		
[B]	Exit Idle Gear	Barrierta S552R	Brush all gear teeth
[C]	Upper Gear		
[D]	Lower Gear		
[E]	Bearing Race $\phi$ 20 x $\phi$ 32 x 7	Barrierta S552R	
[F]	Hot Roller Sleeve		Be sure to brush both ends.
[G]	Bearing Race $\phi$ 25 x $\phi$ 37 x 7		
[H]	Hot Roller Sleeve		
[I]	Bearing Race		

# 3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

# 3.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS

Never switch off either power switch while any of the electrical components are operating. Doing so might cause damage to units such as the transfer belt, drum, and development unit when they are pulled out of or put back into the copier.

## 3.1.1 DRUM

An organic photoconductor (OPC) drums are more sensitive to light and ammonia gas than a selenium drum. Follow the cautions below when handling an OPC drum.

1. When a PCU unit is removed from the machine, always place it on the PCU stand provided with the machine.

- 2. Never expose a drum to direct sunlight.
- 3. Never expose a drum to direct light of more than 1,000 Lux for more than a minute.
- 4. Never touch a drum surface with bare hands. If the drum surface is touched with a finger or becomes dirty, wipe it with a dry cloth or clean it with wet cotton. Wipe with a dry cloth after cleaning with wet cotton.
- 5. Never use alcohol to clean the drum (alcohol dissolves the drum surface).
- 6. Store drums in a cool, dry place away from heat.
- 7. Take care not to scratch the drum as the drum layer is thin and is easily damaged.
- 8. Never expose a drum to corrosive gases such as ammonia gas.
- 9. Dispose of used drums in accordance with local regulations.

## 3.1.2 PCU UNIT

- 1. The PCU stand is stored in a rack attached to the bottom of the machine with strong magnets.
- 2. Before pulling a PCU unit out of the machine, spread some clean paper to catch spilt toner, remove the PCU stand from the bottom of the machine, clean it with a clean cloth, and then set the PCU stand on the paper to hold the PCU as soon as it is removed from the machine.
- 3. To prevent drum scratches, always set the PCU on the stand and leave it there as long as it is out of the machine.
- 4. Remove only one PCU at a time for servicing. Only one PCU stand is provided with the machine.

## 3.1.3 TRANSFER BELT UNIT

- 1. Never touch the transfer belt surface with bare hands.
- 2. Take care not to scratch the transfer belt, as the surface is easily damaged.
- 3. Before installing a new transfer belt, clean all the rollers and the inner part of the transfer belt with a dry cloth to prevent the belt from slipping.

## 3.1.4 SCANNER UNIT

- 1. When installing a new exposure glass, make sure that the white paint mark is at the rear left corner.
- 2. Clean the exposure glass with alcohol or glass cleaner to reduce the amount of static electricity on the glass surface.
- 3. Use a cotton pad with water or a blower brush to clean the mirrors and lenses.
- 4. Never bend or crease the exposure lamp cables.
- 5. Never disassemble the lens unit. Doing so will throw the lens and the copy image out of focus.
- 6. Never adjust any CCD positioning screw. Doing so will throw the CCD out of position.

## 3.1.5 LASER UNIT

- 1. Never loosen the screws that secure the LD drive board to the laser diode casing. Doing so would throw the LD unit out of adjustment.
- 2. Never adjust the variable resistors on the LD unit, as they are adjusted in the factory.
- 3. Never open the optical housing unit. The polygon mirror and lenses are sensitive to dust.
- 4. Never touch the glass surface of the polygon mirror motor unit with bare hands.

## 3.1.6 DEVELOPMENT

- 1. Avoid nicking or scratching the development roller.
- 2. Place a development unit on a sheet of paper after removing it from a PCU.
- 3. Always clean the drive gears after removing used developer.
- 4. Always dispose of used developer in accordance with local regulations.
- 5. Never load types of developer and toner into the development unit other than specified for this model. Doing so will cause poor copy quality and toner scattering.
- 6. Immediately after installing new developer during the machine installation procedure, do **SP3811 001**.
- 7. Immediately after replacing the developer, see section 3.5.7 for the correct SPs to do.

Replaceme Adjustmen

- 8. Never do **SP 3801** or **3811** with used developer.
- 9. When using a vacuum cleaner to clean the development unit casing, always ground the casing with your fingers to avoid damaging the toner density sensor with static electricity.
- 10. After replacing the TD sensor:
  - Replace the developer in the PCU where the TD sensor was replaced.
  - Then do **SP3801 001~006** only for the PCU where the TD sensor was replaced.

#### Very Important:

#### ONLY INITIALIZE THE TD SENSOR ONE TIME. DO NOT DO IT MORE THAN ONE TIME.

Only initialize the TD sensor at the following times:

- At installation, exactly as explained in the installation procedure.
- After you replace developer (only initialize the TD sensor for the colour that you replaced)
- As instructed in specific troubleshooting procedures.

If you do not obey the above instructions, you will get toner scattering inside the machine.

## 3.1.7 CLEANING

- 1. When servicing cleaning components, avoid nicking the edges of the cleaning blades.
- 2. Never handle a cleaning blade with bare hands.
- 3. Before disassembling a cleaning section, place a sheet of paper under it to catch any toner falling.

## 3.1.8 FUSING UNIT

- 1. Never handle fusing lamps and rollers with bare hands.
- 2. Make sure that the fusing lamps are positioned correctly and do not touch the inner surface of the rollers.

## 3.1.9 PAPER FEED

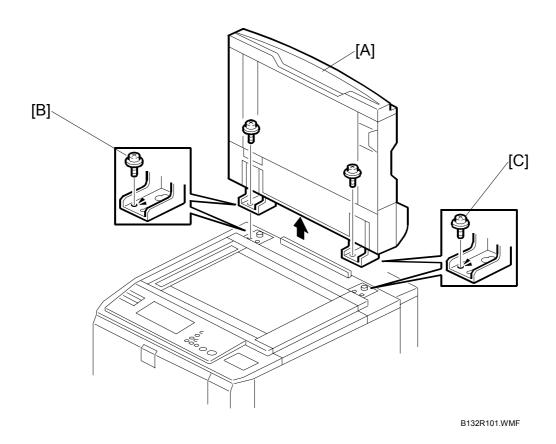
- 1. Do not touch the surfaces of the pick-up, feed, and separation rollers.
- 2. To avoid paper misfeeds, the side fences and end fence of the paper trays must be positioned correctly to align with the actual paper size.

## 3.1.10 USED TONER

- 1. We recommend checking the amount of used toner at every EM.
- 2. Always dispose of used toner in accordance with local regulations.
- 3. Never throw toner into an open flame.

# 3.2 COMMON REMOVAL PROCEDURES

## 3.2.1 ARDF



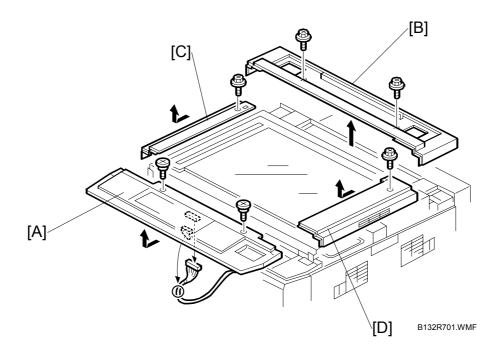
- 1. Raise the ARDF [A] to the vertical position.
- 2. At the rear, left corner of the machine, disconnect the ARDF cable.
- 3. Remove the left screw [B] and right screw [C].
- 4. Slide the ARDF back until the heads of the screws are in the large end of the keyholes, then lift the ARDF off the machine.

3-5

# 

The ARDF is very heavy. Remove it carefully.

## 3.2.2 OPERATION PANEL, TOP COVERS



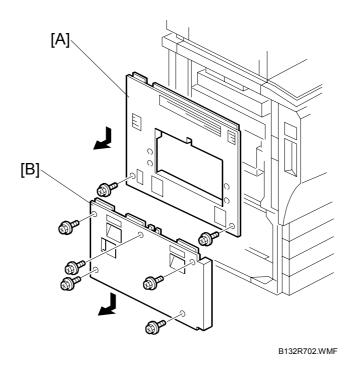
- Remove the ARDF (≝ x1, ∦ x2).
- Open the front door.

Remove:

- [A]: Operation panel (≅ x1, \$ x2)
  [B]: Top rear cover (\$ x2)

- [C]: Left top cover  $(\widehat{\beta} \times 1)$ [D]: Right top cover  $(\widehat{\beta} \times 1)$

## 3.2.3 LEFT COVERS



• If a finisher is connected, disconnect it. Then remove the front and back finisher connection brackets.

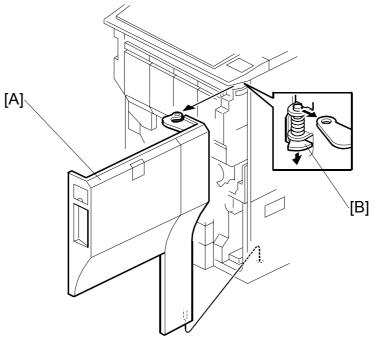
Remove:

[A]: Left upper cover ( $\hat{\beta}$  x2) [B]: Left lower cover ( $\hat{\beta}$  x5)

#### Reinstallation

• Make sure all the cover tabs are inserted correctly before you fasten the screws.

## 3.2.4 FRONT DOOR

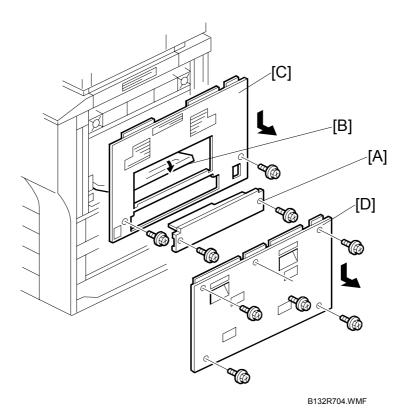


B132R703.WMF

- 1. Grip the front door [A] with one hand.
- 2. Press down the hinge bracket [B].
- 3. Lift the front door slightly to remove it.

**Important:** If you must replace the front door, make sure that you put the SD cards from the storage location in the old front door into the storage location in the new front door. ( 3.2.12)

## 3.2.5 RIGHT COVERS



Replacemen Adjustment

Remove:

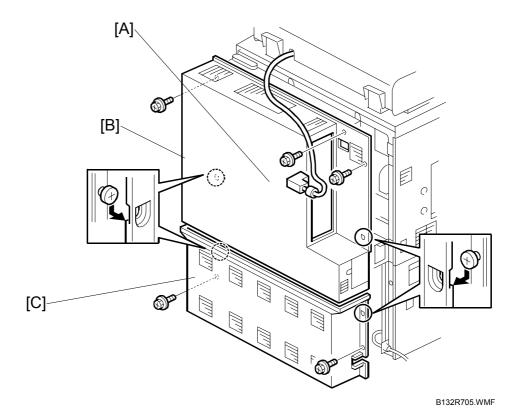
• Disconnect and separate the LCT if it is installed.

- [A]: Knockout (<sup>A</sup> x2). This has been removed already if the LCT has been installed.
- [B]: Open the bypass tray.
- [C]: Right upper cover ( x2). Pull the bottom of the cover down and toward you as you remove it.
- [D]: Right lower cover ( \$ x5). Pull the bottom of the cover down and toward you as you remove it.

#### Reinstallation

• Make sure all the cover tabs are inserted correctly before you fasten the screws.

## 3.2.6 REAR COVERS

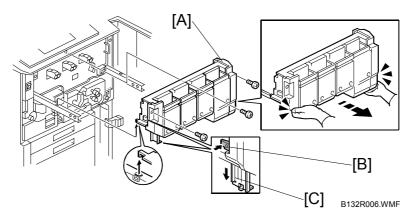


Remove:

- [A]: ARDF connector (ﷺ x1)
- [B]: Rear upper cover ( $\hat{\beta}$  x3) [C]: Rear lower cover ( $\hat{\beta}$  x2)
- - Remove the bottom screws
  - Do not remove the shoulder screws.

## 3.2.7 TONER HOPPER, FACEPLATE, PCU

#### Removing Hopper, Faceplate, PCU



**Important:** To avoid damaging the toner end sensor, make sure that the main power switch is turned off and that the power cord is disconnected from the power source before you remove the hopper.

#### To remove the hopper:

- 1. Prepare an open space on the floor for the hopper.
- 2. Remove the screws of the toner hopper [A] ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x3$ ).
- 3. Place your hands under the left and right corners of the toner hopper and slowly pull it out on its rails until it stops.

#### IMPORTANT: THE HOPPER CAN EASILY SLIP OFF ITS RAILS.

- 4. Press the release [B] to drop the support leg [C].
- 5. Confirm that the support leg is down and locked.

**IMPORTANT: ALWAYS MAKE SURE THAT THE SUPPORT LEG IS DOWN AND LOCKED BEFORE YOU REMOVE THE HOPPER.** 

6. Lift the toner hopper off its rails and set it on the floor.

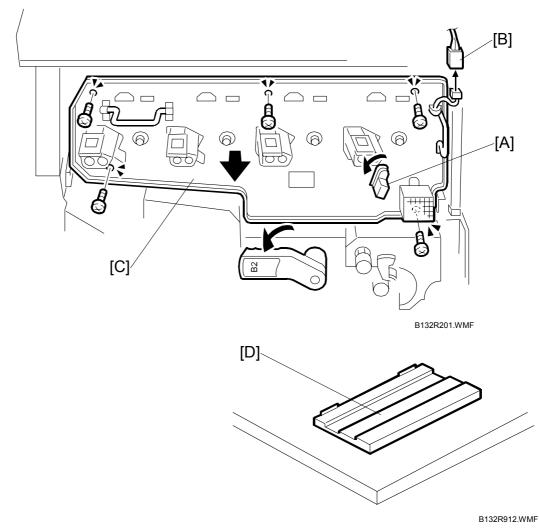
#### 

The hopper is heavy! Lift it carefully, make sure that it disengages completely from the rails on the left and right, and then set it on the floor.

7. Push the hopper rails into the machine.

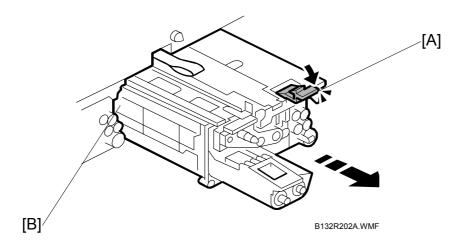
Replacemei Adjustmen

#### To remove the faceplate



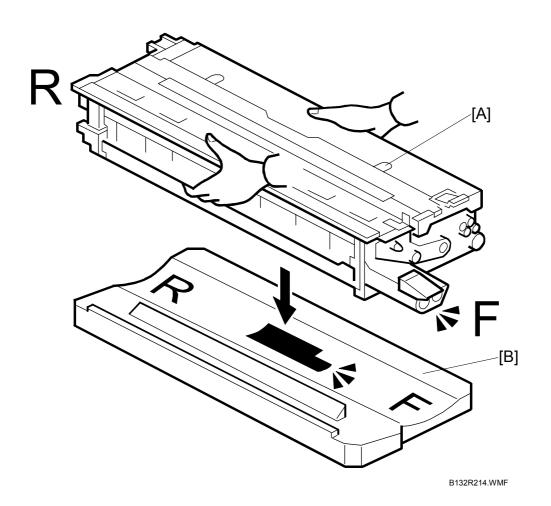
- 8. Rotate the transfer belt release lever [A] counter-clockwise until it stops
- 9. Disconnect the fan connector [B].
- 10. Remove the face plate [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x5).
- Place the PCU stand [D] on a flat surface.
   NOTE: The PCU stand is mounted on a rack attached to the bottom of the copier with magnets.
- 12. Wipe the surface of the stand with a clean cloth to remove dust.

#### To remove a PCU



**Important**: To prevent damage to the drum potential sensor and its relay board, always make sure that the machine is turned off and that the power cord is disconnected from the power source before you remove a PCU.

13. While pressing down the release tab [A] above the PCU, pull the PCU [B] out of the machine.



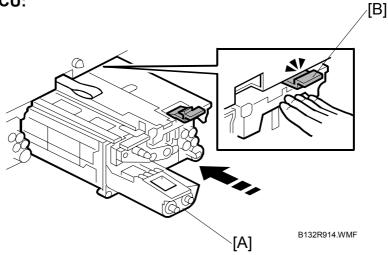
#### IMPORTANT

- THE OPC DRUM IS EXPOSED ON THE BOTTOM OF THE PCU.
- NEVER PLACE YOUR HAND UNDER THE PCU.
- NEVER PLACE THE PCU ON ANY SURFACE OTHER THAN THE PCU STAND.

14. Set the PCU [A] on the PCU stand [B]. **NOTE:** In the diagram, **F** is the front, and **R** is the rear.

### Reinstalling PCU, Faceplate, Toner Hopper

To reinstall a PCU:



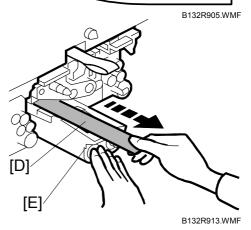
- 1. Hold the PCU [A] in front of the slot where you removed it
- 2. Engage the rails [B] with the slots in the sides of the PCU.
- Slowly push the PCU into the slot. Make sure the release tab [C] above the PCU is locked.
   NOTE: If the PCU does not go in smoothly, make sure the rails [B] and grooves are engaged correctly.

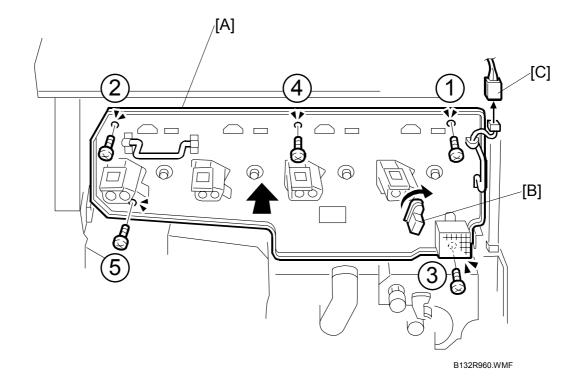
# 

#### Important!

- If you have replaced a developer cartridge in a PCU, be sure to remove the film seals [D] of every replaced developer cartridge after you reinstall it in the machine.
- To release the developer into the PCU, pull out the film seal [D].

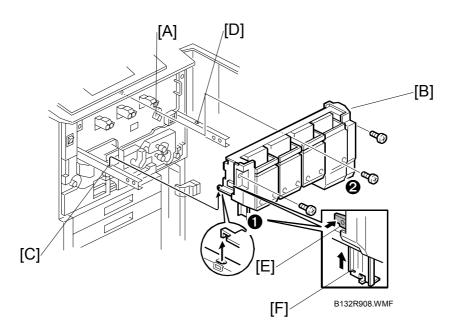
**NOTE**: Put your other hand on the PCU [E] to keep it stable it while you pull on the film seal.





#### To reinstall the faceplate:

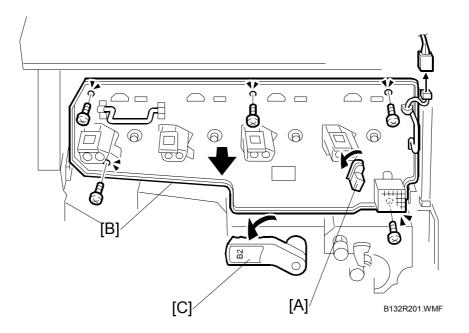
- When you reattach the face plate [A], fasten the screws in the order shown by the numbers above ( x5).
   Important: Do not over tighten these screws.
- 2. Rotate the transfer belt release lever [B] clockwise to lock it.
- 3. Reconnect the fan connector [C] (⊑<sup>IJ</sup> x1).



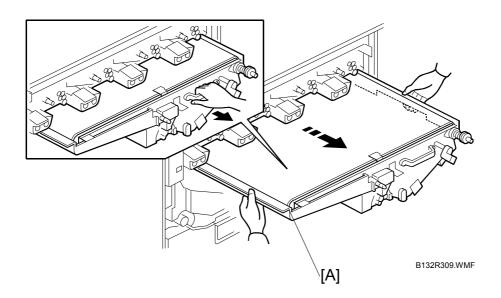
#### To reinstall the hopper:

- 1. Confirm that the transfer belt release lever [A] is up and locked before you reattach the hopper.
- 2. Make sure the hopper rails are fully extended, then set the toner hopper [B] on the rails,
- 3. Make sure the steel tabs of the hopper are inserted into the holes on the left rail [C] and right rail [D].
- Push up the release [E] and support leg [F].
   Important: Make sure that the support leg is up and locked before you push the toner hopper into the machine.
- Place your hands at the bottom of the toner hopper at ① and ② and then push the hopper into the machine against the face plate.
   Important: To avoid damaging the hopper, never press in on the top of the toner hopper.
- Make sure that the hopper is flat against the face plate on the right side.
   NOTE: If the toner hopper [B] is not flat against the face plate on the right side, pull it out slightly and make sure that the transfer belt release lever is rotated up completely and locked.
- 7. Fasten the toner hopper to the face plate ( $\hat{\beta}^{2} x3$ ).

#### 3.2.8 IMAGE TRANSFER UNIT



- 1. Cover the floor or a table with paper to prepare a place to put the image transfer unit.
- 2. Open the front door.
- 3. Remove the toner hopper then push the hopper rails into the machine. (●3.2.7)
- 4. Rotate the transfer belt release lever [A] down to the left until it stops.
- 5. Remove the faceplate [B] (⊑<sup>IJ</sup> x1, ∦ x5).
- 6. Rotate the lever **B2** [C] on the drawer unit counter-clockwise to separate the transfer roller from the ITB.



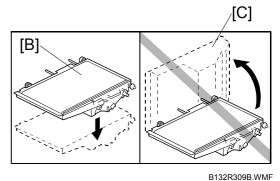
7. Slowly and carefully pull the image transfer unit [A] out of the machine.

#### Important!

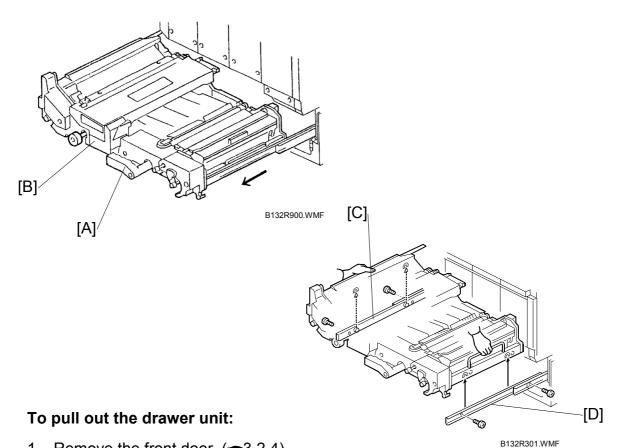
- Remove carefully. The ITB unit is heavy and not attached to the rails with screws.
- To prevent toner scattering inside and outside the unit, keep the unit [B] flat when you remove it, lift it, carry it, and put it down.
- Never stand the ITB unit [C] on its edge before you remove the cleaning unit from the ITB ( 3.8.1).
- Never place the ITB unit on a carpet where toner may scatter or the unit will collect dust.

#### Reinstallation

- Re-insert the image transfer unit slowly and carefully to avoid snagging the belt on the frame of the machine.
- Make sure that the image transfer unit does not snag on the toner cap of the yellow PCU on the far left.



## 3.2.9 DRAWER UNIT



- 1. Remove the front door. (-3.2.4)
- 2. Rotate the lever [A] down to left until it stops.
- 3. Grip the lever to pull the unit [B] out of the machine until it stops.

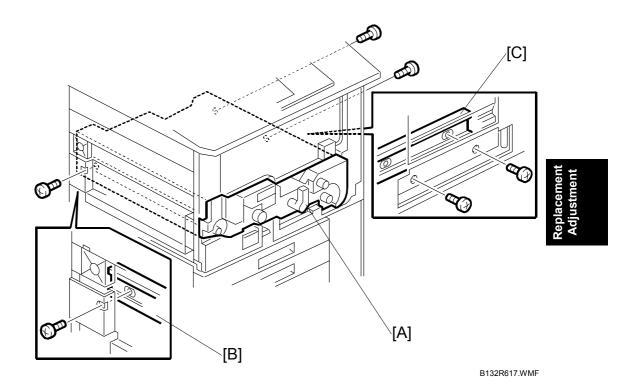
#### To remove the drawer unit:

- 4. Disconnect the left rail [C] ( $\hat{\not}$  x2).
- 5. Disconnect the right rail [D] ( $\hat{\not}$  x2).
- 6. Lift the unit off the rails.

#### 

The drawer unit is very heavy (30 kg/66lb.). After removing it, push the rails into the machine.

#### To re-install the drawer unit



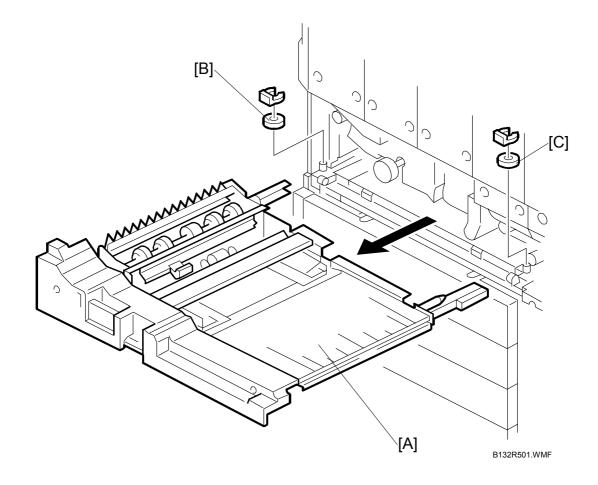
- 1. Remove the right upper cover and the left upper cover. (#3.2.3, 3.2.5,)
- 2. Open the front door.
- 3. Pull out the left rail and right rail.
- 4. Set the unit on the rails.

#### 

The drawer unit is very heavy (30 kg/66lb.). Make sure that hooks are engaged with the holes on the rails.

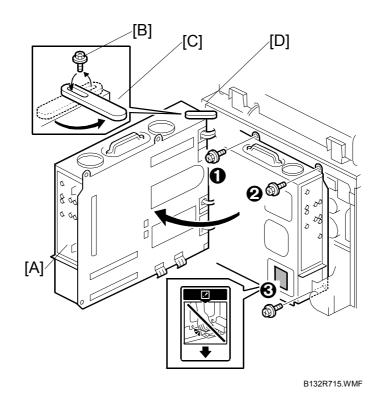
- 5. Slowly push the unit into the machine until it stops.
- 6. Rotate the lever [A] to the vertical position.
- 7. Fasten the screws to the left rail [B] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- Fasten the screws to the right rail [C] ( x2).
   Important! Make sure these screws are fastened and tight. This ensures that the unit is positioned correctly.

## 3.2.10 DUPLEX UNIT



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Pull the duplex unit [A] out until it stops.
- 3. Remove the Teflon ring [B] from the left, rear corner (0 x1).
- 4. Remove the Teflon ring [C] from the right, rear corner (0 x1).
- 5. Lift the duplex unit from the rails and place it on a flat, level surface.

## 3.2.11 OPENING AND LOCKING THE CONTROLLER BOX COVER

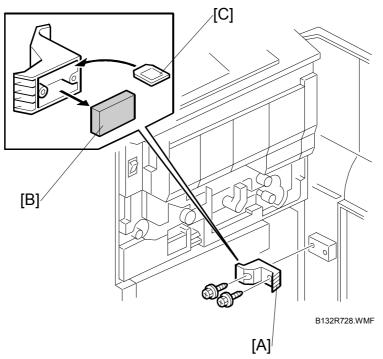


- CAUTION: 1) Before you start this procedure, turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord.
  - 2) To prevent personal injury and damage to the controller box, when the controller box is open, it should always be locked as described below.
- 1. Remove the rear covers (-3.2.6)
- 2. Remove controller box screws **0 2 3**.
- Open the controller box [A] to the left until it stops.
   Important! Obey the warning on the decal to avoid touching the fan blades when you open and close the controller box.
- 4. Remove the left screw [B] of the plastic stopper arm [C].
- 5. Rotate the plastic stopper counter-clockwise until it is aligned with the hole below and its tip [D] is touching the machine frame.
- 6. Reattach the screw removed in Step 4 to lock the arm in position.

#### Reinstallation

• Be sure to reattach the stopper arm at its original position before you close the controller box.

## 3.2.12 SD CARD STORAGE

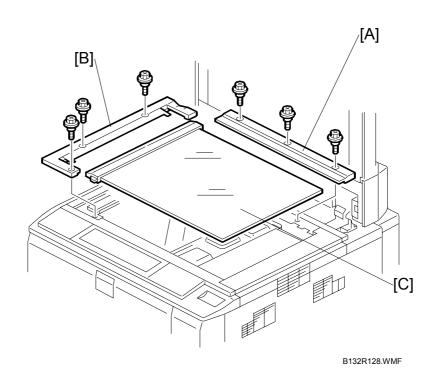


- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove the cover [A] on the door ( $\mathscr{F} x2$ ).
- 3. Remove the block [B].
- 4. Store extra SD cards [C] inside the cover.
- 5. Reattach the cover to the machine

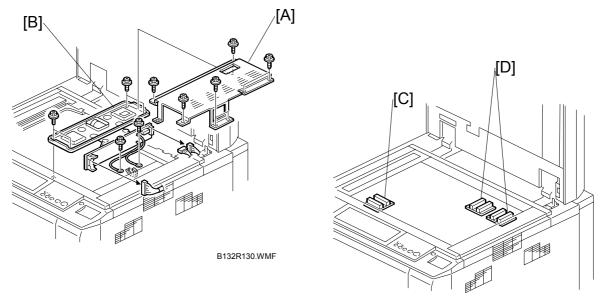
#### Important

- When you replace the door, confirm whether SD cards are stored here.
- Remove any SD cards and store them in the new door. These SD cards serve as prove of purchase of MFP options by the customer.

# 3.3 SCANNER UNIT 3.3.1 EXPOSURE GLASS



- Remove:
- [A]: Rear scale ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x3) [B]: Left glass cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x3) [C]: Exposure glass



## 3.3.2 LENS BLOCK, PAPER SIZE SENSORS

B132R141.WMF

Before you remove the lens block, note the settings of **SP4800 001** to **003** (ARDF density adjustments for R, G, B).

SP4800 001	DF Density Adj: R	ARDF Density Adjustment - Red
SP4800 002	DF Density Adj: G	ARDF Density Adjustment - Green
SP4800 003	DF Density Adj: B	ARDF Density Adjustment - Blue

Remove:

- Exposure glass. (•3.3.1)
- [A]: Lens cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 8$ )
- [B]: Lens block (ℰ x4, 🗊 x3)

**Important**: Remove the lens block carefully to avoid damaging the attached PCB. Do not touch the paint-locked screws on the lens block.

- [C]: Original width sensor (<sup>™</sup> x1, <sup>𝔅</sup> x1)
- [D]: Original length sensors x2 (⊑<sup>1</sup> x1 each, *𝔅* x1 each)

After replacing the lens block, do the following SP codes.

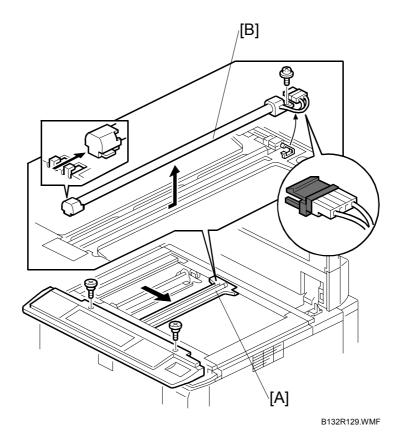
SP4008 001 Sub Scan Mag		Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment	
SP4010 001	Sub Scan Reg	Sub Scan Registration Adjustment	
SP4011 001 Main Scan Reg		Main Scan Registration Adjustment	

After lens block replacement, do some copy samples with the ARDF. Check these points:

- Do the copies have background?
- Is the copy output of the ARDF and platen mode different?

If these problems occur, change **SP4800 001** to **003** to their previous settings, or adjust these SPs until the background is acceptable.

# 3.3.3 EXPOSURE LAMP

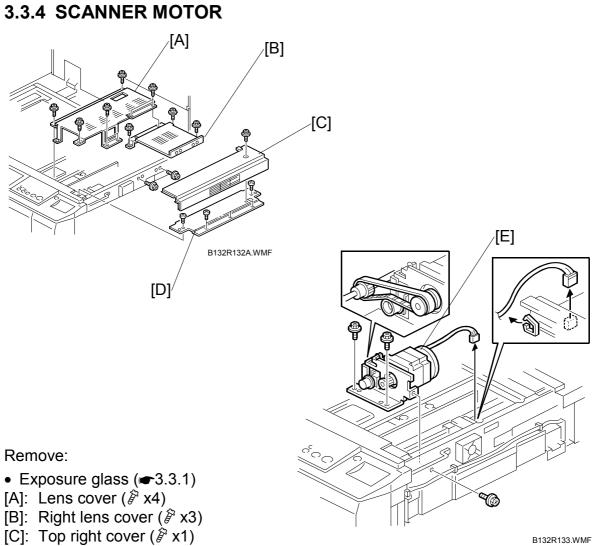


Remove:

- Exposure glass (•3.3.1)
- Operation panel (•3.2.2)
- 1. Slide the 1st scanner [A] to the cutout in the frame.
- 2. Remove the exposure lamp [B] (B x1, I x1,  $\mathring{P}$  x1)

### Important:

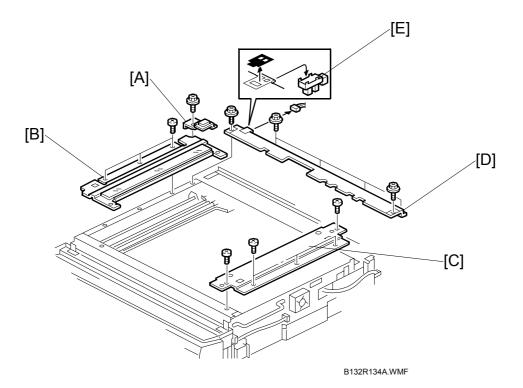
- Never touch the surface of the exposure lamp with bare fingers.
- Work carefully to avoid damaging the relay plugs attached to the rear ends of the lamp.



- [D]: Bracket ( 🖗 x5)
- [E]: Scanner motor (Timing belt x1, 🗟 x1, 🗊 x1, 🖗 x3)

3-28

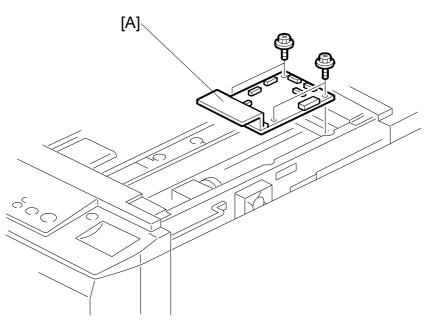
## 3.3.5 SCANNER HP SENSOR



### Remove:

- ARDF (•3.2.1)
- Exposure glass (•3.3.1)
- Top rear, left, right covers (#3.2.5)
- [A]: Ground plate ( x1)
- [B]: Left stay ( $\hat{\beta}$  x3) [C]: Right stay ( $\hat{\beta}$  x5) [D]: Rear stay ( $\hat{\beta}$  x4)
- [E]: Scanner HP sensor (⊑<sup>III</sup> x1)

# 3.3.6 SCANNER INTERFACE BOARD (SIOB)



B132R133A.WMF

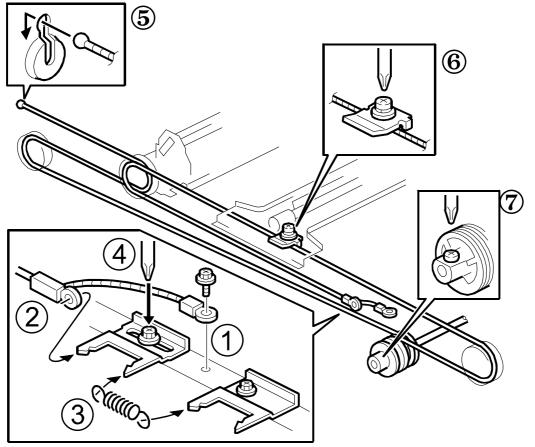
### Remove:

- ARDF (•3.2.1)
- Exposure glass (•3.3.1)
- Right stay, rear stay (•3.3.5)
- Lens cover (•3.3.2)

[A]: Scanner interface board (⊑ x6, ∦ x2)

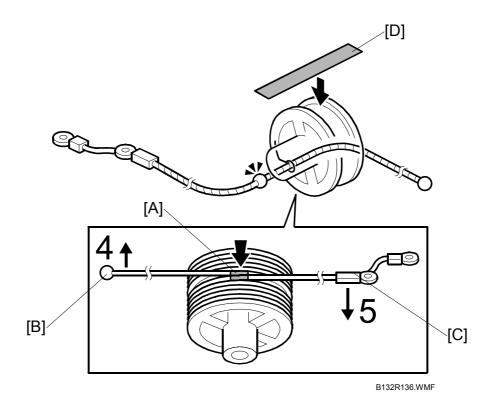
## 3.3.7 SCANNER WIRE

### Scanner Wire Removal



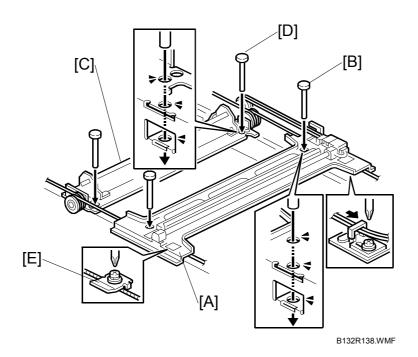
B132R137.WMF

- 1. Remove wire ground () ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ )
- 2. Disconnect the head of wire 2 from tension bracket 1.
- 3. Remove spring ③.
- 4. Loosen the screw 4 of tension bracket 1.
- 5. Disconnect the end of wire at (5).
- 6. Remove lock bracket (6) of the 1st scanner ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x1$ ).
- 7. Disconnect the wire from the pulley  $\widehat{O}$  ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x1).
- 8. Remove the wire from the scanner.



## Scanner Wire Reinstallation and Scanner Position Adjustment

- 1. Place the beads [A] on the middle of the wire on the pulley openings.
- 2. Wind the ball end of the wire [B] 4 times.
- 3. Wind the other end of the wire [C] 5 times.
- 4. Attach tape [D] across the pulley to temporarily hold the wires in place.



- 5. Position the 1st scanner [A] so the holes are aligned and insert the positioning pins [B] (x4).
- 6. Position the 2nd scanner [C] so its holes are aligned and insert the positioning pins [D].
- 7. Attach the lock bracket [E] to fasten the wire to the 1st scanner.
- 8. Tighten the screw of tension bracket (••④,Pg. 3.3.7).
- 9. Attach the pulley and tighten it lock screw ( 9, Pg. 3.3.7).
- 10. Remove the positioning pins (x4).
- 11. Remove the tape from the pulley.
- 12. Slowly push the scanner left and right to confirm that the wires are engaged correctly. The 1st and 2nd scanners should move smoothly.

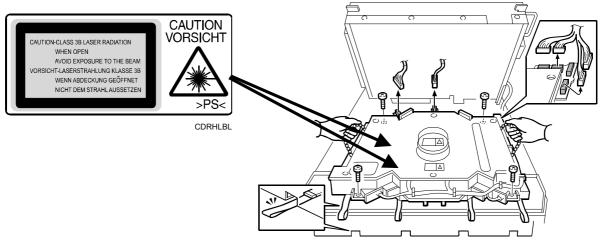
Replacemen Adjustment

# 3.4 LASER UNIT

### 

- This laser unit employs two laser beams produced by a Class III LD with a wavelength of 648 to 660 nm and intensity of 7 mW. Direct exposure to the eyes could cause permanent blindness.
- Before any performing any replacement or adjustment of the laser unit, press the main power switch to power the machine off then unplug the machine from the power source. Allow the machine to cool for a few minutes. The polygon motor continues to rotate for approximately one to three minutes.
- Never power on the machine with any of these components removed: 1) LD unit, 2) polygon motor cover, 3) synchronization detector.

# 3.4.1 CAUTION DECALS



B132R003.WMF

# 3.4.2 POLYGON MOTOR

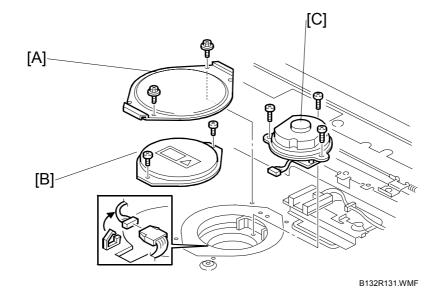
### 

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before performing any procedure in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage the eyes.

### Important!

- An accidental static discharge could damage the laser diode board attached to the lens block unit.
- Touch a metal surface to discharge any static electricity from your hands.
- The polygon motor rotates at extremely high speed and continues to rotate after you switch the machine off. To avoid damaging the motor, never remove the polygon motor within three minutes of switching off the main power and disconnecting the power plug.

Replacemen Adjustment



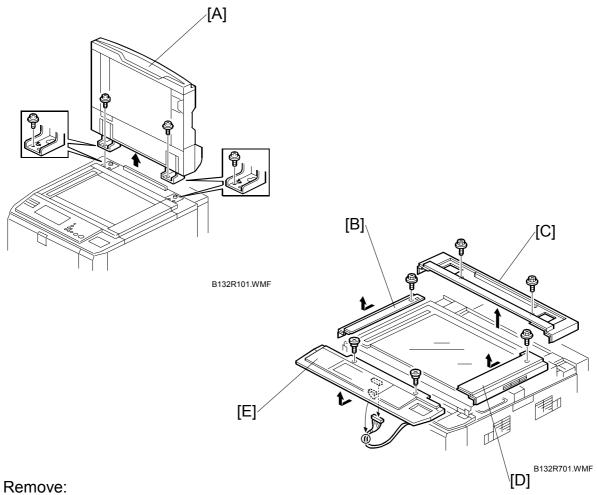
### Remove:

- Exposure glass ( 3.3.1)
- Lens block ( 3.3.2)
- [A]: Top cover (<sup>2</sup> x2)
- [B]: Middle cover (ℰ x2)

### Important!

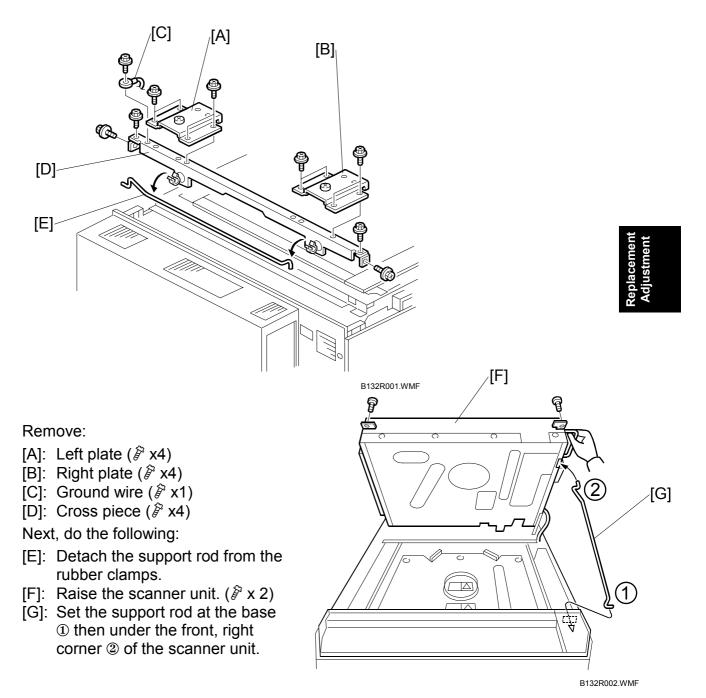
- Do not attempt to remove the paint-lock screws on top of the lens block unit.
- Do not touch the glass covers of the laser ports on the sides of the polygon motor [C]

# 3.4.3 LASER UNIT



- [A]: ARDF (⊑<sup>1</sup> x,1 ∦ x2)

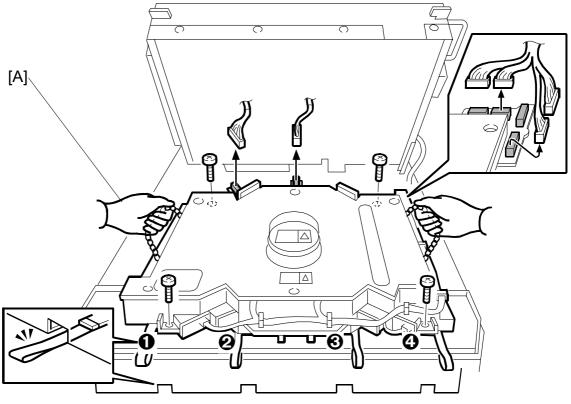
- [B]: Left top cover  $(\hat{\beta} x1)$ [C]: Rear top cover  $(\hat{\beta} x2)$ [D]: Right top cover  $(\hat{\beta} x1)$ [E]: Operation panel  $(\hat{\beta} x2, \exists \exists x1)$



The scanner unit is very heavy. Never remove the support rod during servicing.

### Reinstallation

• Be sure to reconnect ground wire [C].



B132R003.WMF

### Remove:

[A]: Laser unit (ℱ x4, 🕬 x6)

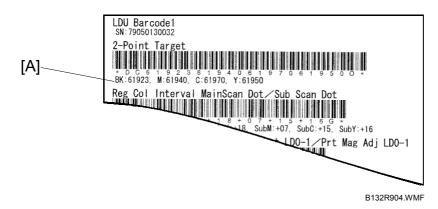
**NOTE**: The laser unit includes four LD sub units. However, the LD sub units cannot be replaced separately because factory adjustment is required.

### Reinstallation

- Make sure that the four tapes **0**, **2**, **3**, **3** are set correctly in the holes.
- Be sure to reconnect the ground wire ([C] on the previous page).

### Adjustments After Laser Unit Replacement

### SP Adjustments



- 1. SP codes are written on an A5 provided with the laser unit. These SP codes must be done after the laser unit is replaced.
  - SP2154 001 (K)
  - SP2154 002 (M)
  - SP2154 003 (C)
  - SP2154 004 (Y)

Only the settings shown with the first barcode [A] (2-Point Target) are necessary. The other information on the sheet can be ignored.

NOTE: Enter the values printed on the A5 sheet. Do not enter the values shown in the sample above.

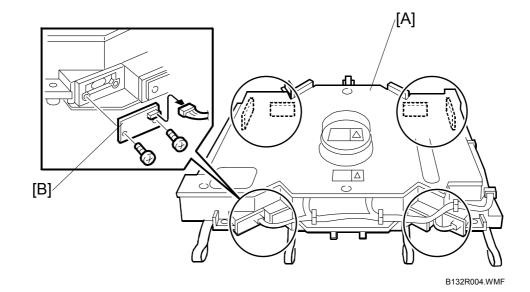
2. Make a test copy (•3.19.4)

### **Color Registration Errors**

- In addition to the SP adjustments printed on the seal attached to the LD unit, if color registration errors occur immediately after you change the laser unit, an additional adjustment is required.
- This additional adjustment is normally not required in the field. Do it only if you see color registration errors in test prints.
- See "Color Registration Test and Error Adjustment" in section for instructions on how to do this adjustment.

### Skew

• If skew occurs immediately after you change the laser unit, do the "Skew Adjustment" in section 3.19.5.



# 3.4.4 LASER SYNCHRONIZATION DETECTOR

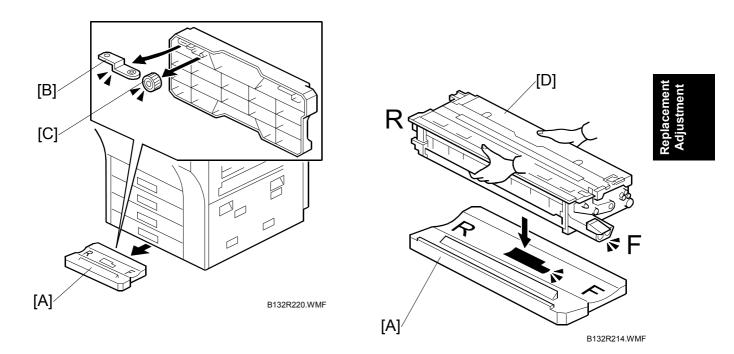
### Remove:

- [A]: Laser unit (•3.4.3)

**NOTE:** In the figure above, note the locations of the 8 laser synchronization detectors (shown within the circles).

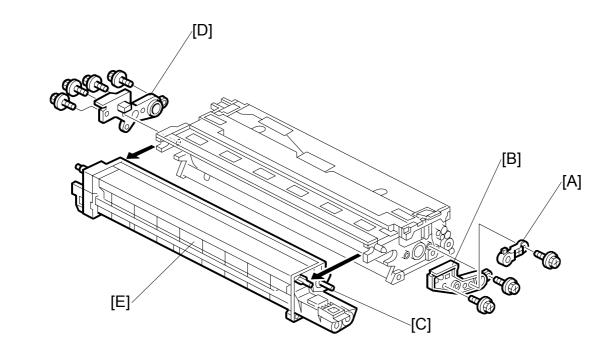
# 3.5 PCU

# 3.5.1 DEVELOPER REPLACEMENT



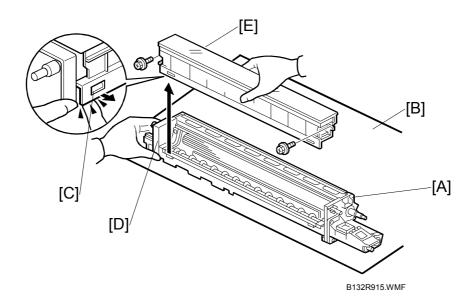
- 1. Spread some paper on a flat surface to hold developer that will be dumped from the development unit.
- 2. Remove the toner hopper and faceplate. (#3.2.7)
- 3. Remove the PCU stand [A] from bottom of the machine.
- 4. From the bottom of the PCU stand, remove the long special tool [B] and gear lock [C].
- 5. Lay the PCU stand [A] on a flat surface.
- 6. Remove the PCU. (•3.2.7)
- Position the front and rear of the PCU [D] so it matches the F (front) and R (rear) markings on the stand, then place the PCU on the stand.
   Important:
  - The front-rear alignment aligns the shape of the stand with the contours of the PCU bottom. This ensures that the exposed drum on the bottom of the PCU is completely protected during servicing.

3-41



B132R210.WMF

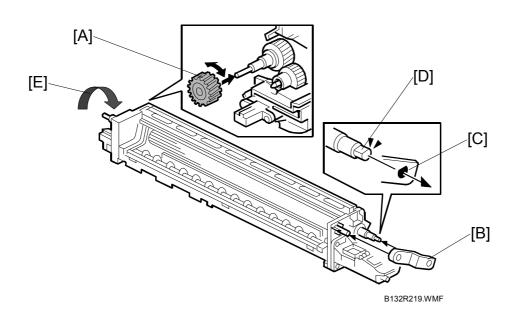
- 8. Remove the drum ( 3.5.4). Cover it with a sheet of A3/DLT paper to protect it from light.
- 9. Vacuum inside the PCU.
  - **NOTE:** Do not vacuum around the brush roller (in the PCU cleaning unit) and around the drum potential sensor.
- 10. On the front end of the PCU, remove the shaft cap [A] and lock plate [B] ( $\mathscr{F} \times 3$ ). **Important:** 
  - After you remove the shaft cap, never turn the shaft [C] of the development roller.
- 11. On the rear end of the PCU, remove the lock plate [D] ( *x* 4).
   **NOTE:** The long screws for the plates [A], [B], and [D] have washers.
- 12. Remove the development unit [E] from the PCU.



- 13. Place the development unit [A] on a clean sheet of A3/DLT paper [B].
- 14. With a fingernail release the tabs [C] on the left.
- 15. Hold the development unit steady with one hand [D] as you remove the old cartridge [E] from the development unit.

### Important:

- The development unit is top heavy, and it tips easily. Be sure to steady it with one hand as you remove the old cartridge.
- Discard the old cartridge. Please obey the local laws and regulations regarding the disposal of such items.
- The screws removed from the cartridge do not have washers. (Do not confuse these screws for the plate screws that were removed in the previous step.)



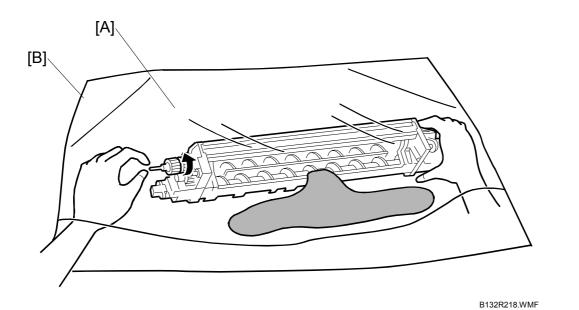
- 16. At the rear of the development unit, attach the lock gear [A] to the development roller shaft.
- 17. At the front, attach the special tool [B].

### Important

- The D-shaped hole of the special tool [C] must fit over the D-shaped shaft tip [D].
- 18. If the hole of the special tool and shaft are not aligned, rotate the D-shaped shaft tip [D] in the direction of the arrow to position the shaft so the special tool can be attached.

### Important

• Always rotate the shaft in the direction of the arrow [E]. To avoid damaging the entrance seal, never rotate the lock gear in the opposite direction.



Replacemen Adjustment

- 19. Place the development unit [A] inside the disposal bag [B] provided.
- 20. Rotate the development unit down, then rotate the lock gear [A] in the direction of the arrow to dump the developer/toner onto the paper.

### Important

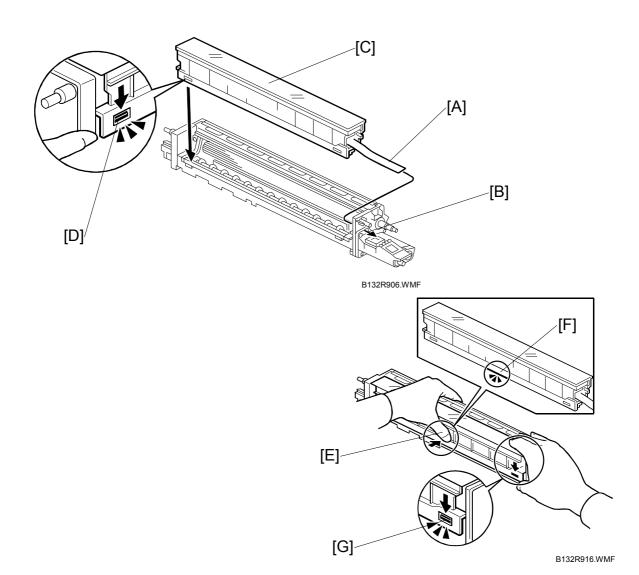
- Rotate the lock gear in the direction indicated by the arrow. To avoid damaging the entrance seal, do not rotate the lock gear in the opposite direction.

B132R925.WMF

21. After dumping as much developer as possible, vacuum the remaining developer and toner.

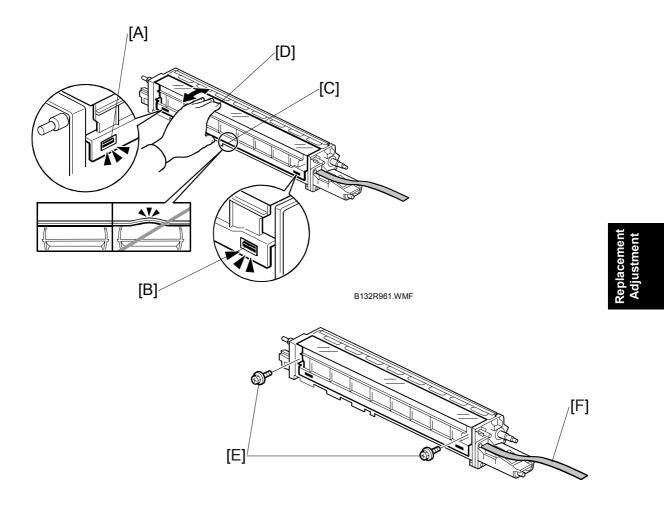
# Important: Be sure to vacuum completely, especially around the development roller.

- 22. Remove the lock gear and long special tool from the PCU.
- 23. Shake the new developer cartridge [F] from side to side about 6 times.



24. Thread the film seal [A] through hole [B].

- 25. Slide the developer cartridge down [C] on the left so the holes and tabs [D] are aligned.
- 26. Press in on the middle of the developer cartridge [E] to lock the tabs inside [F].
- 27. Press down on the left end [D] and right end [G] to lock the tabs.



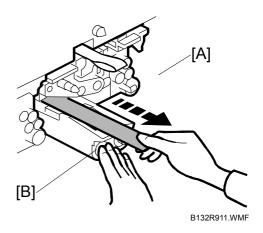
B132R926.WMF

- 28. Check the following to points to be sure that the developer cartridge is set properly.
  - Tabs [A] and [B] should be locked.
  - The developer cartridge edge [C] should be flat and not bulging or floating away from the side of the development unit
  - Pull gently on the developer cartridge at [D] to make sure that it does not part from the development unit.
- 29. Attach the cartridge [E] ( 1 x2).

IMPORTANT: DO NOT REMOVE THE FILM SEAL  $[\ensuremath{\mathsf{F}}]$  on the developer cartridge at this time.

- 30. Re-install the development unit in the PCU.
- 31. Reattach the small and large plate at the front and rear.
- 32. Push the PCU fully into the slot to reinstall it.
- 33. To release the developer in the PCU, pull out the film seal [A].NOTE: Place your other hand on the

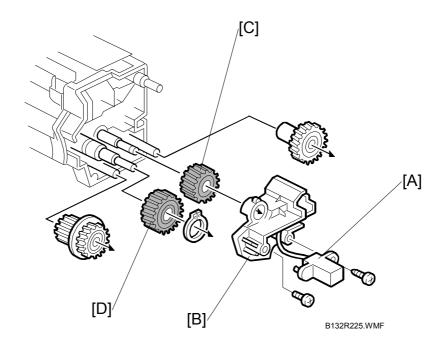
PCU [B] to steady it while you pull on the film seal.



### Reinstallation

Important! YOU MUST DO SOME SPS, OR A FATAL ERROR WILL OCCUR. (#3.5.7)

# 3.5.2 DEVELOPMENT GEARS

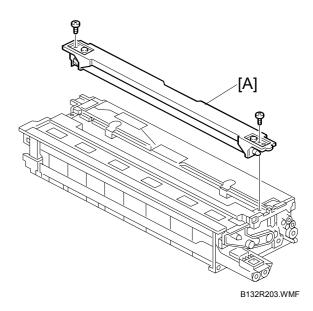


- PCU (@3.2.7)
- Development unit (-3.5.1)
- [A]: TD sensor connector ( $\hat{\beta}$  x1; this is a tapping screw)
- [B]: Development gear cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x1$ )
- [C]: Development roller idle gear
- [D]: Development roller gear (C-ring x1)

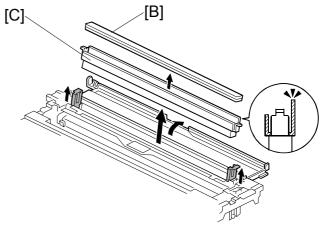
PCU

# 3.5.3 CHARGE ROLLER UNIT

Remove the PCU. ( $rac{-}3.2.7$ ) [A]: Charge roller unit ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x2). This unit contains the charge roller and charge roller cleaning roller

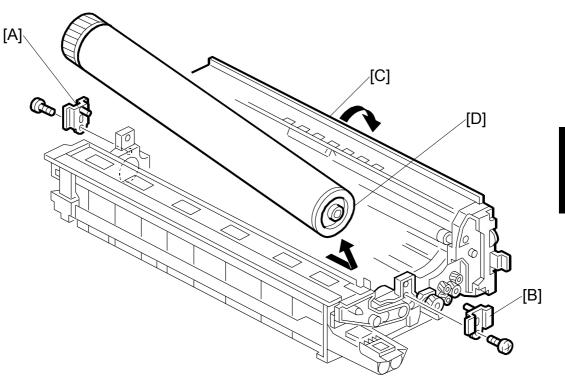


- [B]: Weight
   NOTE: The weight must be used during the full service life of the machine. Be sure to reinstall it.
- [C]: Lubricant bar



B132R224.WMF

## 3.5.4 DRUM AND CLEANING BLADE



#### B132R205.WMF

### Removing the OPC Drum

Remove:

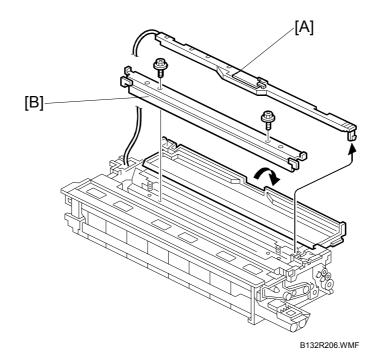
- PCU (🖝 3.2.7)
- Charge roller unit (•3.5.3)
- [A]: Rear bracket ( x1)
- [B]: Front bracket ( x1)
- [C]: Rotate the cleaning unit to the right 90 degrees.
- [D]: OPC drum. Slide to the front to remove.

### Important

• Set the OPC drum on a clean piece of paper and cover it to protect it from light.

### Reinstallation

• Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001 (
 3.19.4).



### Removing the Cleaning Blade

Remove:

- PCU (@3.2.7)
- Charge roller unit (•3.5.3)
- Drum (**•**3.5.4)
- Open the upper cover of the cleaning unit 90 degrees to the right.
- [A]: Bracket
- [B]: Cleaning blade ( $\hat{\beta}$  x2)

### Important

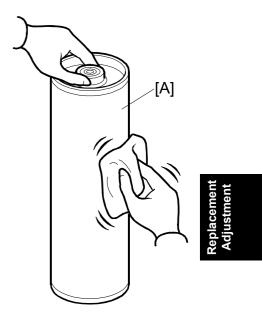
• After you replace the cleaning blade, always coat the drum with Lubricant Powder B1329700. (For more, see the next page.) This must be done even if the drum is not replaced.

### Reinstallation of the drum

To prevent scouring a new drum when the machine is turned on, coat the new drum [A] with Lubricant Powder (B1329700) before you install it.

### Important

- THE LUBRICANT POWDER (B1329700) (COMPOSED OF ZINC STEARATE) IS SPECIALLY DESIGNED FOR THIS MACHINE (B132/B181/B200).
- NEVER USE SETTING POWDER (54429101) FOR THIS MACHINE, OR YOU WILL DAMAGE THE DRUM CHARGE ROLLER AND CAUSE PROBLEMS WITH IMAGE QUALITY.
- YOU MUST DO SOME SPS, OR A FATAL ERROR WILL OCCUR. (#3.5.7)



B132R926.WMF

### Reinstallation

- Always reinstall the front end of the drum first.
- Never rotate the drum after reinstalling it.
- Always dust the drum before reinstallation after it was removed to replace or service other parts in the PCU.

### If the Lubricant Powder (B1329700) is not available...

If the lubricant powder is not available, coat the drum with this model's Yellow toner.

### Important

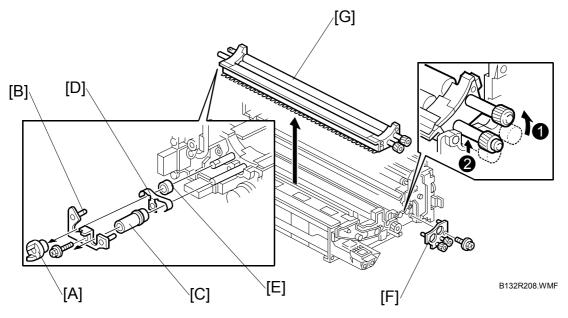
- NEVER USE THE YELLOW TONER OF ANOTHER MODEL.
- NEVER USE TONER TAKEN FROM THE YELLOW PCU TONER SUPPLY PORT, BECAUSE THIS TONER HAS DEVELOPER MIXED WITH IT.

To dust the drum with yellow toner:

- 1. Spread a small amount of fresh yellow toner on a clean sheet of paper.
- 2. Locate a clean, dry piece of cloth.
- 3. Touch the yellow toner with the surface of the cloth.
- 4. Dust the surface of the drum with the cloth until the entire surface is covered.

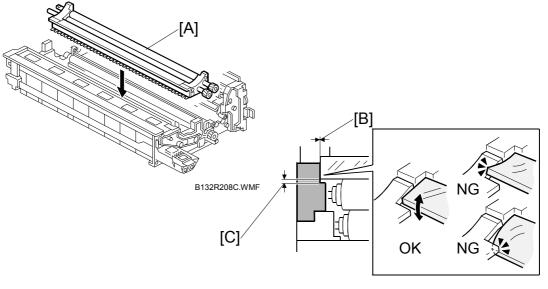
3-53

### 3.5.5 PCU CLEANING UNIT



### Remove:

- PCU (@3.2.7)
- Charge roller unit (•3.5.3)
- Drum ( 3.5.4)
- [A]: PCU joint
- [B]: Rear bracket ( x1)
- [C]: Long sleeve
- [D]: Leaf spring
- [E]: Short sleeve
- [F]: Bracket and 2 gears ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ )
- [G]: Cleaning unit
  - When you remove the cleaning unit, the mylar can catch on the PCU frame and will scatter toner. To prevent this, rotate **①** then lift **②**
  - The cleaning unit contains these PM parts: lubricant brush, toner brush.

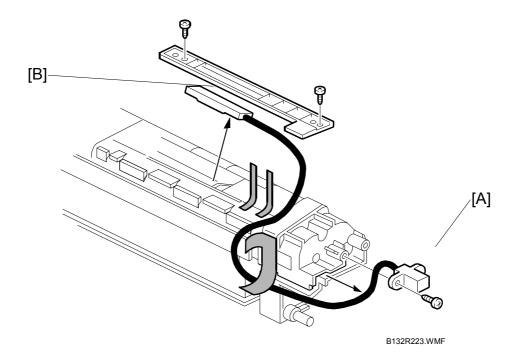


B132R208B.WMF

### Reinstallation

- 1. Install the new cleaning unit [A] in the PCU.
- 2. Check the positions of the seals at the rear and front:
  - There must be no gap [B] between the edge of a seal and the edge of the cleaning blade.
  - There must be no overlap [C] at the edge of the seal and the edge of the cleaning blade.
  - Check that the cleaning blade does not catch on the edges of the seals as shown in the drawing at "OK".

# 3.5.6 TD SENSOR



- Open the front door.
- Remove the PCU from the machine.
- [A]: Connector bracket
- [B]: TD sensor

### Reinstallation

After replacing the TD sensor:

- Replace the developer in the PCU where the TD sensor was replaced. (•3.5.1)
- Do SP3801 001~006 only for the PCU where the TD sensor was replaced.

# 3.5.7 AFTER REPLACING THE PCU COMPONENTS AND DEVELOPER

Do the following procedure after you replace the PCU, development, or any related parts. Pay attention to the combination of replaced parts in the table below (require procedures are different). Any SPs described in this table should be performed according to the steps below.

- 1. Open the front cover, then turn on the main power.
- 2. After the "Open Cover" message is shown on the display, close the front cover.
- 3. Do the required SP.

	Combination of Replaced Parts			Parts	Required SPs	
No.	Drum	Developer	Drum Cleaning Blade	Drum Cleaning Brush	After Replacement	Comments
1	>				SP3820 002	Before reinstallation, cover the
2	~		~		(Manual Procon)	drum completely with Lubricant
3	~			~	SP3810 001-006	Powder.
4	•		~	~	(CIngInitSetExe) -and- SP3820 002 (Manual Procon)	Do NOT do these SPs which initialize the TD sensor: • SP3801 001 to 006 • SP3811 001 to 006
5	~	~			SP3801 001-006 (Init TD Sensor)	Before reinstallation, cover the drum completely with Lubricant Powder. Do these SPs to initialize the TD sensor only for the color(s) that were replaced.
6	~	~	~		SP3811 001-006	Before reinstallation, cover the
7	>	~	V	~	(Dev Setup Exe)	drum completely with Lubricant Powder. Do these SPs to initialize the developer only for the color(s) that were replaced.
8		V			<b>SP3801 001-006</b> (Init TD Sensor)	Do these SPs to initialize the TD sensor only for the color(s) that were replaced.
9		~	~		SP3811 001-006	Do these SPs to initialize the
10		~	~	~	(Dev Setup Exe)	developer only for the color(s) that were replaced.

PCU

### Important!

### ONLY INITIALIZE THE TD SENSOR ONE TIME. DO NOT DO IT MORE THAN ONE TIME.

Only initialize the TD sensor at the following times:

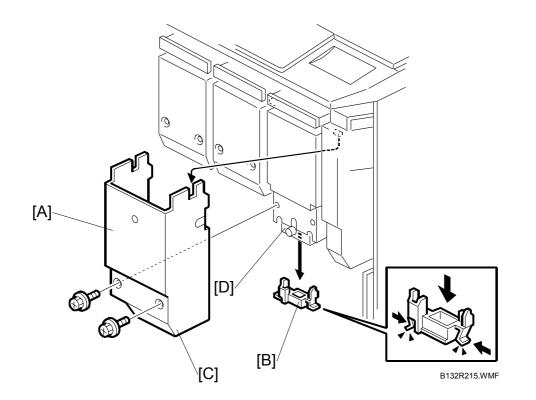
- At installation, exactly as explained in the installation procedure.
- After you replace developer (only initialize the TD sensor for the colour that you replaced)
- As instructed in specific troubleshooting procedures.
- IF YOU DO NOT OBEY THESE INSTRUCTIONS, YOU WILL GET TONER SCATTERING INSIDE THE MACHINE.

Here is a summary of the important difference between **SP3801 001-006** (Init TD sensor) and **SP3811 001-006** (Dev Setup Exe):

- SP3801 001-006 (Init TD sensor) only initializes the TD sensor.
- SP3811 001-006 (Dev Setup Exe) initializes the TD sensor and sends toner to the sub hopper of each PCU. This covers the PCU drum with a layer of toner. Covering the drum with toner prevents the cleaning blades from scratching or bending the drums. SP3811 is necessary only when both the developer and cleaning blade are replaced together. For the other procedures, if you send toner to the PCU, that toner is wasted.

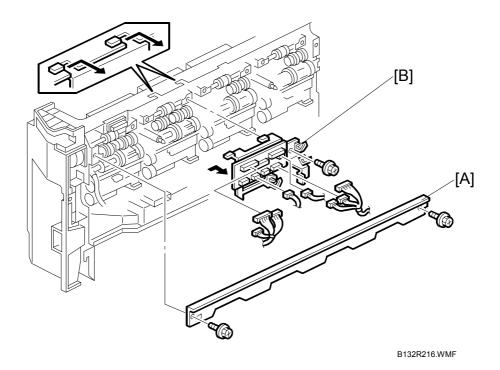
PCU

# 3.6 TONER SUPPLY 3.6.1 STC PORT CLEANING



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove the STC holder front cover [A] ( $\beta$  x2)
- 3. Remove the STC bottom cover [B] (Pawls x2)
- 4. Wrap a clean cloth around the tip of a small screwdriver then scrape away any toner that has collected inside the bottom cover.
- 5. Use a clean cloth to clean the bottom of the holder cover [C] and the bottom of the holder [D].

# 3.6.2 CONNECTOR BOARD (CNB)

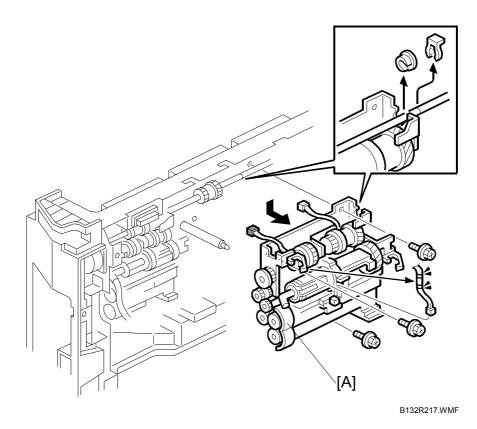


- Open the front door.
- Remove the toner hopper (-3.2.7)

### Remove:

- [A]: Support bracket ( $\hat{\beta}$  x2) [B]: CNB ( $\mathbb{Z}$  x8,  $\hat{\beta}$  x1). Slide the PCB assembly to the right and remove it.

# 3.6.3 TONER PUMP

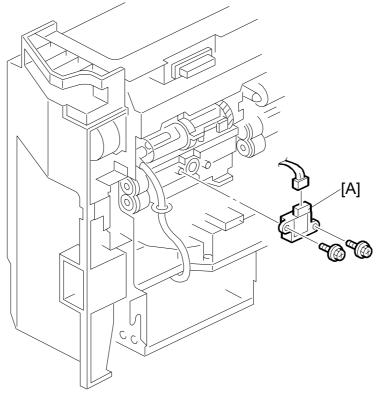


• Open the front door.

### Remove:

- Toner hopper (•3.2.7)
- Support bracket (•3.7.2)
- Connector Board (•3.6.2)
- [A]: Toner pump assembly (  $x_3$ ,  $x_3$ , Bushing x1,  $x_3$ , x1). Pull the assembly straight down and remove it.

## 3.6.4 TONER END SENSOR

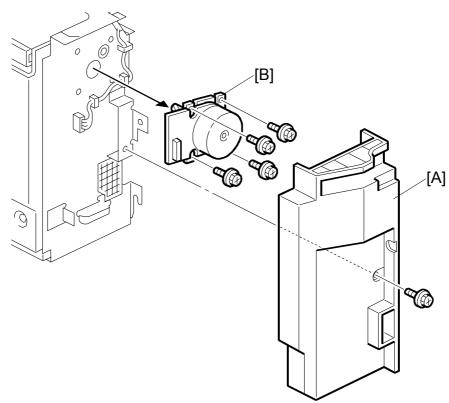


B132R213.WMF

• Open the front door.

- Toner hopper (#3.2.7)
- [A]: Toner end sensor (≅ x1, ⅔ x2)

## 3.6.5 TONER SUPPLY MOTOR

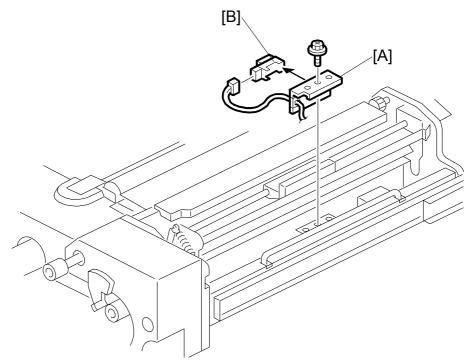


B132R211.WMF

- Toner hopper (●3.2.7)
  [A]: Motor cover (斧 x1)
  [B]: Toner supply motor (斧 x4, ➡ x1)

## 3.7 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT

## 3.7.1 RELAY SENSOR



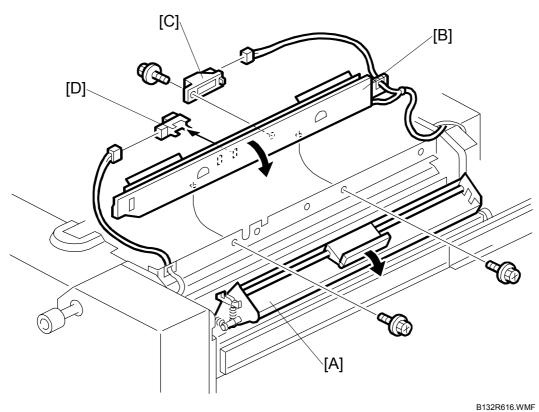
B132R615.WMF

Pull out the drawer unit. (•3.2.9)

- [A]: Sensor bracket ( x1)
  [B]: Relay sensor ( x1)

#### Reinstallation

## 3.7.2 DOUBLE-FEED SENSORS, REGISTRATION SENSORS



D1321(010.0

- Pull out the drawer unit. ((-3.2.9)
- Open the guide plate [A].

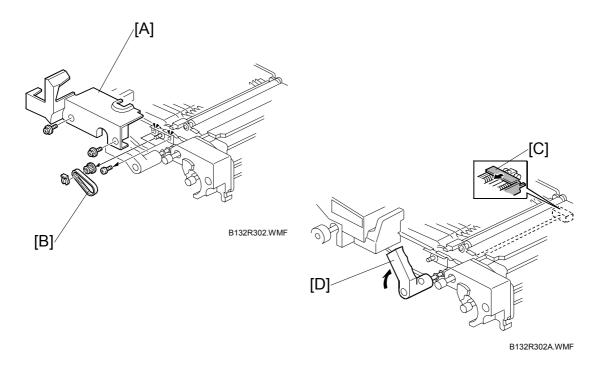
#### Remove:

- [B]: Sensor support plate (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>8</sub> x2)
- [C]: Double-feed detection sensor (E<sup>I</sup> x1, <sup>(</sup>∕<sup>P</sup> x1)
- [D]: Registration sensor (🗊 x1)

#### Reinstallation

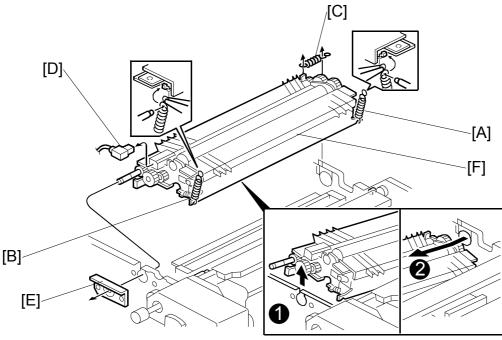
• Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001 (
 3.19.4).

## 3.7.3 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT



• Pull out the drawer unit. (•3.2.9)

- [A]: Paper transport unit cover ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x^2$ )
- [B]: Timing belt, gear ( x1)
- NOTE: Do not loosen or remove the paint-locked screws.
- [C]: Press the release forward
- [D]: Raise the handle to the vertical position.



Replacement Adjustment

B132R303.WMF

Change the position of:

- [A]: Spring
- [B]: Spring

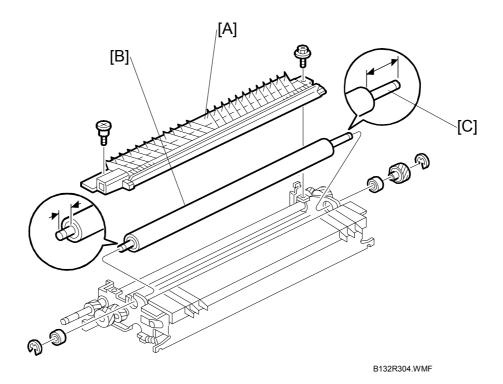
Remove:

- [C]: Spring
- [D]: Connector ( 1 x1) (use a pair of small pliers to remove the connector)
- [E]: Bracket ( x2)
- [F]: PTR Unit
  - The handle should be up.
  - Raise the front **0**.
  - Pull the rear Ø

#### Reinstallation

- Be sure to set springs [A], [B], and [C] in their original positions before you reinstall the PTR unit.

## 3.7.4 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER, DISCHARGE PLATE



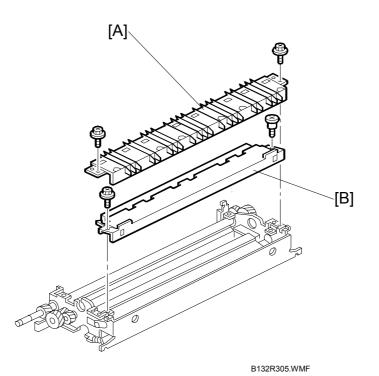
Remove:

- Paper transfer unit (•3.7.3)
- [A]: Paper transfer discharge plate ( $\beta x^2$ )
- [B]: Paper transfer roller ( $\breve{C}$  x2, Gear x1, Shaft bearings x2)

#### Reinstallation

- When you install the roller, the long end [C] is at the rear.
- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001 (# 3.19.4).

## 3.7.5 LUBRICANT BAR



Replacement Adjustment

Remove:

• Paper transfer unit (•3.7.3)

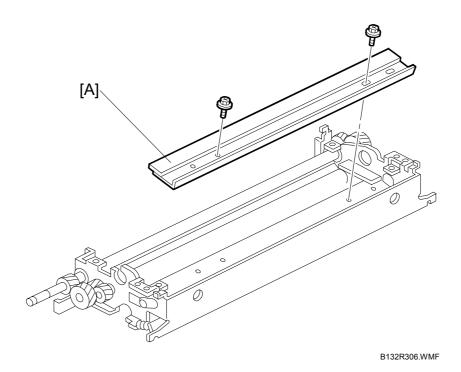
[A]: Entrance guide plate ( 2 x2)

[B]: Lubrication bar (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>ℓ</sub> x2)

Important! Work carefully to avoid scratching the paper transfer roller.

#### Reinstallation

## 3.7.6 CLEANING BLADE

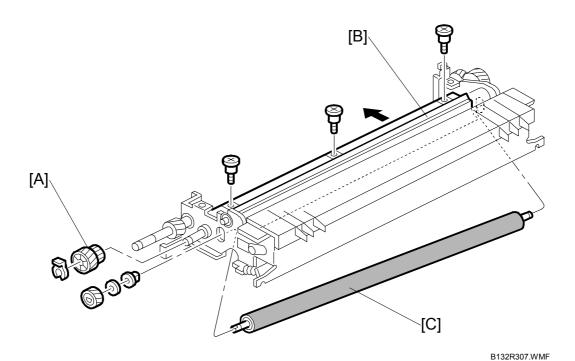


Remove:

- Paper transfer unit (#3.7.3)
- Lubrication bar (-3.7.5)
- [A]: Cleaning blade ( $\hat{\beta} x2$ )

#### Reinstallation

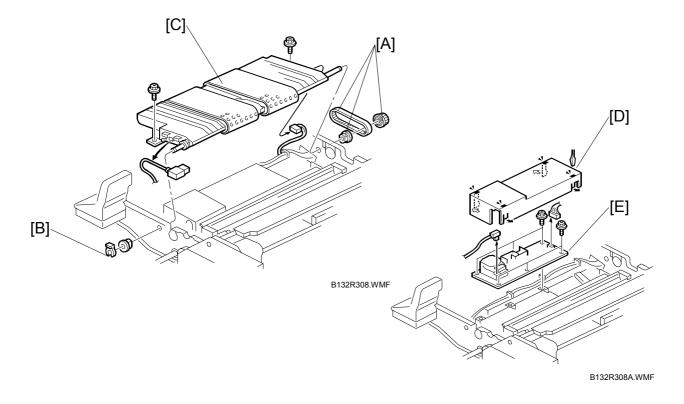
## 3.7.7 CLEANING BRUSH ROLLER



Remove:

- Paper transfer unit (•3.7.3)
- Transfer exit guide, paper transfer roller (#3.7.4)
- [A]: Gear (⑦ x1, Gear x1)
- [B]: Brush roller cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 3$ )
- [C]: Cleaning brush roller (Gear x1, Washer x1, Shaft bearing x1)

#### Reinstallation



## 3.7.8 PAPER TRANSPORT BELT, PAPER SEPARATION PP

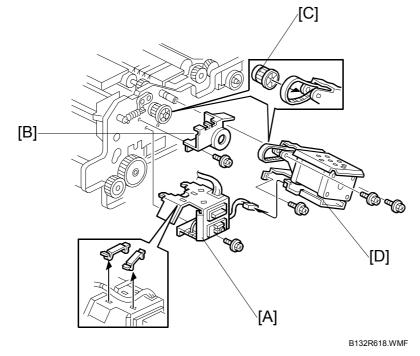
• Pull out the drawer unit ((\*3.2.9)

Remove:

- Paper transport unit lever and cover (•3.7.3)
- Fusing unit (#3.9.2)
- [A]: Timing belt x1, Gear x1, Shaft bearing x1
- [B]: Snap ring x1, Shaft bearing
- [C]: Paper transport belt ( x2, w x2)
- [D]: Cover
- [E]: Separation power pack (ℰ x6, 🖽 x2)

#### Reinstallation

## 3.7.9 REGISTRATION MOTOR

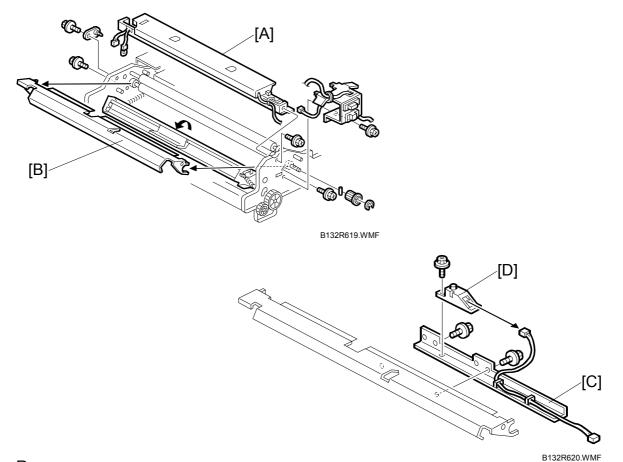


#### Remove:

- Drawer unit (**•**3.2.9)
- [B]: Gear cover ( x1)
- [C]: Registration gear ( $\mathbb{C}$  x1, Spring pin x1)
- [D]: Registration motor assembly (ℱ x3, 🗐 x1)

#### Reinstallation

## 3.7.10 DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION LED



Remove:

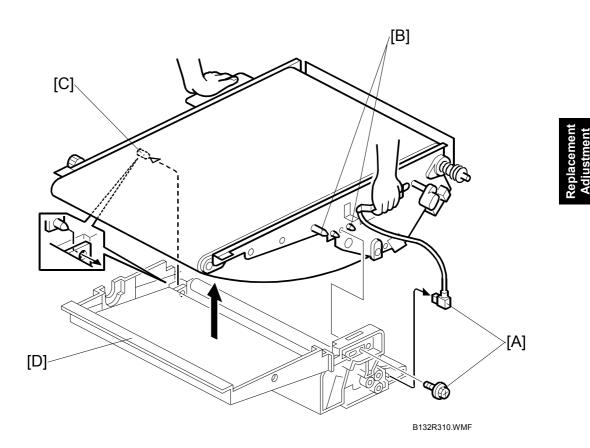
- Drawer unit (•3.2.9)
- Drawer unit connector bracket (•3.7.9)
- Registration motor (•3.7.9)
- Sensor support plate (•3.7.2)
- Registration motor inner cover ( x4)
- [A]: Upper stay (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>ℓ</sub> x2)
- [C]: Sensor bracket ( x2)

#### Reinstallation

• Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001 (# 3.19.4).

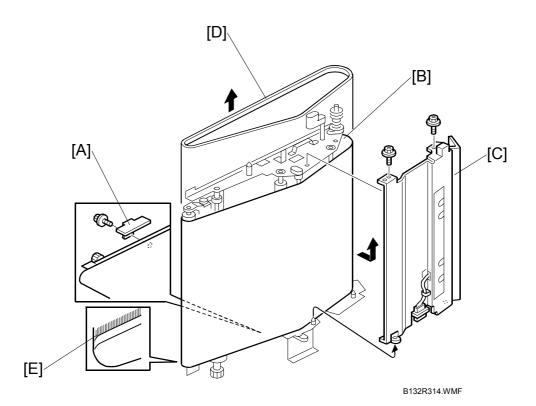
## 3.8 IMAGE TRANSFER UNIT

## 3.8.1 ITB, BELT CLEANING UNIT



#### Disassembly and ITB Replacement

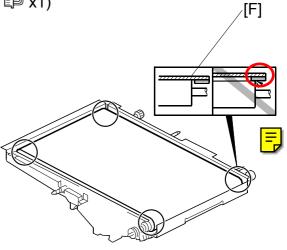
- 1. Put a clean sheet of paper on a flat surface.
- 2. Remove the ITB unit from the machine (-3.2.8). Put the ITB unit on the sheet of paper.
  - **NOTE:** Keep the unit flat when you remove it, lift it, carry it, and put it down. Otherwise, waste toner will spill out, and will spill inside the unit, and this can cause copying problems.
- 3. Disconnect the image transfer belt unit connector and screw [A] ( $\hat{\not}$  x1,  $\exists U$  1x)
- 4. Push the image transfer unit to the rear to disengage the front pins [B].
- 5. Pull the unit to the front to disengage the rear pin [C].
- 6. Lift the image transfer unit to separate it from the belt cleaning unit [D].



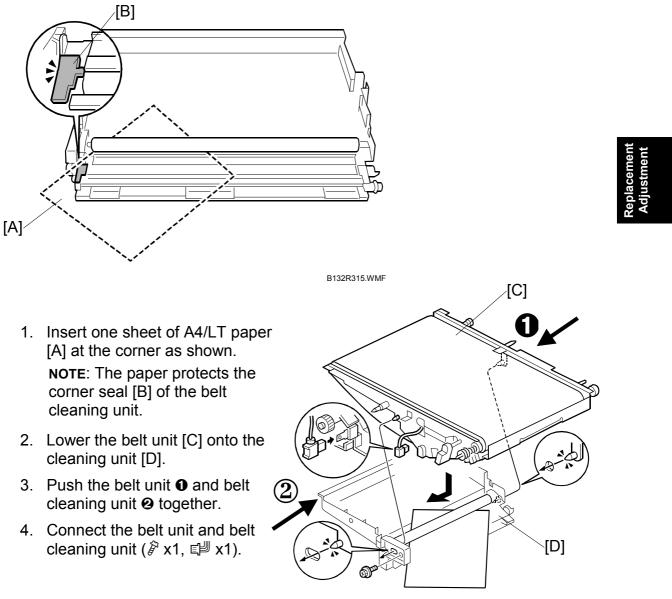
- [A]: Encoder sensor bracket ( 2 x1)
- [B]: Set the image transfer unit on its front side up.
- [C]: ID sensor/MUSIC sensor plate ( x2, 1 x1)
- [D]: ITB

#### Important

- When you install the new belt, the edge of the belt with the encoder film strip must be at [E]. The encoder must be at the rear side.
- The encoder edge of the ITB is silver.
- Make sure that the belt flange [F] does not touch the roller edge.

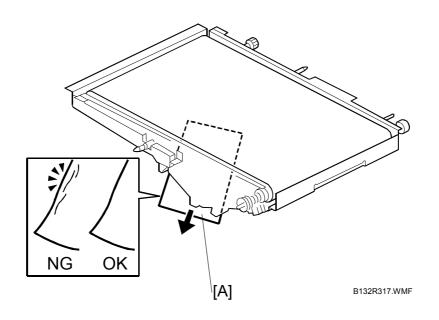


B132R317A.WMF



## Reassembly of the Image ITB Unit and Belt Cleaning Unit

B132R316.WMF



- 5. Pull out the paper [A] slowly.
- 6. Check the paper.

If the paper is unmarked, go to the next step. -or-

If the paper is creased or torn, separate the image transfer belt and cleaning unit. Inspect the seal. If the seal is damaged, replace it.

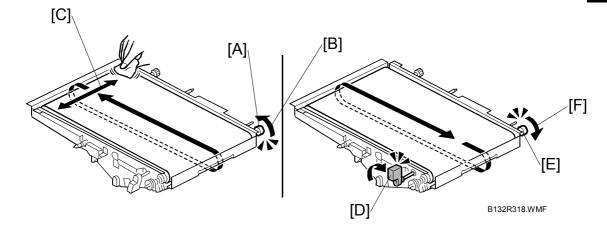
#### Dusting the ITB with Lubricant Powder

1. Get a pack of Lubricant Powder B1329700.

#### Important!

- THE ITB MUST BE COATED WITH LUBRICANT POWDER B1329700) BEFORE INSTALLING A NEW ITB.
- THE LUBRICANT POWDER (B1329700) (COMPOSED OF ZINC STEARATE) IS SPECIALLY DESIGNED FOR THIS MACHINE (B132/B181/B200).
- NEVER USE SETTING POWDER (54429101) FOR THIS MACHINE, OR YOU MAY DAMAGE THE DRUM CHARGE ROLLER AND CAUSE PROBLEMS WITH IMAGE QUALITY.
- NEVER USE TONER TAKEN FROM THE TONER SUPPLY PORT OF THE YELLOW PCU BECAUSE THIS TONER HAS DEVELOPER MIXED WITH IT.
- IF THE LUBRICANT POWDER (B1329700) IS NOT AVAILABLE, COAT THE ITB WITH THIS MACHINE'S YELLOW TONER. DO NOT USE ANOTHER MODEL'S YELLOW TONER.

Replacemen Adjustment



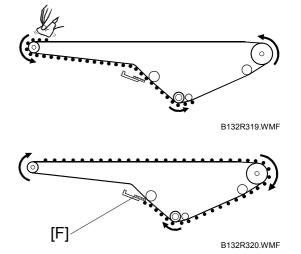
- 2. While rotating the knob [A] in the direction indicated by the arrow [B], apply Lubricant Powder B1329700 at [C] with a soft dry cloth.
- 3. Rotate the ITB indicated by the arrow [B] through one full rotation. This allows the lubricant powder to be spread completely on the ITB.
- 4. Turn the lever [D] to the 'up' position.
- 5. After the ITB is completely covered with powder, rotate the knob [E] in the direction indicated by the arrow [F].

#### Important

• Be sure to apply powder until the ITB is completely covered.

• After covering the surface of the ITB with

lubricant power, be sure to rotate the ITB through one full rotation in the opposite direction. This allows the cleaning blade edge [F] to be covered with sufficient

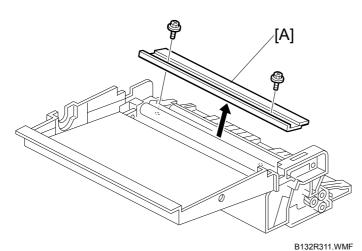


#### Reinstallation

lubricant powder.

## 3.8.2 ITB CLEANING BLADE, DUST COLLECTION UNIT

[C]



Replaceme Adjustmen

[B]

B132R312A.WMF



OK

[D]

NG

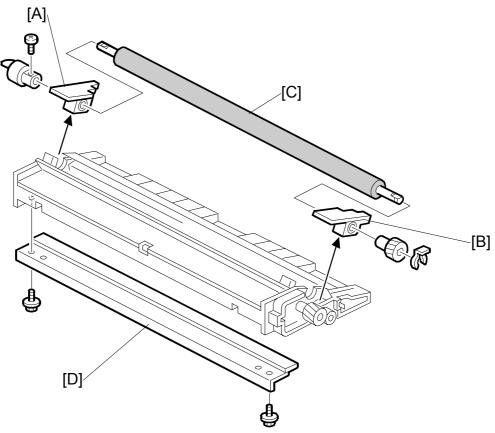


- Image transfer unit (-3.2.8)
- Belt cleaning unit (•3.8.1)
- [A]: ITB cleaning blade (<sup>2</sup> x2)
- [B]: Dust collection unit (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>ℓ</sub> x3)

#### Reinstallation

- After reinstallation of the dust collection unit, confirm that the seal [C] is covered by the bracket [D].

## 3.8.3 ITB CLEANING ROLLER, SCRAPER BLADE



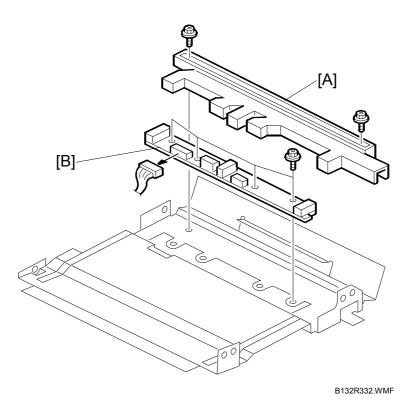
B132R313.WMF

#### Remove:

- Image transfer unit, ITB cleaning unit (#3.8.1)
- ITB cleaning blade, dust collection unit (#3.8.2)
- [A]: Rear bracket, coupling ( 2 x1)
- [B]: Front bracket ( ( x1, Gear x1)
- [C]: ITB cleaning roller
- [D]: ITB cleaning scraper blade ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ )

#### Reinstallation

## 3.8.4 MUSIC AND ID SENSORS

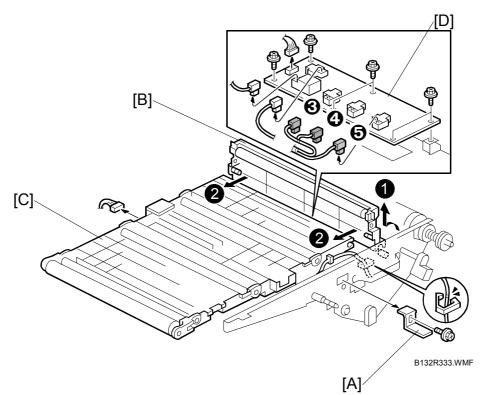


Remove the ID sensor/music sensor plate (#3.8.1)

[A]: Cover ( \$\hightarrow x2)
[B]: Music and ID sensors ( \$\hightarrow x4, €\$\black\$ x1)

#### Reinstallation

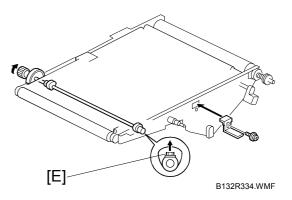
## 3.8.5 IMAGE TRANSFER POWER PACK



- Remove the ITB ((3.8.1)
- [A]: Support bracket ( x1)
- [B]: Small idle roller plate
- [C]: Large idle roller plate
- [D]: Image transfer power pack (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>ℓ</sub> x6, ⊑<sup>1</sup>/<sub>ℓ</sub> x6)

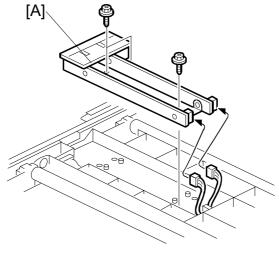
#### Reinstallation

- Connect the color coded connectors at the correction positions.
  - 8 Red
  - Blue
  - **6** Yellow
- When you reattach the support bracket [A] rotate the screw [E] up as shown, then tighten it.



#### Reinstallation

## 3.8.6 BELT POSITION SENSORS



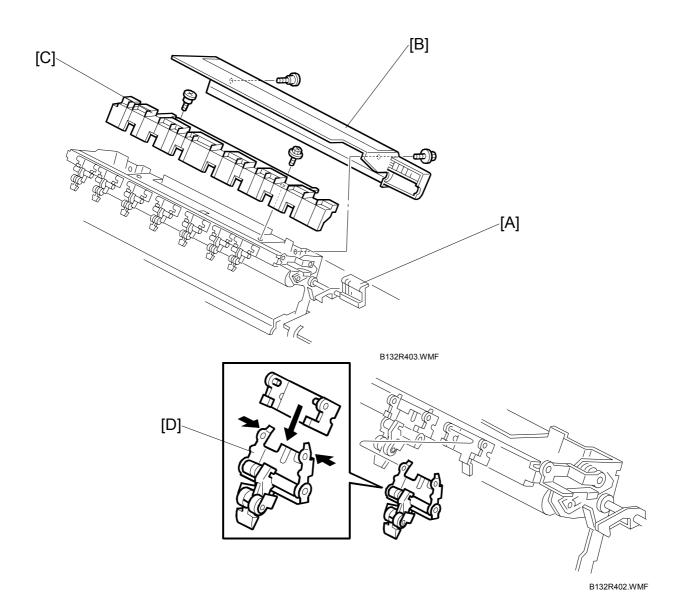
B132R335.WMF

• Remove the ITB ((•3.8.1)

[A]: Belt position sensor assembly (ℱ x3, 🗊 x2)

#### Reinstallation

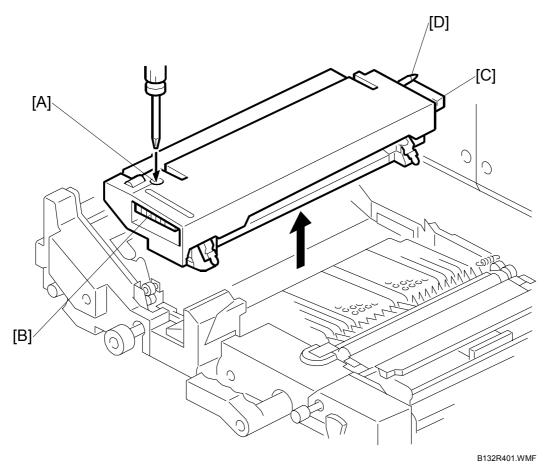
## 3.9 FUSING UNIT **3.9.1 FUSING BELT STRIPPERS**



Pull out the drawer unit (-3.2.9)

- [A]: Raise lever until it stops.
- [B]: Fusing cleaning unit cover ( $\hat{\beta}$  x2) [C]: Fusing unit exit guide ( $\hat{\beta}$  x2)
- [D]: Hot roller stripper
  - Press the sides in to disconnect the pawls and remove.

## 3.9.2 FUSING UNIT

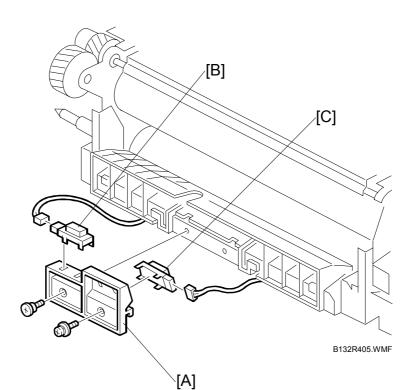


- 1. Turn off the copier and disconnect the power cord at the power source.
- 2. Open the front door.
- 3. Pull out the drawer unit. (•3.2.9)
- 4. Allow the machine to cool for at least 10 minutes.
- 5. Loosen the fusing unit screw [A] ( $\hat{\beta}$  x1)
- 6. Grip the fusing unit at [B] and [C] and lift the unit to remove it.

#### Important

• Do not touch the reference pin [D] when lifting the fusing unit.

## 3.9.3 FUSING EXIT SENSOR, ACCORDION JAM SENSOR



- Fusing unit (**•**3.9.2)
- [A]: Sensor bracket (ℱ x2)
- [B]: Fusing exit sensor (⊑ x1)
- [C]: Accordion jam sensor ( 1 x1)

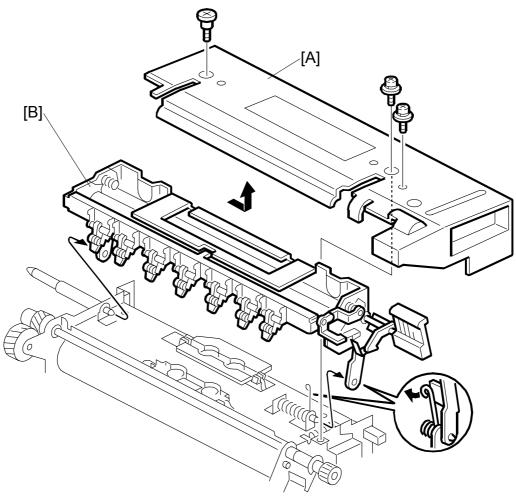
# [B] -[A] B132R407.WMF -61 [C] B132R410.WMF

## 3.9.4 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOSTATS, THERMISTOR

- Fusing unit (*•*3.9.2)

- [A]: Lower entrance guide cover ( $\hat{\beta}$  x2) [B]: Pressure roller thermostats ( $\hat{\beta}$  x4) [C]: Pressure roller thermistor ( $\hat{\beta}$  x1,  $\exists \forall$  x1)

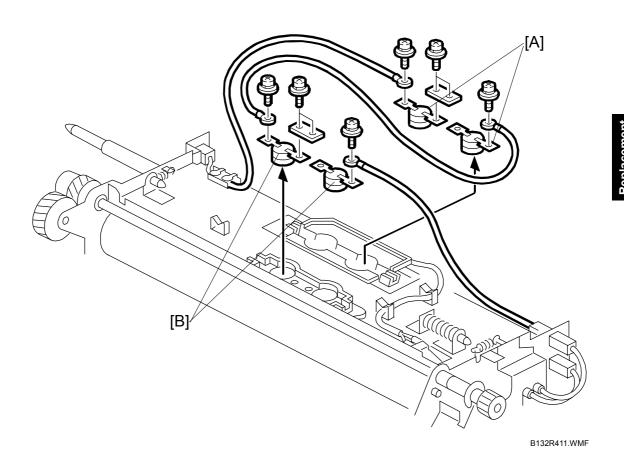
## 3.9.5 FUSING CLEANING UNIT



B132R408.WMF

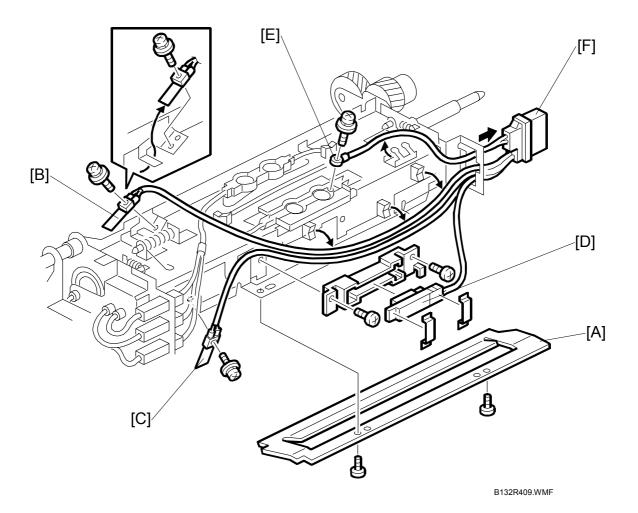
- Fusing unit (•3.9.2)
- [A]: Fusing unit upper cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 3$ )
- [B]: Fusing cleaning unit (Spring x1)

## 3.9.6 FUSING BELT THERMOSTATS



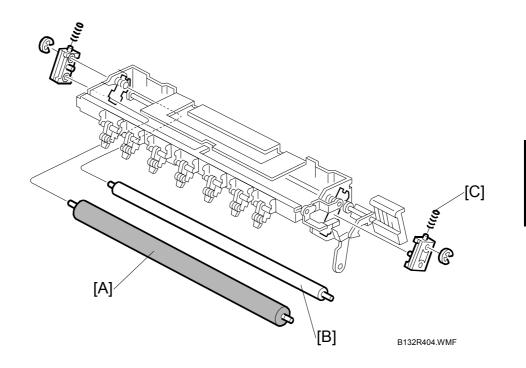
- Fusing unit (#3.9.2)
- Fusing cleaning unit (•3.9.5)
- [A]: Two left thermostats ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x4$ )
- [B]: Two right thermostats ( $\hat{\beta} \times 4$ )
  - **NOTE:** The thermostats, installed in line with one another, are of two types. One is marked with a red mark, but their order of installation is not important.

## 3.9.7 FUSING THERMISTORS, HEATING ROLLER TEMPERATURE SENSOR



- Fusing unit upper cover (•3.9.1)
- Fusing cleaning unit (-3.9.5)
- [A]: Fusing unit belt cover ( $\hat{\beta} x^2$ )
- [B]: Hot roller thermistor ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ )
- [C]: Heating roller thermistor ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ )
- [D]: Heating roller temperature sensor ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x^2$ , Spring plates x2)
- [E]: Wire (Š x1)
- [F]: Connector leads. Pull through the frame.

## 3.9.8 FUSING BELT OIL SUPPLY ROLLER, CLEANING ROLLERS



Remove:

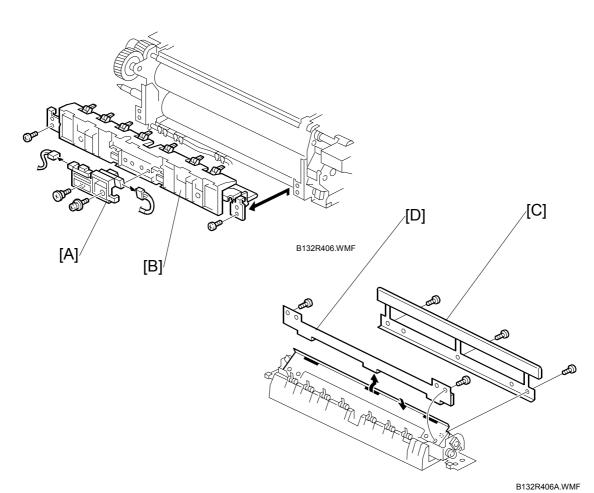
- Fusing unit (**•**3.9.2)
- Fusing cleaning unit (•3.9.5)
- 1. Remove the oil supply roller [A] (Springs x 2, Bushing x2,  $\mathbb{C}$  x2).
- 2. Remove the oil supply cleaning roller [B]. **NOTE:** Press on each end of the roller to release the springs [C].

#### Reinstallation

• When you install the oil supply roller, the end with the serial number must be toward the rear of the machine.

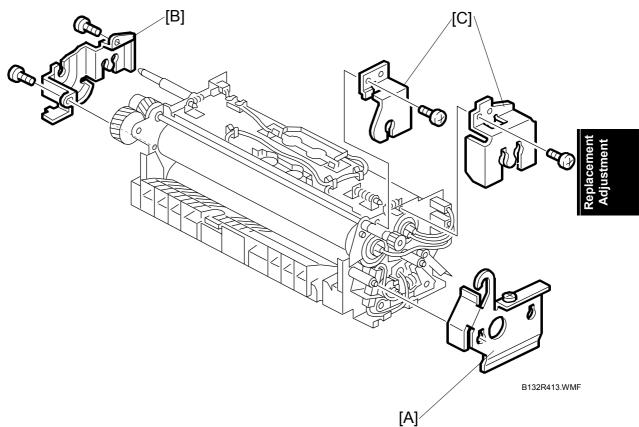


## 3.9.9 PRESSURE ROLLER CLEANING FELT PADS

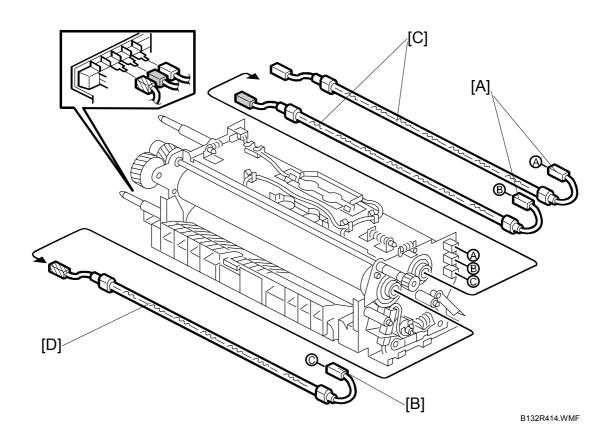


- Fusing unit (**•**3.9.2)
- [A]: Exit sensor bracket ( x2, x2, x2)
- [B]: Lower exit guide assembly ( $\hat{F} x2$ )
- [C]: Cleaning felt (large) ( X3)
- [D]: Cleaning felt (small) ( x2)

## 3.9.10 HOT ROLLER, HEATING ROLLER FUSING LAMPS



- Fusing unit (*•*3.9.2)
- Fusing unit upper cover (-3.9.1)
- Fusing cleaning unit (•3.9.5)
- [A]: Bracket
- [B]: Rear lamp bracket ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ )
- [C]: Front lamp brackets ( $\beta$  x1 each)



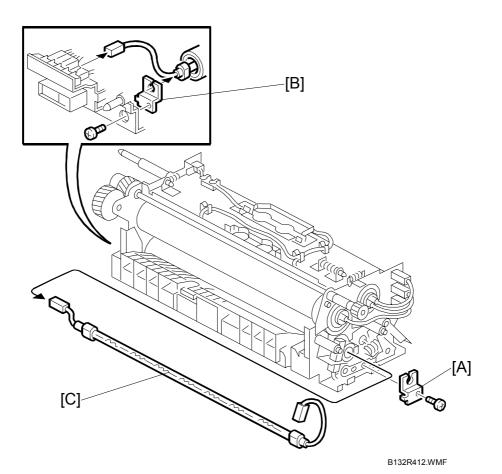
Important! Before disconnecting the lamps, mark the connectors to ensure that you match their connection points correctly at reinstallation.

Disconnect at front and rear:

- [A]: Heating roller fusing lamp connectors (I x4)
  [B]: Hot roller fusing lamp connectors (I x2)

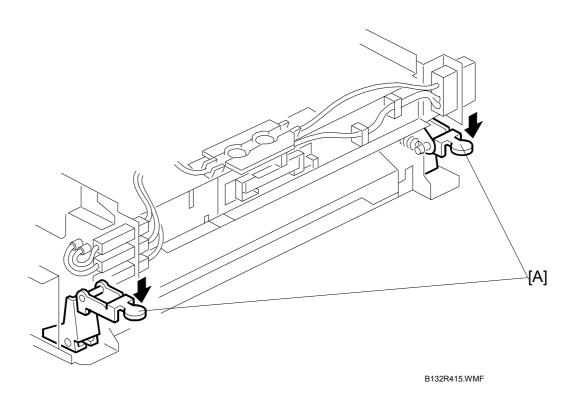
- [C]: Heating roller lamps x2
- [D]: Hot roller lamp x1

## 3.9.11 PRESSURE ROLLER FUSING LAMP

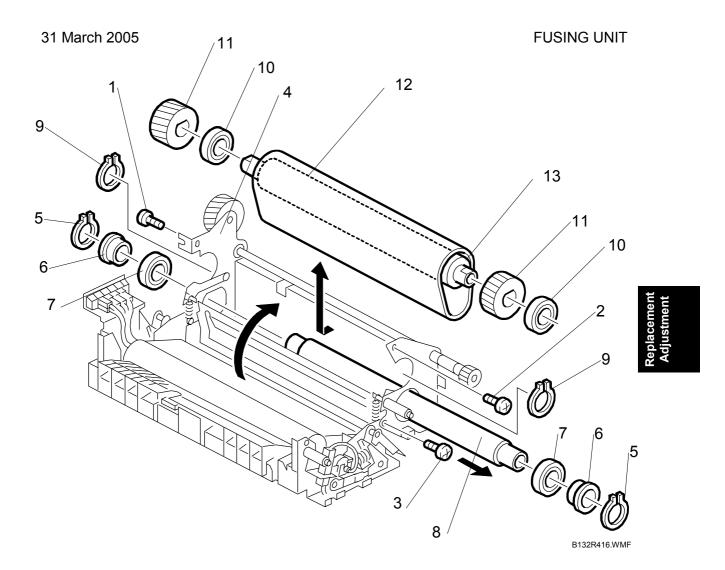


- Fusing unit (#3.9.2)
- Fusing unit upper cover ((-3.9.1)
- Fusing cleaning unit (•3.9.5)
- Form bracket (•3.9.10)
- [A]: Pressure roller lamp front bracket ( x1)
- [B]: Pressure roller lamp rear bracket ( x1)
- [C]: Pressure roller lamp (<sup>™</sup> x2)

## 3.9.12 HEATING ROLLER, FUSING BELT, HOT ROLLER



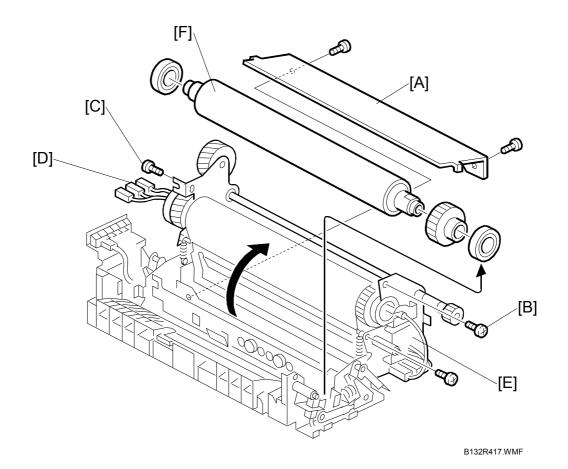
- Fusing unit (•3.9.2)
- Fusing unit upper cover (•3.9.1)
- Fusing cleaning unit (-3.9.5)
- Hot roller, heating roller lamps (x3) (•3.9.10)
- [A]: Release levers. Press down to release.



- 1. Remove screws [1], [2], [3] ( 🖗 x3).
- 2. Rotate the frame [4] to the right.
- 3. At the front and rear of the heating roller, remove:
  - [5] Lock rings
  - [6] Bushings
  - [7] Bearings
- 4. Remove the heating roller [8]
- 5. At the front and rear of the hot roller, remove:
  - [9] Lock rings
  - [10] Shaft bearings
  - [11] Gears
- 6. Remove the fusing belt [12] and hot roller [13].



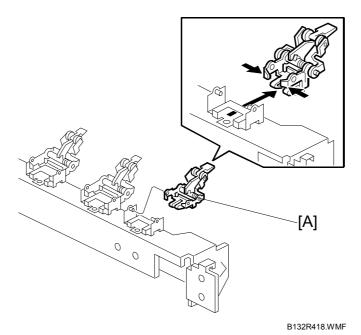
### 3.9.13 PRESSURE ROLLER



- Fusing unit (•3.9.2)
- Fusing unit upper cover (•3.9.1)
- Fusing cleaning unit (•3.9.5)
- Pressure roller lamp (x1) (•3.9.11)
- [A]: Lower fusing entrance guide ( $\hat{\beta} x2$ )
- [B]: Front screw (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>ℓ</sub> x2)
- [C]: Rear screw ( x1)
- [D]: Hot roller lamps (創 x1), heating roller lamps ( 2 x2)
- [E]: Rotate the frame to the right, in the direction shown by the arrow.
- [F]: Pressure roller.

**NOTE:** Lift pressure roller and remove without detaching shaft bearing and gears.

# 3.9.14 PRESSURE ROLLER SEPARATION PAWLS



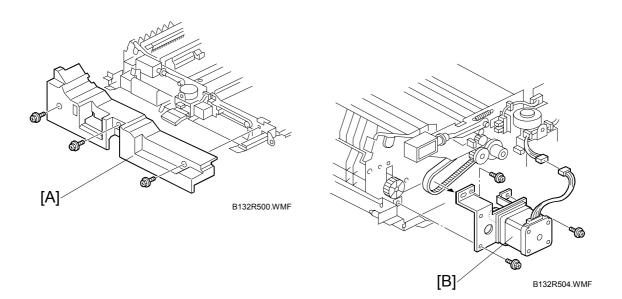


Remove:

- Fusing unit (**•**3.9.2)
- Pressure roller cleaning roller unit (#3.9.9)

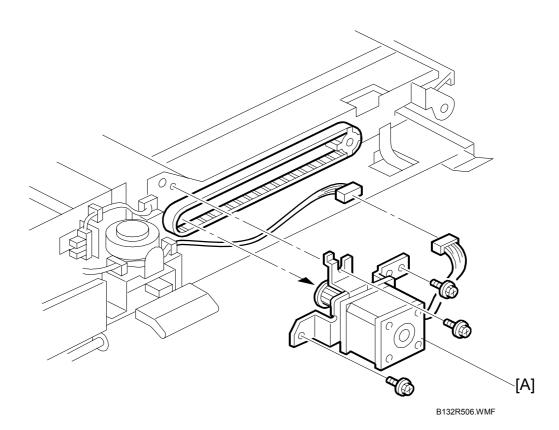
[A]: Pressure roller separation pawls

# **3.10 DUPLEX UNIT** 3.10.1 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR



- Pull out the duplex unit.
- [A]: Duplex unit front cover ( 𝔅 x3)
  [B]: Duplex inverter motor (𝔅 x3, ⊑<sup>⊥</sup> x1, Timing belt x1, Gear x1)

## 3.10.2 DUPLEX TRANSPORT MOTOR

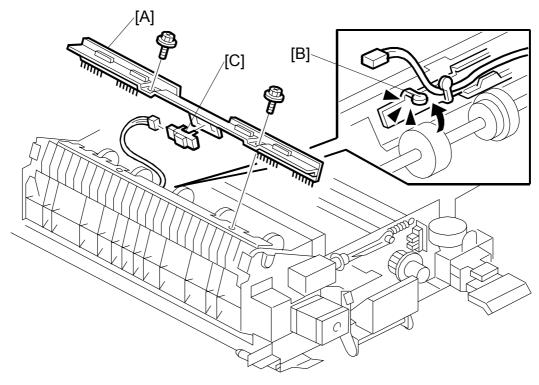


- Pull out the duplex unit.
- Release the lower guide plate with knob F.

- Duplex inner cover
- [A]: Duplex transport motor ( $\mathscr{F} \times 3$ ,  $\mathfrak{V} \times 1$ , Timing belt x 1)

## 3.10.3 DUPLEX UNIT SENSORS

#### **Duplex Entrance Sensor**



B132R502.WMF

• Pull out the duplex unit.

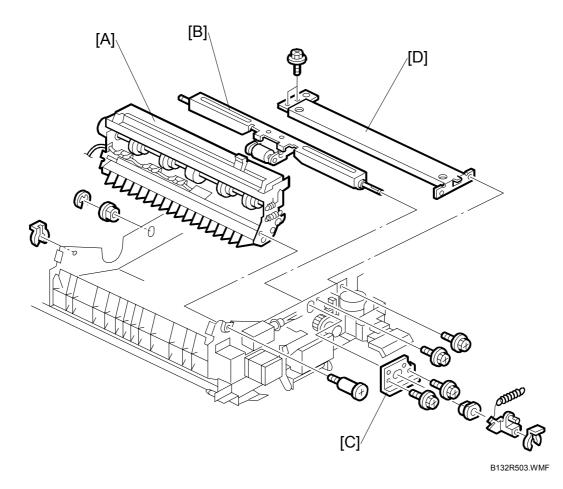
Remove:

- [A]: Bracket ( 🕅 x 2)
- [B]: Release harness clamp
- [C]: Duplex entrance sensor (🗊 x 1)

#### Reinstallation

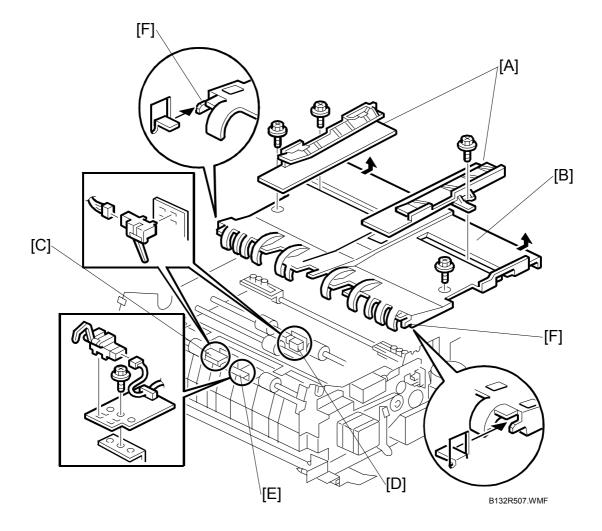
• Insert the anti-static brushes into the roller holes.

### Transport Sensors 1, 2



Remove the duplex unit (•3.3.10)

- [A]: Inverter unit ( x1 front, x1 rear, x1 rear, x1)
  [B]: Reverse trigger roller assembly (Rear: x1, Shaft bushing x1) (Front: x1, Link gear x1, Spring x1, Shaft bushing x1)
- [C]: Plate ( 🖗 x2)
- [D]: Cross-stay ( x 4)

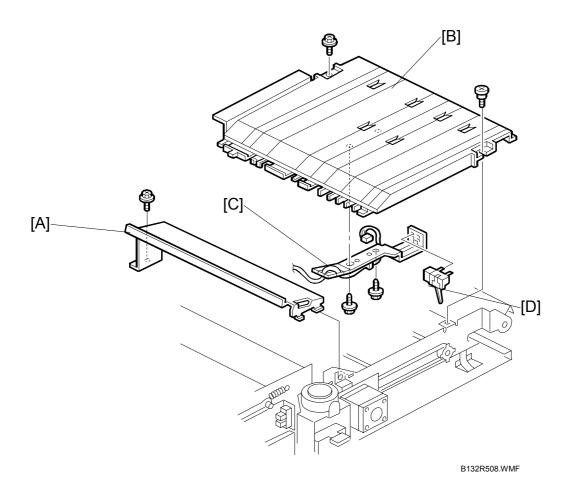


- [A]: Jogger fences ( $\hat{\beta}$  x 1 ea.)
- [B]: Left transport cover ( $\hat{\not}$  x 2)
  - The front screw is a shoulder screw. Insert the screws in the correct holes when re-attaching.
  - To avoid breaking the tabs under the left edge of the table, pull the table to the right to disengage the tabs and then remove.
- [C]: Transport sensor 1 (x 1, 🗊 x 1)
- [D]: Transport sensor 2 (忌x 1, 叫 x 1)
- [E]: Inverter exit sensor  $(\mathscr{F} \times 1, \mathfrak{B} \times 1, \mathfrak{W} \times 1)$

#### Reinstallation

• Make sure the end tabs [F] of the left transport cover are engaged correctly.

### **Transport Sensor 3**



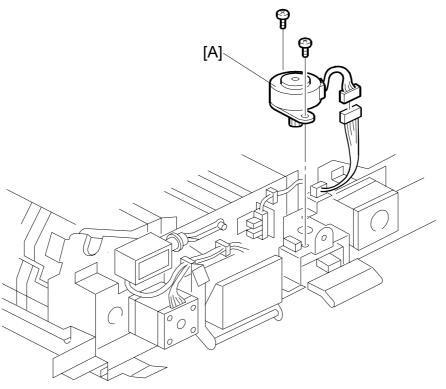
Remove:

- Duplex unit, inner cover (-3.3.10)
- [A]: Cross stay (∦ x 1)
- [B]: Right transport cover ( x 2, 1 x 1)

NOTE: The front screw is a shoulder screw. Insert the screws in the correct holes when re-attaching.

- [C]: Transport sensor bracket ( x 2)
  [D]: Transport sensor 3 ( I × 1)

# 3.10.4 DUPLEX JOGGER MOTOR

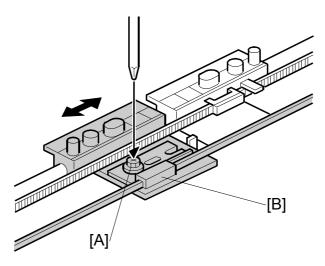


B132R505.WMF

Remove:

Duplex unit, inner cover (☞3.3.10)
[A]: Jogger motor (斧 x2, ≅ x1)

### 3.10.5 DUPLEX JOGGER BELT



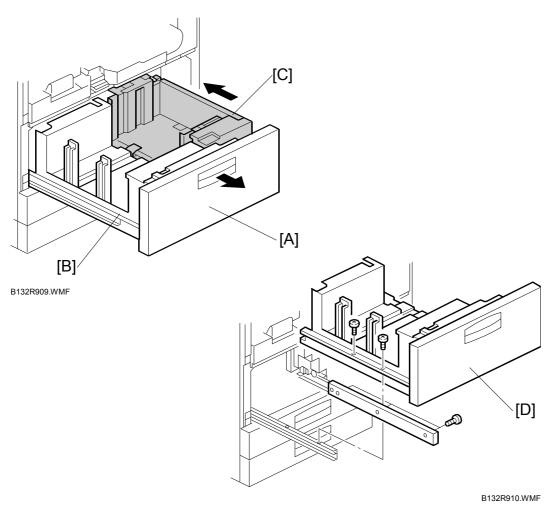


B132R907.WMF

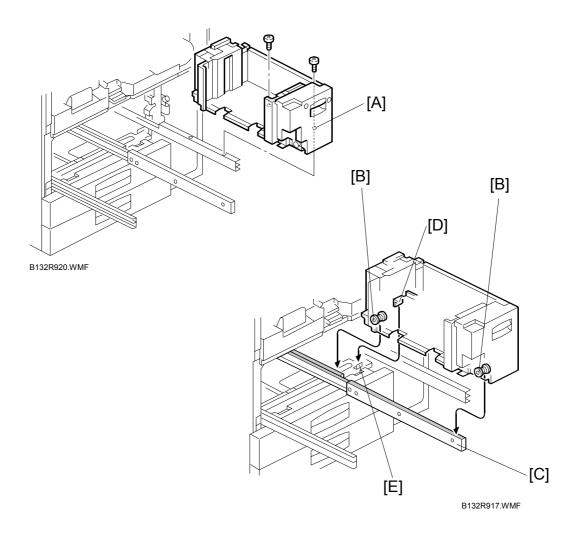
- Cross stay (•3.10.3)
- Reverse trigger roller assembly (#3.10.3)
- Jogger fences ((-3.10.3)
- Left transport cover (•3.10.3)
- Jogger motor assembly (•3.10.4).
- 1. If you are replacing the belt, set both jogger fence brackets at the center of the belt and tighten the screw [A].
- 2. If you are adjusting the belt, loosen the screw and slide the plastic piece [B] on the belt to the left or right to adjust the position of the front fence, then tighten the screw.

# 3.11 TANDEM TRAY (TRAY 1)

## 3.11.1 TANDEM TRAY

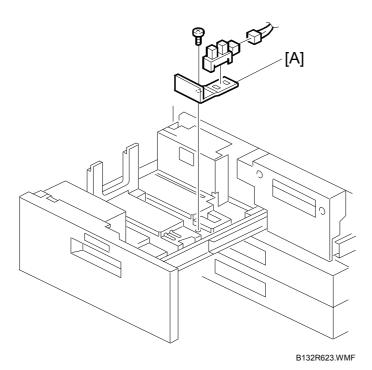


- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Pull out the tandem tray drawer [A] completely to separate the left [B] and right [C] sides of the tandem tray.
- 3. Remove the left tandem tray [D] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 5$ ).



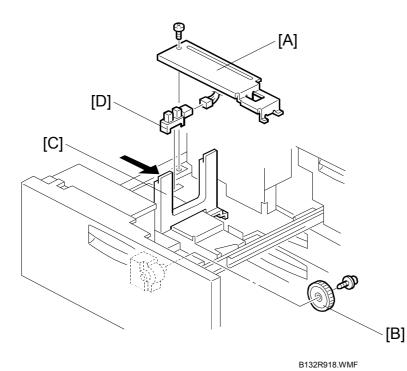
- [A]: Right tandem tray ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- **NOTE:** 1) When re-installing the right tandem tray, make sure that the wheels [B] ride on the slide rail [C].
  - 2) When re-installing the right tandem tray, make sure that the tandem tray stopper [D] is set behind the stopper [E] on the frame.

## 3.11.2 REAR FENCE RETURN SENSOR REPLACEMENT



Pull out the tandem feed tray.
[A]: Return sensor assembly (≅<sup>IJ</sup> x 1, <sup>β</sup> x1).

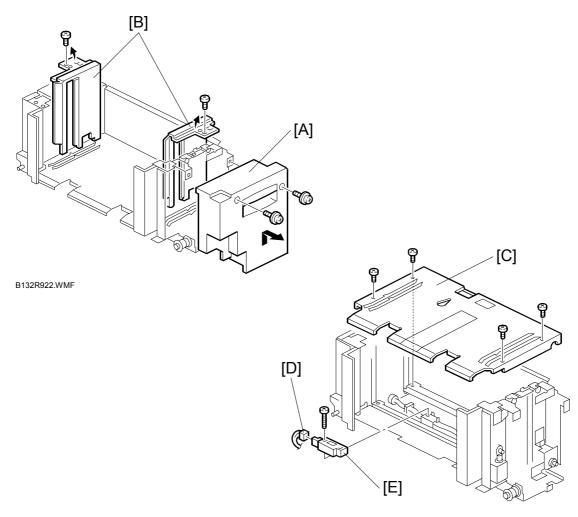
## 3.11.3 REAR FENCE HP SENSOR REPLACEMENT



teplacement Adjustment

- Pull out the tandem feed tray.
- [A]: Rear bottom plate ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ ).
- [B]: Back fence transport gear ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ )
- [C]: Move the back fence to the right.
- [D]: Rear HP sensor (⊑ x 1)

## 3.11.4 TANDEM RIGHT TRAY PAPER SENSOR REPLACEMENT



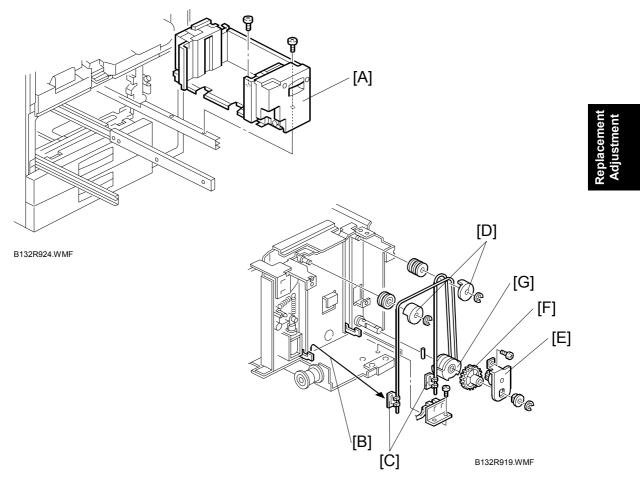
B132R923.WMF

Remove the right tandem tray ( 3.11.1)

- [A]: Inner cover (𝔅 x 2)
  [B]: Side fences (𝔅 x 1 each)
- [C]: Bottom plate ( x 4)
- [D]: Connector ( $\mathbb{E} \mathbb{Z} \times 1$ ) [E]: Sensor ( $\mathbb{P} \times 1$ )

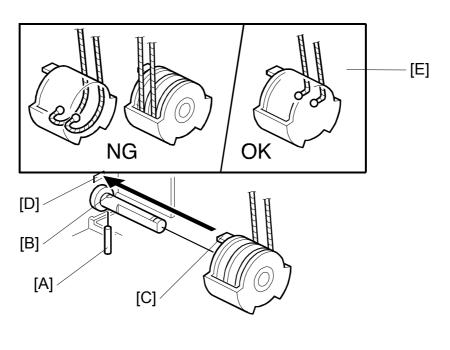
### 3.11.5 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT WIRE REPLACEMENT

**NOTE:** Before replacing the rear bottom plate lift wire, remove the front bottom plate lift wire. It is necessary to remove the shaft for replacing the rear bottom plate lift wire.



Remove the right tandem tray. (Refer to Paper Tray Removal.)

- [A]: Remove the inner cover ( $\hat{\beta}^2 \times 2$ )
- [B]: Remove the left stay.
- [C]: Wire stoppers
  - Slightly lift the front bottom plate and unhook.
- [D]: Wire covers ( $\mathbb{C} \times 1 \text{ each}$ )
- [E]: Bracket ( $\mathscr{F} \times 1$ ,  $\mathbb{C} \times 1$ , bushing x 1)
- [F]: Gear
- [G]: Bottom plate lift wire

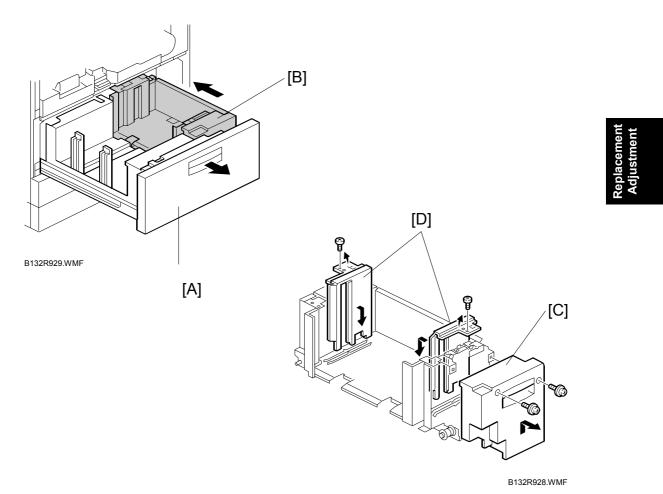


B132R927.WMF

- **NOTE:** When re-installing the bottom plate lift wire:
  - Set the positioning pin [A] in the hole [B], and set the projection [C] in the hole [D].
  - 2) Position the wire as shown [E].
  - 3) Do not cross the wires.

### 3.11.6 TANDEM TRAY PAPER SIZE CHANGE

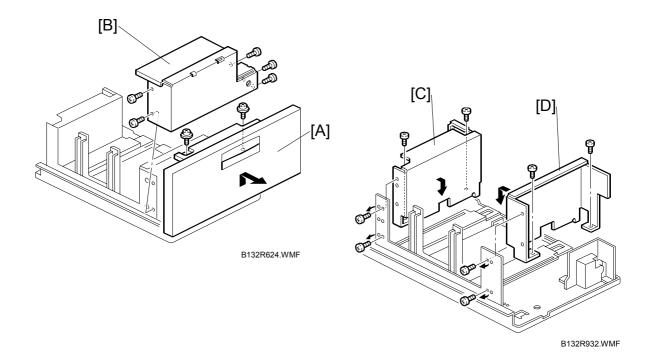
At the factory, this tray is set up for A4 or LT LEF. Only A4 or LT LEF paper can be used for tandem feed.



- 1. Open the front cover.
- 2. Completely pull out the tandem feed tray [A] to separate the right tandem tray [B] from the left tandem tray.

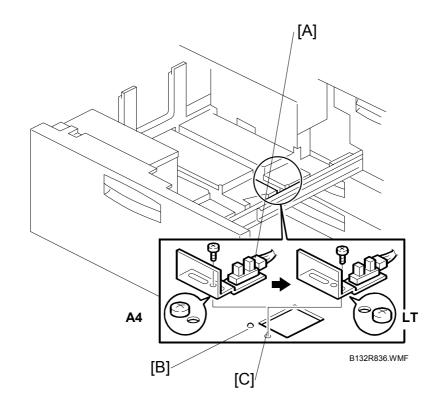
#### **Right Tray**

- 3. Remove the right tandem inner cover [C] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- 4. Re-position the side fences [D] ( x 1 each).
   A4: Outer slot position
   LT: Inner slot position
- 5. Re-install the right tandem inner cover.



#### Left Tray

- 6. Remove the tray cover [A] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ ).
- 7. Remove the DC motor cover [B] ( $\hat{\not{P}} \times 5$ ).
- 8. Remove the rear side fence [C] and front side fence [D] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 4 \text{ ea.}$ )
- 9. Re-position the side fences (𝔅<sup>3</sup> x 4 ea.).
   A4: Outer slot position
   LT: Inner slot position
- 10. Re-install the DC motor cover and the tray cover.



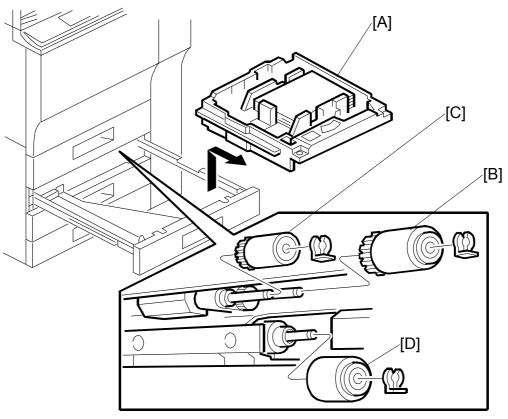
- 11. Re-position the return position sensor bracket [A] ( $\hat{\not}$  x 1).
  - For A4 set the screw in the left hole [B].
  - For LT set the screw in the right hole [C].
- 12. Input the new paper size into SP5959 001.

#### Reinstallation

• Do the scanner and registration adjustments (see section 3.19).

PAPER FEED (TRAYS 2, 3)

# 3.12 PAPER FEED (TRAYS 2, 3) 3.12.1 PICKUP, FEED, REVERSE ROLLERS



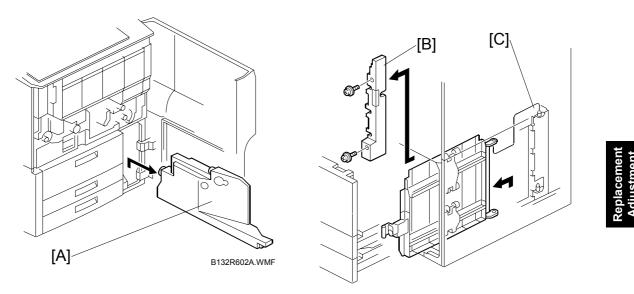
B132R601.WMF

- [A]: Remove the tray.
- [B]: Feed roller ((0) x 1)
- [C]: Pick-up roller ( x 1)
- [D]: Separation roller (O x 1)

#### Important

- The operation of the FRR mechanisms for the tandem tray (Tray 1), universal trays (Tray 2, Tray 3), by-pass tray, and ARDF are similar. However, the only rollers that are interchangeable are the tandem and universal tray rollers (Trays 1, 2, 3).
- Do not touch the surface of new rollers during replacement.

## 3.12.2 PAPER FEED UNIT



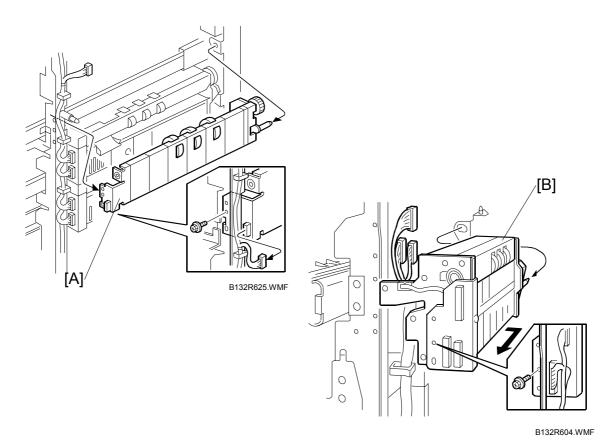
B132R603A.WMF

#### Remove:

- Front door (**•**1.3.4)
- If the LCT is connected, disconnect it and pull it away from the machine.
- LCT entrance guide cover and right lower cover

Pull out all three trays (do not remove).

- [A]: Toner collection bottle
- [B]: Vertical transport guide
- [C]: Inner cover ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ )
- **NOTE:** When re-installing the vertical transport guide, remove the lower right cover then insert from it.



[A]: Guide plate ( x 1)

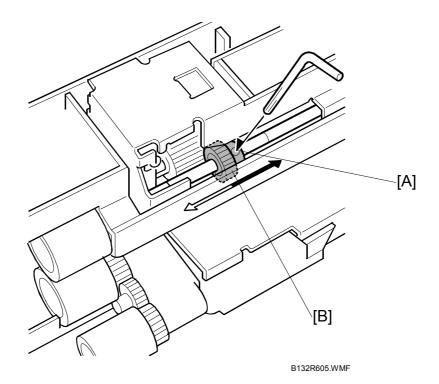
- 1st feed unit only.
- [B]: Feed unit (ℱ x 1, 🗊 x 3)
  - Insert your hand from the right and pull the feed unit forward.
  - **NOTE:** To avoid hitting the unit on the sides of the machine, remove it carefully and slowly.

Important: If the paper feed motor must be replaced, replace the paper feed unit.

## 3.12.3 SEPARATION ROLLER PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

The position of the drive gear for the separation roller can be changed in order to change the amount of pressure exerted by the separation roller. This adjustment can be done:

- When feeding special paper, especially thick paper
- When the customer is experiencing feed problems

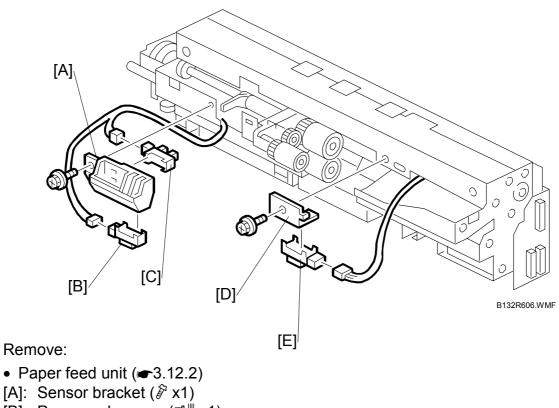


- 1. Remove the feed unit (-3.12.2)
- 2. Loosen the hex screw [A].
- 3. The separation roller gear [B] is positioned at the groove before shipping. To adjust for thick paper, move the separation roller gear to the left to decrease the pressure.

-or-

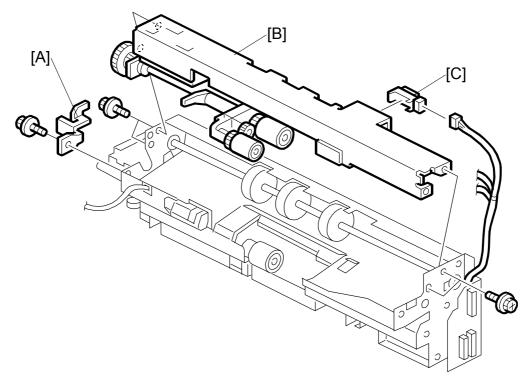
To correct misfeeds, move the separation roller gear to the right to increase the pressure.

# 3.12.4 PAPER END, TRAY LIFT, PAPER FEED SENSORS



- [B]: Paper end sensor (⊑<sup>∅</sup> x1)
- [C]: Tray lift sensor ( x1)
- [D]: Sensor bracket ( x1)
- [E]: Paper feed sensor (⊑ x1)

## 3.12.5 VERTICAL TRANSPORT SENSOR

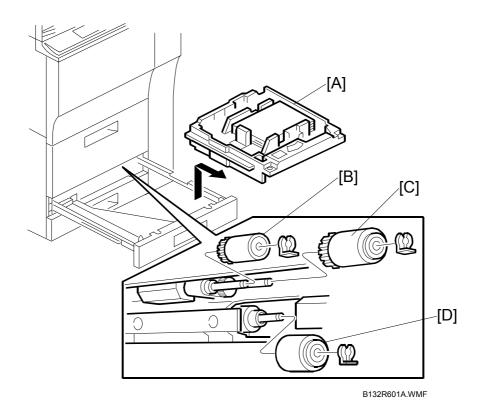


B132R607.WMF

- Paper feed unit (☞3.12.2)
  [A]: Bracket (斧 x1)
- [B]: Upper unit ( x4)
- [C]: Vertical transport sensor ( x1)

# **3.13 BYPASS UNIT**

# 3.13.1 BYPASS PICKUP, FEED, REVERSE ROLLERS

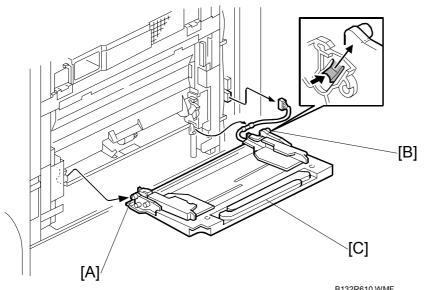


- Remove right covers (

  1.3.5)
- Open the bypass tray
- Remove the bypass unit (•3.13.3)
- Remove the upper unit cover (•3.13.4)

- [A]: Pickup roller (🖾 x1)
- [B]: Feed roller (🕅 x1)
- [C]: Reverse roller (() x1)

## 3.13.2 BYPASS AUTO PAPER SIZE DETECTION SWITCHES

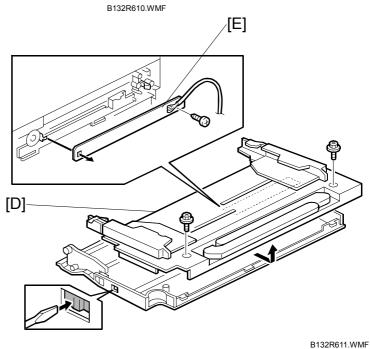


- Remove right covers (•1.3.5)
- Open the bypass tray

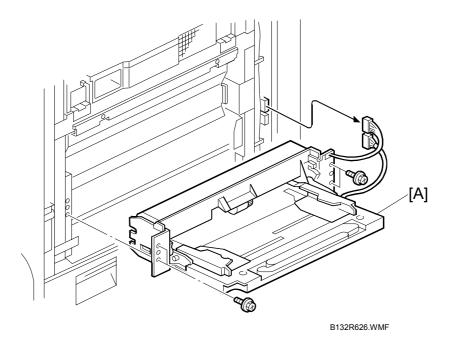
#### Disconnect:

- [A]: Front hinge
- [B]: Rear hinge

- [C]: Bypass tray (≅ x1)
  [D]: Bypass table (<sup>2</sup>/<sub>8</sub> x2, Pawls x2)
- [E]: Paper size detection board (Pawl x1,  $\hat{\mathscr{F}}$  x1)



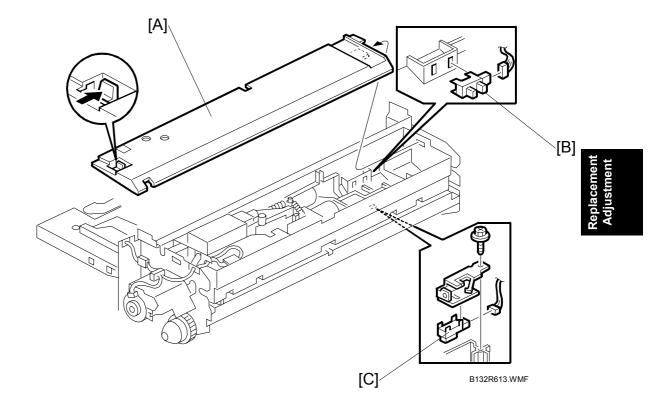
# 3.13.3 BYPASS UNIT



- Remove right covers (🖝1.3.5)
- Open the bypass tray

Remove:

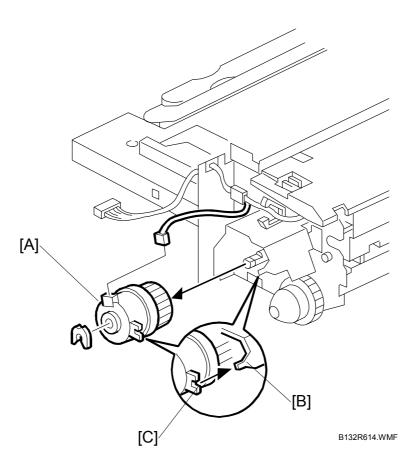
[A]: Bypass unit (ℰ x4, ⊑<sup>IJ</sup> x2)



# 3.13.4 BYPASS PAPER END SENSOR, FEED SENSOR

- Bypass unit (•3.13.3)
- [A]: Unit upper cover (Release x1)
- [B]: Paper end sensor (□ x1)
  [C]: Feed sensor (𝔅 x1, □ x1)

## 3.13.5 BYPASS FEED CLUTCH



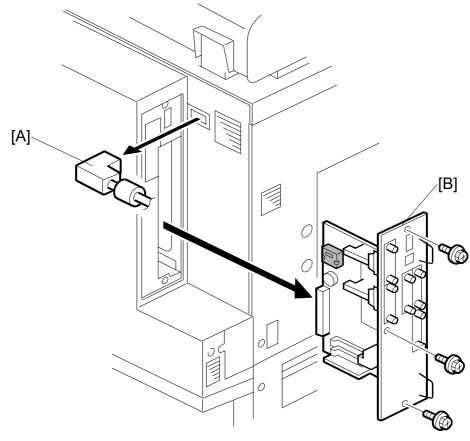
Remove:

#### Reinstallation

• Make sure the arm [B] fits correctly into the notch bracket [C] of the clutch.

# 3.14 BOARDS

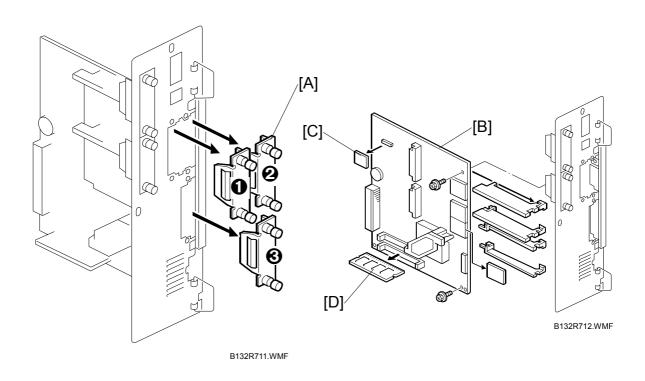
# 3.14.1 CONTROLLER UNIT



B132R710.WMF

- [A]: Disconnect the ARDF [B]: Controller board ( $\hat{\beta}$  x3)

## 3.14.2 CONTROLLER BOARD, 256 MB MEMORY, NVRAM



#### Important:

- If you are going to replace the NVRAM, follow the procedure on the next page and refer to these illustrations as necessary.
- Do not remove the NVRAM until you have uploaded is contents. (For more, see the procedures on the following page.)
- Always touch a metal surface to discharge any static on your hands before you touch the controller board.
- Work carefully when removing the NVRAM to avoid damaging other components on the controller board or short circuiting the pins of other chips.

- [C]: NVRAM (Pawls x2)
- [D]: 256 MB memory

#### Reinstallation

• If you replace the controller board, put the memory and NVRAM from the old controller board onto the new controller board.

## 3.14.3 NVRAM REPLACEMENT

#### Upload NVRAM Data → SD Card

- 1. Do SP5990 001 to print the SMC report.
- 2. Turn the copier main power switch off.
- 3. Insert an SD card in Slot 3
- 4. Execute **SP5824** to upload the data to the SD card.
- 5. Switch the machine off and disconnect the power cord.

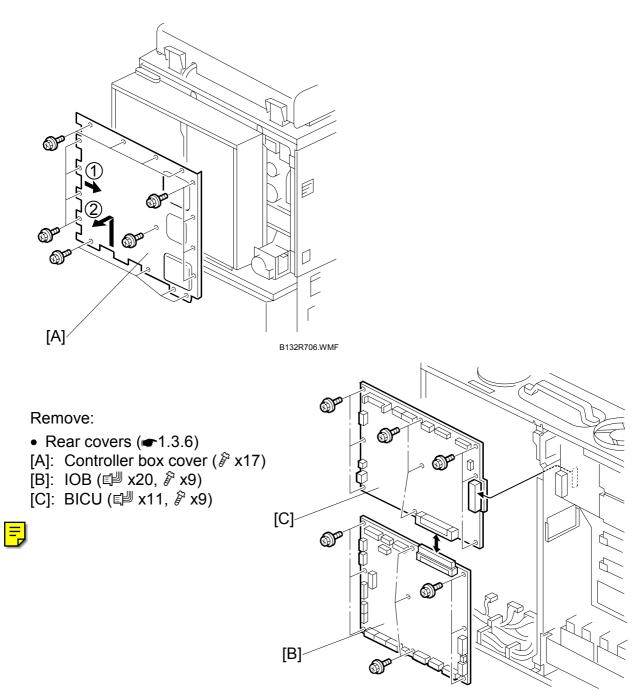
### Replace NVRAM

- 1. Remove the NVRAM (*•*3.14.2).
- 2. Install the new NVRAM.

### Restore NVRAM Data to the New NVRAM

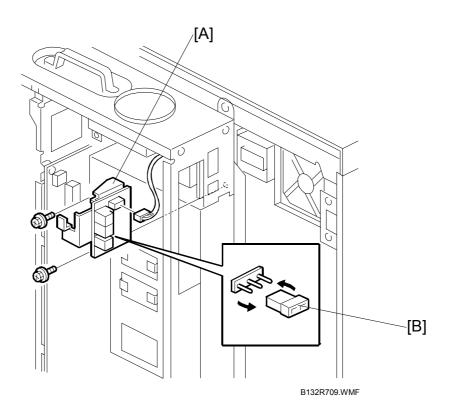
- 1. Turn the copier main power switch off.
- 2. Put the SD card with the NVRAM data into Slot 3.
- 3. Open the front door of the copier and keep it open.
- Turn the copier main power switch on.
   If the NVRAM is new, SC195 (Machine Serial Number Error) may appear. If this occurs:
  - Enter the SP mode and do **SP5801 001** to reset the memory to the defaults (All).
  - Switch the machine off/on and start from Step 1. Important! WHEN SC195 OCCURS, THE SERIAL NUMBER MUST BE INPUT. PLEASE CONTACT YOUR TECHNICAL SUPERVISOR.
- 5. Execute **SP5825** to download the data uploaded from the old NVRAM. **NOTE:** If the machine returns SC195 (Machine Serial Number Error), ignore it.
- 6. Switch the machine off and remove the SD card from **Slot 3**.
- 7. Switch the machine on, then do SP5990 001 to print another SMC report.
- 8. Compare this new SMC report with the report you printed in Step 1. If any of the SP settings are different, enter the SP settings of the first report.
- 9. Execute **SP5907** and enter the brand and model name of the machine for Windows Plug & Play capability.

# 3.14.4 CONTROLLER BOX COVER, BICU, IOB



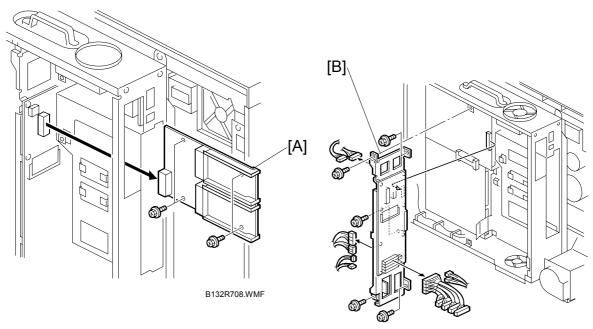
B132R714.WMF

## 3.14.5 RDS BOARD JUMPER



Remove:

- Controller box cover (•3.14.1)
- Interface board (←3.14.6)
  [A]: RDS board (Â x, ⊑ ℤ x)
  [B]: Jumper

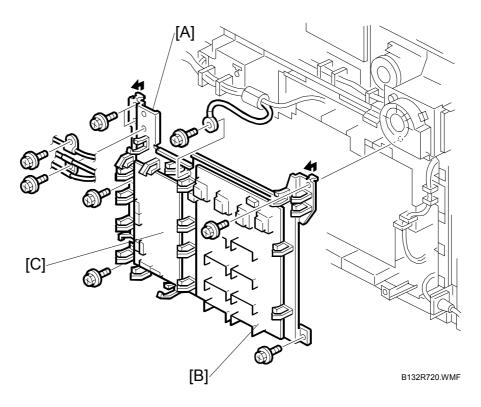


# 3.14.6 INTERFACE BOARD, MOTHER BOARD

B132R713.WMF

- 1. Remove the controller box cover. (•3.14.4)
- 2. Remove the RAPI EXT board [A] ( $\hat{\beta}$  x4)
- 3. Remove the HDD. (••3.15)

# 3.14.7 HVPS, PFC BOARD

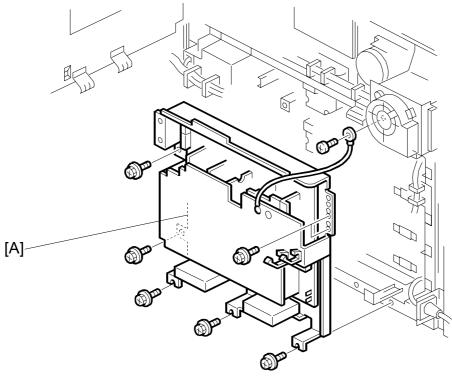


• Remove the rear lower cover (-1.3.6)

Remove:

- [A]: HVPS and PFC board assembly (≅ x22, ∦ x10, ☆ x23)
- [B]: HVPS (ℱ x8) [C]: PFC board (ℱ x6)

# 3.14.8 PSU



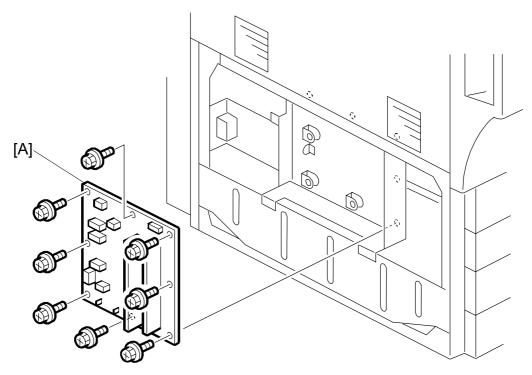
B132R722.WMF

• Remove the rear covers (**•**1.3.6)

Remove:

• HVPS, PFC board assembly (**●**3.14.7) [A]: PSU (閶 x7, 斧 x8)

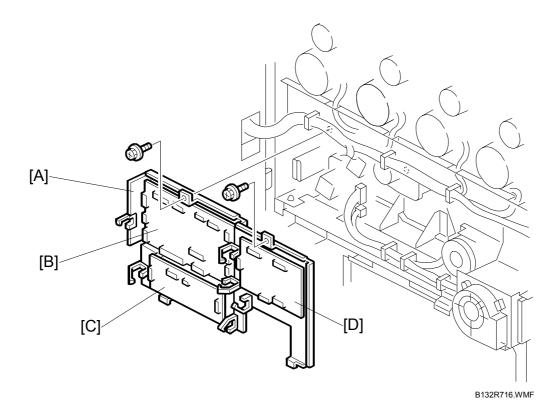
# 3.14.9 AC DRIVE BOARD



B132R727.WMF

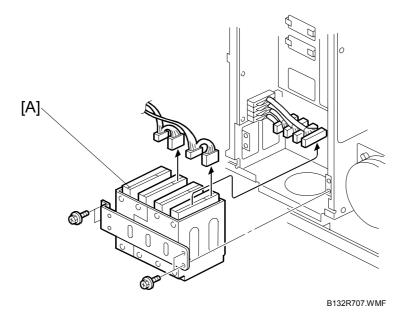
Remove left, lower cover.
[A]: AC drive board (Â x8, I x6)

## 3.14.10 TRANSFER MOTOR, DRIVE, DRIVE MOTOR BOARDS



- Remove rear covers (•1.3.6)
- Open and lock controller box (**•**1.3.11)
- [A]: Board assembly (<sup>(</sup>→ x5, <sup>(</sup>→ x21, <sup>(</sup>)→ x2))
- [B]: DRB (Drive Board)
- [C]: TMB (Transfer Motor Board)
- [D]: DMB (Drive Motor Board)

# **3.15 HDD UNIT**



Replacemeni Adjustment

## Important

• The HDD contains four separate hard disks. However, the four disks are always replaced together as a unit. Never attempt to replace a single disk.

#### Remove:

- Rear covers (**•**1.3.6)
- Controller box cover (•3.14.4)
- [A]: HDD unit (⊑<sup>1</sup> x8, 𝔅 x4)

#### Important

- Mark the harness connectors before you disconnect them. They must be reconnected at their connection points.
- 1. Reassemble the machine.
- 2. Enter the SP mode and do **SP5832 001** to format the hard disks. Formatting on the machine partitions the hard disks properly.
- 3. Do **SP5853 001** to download the fixed stamps from the ROM to the HDD.
- 4. Switch the machine off and on to enable the fixed stamps for use.

## **Disposal of HDD Units**

- Never remove an HDD unit from the work site without the consent of the client.
- If the customer has any concerns about the security of any information on the HDD, the HDD must remain with the customer for disposal or safe keeping.
- The HDD may contain proprietary or classified (Confidential, Secret) information. Specifically, the HDD contains document server documents and data stored in temporary files created automatically during copy job sorting and jam recovery. Such data is stored on the HDD in a special format so it cannot normally be read but can be recovered with illegal methods.

#### Reinstallation

Explain to the customer that the following information stored on the HDD is lost when the HDD is replaced:

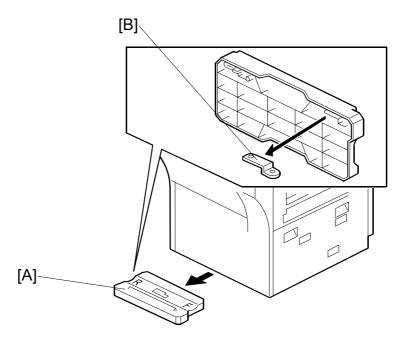
- Document server documents
- Fixed stamps
- Document server Address book

The address book and document server documents (if needed) must be input again.

If the customer is using the Data Overwrite Security feature, the DOS function must be set up again. For more, see Section "1. Installation".

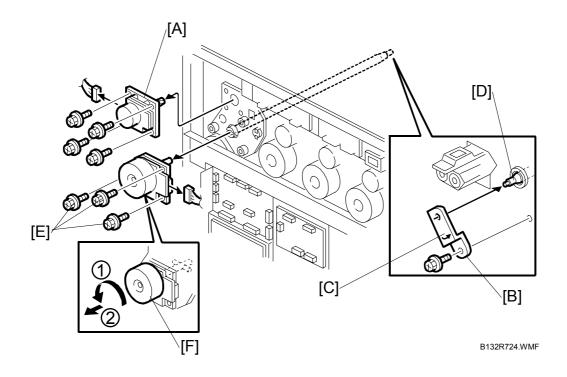
# 3.16 MOTORS

# 3.16.1 PCU MOTOR, DRUM MOTOR



B132R933.WMF

- 1. Remove the rear covers. (•1.3.6)
- 2. Open and lock the controller box. (•1.3.11)
- 3. Remove the PCU stand [A] stored under the machine.
- 4. Remove the drum motor shaft tool [B] (shorter tool) from the bottom of the PCU stand.

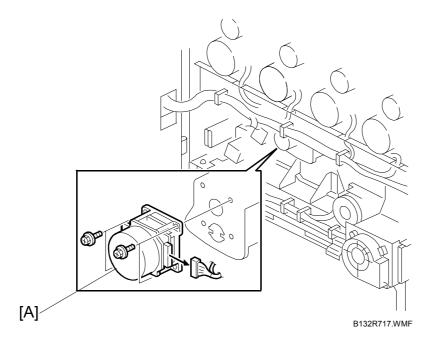


- 5. Remove the PCU motor [A] (ﷺ x1, ⅔ x4).
- 6. Open the front door.
- Remove the toner hopper unit. (~1.3.7)
   Important: Make sure the toner hopper slide rails are pushed into the machine.
- 8. At the front of the machine, attach the short tool [B] to the shaft of the drum motor to be removed.
- Rotate the tool in the direction of the embossed arrow [C] on the tool (counterclockwise) until the holes are aligned.
   NOTE: You must fasten the tool.
- 10. Use the M39 screw to fasten the screws to lock the shaft [D].
- 11. Remove the drum motor screws [E] ( $\hat{\beta}^2 x3$ )
- 12. Turn the drum-motor hub [F] counter-clockwise ① and remove the drum motor shaft.
- 13. Remove the drum motor 2 ( $1 \le x1$ )

#### Reinstallation

- 1. Attach the tool to the drum shaft and fasten it with the screw.
- 2. Attach the drum motor.
- 3. Rotate the drum motor clockwise until it stops.
- 4. Fasten the three screws to the drum motor.

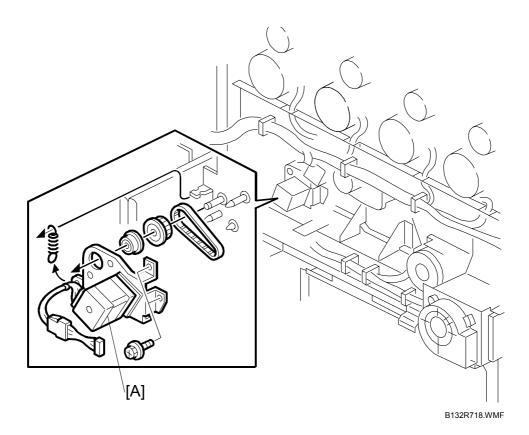
## 3.16.2 PAPER TRANSFER MOTOR





- Remove rear covers (•1.3.6)
- Open and lock controller box (←1.3.11)
  [A]: Paper transfer motor (E<sup>III</sup> x1, <sup>A</sup> x4)

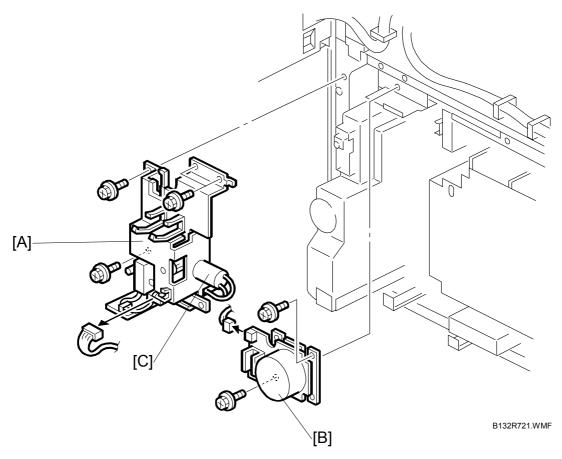
# 3.16.3 IMAGE TRANSFER MOTOR



- Remove rear covers (•1.3.6)
- Open and lock controller box (
  1.3.11)

Remove the image transfer board assembly (-3.14.10)
 [A]: Image transfer motor (Spring x1, ≅ x1, x3, Timing belt x1, Gear x1)

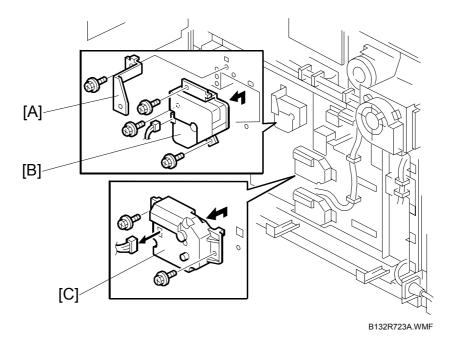
# 3.16.4 USED TONER MOTOR, TRANSPORT MOTOR



Replacemer Adjustmen

- Remove rear covers ( 1.3.6)
- Open and lock the controller box (
  1.3.11)
- Remove the HVPS, PFC boards (#3.14.7)
- [A]: Used toner transport motor assembly ( $\hat{P} x4$ )
- [B]: Used toner motor (🖽 x1, 🖗 x2)
- [C]: Used toner transport motor ( x2, w x1)

## 3.16.5 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT MOTOR (TRAYS 2, 3)



- Remove the rear covers (**•**1.3.6)
- Open the controller box and lock it (*•*1.3.11)
- HVPS, PFC board (•3.14.7)
- PSU (**•**3.14.8)

#### Tray 1

[A]: Bracket (𝔅 x1)
[B]: Bottom plate lift motor – Tray 1 (𝔅 x3, ⊑╝ x1)

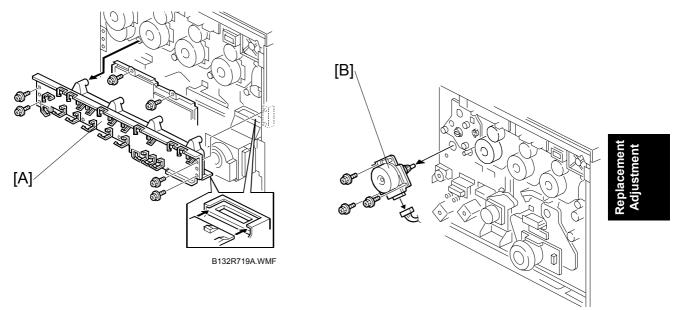
#### Trays 2, 3

- Remove HVPS/PFC board unit (•3.14.7)
- Remove PSU ((\*3.14.8)

## Remove:

[C]: Bottom plate lift motor – Tray 2, 3 (<sup>™</sup> x1, <sup>2</sup> x2)

## 3.16.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR

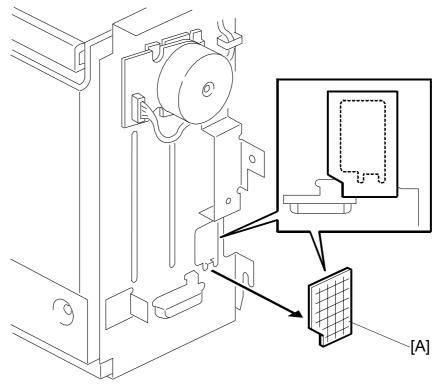


B132R725.WMF

- Remove rear covers (-1.3.6)
- Open and lock the controller box (•1.3.11)
- Remove the image transfer motor control board bracket (-3.14.10)
- [A]: Support stay (☆ x21, ⊉ x1, ≯ x4)
  [B]: ITB driver motor (≯ x3, ⊉ x1)

# 3.17 AIR FILTERS

## 3.17.1 TONER HOPPER FILTER



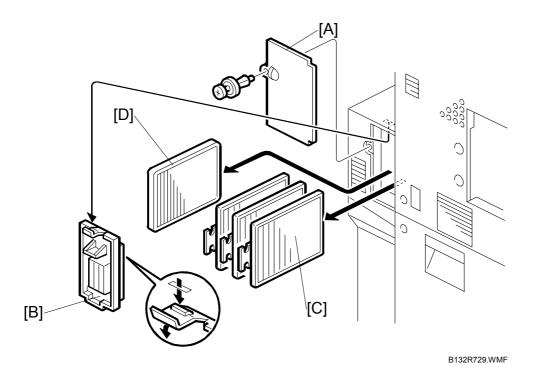
B132R212.WMF

Remove:

- Toner hopper (•3.3.7)
- Motor cover ((\*3.8.5)

[A]: Hopper filter

# 3.17.2 OZONE FILTER, AIR FILTERS



Replacement Adjustment

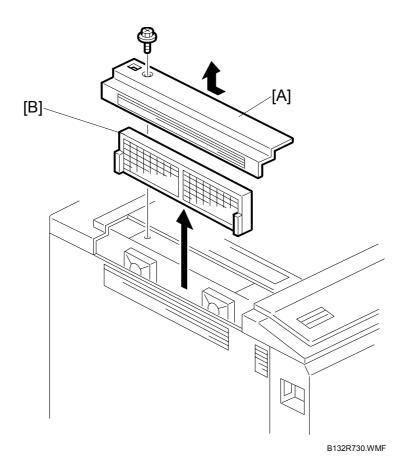
Remove:

- [A]: Cover ( 🖗 x1)
- [B]: Inner cover
- [C]: Dust filters x3
- [D]: Ozone filter

## Reinstallation

• Make sure you install the filters as shown. If you do not, you cannot reattach the cover [B].

# 3.17.3 SCANNER FILTER

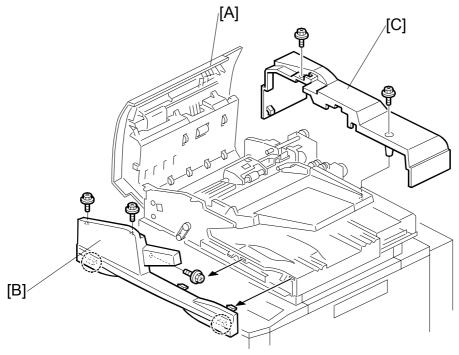


## Remove:

- [A]: Top left cover (𝔅 x1)[B]: Scanner filter

# 3.18 ARDF

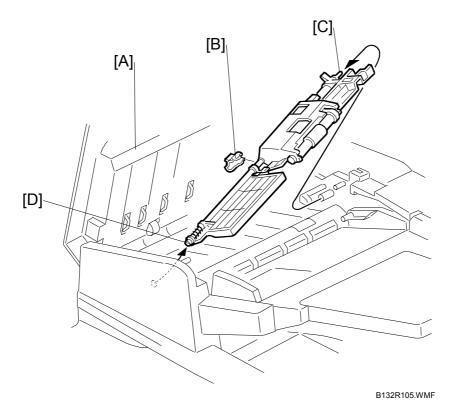
# 3.18.1 ARDF COVERS



B132R104.WMF

- [A]: Open the feed cover.
  [B]: Front cover (𝔅 x 3, Tabs x4). Press down the tabs.
  [C]: Rear cover (𝔅 x 2, Tabs x2). Press down the tabs.

## 3.18.2 ORIGINAL FEED UNIT



- [A]: Open the feed cover.[B]: Remove the snap fitting.[C]: Pull toward you slightly to disconnect the rear end of the shaft[D]: Disconnect the front end of the shaft.

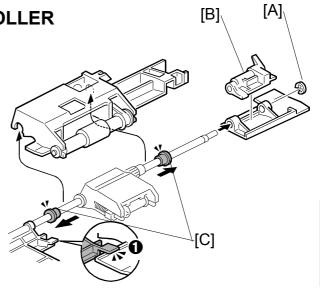
# 3.18.3 FEED BELT, PICKUP ROLLER

#### Remove:

- Original Feed unit (•3.18.2)
- [A]: E-ring.
- [B]: Cover
- [C]: Slide bushings out

## Reassembly

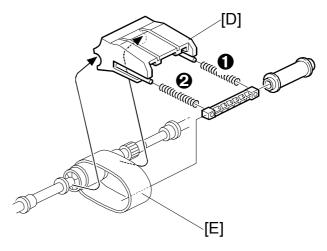
Make sure that the tab **0** on the front guide plate is above the pick-up roller unit.



B132R106.WMF

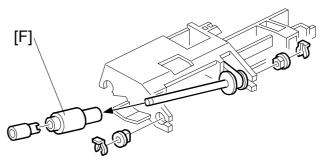
- [D]: Feed belt holder
- [E]: Feed belt

NOTE: Remove slowly. Do not let the springs **0**, **2** fall.



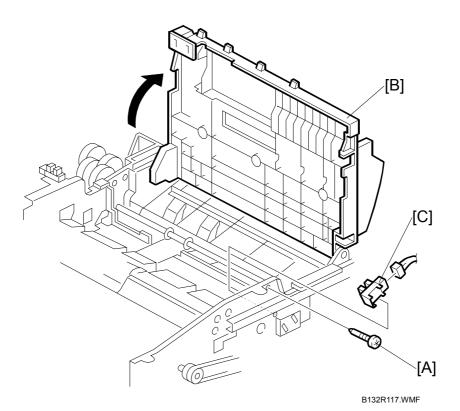
B132R107.WMF

[F]: ARDF pickup roller



B132R106A.WMF

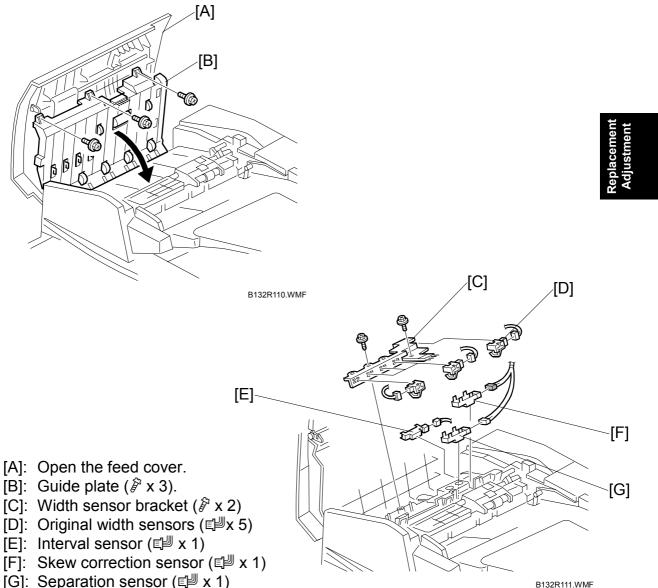
## 3.18.4 BOTTOM PLATE POSITION SENSOR



Remove:

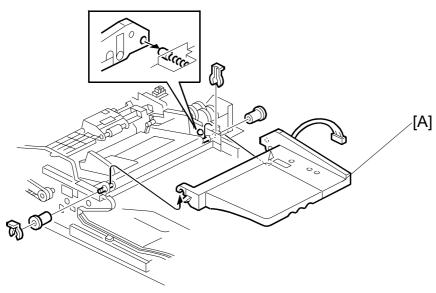
- Remove front cover (-3.18.1)
- Original feed unit (•3.18.2)
- [A]: Pin screw x1
- [B]: Raise the bottom plate
- [C]: Bottom plate position sensor ( x1).

## 3.18.5 INTERVAL, ORIGINAL WIDTH, SKEW CORRECTION **SEPARATION SENSORS**



[G]: Separation sensor (<sup>™</sup> x 1)

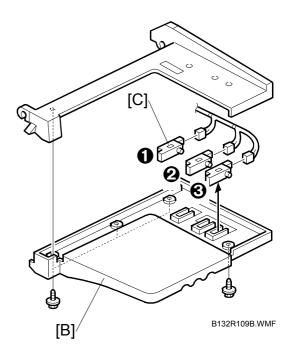
## 3.18.6 ORIGINAL LENGTH SENSORS



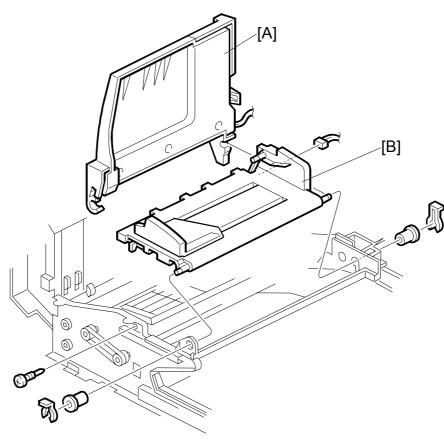
B132R109A.WMF

#### Remove:

- Front, rear covers (@3.18.1)
- Snap rings
- [A]: Remove the original tray
- [B]: Lower cover ( x4)
- [C]: Sensors:
  - B5 original length (🗐 x1)
  - A4 original length (<sup>™</sup>) x1)



## 3.18.7 COVER OPEN, ORIGINAL SET, BOTTOM PLATE, PICKUP **ROLLER HP, FEED-OUT SENSORS**

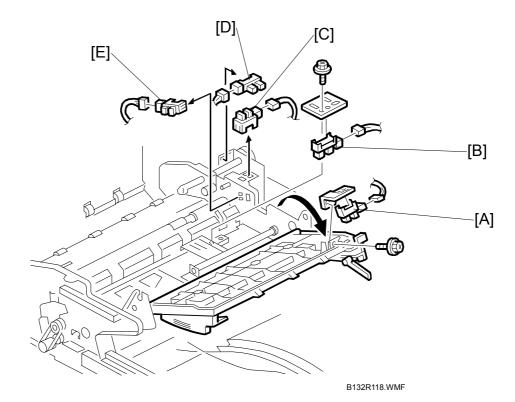


B132R116.WMF

## Remove:

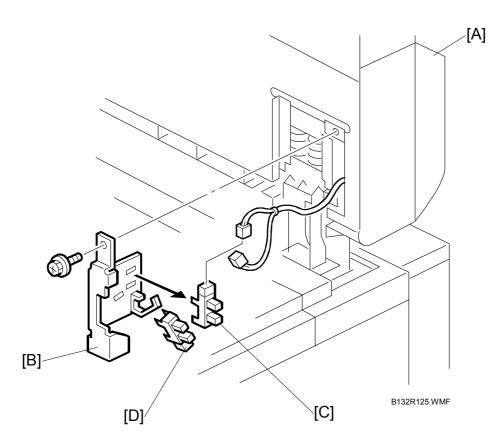
- Front, rear covers (•3.18.1)
- [A]: Original tray (I x1, (Ω) x2, Bushings x2)
  [B]: Lift tray (I x1, Pin screw x1)

ARDF



- [A]: Original set sensor (I x1, A x1)
  [B]: Upper inverter sensor (A x1, I x1)
  [C]: Feed cover sensor (I x1)
  [D]: Pickup roller HP sensor (I x1)

- [E]: Bottom plate position sensor (<sup>[]</sup> x1)



[A]: Raise the ARDF to the vertical position. Remove:

- [B]: APS bracket (𝔅 x1)
  [C]: ARDF position and APS start [D] sensors (𝔅 x1, 𝔅 x2)

# <image><image>

# 3.18.9 ORIGINAL REGISTRATION, EXIT SENSORS

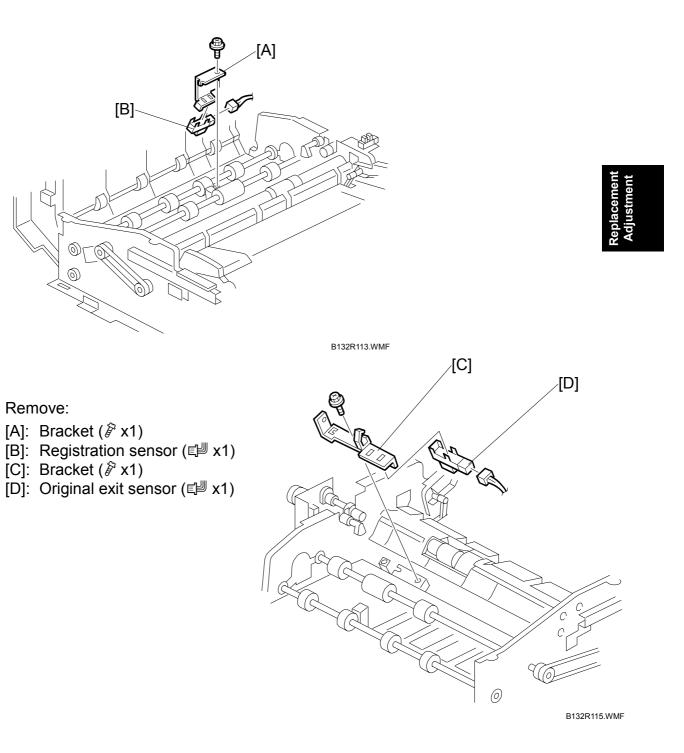
DIJZRIIZ

Remove:

- Remove the front and rear covers (•3.18.1)
- Feed cover (@3.18.1)
- Remove the original feed unit (#3.18.2)

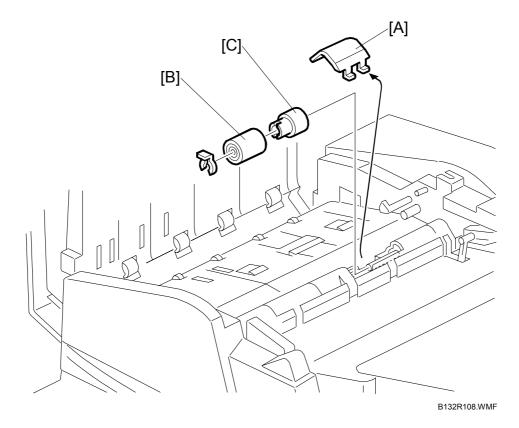
[A]: Rotate the inverter guide 180 degrees.

[B]: Original guide plate ( 2 x4).



#### ARDF

# 3.18.10 ARDF SEPARATION ROLLER



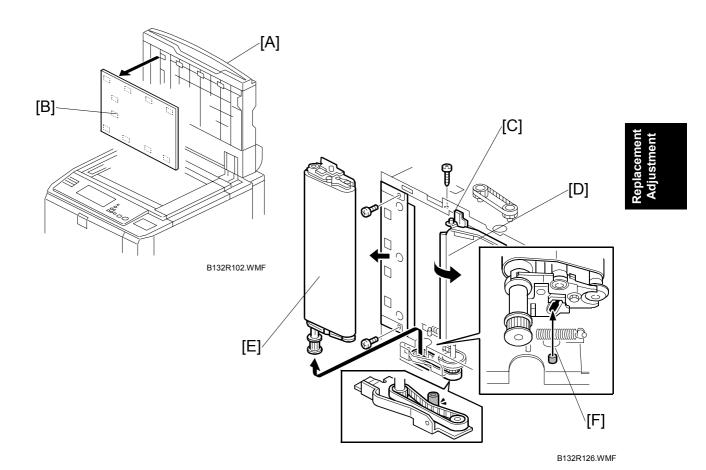
- Open the feed cover
- Remove the original feed unit. (#3.18.2)

Remove:

- [A]: Separation roller cover. Use the tip of a small flathead screwdriver.
- [B]: Separation roller (∅ x 1) [C]: Torque limiter

## 3.18.11 ARDF TRANSPORT BELT

## Removing the ARDF Transport Belt Assembly



1. Open the feed cover. (-3.18.1)

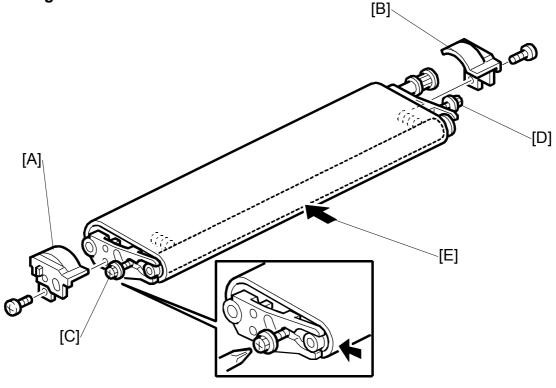
- 2. Remove the ARDF front cover. (•3.18.1)
- 3. Raise the ARDF [A] to the vertical position.
- 4. Pull off the white cover [B] (Velcro fasteners)
- 5. Release the stopper pin [C] of the transport guide [D].
- 6. Remove the transport belt unit [E] (Pin screw  $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x1$ , Timing belt x1)

## Reinstallation

• Attach the timing belt as shown then insert the pin screw [F] as shown.

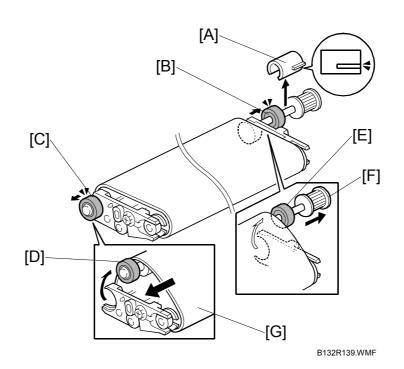
## ARDF

## Removing the Belt

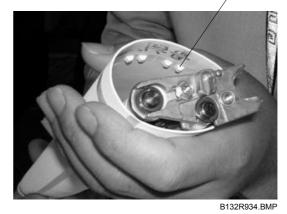


B132R127.WMF

- 1. Remove the front plastic cover [A] ( $\hat{F}$  x1)
- 2. Remove the rear plastic cover [B] ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x1$ )
- 3. Loosen front lock screw [C]. Do not remove.
- 4. <u>Loosen</u> rear lock screw [D]. Do not remove. This releases the spring-loaded tension on the belt.
- 5. Grip the roller in the center [E] then squeeze the belt to bring the rollers together.
- While squeezing the belt and rollers together in the center, tighten screws [C] and [D]. This compresses the spring and releases tension on the belt.
   Important
  - To avoid stripping the threads of the screws, do not apply excessive torque to these screws!
- 7. Release the belt and make sure that the belt is loose and that the rollers do not move. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 if the rollers expand and tighten the belt.



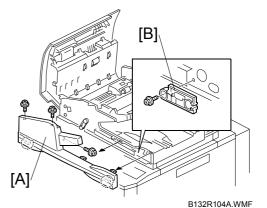
- 8. Remove the Teflon sleeve [A].
- 9. Push the rear shaft bearing [B] out of its bracket.
- 10. Push the front shaft bearing [C] out of its bracket.
- 11. Push the front end of the shaft [D] over the top of the bracket.
- 12. Push the rear end of the shaft [E] over the top of the bracket.
- 13. Pull the shaft [F] out of the belt.
- 14. Pull the belt [G] toward the front to remove it.
- 15. Slide the new belt over the assembly.
- 16. Insert the shaft [F] into the new belt, snap the shaft into its brackets, and push in the shaft bearings.
- 17. Make sure that studs on the underside of the belt [H] are aligned with the grooves of the Teflon rollers on each end of the shaft below.

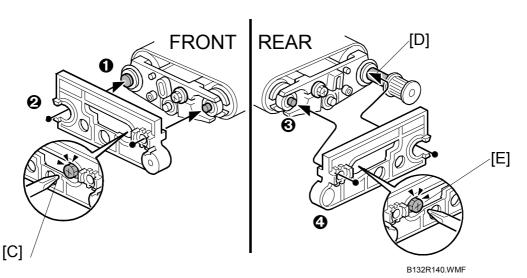


/[H]

## **Reinstalling the Belt**

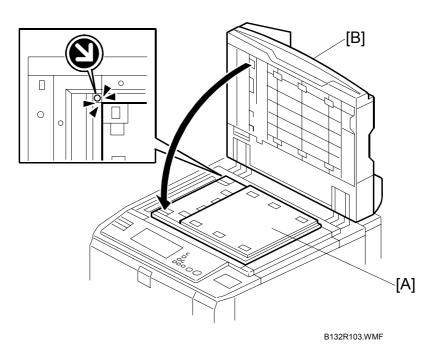
- 1. Remove the ARDF front cover [A]
- Take out the special tool [B].
   NOTE: The special tool [B] is attached to the front side plate. It is used to adjust the tension on the belt on both ends of the shaft.





- 3. Fit the special tool onto the FRONT.
- Slowly loosen the front lock screw [C] until you see the tip of the shaft aligned with the hole *Q*, then tighten the screw.
   Important
  - To avoid stripping the threads of the screws, do not apply excessive torque.
- Remove the special tool and fit it onto the REAR.
   NOTE: If the Teflon sleeve has been reattached at [D], remove it. Do not reattach the sleeve until after adjusting the belt tension. (The special tool does not fit over the rear end with the Teflon sleeve attached.)
- 6. Slowly loosen the rear lock screw [E] until you see the tip of the shaft ③ aligned with the hole ④ then tighten the screw.
- 7. Re-install the Teflon sleeve.
- 8. Re-install the front and rear plastic cover.
- 9. Reinstall the transport belt assembly in the ARDF.

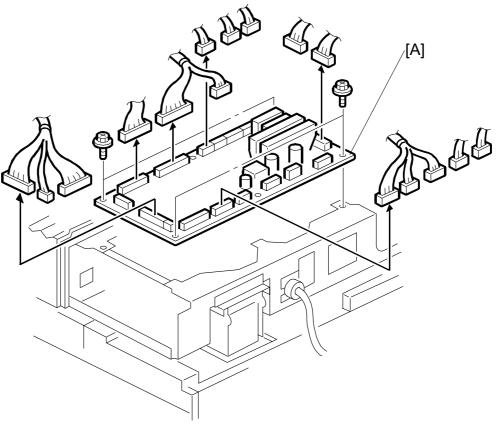
ARDF



## Reattaching the White Cover

- 1. With its white side down, set the cover [A] on the exposure glass.
- 2. Make sure the upper left corner is aligned with the arrow at the corner of the exposure glass.
- 3. Close the ARDF [B] on top of the cover.

# 3.18.12 ARDF CONTROL BOARD

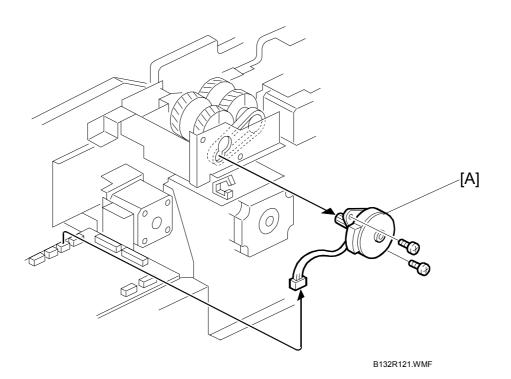


B132R124.WMF

#### Remove:

ARDF Rear cover (€3.18.1)
 [A]: ARDF control board (≅ x17, \$ x4)

# 3.18.13 ARDF BOTTOM PLATE LIFT MOTOR

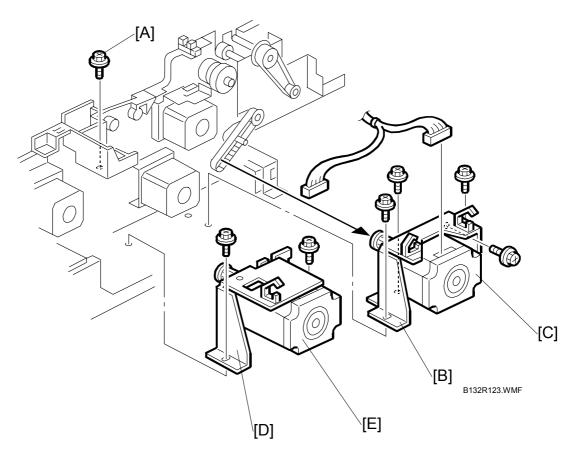


Replacemen Adjustment

• Open the feed cover.

Remove:

- ARDF rear cover (•3.18.1)
- [A]: ARDF bottom plate lift motor ( I x1, x2, Timing belt x1)



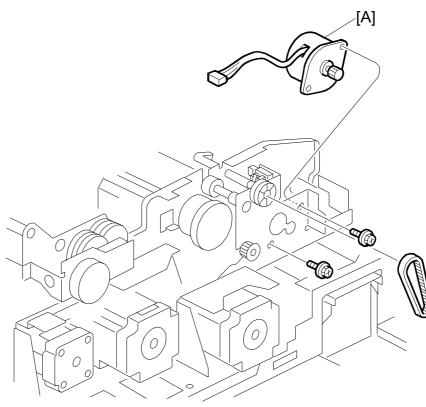
- Open the feed cover
- Remove the ARDF rear cover (
   3.18.1)

Important! The right motor must be removed before the left motor.

- [A]: Screw (∦ x1)
- [B]: Feed motor bracket ( x4, 🖾 x1, Timing belt x1, Spring x1)
- [C]: Feed motor (<sup>∦</sup> x2)
- [D]: Transport motor bracket ( x2, with x1, Timing belt x1, Spring x1)
- [E]: Transport motor ( x2)

## Reinstallation

• Reinstallation is easier if you first set the spring tension with the screws and then fasten the motor bracket with screws.



B132R120.WMF

• Open the feed cover.

Remove:

ARDF rear cover ( 3.18.1)
[A]: Pickup roller lift motor ( x2, x1, Timing belt x1)

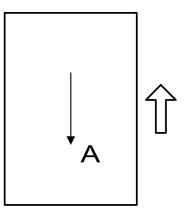
# **3.19 IMAGE ADJUSTMENTS**

# 3.19.1 SCANNING

Before doing the following scanner adjustments, perform or check the printing registration/side-to-side adjustment and the blank margin adjustment. Use a C4 test chart to perform the following adjustments.

#### Scanner sub-scan magnification

- 1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy.
- 2. Check the magnification ratio. Use **SP4008** (Sub Scan Mag) to adjust if necessary. Standard: ±1.0%.



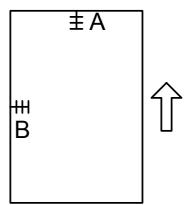
B132R934.WMF

A: Sub-scan magnification

## Scanner leading edge and side-to-side registration

- 1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy.
- 2. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration.
- Adjust with the following SP modes if necessary. Standard: 0 ± 2mm.

	SP mode
Sub Scan Reg	SP4010 001
Main Scan Reg	SP4011 001



B132R935.WMF

A: Leading Edge Registration B: Side-to-side Registration

## Main scan dot position correction

Adjust the printer registration before adjusting the scanner.

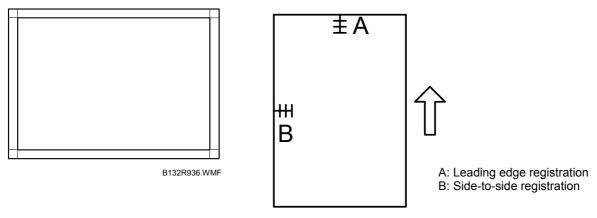
- 1. Enter the SP mode.
- 2. Open **SP4010** and **SP4011**.
- 3. Make sure that each value is equal to the factory default.
- 4. Touch [COPY Window] and copy the C-4 chart in the full-color photo mode. **NOTE:** Be sure to copy in the photo mode. Color displacement cannot be checked correctly in text mode.
- 5. Use a magnification scope to check the yellow and cyan vertical lines.
  - If they exactly overwrite the black line at the edges of the copy, exit the SP mode. No adjustment is necessary
  - If the yellow and cyan lines significantly extend beyond the black lines, go to the next step.
- 6. Touch [SP Mode] to return to the SP mode.
- 7. Do SP4932. (Main Scan Dot Adj) Compare the current values against the table.

SP4932 001	R:Left
SP4932 002	R:Right
SP4932 003	B:Left
SP4932 004	B:Right

Replacement Adjustment

# 3.19.2 ARDF

## ARDF side-to-side and leading edge registration



B132R937.WMF

Make a temporary test chart as shown above using A3/DLT paper.

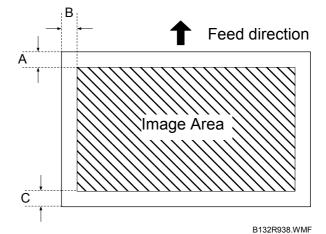
- 1. Place the temporary test chart on the ARDF table and make a copy.
- 2. Check the registration, and adjust using the following SP modes if necessary.

SP Code	What It Does	Adjustment Range
SP6006 001	ADF Main Reg Adj	± 3.0 mm
SP6006 003	ADF Sub Reg Adj	± 42 steps
SP6006 005	ADF Buck Adj:Front	± 42 steps
SP6006 006	ADF Buck Adj:Back	$\pm$ 45 steps
SP6006 006	ADF TEdge EMargin	

# 3.19.3 REGISTRATION

## Image Area

The image area must be configured correctly. Adjust the registration within the adjustment standard range as described below.



## Leading Edge

Adjusts the leading edge registration for each paper type and process line speed.

## Side to Side

Adjusts the side-to-side registration for each paper feed station. The side-to-side registration for the LCT can be adjusted with SP1002 006.

## Adjustment Standards

- Leading edge (sub-scan direction): 3 ± 0 mm
- Side to side (main-scan direction): 2 ± 0 mm

## **Paper Registration Standard**

The registration in both main- and sub-scan directions may fluctuate within the following tolerance.

## 1st side

- Sub-scan direction: 0 ± 1.5 mm
- Main-scan direction: 0 ± 2 mm

## 2nd side in duplex

- Sub-scan direction: 0 ± 3 mm
- Main-scan direction:  $0 \pm 4 \text{ mm}$

### Adjustment Procedure

- 1. Enter SP mode and open **SP2109**.
- Print Pattern 10.
   NOTE: Print several printing patterns and average the measured values of the leading edge and side-to-side registration values.
- 3. Do the leading edge registration adjustment.
  - Check the leading edge registration and adjust it with **SP1001**.
  - Select the adjustment conditions (paper type and process line speed).
  - Input the value and press the [#] key.
  - Check the leading edge adjustment by printing Pattern 10 with SP2109.
- 4. Do the side to side registration adjustment.
  - Check the side-to-side registration and adjust it with **SP1002**.
  - Select the adjustment conditions for the paper feed station.
  - Input the value and press the [#] key.
  - Check the side-to-side adjustment by printing **Pattern 10** with **SP2109**.

# 3.19.4 COLOR REGISTRATION

## Forced MUSIC Adjustment

The line position adjustment optimizes the quality of color prints. You can do forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001:

We recommend that you do the forced MUSIC adjustment at the customer location immediately after installation, or after servicing or adjusting any parts or components of the following units:

- Around the drum
- ITB unit (especially after belt replacement)
- Paper Transfer Roller
- Laser unit

### Adjustment of Line Speed for Thick Paper

Adjust the line speed of the fusing unit (the speed of the K development motor) when:

- Color shift corrected with the line position adjustment.
- Color registration shifts more at the trailing edge than at the leading edge.

### Color Registration Test and Error Adjustment

Before you start this procedure, make sure that the exposure glass is clean. Also, make sure that the ITB is installed correctly, especially at the edge.

- 1. Load A3/DLT paper and select full-color mode.
- 2. Start **SP2109 002** and select pattern 1 (1-dot line), then push the "OK" button.
- 3. Push the "Copy Window" button. Then select A3/DLT paper, and push the "Start" button to print the pattern.

**NOTE:** Make sure that "Full Color Mode" is selected before you push the Start button.

- 4. Look at the printout. The horizontal and vertical lines must show no color (must be black). In that condition, the K, C, M, and Y images are deposited exactly on top of each other.
- 5. If there is color on the printout, there is a color registration error, and we must correct the problem. To correct the problem, do the MUSIC process with **SP2111 001**. This takes about 50 seconds.
- 6. Do step 2 again.
- 7. If there are color registration errors, then do the procedure described in Section 4 "4.2.2 Color Registration Error Adjustments".

## 3.19.5 SKEW ADJUSTMENT AFTER LASER UNIT REPLACEMENT

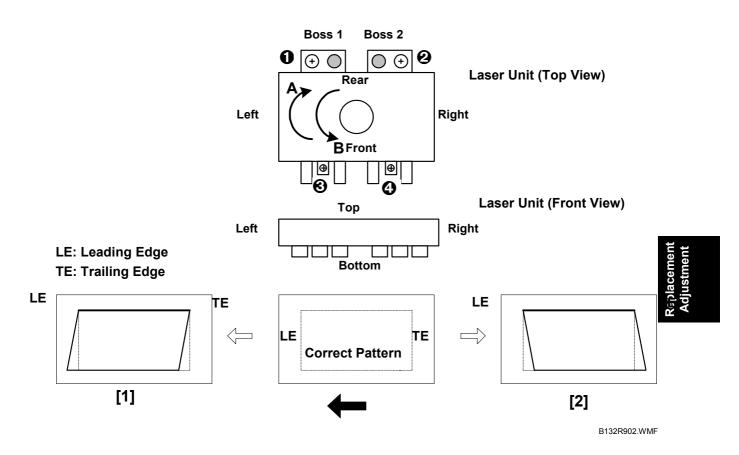
### To Print the Trim Pattern:

- 1. Do SP2109 002 (Test Pattern Select Pattern) and select pattern 10.
- 2. Touch [Execute] on the display.
- 3. Touch [Copy Screen] on the display to switch to the normal copier screen.
- 4. Select the paper size and color then press the [Start] key to print the pattern.
- 5. Touch [SP Screen].
- 6. Do **SP2109 002** and select pattern **0** and touch the [Execute] button.
- 7. Check the test pattern to determine whether the image is perpendicular at the corners.

If the image pattern is correct, no further adjustment is necessary.

-or-

If the pattern is not correct (a skewed parallelogram), go to the next step.



### To Adjust the Pattern Output:

- 1. Remove the exposure glass. (•3.3.1)
- 2. Remove the lens cover and lens block. (•3.3.2)
- 3. Loosen the screws of the laser unit  $\mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{2}$ ,  $\mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{3}$ ,  $\mathbf{4}$ ).
- 4. Determine the direction of skew in the printed pattern.
- 5. Refer to the illustration, then shift the LD unit toward the rear (**A**) or toward the front (**B**) to adjust the skew.
  - If the skew resembles the left pattern [1], turn the LD unit slightly counterclockwise in the **B** direction.
  - If the skew resembles the right pattern [2], turn the LD unit slightly clockwise in the A direction.
  - Boss 1, Boss 2 provide the reference points for correct alignment.
- 6. Reassemble the copier and print another trim pattern to confirm that the skew has been corrected.

# 3.19.6 PRINTER GAMMA CORRECTION

ACC adjustment done at installation is usually sufficient to adjust the color balance for optimum performance. Printer gamma correction is required for fine adjustment to meet a customer requirement.

The printer gamma curve created during ACC can be modified with SP modes. The gamma data for highlight, middle, shadow areas, and IDmax can be adjusted. The adjustable range is from 0 to 30 (31 steps).

#### Copy Mode

#### KCMY Color Balance Adjustment

The adjustment uses only "Offset" values.

Important: Never change "Option" values (default value is 0).

Highlight (Low ID)	Levels 2 through 5 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
Middle (Middle ID)	Levels 3 through 7 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
Shadow (High ID)	Levels 6 through 9 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
ID max	Level 10 in the C4 chart 10-level scale (affects the entire image density.)
Offset	The higher the number in the range associated with the low ID, middle ID, high ID, and ID max, the greater the density.

There are four adjustable modes. You can get access to these with SP4918 009:

- Copy Photo mode
- Copy Text mode
- Copy Text (Single Color) mode
- Copy Photo (Single Color) mode

Manual Gamma Adj Copy:Letter(SC H		Offset S	IDmax	Н	М	Option S	IUL 11,2002 4:5
Manual Gamma Adj Copy:Letter H	O: M	ffset S	IDma×	Н	Op M	otion S	IDmax 11,2002 4:57PM
Manual Gamma Adj Copy:Photo H K 15 C 15 M 15 Y 15 COPY Window	Offs M 15 15 15 15 15	et <u>S</u> 15 15 15 15	IDma× 15 15 15 15	H 0 ( 0 ( 0 ( 1/3 (	Opt i M 0 0	S 0 0 0	IDmax 0 0 0

B132R939.WMF

#### Adjustment Procedure

- 1. Copy the C-4 chart in mode that you want to adjust.
- 2. Enter the SP mode.
- 3. Touch "Copy SP."
- 4. Open SP4918 009.
- 5. Adjust the offset values until the copy quality conforms to the standard. (Refer the tables below.)

#### Important

- Never change "Option" value (default value is 0).
- Always adjust the density in order: ID Max $\rightarrow$  Middle $\rightarrow$  Shadow $\rightarrow$  Highlight

### - Photo Mode, Full Colour -

Step	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that dirty background is not visible on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.
5	K Highlight (Low ID) (C,M, and Y) <on color<br="" full="" the="">copy&gt;</on>	12345678910	Adjust the offset value so that the color balance of black scale levels 3 through 5 in the copy is seen as gray (no C, M, or Y should be visible). If the black scale contains C, M, or Y, redo step 1 to 4.

Replacement Adjustment

Step	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that dirty background is not visible on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

# - Photo Mode, Single Colour -

# - Text (Letter) Mode, Full Colour -

Step	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart (K)	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that dirty background is not visible on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

vajustment

Step	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart (K)	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Adjust the offset value so that dirty background is not visible on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

## - Text (Letter) Mode, Single Colour -

After "Shadow" adjustment, if text in the test pattern does not print clearly:

- Check to determine whether the 5 line/mm pattern at each corner is printed clearly.
- If it is not, adjust the offset value of 'shadow' again until the pattern prints clearly.

## **Printer Mode**

There are six adjustable modes. Select these modes with in the Printer SP mode with **SP1102 001**:

- 1200 x 1200 photo mode
- 600 x 600 text mode
- 1800 x 600 text mode
- 600 x 600 photo mode
- 1800 x 600 photo mode
- 1200 x 1200 text mode

	K	С	М	Y
Highlight	SP1104 001	SP1104 021	SP1104 041	SP1104 061
Middle	SP1104 002	SP1104 022	SP1104 042	SP1104 062
Shadow	SP1104 003	SP1104 023	SP1104 043	SP1104 063
IDmax	SP1104 004	SP1104 024	SP1104 044	SP1104 064

## **Adjustment Procedure**

- 1. Do the ACC adjustment for the printer mode.
- 2. Turn the main power off and on.
- 3. Enter SP mode.
- 4. Touch "Printer SP".
- 5. Select SP1102 001 and select the print mode that you want to adjust.
- 6. To review the image quality for these settings, do **SP1103 001** to print out a tone control test sheet.
- 7. Adjust the color density with **SP1104** as shown below while comparing the tone control test sheet with the C4 test chart.

**Important**: Always adjust the density in order: ID Max→ Middle→ Shadow→ Highlight

8. Save the adjusted settings with SP1105 001.

## Adjustment Reference For Gamma Correction

The following tables show the adjustment reference for gamma correction. The tables show the level of the color scale on the C4 test chart and on the tone control test sheet printed in the printer SP mode. For example, for K at text mode, grade 12 on the tone control test sheet should be the same as grade 7 on the C4 chart.

Normally, it is not necessary to adjust the gamma data as shown in the table since ACC adjusts the gamma curve automatically. The fine-tuning of color balance by gamma data adjustment is necessary only when the results of ACC and Color Calibration do not meet customer requirements.

	C4 test chart			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
			600 x 600	-	1	3	5	6	9	10	11	16	-
		Photo	1800 x 600	-	1	3	5	6	8	10	11	16	-
κ	Test		1200 x 1200	-	1	3	4	6	8	10	12	15	16
	sheet		600 x 600	-	1	3	5	6	9	10	11	16	-
		Text	1800 x 600	-	1	3	5	6	9	10	12	16	-
			1200 x 1200	-	1	3	5	6	9	11	12	15	16

	C4 tes	st chart		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
			600 x 600	-	1	3	5	6	9	10	12	13	14
		Photo	1800 x 600	-	1	3	5	6	8	10	11	12	13
С	Test		1200 x 1200	-	1	3	4	5	8	10	11	12	13
	sheet		600 x 600	-	1	3	4	5	8	10	11	12	13
		Text	1800 x 600	-	1	3	5	6	9	10	11	12	14
			1200 x 1200	-	1	3	4	5	9	10	11	12	13

	C4 tes	st chart		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
			600 x 600	-	1	4	6	8	11	12	14	16	-
		Photo	1800 x 600	-	1	4	6	8	11	12	15	16	-
М	Test		1200 x 1200	-	1	4	6	7	10	12	14	16	-
	sheet		600 x 600	-	1	4	6	7	10	12	14	16	-
		Text	1800 x 600	-	1	4	6	8	11	13	14	16	-
			1200 x 1200	-	1	4	6	7	10	12	13	16	-

	C4 tes	t chart		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
			600 x 600	1	3	4	9	11	12	14	15	16	-
		Photo	1800 x 600	1	3	5	8	10	11	14	15	16	-
Y	Test		1200 x 1200	1	3	5	8	10	11	14	15	16	-
	sheet	Text	600 x 600	1	2	5	8	10	11	14	14/ 15	15	16
		Text	1800 x 600	1	3	6	9	10	12	14	15	16	-
			1200 x 1200	1	2	4	7	9	10	13	15	16	-

# 3.20 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION

After clearing memory, or if the touch screen detection function is not working correctly, calibrate the touch screen.

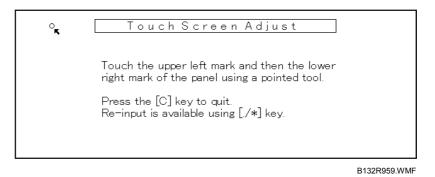
#### Important

- Do not attempt to use items [2] to [9] on the Self-Diagnostic Menu. These items are for design use only.
- To avoid causing an error, do not touch the Reset key while doing this procedure.
- 1. Push [Clear] ( , push **1993** press, and then press [Clear/Stop] ( ) 5 times.

	Self Dia	gno	ostic Menu	
[1] Touc	h Screen Adjust		[6] Record Monitor	
[2] LED	Test		[7] Rom Checksum Test	
[3] Hard	Key Test		[8] Message Display Debug	
[4] Buzz	er Test		[9] System Down Check	
[5] LCD	Test			#]Exit

B132R958.WMF

2. Push "Touch Screen Adjust" (or push "1").



- 3. Use a pointed (not sharp!) tool to press the upper left mark  $^{\circ}$ K.
- 4. Press the lower right mark  $\stackrel{\bullet}{\sim}$  after it appears.
- Touch a few spots on the touch screen to confirm that the marker (+) appears exactly where the screen is touched. If the + mark does not appear where the screen is touched, push [Cancel] and repeat from Step 2.
- 6. When you are finished, touch **[#]** OK on the screen (or push **[#]** on the operation panel).
- 7. Touch **[#] Exit** on the screen to close the Self-Diagnostic menu and save the settings.

# 4. TROUBLESHOOTING

# 4.1 PROGRAM DOWNLOAD

# 4.1.1 OVERVIEW

Here are some important points to keep in mind when downloading software:

- If an error interrupts download processing, the machine cannot operate normally with the program software only partially downloaded.
- When download processing execution starts, "Downloading..." is displayed and when downloading has completed successfully, the message is cleared.
- If the download is interrupted when the "Downloading ..." message is displayed, the machine does not attempt a re-try.
- The program that downloads firmware from an SD card is part of the GW controller software. If downloading this software is interrupted, the program stored in the machine may be corrupted. Because of this, it may not be possible to restart the downloading program. (In addition, if the GW controller software cannot be downloaded, other software on other SD cards cannot be downloaded.) However, it may be possible to restart the program without replacing the board by setting DIP SW 1 on the controller to ON, and re-starting.

# 4.1.2 RECOVERY METHODS

When an error occurs during downloading, an error code is displayed on the operation panel.

- If the download procedure can be re-started, re-start the download procedure.
- If the download procedure cannot be downloaded for other than the GW controller, replace the board where the downloaded program is stored.
- If the download procedure cannot be downloaded for the GW controller, set DIP SW 1 to ON. Power the machine off and on to start the downloading program. After downloading has completed, set the DIP SW to OFF then power the machine off and on again.

Trouble shootin<u>;</u>

# 4.1.3 DOWNLOAD ERROR CODES

	Display	Details	Recovery
01	Reboot after card insert E01 ↓ Module ID Card No. xx/xx	Controller ROM update error 1 When the update break data is stored in NVRAM, the break module information and the decompression module capable of writing do not match.	Use the correct card
02	Download Error E02 Power off/on	Controller ROM update error 2. Error occurs during ROM update program initialization.	Cycle the machine     off/on to rewrite
03	Download Error E03 Power off/on	Controller ROM update error 3 The ROM for the write operation does not exist.	<ul> <li>Cycle the machine off/on</li> <li>Install the missing ROM DIMM</li> </ul>
04	Download Error E04 Power off/on	Controller ROM update error 4 GZIP data confirmation fails. (CRC value check)	<ul> <li>Cycle the machine off/on</li> <li>Set DIP SW 1 to ON and retry</li> <li>Replace RAM DIMM</li> <li>Replace controller board</li> </ul>
05	Download Error E05 Power off/on	Controller ROM update error 5 Error occurs when writing to the device.	<ul> <li>Cycle the machine off/on</li> <li>Set DIP SW 1 to ON and retry</li> <li>Replace RAM DIMM</li> <li>Replace controller board</li> </ul>
06	Download Error E06 Power off/on	Controller ROM update error 6 CPU clock error.	<ul> <li>Turn the machine power off/on.</li> <li>Set controller DIPSW-1 to ON to force the machine to write to ROM.</li> <li>If you cannot force the machine to write, replace the controller board.</li> </ul>
19	Download Error E19 Power off/on	Controller ROM update error 7 Schedule data is unclear.	Software defective
20	Down Error E20 Power Off/On	System error 1 (+SC991) The physical address cannot be mapped. Software/hardware is defective	<ul> <li>Cycle the machine off/on and re-try</li> <li>Replace controller board</li> </ul>
21	Download Error E21 Power Off/On	System error 2 (+SC991) There is not sufficient memory to download.	<ul> <li>Cycle the machine off/on and re-try.</li> <li>Replace RAM</li> <li>Replace the controller board</li> </ul>

_
_
_

	Display	Details	Recovery
22	Download Error E22	System error 3 (+SC991)	Cycle the machine
	Module ID	Data fails to decompress. Card	off/on and re-try.
	Card No xx/xx	defective.	Replace card
			Replace controller
	SC991	System error 4	<ul><li>board</li><li>Cycle the machine</li></ul>
	30991	System error 4 "Selfupdate" does not execute.	• Cycle the machine off/on and re-try
		Software defective.	Set DIP SW 1 to ON
			and re-try
			Replace the controller
			board
23	Download Error E24	System error 5	Cycle the machine
	Power Off/On	Card read/write error. Software or card	off/on and re-try
		defective.	Replace the card
			Replace the controller board
30	No Valid Data E30	Download dysfunction 1	HDD defective
		Print download is not possible. Cannot	HDD defective     HDD harness
		download to HDD because HDD not	disconnected,
		installed or defective.	defective
31	Reboot After Card	Download dysfunction 2	Set the correct cards
	Insert E31	Download continuity error with more	in the correct order
	Module ID Card No. xx/xx	than one card. The second or later	
32	Reboot After Card	card is not compatible.	Use the correct card
52	Insert E32	Download dysfunction 3 Download interrupted because card is	<ul> <li>If power failure</li> </ul>
	Module ID	not correct, or power failure interrupted	caused the failure,
	Card No. xx/xx	download.	remove the card and
			insert another.
33	No Valid Data E33	Download dysfunction 4	Use the correct card
		Card version error. Attempted to	
		download program using a card with the wrong version number.	
34	No Valid Data E34	Download dysfunction 5	Use the correct card
04		Specification error. DOM card set in	
		EXP machine, or vice versa.	
35	No Valid Data E35	Download dysfunction 6	Use the correct card
		Wrong model. The inserted card is for	
		another model.	
36	No Valid Data E36	Download dysfunction 7	• Use the correct card,
		Module error. The program that you	inserted correctly
		are attempting to download does not exist on the machine, or the contact	<ul> <li>Install a ROM DIMM if none is installed</li> </ul>
		points at the card and the machine slot	
		are not connected.	
37	No Valid Data E37	Download dysfunction 8	Use an unused card
		Edit option card error. You attempted	
		to employ a used card.	
40	Download Error E40	Download result failure 1	Cycle the machine
	Module ID Card No. xx/xx	Engine download failure.	off/on and re-try
41	Download Error E41	Download result failure 2	Cycle the machine
		Download result failure 2	
41	Module ID	Fax download failure.	off/on and re-try

Troubleshooting F

	Display	Details	Recovery
42	Download Error E42 Module ID Card No. xx/xx	Download result failure 3 Operation panel or language download failed. For this error, sometimes the message may not be displayed.	Cycle the machine     off/on and re-try
43	Download Error E43 Module ID Card No. xx/xx	Download result failure 4 Print download failed.	Cycle the machine     off/on and re-try
44	Download Error E44 Module ID Card No.	Download result failure 5 The data targeted for the write operation could not be accessed.	<ul> <li>Turn the machine power off/on.</li> <li>Replace the SD card with the start-up SD card that has the source data</li> <li>Set controller DIPSW- 1 to ON to force the machine to write</li> <li>If you cannot force the machine to write, replace the controller board.</li> </ul>
50	No Valid Data E50	Download invalid The source data for the update could not be authenticated.	Use the correct SD card.
51	(no display)	Remote ROM update failure 1 The source data for the ROM update is corrupted because the machine is operating and an SC code has been issued.	<ul> <li>Turn the machine power off/on and try again.</li> </ul>
52	(no display)	Remote ROM update failure 2 The source data received for the ROM update is corrupted; it failed a SUM check due to its abnormal length.	<ul> <li>Try again with the correct data.</li> </ul>
53	(no display)	Download result failure 6 The previous download in progress was cancelled.	Do the download procedure again.

# 4.1.4 IMPORTANT SP CODES

Here is a list of important SP codes that you may need during troubleshooting.

SP5802	Free Run Mode	Execute this SP to force base engine to run in the free run mode for testing.
SP5803	Input Check	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches. Refer to the detailed tables in "4. Service Tables".
SP5804	Output Check	Switches electrical components one by one for testing. Refer to the detailed tables in "4. Service Tables".
SP5810	Cancel Fusing SC Code	Use this to cancel a fusing unit SC code to return the machine to normal operation after you repair the machine.
SP5990	SMC Printout	Prints the SMC Report. Some SC codes (logged SPs) are listed only in the SMC Report and do not appear on the operation panel display.
SP7401	SC Codes	Displays the total number of SCs logged.
SP7403	SC History	Displays information about the 10 most recent service calls (Code, Total, Date, and Details).
SP7801	ROM Ver	Displays the ROM version numbers of the main machine and connected peripheral devices.
SP7832	Self-Diagnostic Report Details	Push [#] to display a list of error codes. Nothing is displayed if no errors have occurred.

**NOTE:** For more information about these and other SP codes, see "4. Service Tables".

Troubleshooting

#### 31 March 2005

# 4.2 SPECIAL PROCEDURES

# 4.2.1 SP2181 030 (ALIGNMENT RESULT) ERRORS

After SP2181 030 executes normally, you should see:



If you see any number other than a "1", this indicates an error.

Code	Error	Problem	Recovery
0	None		Default display.
1	None		No action required.
2	Failure	Large amount of skew. Large amount of K skew. Large amount of skew in every color.	Print a trim pattern with <b>SP2109 002</b> Pattern <b>10</b> .
		Density too light.	Print a coverage pattern with <b>SP2109 002</b> Pattern <b>1</b> . Check the images.
		ITB scratched.	Replace the ITB.
12	Abnormal detection pattern	ITB misaligned.	Reinstall ITB.
		SP2153 023 set to 1 (OFF).	Set SP2153 023 to 0 (ON).
		Image density too light.	Output a coverage pattern with <b>SP2109 002</b> Pattern <b>1</b> . Check the images.
		Dirty, abnormal images.	Output Pattern 1, 18, or 20 with SP2109 002 and check the images.

#### 31 March 2005

#### SPECIAL PROCEDURES

Code	Error	Problem	Recovery
21-23	Auto density out of range (over	ITB misaligned	Reinstall ITB.
	or lower)	Image density too light, uneven.	Output a coverage pattern with <b>SP2109 002</b> Pattern <b>1</b> . Check the images.
		Connector loose. Connector dirty. Harness defective. Other	Check the ID sensor and its connection.
31-33	Amount of skew calculated in	ITB misaligned	Reinstall ITB.
	the coverage pattern abnormal.	SP2153 023 set to 1 (OFF).	Set <b>SP2153 023</b> to <b>0</b> (ON).
		Large amount of K skew.	Print a trim pattern with SP2109 002 Patten 10.
		Image density too light, uneven.	Output a coverage pattern with <b>SP2109 002</b> Pattern <b>1</b> . Check the images.
41-43	Intersecting lines of the grid		ITB misaligned.
	pattern.	Image density too light.	Output a coverage pattern with <b>SP2109 002</b> Pattern <b>1</b> . Check the images.
		Dirty, abnormal images.	Output Pattern <b>1</b> , <b>18</b> , or <b>20</b> with SP2109 002 and check the images.
51-53		ITB misaligned	Reinstall ITB.
		SP2153 023 set to 1 (OFF).	Set <b>SP2153 023</b> to <b>0</b> (ON).
			The settings of sensor lights 1, 2, 3 are different from the default setting, which is 2050. (These settings are done with <b>SP2153 020~022</b> .)
		Dirty, abnormal images.	Output Pattern 1, 18, or 20 with SP2109 002 and check the images.
		Connector loose. Connector dirty. Harness defective.	Check the ID sensor and its connection.
		Other	

<mark>راال</mark>ج

#### Image Position Adjustment

A MUSIC error occurs when a large amount of skew occurs beyond the acceptable range, or when the K sensor is out of position. Such errors can be corrected manually to correct skew. However, these adjustments cannot correct problems caused by physical damage to the ITB, filming, density degradation, or a dirty sensor.

- 1. Load some A3 paper in Tray 1. Make sure that the side and bottom fences are set properly.
- 2. Do SP1002 001 (Side-to-Side Reg Tray 1) and set it to "0".
- 3. Do **SP2109 002** (Test Pattern) then select and print pattern **10: Trim Area**.
- 4. Do **SP2101 001** so the left and right margins are 1.5 mm. If the image is cut off at the edge, use the 1-dot pattern.
- 5. If any color is separated from black more than 1 mm, do **SP2101 002~004** to bring each color closer to K.

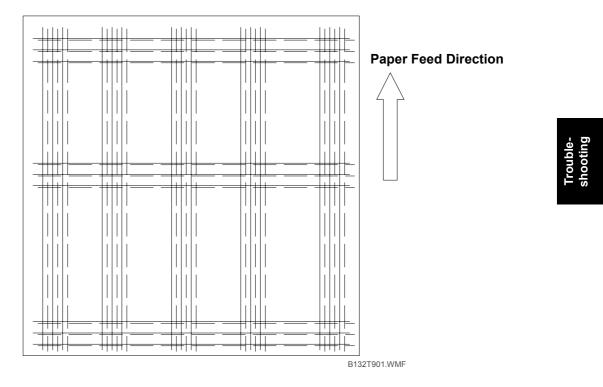
#### Important

- Black skew can cause part of the image to shift off the paper.
- Normally, the settings of **SP2102 001~004** should be reset to the values in the SMC report or the values printed on the A5 sheet provided with a new laser unit.
- Normally, these values do not change unless the NVRAM becomes corrupted.
- Most machines can be adjusted with these values: K: -40, M:-20, C:-10, Y: -5. Use these values if other information is not available.

# 4.2.2 COLOR REGISTRATION ERROR ADJUSTMENT

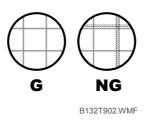
## **Color Registration Error Correction**

- 1. Start SP 2109 002 and select pattern 1 (1-dot line), then push the "OK" button.
- 2. Push the "Copy Window" button. Then select A3/DLT paper, and push the "Start" button to print the pattern.
  - **NOTE:** Make sure that "Full Color Mode" is selected before you push the Start button.



In the example above, the dotted lines are magenta, cyan, or yellow, and the solid lines are black.

3. Lay the test pattern flat, and use a lupe to examine the grid patterns.



#### SPECIAL PROCEDURES

- 4. Correct the errors in the vertical lines (this corrects errors in the main scan direction). See the following table for how to do this.
  - **NOTE:** In the table, a dotted line indicates a colored line (C, M, or Y). For example, the first row of the table shows you how to adjust the machine if a colored line is to the right of the black line on the test pattern.

SP	Action
2101 002 (M) 2101 003 (C) 2101 004 (Y)	Decrease the value
<b>Unit of adjustment:</b> One dot (43.2 μm)	Increase the value

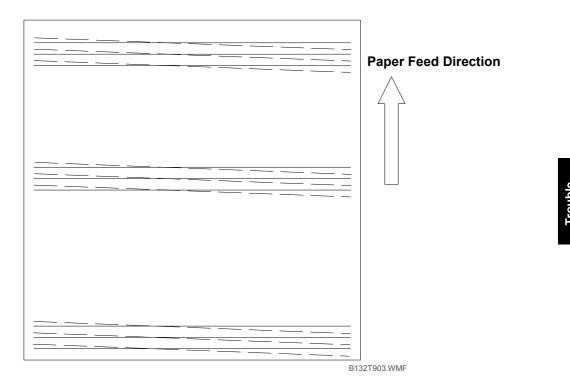
5. Correct the errors in the horizontal lines (this corrects errors in the sub scan direction). See the following table for how to do this.

	SP	Action
<u></u>	2101 013 (M) 2101 014 (C) 2101 015 (Y)	Increase the value
	Unit of adjustment: One line (84.6 µm)	Decrease the value

- 6. Do steps 1 and 2 again.
- 7. If there are color registration errors, then do steps 1 through 6 again.

## **Color Skew Error Correction**

- 1. Start SP 2109 002 and select pattern 1 (1-dot line), then push the "OK" button.
- Push the "Copy Window" button. Then select A3/DLT paper, and push the "Start" button to print the pattern.
   NOTE: Make sure that "Full Color Mode" is selected before you push the Start button.



In the example above, the dotted lines are magenta, cyan, or yellow, and the solid lines are black.

3. Correct the skew. See the following table for how to do this

Right	SP	Action
	2104 001 (M)	Increase the value
	2104 002 (C) 2104 003 (Y)	Decrease the value

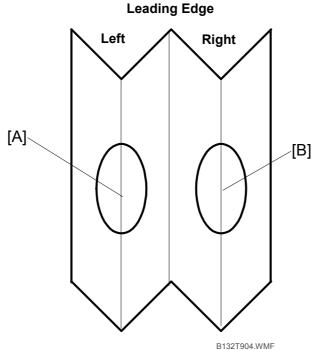
### **Overall Check**

- 1. After you do the color registration error and color skew corrections, do a forced MUSIC again, with SP 2111 001.
- 2. Do SP 2109 002 and print pattern 1 (1-dot line) on A3/DLT paper again. Check the skew and color registration. If they are still not acceptable, do the forced MUSIC again.
- Do SP 2181-030 to make sure that the forced MUSIC was done correctly. If the result is '1', then each color was aligned correctly. If "1" is not shown, then please see section 4.2.1.

## Color Registration at the Left and Right Folds of the Test Pattern

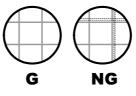
Do this procedure after you complete "Color Registration Error Correction" and "Color Skew Error Correction".

Do SP 2109 002 and print pattern 1 (1-dot line) on A3/DLT paper.
 NOTE: Make sure that "Full Color Mode" is selected before you push the Start button.



2. Fold the test pattern lengthways in half, then fold it in half again as shown above.

3. Lay the test pattern flat, and use a lupe to examine the grid patterns at the first crease [A] and third crease [B].



B132T905.WMF

When viewed through the lupe, the grid lines on the left and right side should be perfectly aligned (**G**) and not misaligned (**NG**).

4. If the lines are misaligned (**NG**), use the lupe to measure distance between the black vertical lines and each of the colored vertical lines (C, M, Y). Measure this on the left and right folds:

If there is a gap between the black lines and a colored line, measure it and correct it with SPs as shown in the tables below.

Left	Right	Remarks	SP	Action	
		Gap on the left is different from the gap on the right Gaps are the same or different.	2112 001 (M) Left Fold 2112 002 (M) Right Fold 2112 003 (C) Left Fold 2112 004 (C) Right Fold	To move a color toward the left edge, decrease the SP value. To move a color toward the right edge, increase the SP value.	Trouble- shooting
			2112 005 (Y) Left Fold 2112 006 (Y) Right Fold Unit of adjustment: 50 μm		

# 4.2.3 SP3812 001 (DevSetup Execute) ERRORS

After **SP3812 001** executes normally, you should see four 1s:

1111

Reading from left to right, each "1" indicates the status of the PCUs: K, M, C, Y.

If you see any number other than a "1", this indicates an error.

Code	Error	Problem	Recovery
2	Execution Interrupted	Door was opened, or another color returned an error. Execution halts at the first error encountered or if the front door is opened during execution.	Check the preceding error codes. Never open the front door during execution.
3	Vt Abnormal	The reading of Vt (TD sensor output) is less than 5 V.	Check the operation panel for a developer set error (SC336~SC339). Check the PCUs and confirm that all the film seals have been removed to release the developer from the developer cartridge.
4	Did Not Execute	SP Default	Displayed when you open this SP code. No action is necessary.
8	Toner Supply Abnormal	At the end of the toner filling cycle, the toner end sensor detected no toner.	Check the toner supply unit.
9	Vtcnt Abnormal	Vtref (control reference voltage) could not be adjusted to within 0.2 V of Vt (TD sensor output).	<ul> <li>This is a TD sensor adjustment error (SC372~sC375). Execute SP3801 again for the PCU that returned the error. If this does not recover operation, check the following:</li> <li>Film seal not removed from a new developer pack</li> <li>TD harness sensor disconnected, loose or defective</li> <li>TD sensor defective</li> <li>Harness between TD sensor and drawer disconnected, defective</li> </ul>

## SP3812 001 Error Codes

# 4.2.4 PROCESS CONTROL TROUBLESHOOTING

## Summary of Process Control SC Codes

This is a list of SC codes that may occur during process control. For more, please refer to the process control tables on the following pages.

		_
Pre-Processing Ch	eck	
SC316 to SC319	Vpp is not within the normal range (Vpp: the AC current applied to the charge roller to compensate for changes in the ambient temperature and humidity). Insufficient charge causes white spotting and too much charge causes toner to film on the surface of the drum. Vpp must be > 2.8 kV.	
SC400	ID sensor could not be calibrated. An abnormal ID sensor condition is detected when before calibration begins, Vsg < $0.5V$ or after calibration, Vsg cannot be adjusted to $4.0\pm0.2V$ .	
SC418	Correct current could not be supplied to the ID sensor.	
SC436 to SC439	A problem is detected with a potential sensor during calibration.	
Potential Control		
SC410 to SC413	The development gamma is out of range (not between 0.3 and 6.0) for a color.	Trouble-
SC414 to SC417	Vk is out of range (not within $\pm 150$ V) for a color. If the development potential is less than Vk, toner is not applied to the drum.	
SC420 to SC423	Vd cannot be adjusted to the target voltage for a drum.	
SC424 to SC427	The potential sensor detects that Vpl is not $\pm$ 10V of the target Vpl after exposure of the ID sensor patterns.	
SC432 to SC435	The residual voltage on a drum is greater than -200V.	
TD Sensor Output	Calibration	
SC360 to SC367	An abnormal condition is detected when output of one of the TD sensors fails to fall within the range of 0.5V to 4.5V.	
Process Control Gamma Correction		
SC410 to SC413	C413 The development gamma for black, magenta, cyan, or yellow is not within range (0.3 to 6.0).	
SC414 to SC417	The development start voltage (Vk) for black, magenta, cyan, or yellow PCU is not within range ( $\pm 150V$ )	

SPECIAL PROCEDURES

#### Process Control Self-Check: SP3821

After the process control self-check is executed manually with SP3820, you can execute **SP3821** to check the results of the self-check. The possible error codes are listed in the "Displayed Code" column in the table below.

When you do SP3821, the normal display (no errors) will look like this:

# 10101010

Reading from left to right each "10" represents a color: K, M, C, Y.

If a problem occurs, the code will appear in the column for the color PCU where the error has occurred. For example, If a Vdhome error (Code 15) (see table below) occurs in the M PCU, the display will look like this:

# 10151010

Or if an ID sensor error (Code 21) (see table below) occurs in the Y PCU:

# 10101021

NOTE: "99" displays while SP3821 executes.

Important: Noise and static electricity can damage the many sensors that are used during the process control self-check. Because of this, always turn the machine off before doing any procedure described below that requires disassembly.

#### 31 March 2005

### SPECIAL PROCEDURES

General	Displayed Code	ltem	Major Cause	Action
Normal Potential Sensors	10 15	Successful VdHome Error 1	<ul> <li>V0 (SP3571) above –700V, or</li> <li>VdHome (SP3572) above –700V.</li> <li>The window of the potential sensor probe fouled with toner</li> <li>Potential sensor damaged</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Do SP2260 001 to check the function of the potential sensor.</li> <li>Do SP2261 to check the Vd, Voffset readings. For more, see Section 6. Development has recovered if the Vd is -700V and offset is -10V.</li> <li>Remove the PCU. Use a blower brush to clean the window of the potential sensor probe, then check the sensor again with SP2601.</li> <li>If normal operation cannot be restored, replace the potential sensor probe.</li> </ul>
	16	VdHome Error 2	<ul> <li>V0 (SP3571) below –700V, or</li> <li>VdHome (SP3772) below –500V.</li> <li>Potential sensor relay board damaged</li> <li>Drum abnormal</li> <li>Charge roller damaged</li> <li>Drum motor not operating</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Do SP2260 001 to check the function of the potential sensor.</li> <li>Do SP2261 to check the Vd reading. For more, see Section 6. Development has recovered if the Vd is -700V.</li> <li>Remove the malfunctioning PCU with an functioning PCU, turn the machine off then on, then do the potential sensor check again.</li> <li>If the replaced PCU does not function normally, then the problem is on the machine side, or the potential sensor relay board is malfunctioning.</li> <li>If the replaced PCU functions normally, then there may be a problem with the drum or the charge unit. Replace the PCU.</li> </ul>
	17	VdHome Calculation Error	VdHome could not be calculated. This is a software calculation error (not a hardware problem) <sub>o</sub>	• Switch the machine off/on then execute <b>SP3820 001</b> .
ID Sensors	21	ID Sensor Vsg Adjust Error	<ul> <li>Vsg_reg (SP3121) is out of range (not within 4.0±0.2V).</li> <li>ID sensor fouled with dust, toner</li> <li>ITB undulating or out of position</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Remove the ITB unit.</li> <li>Make sure the belt is mounted correctly.</li> <li>Clean the windows of the ID sensors with alcohol and a clean cloth.</li> <li>Be sure to wipe the sensor apertures with a wet cloth. A dry cloth may generate static which can attract dust.</li> </ul>
	22	ID Sensor LED Current Error	<ul> <li>LED PWM (SP3131) greater than 3000.</li> <li>ID sensor fouled with dust, toner</li> <li>ID sensor deteriorated</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Remove the ITB unit and check the ID sensors.</li> <li>Clean the windows of the ID sensors with alcohol and a clean cloth.</li> <li>Be sure to wipe the sensor apertures with a wet cloth. A dry cloth may generate static which can attract dust.</li> <li>If the apertures are clean, then the LED of an ID sensor may have deteriorated. Replace the ID sensor plate.</li> </ul>

#### SPECIAL PROCEDURES

### 31 March 2005

General	Displayed Code	Item	Major Cause	Action
	23	ID Sensor Output Error	<ul> <li>Vsg_reg (SP3121) less than 0.5V.</li> <li>ID sensor harness loose, disconnected, damaged</li> <li>ID sensor damaged</li> <li>Note: Vsg_reg refers to the reading of the drum surface done with the direct reflection sensors in both the color and black ID sensors.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Remove the ITB unit.</li> <li>Check the ID sensor harness connections and make sure that they are tight.</li> <li>Check the harnesses for breaks.</li> <li>If the harnesses are undamaged and tightening the connections does not solve the problem, replace the ID sensor plate.</li> </ul>
AC Charge	31	AC Charge Adjust Error 1	<ul> <li>Vpp could not be adjusted after 20 attempts.</li> <li>Bias path defective</li> <li>Charge gap abnormal (too large)</li> <li>Charge roller dirty</li> <li>Drum coated with film</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Make sure that the bias path and drum are grounded correctly.</li> <li>Check the drum and both ends of the charger roller for any foreign matter.</li> <li>Check the gap between the charge roller and the drum to confirm that it is not too large.</li> <li>If the grounds and gap is normal, clean the charger roller or replace it.</li> </ul>
	32	AC Charge Adjust Error 2	<ul> <li>Vpp greater than 2.80 kV.</li> <li>Bias path defective</li> <li>Charge gap abnormal</li> <li>Charge roller dirty, defective</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Make sure that the bias path and drum are grounded correctly.</li> <li>Check the drum and both ends of the charger roller for any foreign matter.</li> <li>Check the gap between the charge roller and the drum to confirm that it is not too large.</li> <li>If the grounds and gap is normal, clean the charger roller or replace it.</li> </ul>

#### 31 March 2005

### SPECIAL PROCEDURES

General	Displayed Code	Item	Major Cause	Action
ID Sensor Pattern Detection	55	Development Gamma Error 1	Development gamma ( <b>SP3561</b> ) greater than 6.0 (mg/cm <sup>2</sup> /-kV).	<ul> <li>Switch the machine off and on then do SP3820 002.</li> <li>Do SP3561 005 to 008 to confirm that development gamma is within the target range (-0.15 to +0.25)</li> <li>If not within the target range, do the procedure again.</li> <li>If the machine returns SC410 to SC413 and process control does not end normally, do this procedure: <ol> <li>Change the settings for SP3301 001~004 from "1" (PID) to "0" (Fixed).</li> <li>Do SP2109 002 and select Pattern 12.</li> <li>Change the settings of SP2109 005 to 008 from 63 to 0, except for the color which showed a development gamma error.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Return to the copy window and do the test print at least 10 patterns.</li> <li>Do SP3820 002. <ul> <li>If the patterns are normal, do Steps 2 and 3.</li> <li>If the patterns are not normal, repeat Steps 2 to 5.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

### SPECIAL PROCEDURES

### 31 March 2005

General	Displayed Code	ltem	Major Cause	Action
	56	Development Gamma Error 2	Development gamma ( <b>SP3561</b> ) less than 0.3 (mg/cm <sup>2</sup> /-kV) • Toner supply abnormal • Image transfer power pack defective • Toner shield glass dirty	<ol> <li>Do SP2109 002 and select Pattern 12.</li> <li>Do SP2109 005 to 008 and change the settings of these SP codes from 63 (default) to 0.</li> <li>Return to the copy window and do the test print 1 pattern.</li> <li>Check the pattern to determine whether the image density is extremely light.</li> <li>Turn the machine off.</li> <li>Open the front door, remove the toner supply unit and check the toner shield glass for dirt.</li> <li>Remove the face plate, replace the malfunctioning PCU with a functioning PCU, then turn the machine on and repeat Steps 1 to 3 to print the coverage test pattern.</li> <li>If normal operation cannot be recovered:         <ul> <li>Replace the image transfer power pack.</li> <li>Open the development unit to see if there is too much or too little developer.</li> <li>If the developer supply is normal, remove the toner end sensor to see if there is toner in the sub hopper.</li> <li>If the sub hopper is empty, the powder pump is defective. Replace the toner supply unit.</li> <li>If the sub hopper is full, the toner end sensor is defective. Replace the toner supply unit.</li> <li>If the level of developer is either too high or too low, replace the developer.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
	57	Vk Error 1	Vk (development start voltage) greater than 150V.	Replace the developer.
	58	Vk Error 2	Vk (development start voltage) less than –150V.	Replace the developer.
	59	Insufficient Active Data	Not enough active data to calculate development gamma (only "0" or "1").	Do the "Action" procedure for no. "55" described above.

#### 31 March 2005

### SPECIAL PROCEDURES

General	Displayed Code	ltem	Major Cause	Action
Potential Adjustment	61	LD Failure	<ul> <li>A laser diode failed to fire and write the ID sensor pattern.</li> <li>Toner shield glass dirty</li> <li>PCU set incorrectly</li> <li>Laser diode defective</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>Copy the color test pattern to determine which color is abnormal.</li> <li>Turn the machine off.</li> <li>Open the front door, remove the toner supply unit and check the toner shield glass for dirt.</li> <li>Reassemble the machine, switch the machine on, then do SP3820 001.</li> <li>Notes</li> <li>The probes of the potential sensors of each PCU are located at different positions. This failure can be caused by installing a potential sensor at the incorrect position. However, you can eliminate this as a cause if a new PCU is installed. (A guide ensures prevents a PCU from being installed at the wrong location.)</li> <li>If the machine fails to return SC240~SC243, you can eliminate a defective LD as the cause of the problem.</li> </ol>
	62	Vr Error	Vr (residual voltage) greater than –200V. • Drum deteriorated • Toner shield glass dirty	<ul> <li>Open the front door, remove the toner supply unit, and check the toner shield glass for dirt.</li> <li>Clean the glass then do SP3820 001.</li> <li>If this does not solve the problem, replace the drum.</li> </ul>
	63	Vd Adjust Error	Vd could not be adjusted within ±10V. • Charge roller dirty • Drum defective	<ul> <li>Replace the charge roller</li> <li>Replace the drum.</li> </ul>
	64	Vpl Adjust Error	<ul> <li>Vpl could not be adjusted within ±5V.</li> <li>Drum deteriorated due to filming</li> <li>Charge roller dirty</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Replace the charge roller</li> <li>Replace the drum.</li> </ul>
Abnormal End	90	Potential Adjust Error	<b>SP3501</b> (potential control method) is set to 1 (Fixed).	• Do SP3501 001 and select "0" (Auto).
	99	Forced Termination	Door open, power off, or other problem interfering with process control self-check.	Make sure the machine is turned on. Make sure the front door is closed completely.

### 4.2.5 COLOR ADJUSTMENT FOR CONNECTED COPIERS

This procedure may be required for copiers after they are connected with the Copier Connection Kit B328. Do this procedure only if you or the customer notices that the color quality between the two copiers is different.

The scanner gamma curve and printer gamma curve are adjusted at the factory for each machine. However, small differences between machines may arise due to fluctuations in the tolerances of scanner or image processing components.

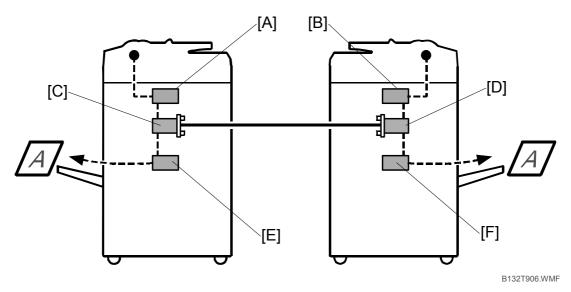
The following two adjustments calibrate these differences to within acceptable standards.

### 1. Color Adjustment with Connection Kit Color Test Chart (P/N VSST9501)

This adjusts the scanner gamma curve of each machine [A], [B] connected with the Copier Connection Kit B328. The scanner gamma curve is adjusted to equalize the scanner input with the scanner output.

### 2. ACC (Auto Color Calibration)

This adjusts the printer gamma curves [E], [F] of each machine connected with the Copier Connection Kit B328.



- [A]: Scanner gamma curve Machine 1
- [B]: Scanner gamma curve Machine 2
- [C]: HDD Machine 1
- [D]: HDD Machine 2
- [E]: Printer gamma curve Machine 1
- [F]: Printer gamma curve Machine 2

### To adjust the main machine:

- 1. Place the test charge Connection Kit Color Test Chart (P/N VSST9501) on the exposure glass, with the arrow mark on the chart aligned with the left rear corner.
- 2. Do **SP4954 001** (Read/Restore Std) and touch [Execute]. After about 10 seconds, the "Completed" message appears.

**Important**: If "Completed" appears immediately after touching [Execute], the adjustment may have failed. Do the procedure again.

3. After doing **SP4954 001**, do the ACC procedure. For more, see Section "1. Installation"

### To adjust the sub machine:

4. Do Steps 1 to 3 for the sub machine.

### Compare the results

- 5. Set the two machines for full color, and do some sample color copies.
- 6. Compare the results from the two copiers. If the results are not good, do the procedure again from step 1.

Troubleshooting

### 4.3.1 SERVICE MODE LOCK/UNLOCK

At locations where the machine contains sensitive data, the customer engineer cannot operate the machine until the Administrator turns the service mode lock off. This function makes sure that work on the machine is always done with the permission of the Administrator.

1. If you cannot go into the SP mode, ask the Administrator to log in with the Operator Tool and then set "Service Mode Lock" to OFF. After he or she logs in:

Operator Tools > System Settings > Administrator Tools > Service Mode Lock > OFF

- This unlocks the machine and lets you get access to all the SP codes.
- The CE can do servicing on the machine and turn the machine off and on. It is not necessary to ask the Administrator to log in again each time the machine is turned on.
- 2. If you must use the printer bit switches, go into the SP mode and set **SP 5169** to "**1**".
- 3. After machine servicing is completed:
  - Change SP 5169 from "1" to "0".
  - Turn the machine off and on. Tell the administrator that you completed servicing the machine.
  - The Administrator will then set the "Service Mode Lock" to ON.

### 4.3.2 SERIES SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

There are 4 levels of service call conditions.

Level	Definition	Reset Procedure
А	Fusing unit SCs displayed on the operation panel. The machine is disabled. The operator cannot reset the SC.	Enter SP mode, then turn the main power switch off and on.
В	SCs that disable only the features that use the defective item. These SCs are not shown to the operator under normal conditions. They are displayed on the operation panel only when the defective feature is selected.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
С	SCs that are not shown on the operation panel. They are internally logged.	Logging only
D	Turning the operation switch (or main power switch) off then on resets these SCs. These SCs are displayed on the operation panel and displayed again if the error reoccurs.	Turn the operation switch (or main power switch) off and on, or the machine reboots automatically. (See below.)

### When a Level "D" SC code occurs

When a Level D SC occurs, a screen opens on the operation panel to tell the operator:

- An error occurred
- The job in progress will be erased
- The machine will reboot automatically after approximately 30 seconds.

The operator can wait until the machine reboots automatically or touch "Reset" on the screen to reset the machine immediately and go back to the copy screen.

### If the operator does not touch "Reset"

The next message tells the operator that the machine will reset automatically and that the previous job was lost and must be started again. After reading the message, the operator touches "Confirm" on the screen. The next screen shows the number and title of the SC code, and stops until the operator turns the machine off and on.

### If the operator touches "Reset"

If the operator touches "Reset" to bypass the 30-second interval for the machine to reboot, the machine reboots immediately and the operation panel displays the copy screen.

### Important

- Do not try to use the operation panel during an automatic reboot.
- If the Remote Service System is in use, the SC code is sent immediately to the Service Center

### 4.3.3 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

### Important

- If a problem concerns a circuit board, disconnect and reconnect the connectors and then test the machine. Often a loose or disconnected harness is the cause of the problem. Always do this before you decide to replace the PCB.
- If a motor lock error occurs, check the mechanical load before you decide to replace the motor or sensors.
- When a Level "A" or "B" SC occurs while in an SP mode, the machine cannot display the SC number. If this occurs, check the SC number after leaving the SP mode.
- The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues a Level "D" SC code. This is done for Level "D" SC codes only. (•4.3.2)

### 

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

**NOTE:** The main power LED (\*0) lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

### SC codes Group 1: Scanning

SC101	D	Exposure lamp error	
		The white level peak did not reach the prescribed threshold when the white plate was scanned.	<ul> <li>Dirty optics</li> <li>Exposure lamp defective</li> <li>Exposure lamp does not turn on</li> <li>Lamp stabilizer defective</li> <li>High voltage line leak</li> <li>Power/signal harness defective</li> </ul>

SC120	D	Scanner home position error 1 The scanner home position sensor did not detect the home position (did not go OFF) after the scanner moved forward 20	<ul> <li>Scanner motor driver board defective</li> <li>Scanner motor defective</li> <li>Scanner HP sensor defective</li> <li>Harness between scanner motor and</li> </ul>
		mm	<ul> <li>Harness between scanner motor and scanner I/O board disconnected or broken.</li> </ul>

SC121	D	Scanner home position error 2 The scanner home position sensor did not go ON after the scanner moved forward 1 mm and the feeler entered the HP sensor.	<ul> <li>Scanner motor defective</li> <li>Scanner HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>		Trouble- shooting
-------	---	--	--	--	----------------------

SC141	D	Black level detection error		
		During AGC the value for black level was not within ±2 of the prescribed value. The copier can	<ul><li>SBU defective</li><li>Harness defective</li></ul>	
		reproduce monochrome, but not color.		

SC142	D	White level detection error	
		During AGC the value for white level was not within ±7 of the prescribed value.	<ul> <li>Exposure lamp defective</li> <li>Harness disconnected, damaged</li> <li>Dirty exposure glass, optics</li> </ul>
			<ul><li>Scanner motor, drive assembly defective</li><li>SBU board defective</li></ul>

SC144	D	SBU communication error		
		When the machine is switched on, or when the machine returns to full operation from the energy save mode, the machine can not access the SBU register, or the SBU register values are abnormal.	<ul> <li>Dirty exposure glass or optics</li> <li>SBU board defective</li> <li>SBU harness disconnected, defective</li> </ul>	

SC161	D	IDU error	
		After the command is written into the DFID self-diagnosis startup register, the correct value is not stored in the register for the prescribed length of time after power on. -or- After the negate interruption of FGATE occurs, IDU is not recognized within the prescribed time during scanning.	IPU board defective (defective connection between ASIC and DFID, defective LSYNC)

SC180	D	Scan	Scanner fan lock		
		001	One of the fan motors next to the exposure lamp did not switch on within 0.5 sec after the CPU issued the ON signal.	<ul> <li>Fan defective</li> <li>Foreign object interfering with operation of fan</li> <li>Motor harness loose,</li> </ul>	
		002	The scanner fan motor next to the SIOB did not switch on within 0.5 sec. after the CPU issued the ON signal.	<ul><li>disconnected, or broken</li><li>SIOB defective</li><li>SBU defective</li></ul>	

Ę

SC195	D	Machine serial number error				
		The number registered for the machine serial number does not match.	Confirm the correct serial number of the machine in the specifications Important! WHEN SC195 OCCURS, THE SERIAL NUMBER MUST BE INPUT. PLEASE CONTACT YOUR TECHNICAL SUPERVISOR.			

### SC codes Group 2: Exposure

SC202	D	Polygon motor error 1: ON timeout		
		<ul> <li>The polygon mirror motor does not reach the targeted operating speed:</li> <li>Within 10 seconds after turning on.</li> <li>Within 10 sec. after changing speed</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Harness to polygon motor driver board disconnected, defective</li> <li>Polygon motor defective</li> <li>Polygon motor driver board defective</li> <li>Polygon motor defective.</li> </ul>	

SC203	D	Polygon motor error 2: OFF timeout		
		The polygon mirror motor does leave the READY status within 10 seconds after the polygon motor switches off.	<ul> <li>Harness to polygon motor driver board disconnected, defective</li> <li>Polygon motor defective</li> <li>Polygon motor driver board defective</li> <li>Polygon motor defective.</li> </ul>	

SC204	D	Polygon motor error 3: XSCRDY signal error		
		The SCRDY_N signal goes HIGH (inactive) while the laser diode is firing.	<ul> <li>Harness to polygon motor driver board disconnected, defective</li> <li>Polygon motor defective</li> <li>Polygon motor driver board defective</li> </ul>	Troul shoo

SC205	D	Polygon motor error 4: XSCRDY signal unstable		
		When the polygon motor switches on, or after the speed of the motor changes, the SCRDY_N signal goes HIGH (inactive).	<ul> <li>Harness to polygon motor driver board disconnected, defective</li> <li>Polygon motor defective</li> <li>Polygon motor driver board defective</li> </ul>	

SC210	D	Laser beam detection error 1: K (Black)		
SC211	D	Laser beam detection error 1: Y (Yellow)		
SC212	D	Laser beam detection error 1: M (Magenta)		
SC213	D	Laser beam detection error 1: C (Cyan)		
		The laser synchronization sensor failed to detect the beginning and end of the laser beam flash for the designated color onto the polygon mirror while the mirror is rotating at the prescribed number of revolutions.	<ul> <li>Laser synchronization detector sensor connection loose, not connected</li> <li>Laser synchronization detector sensor defective</li> </ul>	

SC220	D	Laser Synchronization Detector Er	ror 1: K Leading Edge: LD0
		While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for LD0 black, or leading edge, even after the laser diode has been firing for 2 sec.	<ul> <li>Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective</li> <li>Laser synchronizing detector defective</li> <li>Beam not reflected in photo detection</li> <li>GAVD on the BICU is defective</li> <li>LD driver board defective</li> <li>LDB defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

r			
SC221	D	Laser Synchronization Detector Er	ror 2: K Leading Edge (Other than LD0)
		While the polygon motor is	<ul> <li>Beam not reflected in photo detection</li> </ul>
		rotating normally, no	<ul> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> </ul>
		synchronizing detection signal is	LD driver defective
		output for black, leading edge for	LDB defective
		any LD other than LD0, even	BCU defective
		after the laser diode has been	<ul> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>
		firing for 2 sec.	

SC222	D	Laser Synchronization Detector Er	0 0
		While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for LD0 yellow, leading edge, even after the laser diode has been firing for 2 sec.	<ul> <li>Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective</li> <li>Laser synchronizing detector defective</li> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>LD driver board defective</li> <li>LDB defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC223	D		ror 2: Y Leading Edge (Other than LD0)
		While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for yellow, leading edgefor any LD other than LD0, even after the laser diode has	<ul> <li>Beam not reflected in photo detection</li> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>LD driver defective</li> <li>LDB defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>
		been firing for 2 sec.	

SC224	D	Laser Synchronization Detector Er	
		While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for LD0 magenta, leading edge, even after the laser diode has been firing for 2 sec.	<ul> <li>Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective</li> <li>Laser synchronizing detector defective</li> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>LD driver board defective</li> <li>LDB defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC225	D	Laser Synchronization Detector Er While the polygon motor is	<ul> <li>ror 2: M Leading Edge (Other than LD0)</li> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> </ul>
		rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for magenta, leading edge for any LD other than LD0, even after the laser diode has been firing for 2 sec.	<ul> <li>LD driver defective</li> <li>LDB defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC226	D	Laser Synchronization Detector Er	
		While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for LD0 cyan, leading edge, even after the laser diode has been firing for 2 sec.	<ul> <li>Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective</li> <li>Laser synchronizing detector defective</li> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>LD driver board defective</li> <li>LDB defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC227	D	Lasor Synchronization Dotactor Fr	rror 2: C Loading Edge (Other than LDO)
36227	D	Laser Synchronization Detector Error 2: C Leading Edge (Other than LD0)	
		While the polygon motor is	<ul> <li>Beam not reflected in photo detection</li> </ul>
		rotating normally, no	<ul> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> </ul>
		synchronizing detection signal is	LD driver defective
		output for cyan, leading edgefor	LDB defective
		any LD other than LD0, even	BCU defective
		after the laser diode has been firing for 2 sec.	Check board connections, replace

SC230	D	FGATE error 1: Feedback remains	s HIGH for K write
		<ul> <li>After the start of timing to create the black image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert, even after 5 sec. when:</li> <li>Images are created on the drum.</li> <li>MUSIC patterns are created on the transfer belt.</li> <li>The BICU received no feedback (LOW signal) from the LD unit to indicate that the lasers started firing at the prescribed time to create the patterns.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>PCI I/F on the IPU defective</li> <li>ASIC on the IOB defective</li> <li>Controller board disconnected, defective</li> <li>Harness between the BICU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC231	D	FGATE error 1: Feedback remains After the start of timing to create the black image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert, even after 5 sec. when:	<ul> <li>S LOW for K write</li> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>PCI I/F on the IPU defective</li> <li>ASIC on the IOB defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Images are created on the drum.</li> <li>MUSIC patterns are created on the transfer belt.</li> <li>The BICU received a LOW feedback signal, but the signal remained LOW (indicating the lasers were still operating), even after creation of the next image should have started.</li> </ul>	

SC232	D	FGATE error 1: Feedback remains	s HIGH for Y write
		<ul> <li>After the start of timing to create the yellow image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert, even after 5 sec. when:</li> <li>Images are created on the drum.</li> <li>MUSIC patterns are created on the transfer belt.</li> <li>The BICU received no feedback (LOW signal) from the LD unit to indicate that the lasers started firing at the prescribed time to create the patterns.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>PCI I/F on the IPU defective</li> <li>ASIC on the IOB defective</li> <li>Controller board disconnected, defective</li> <li>Harness between the BICU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC233	D	<ul> <li>FGATE error 1: Feedback remains</li> <li>After the start of timing to create the yellow image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert, even after 5 sec. when:</li> <li>Images are created on the drum.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>s LOW for Y write</li> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>PCI I/F on the IPU defective</li> <li>ASIC on the IOB defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>
		0	

SC235	D	FGATE error 1: Feedback remains	s LOW for M write
		<ul> <li>After the start of timing to create the magenta image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert, even after 5 sec. when:</li> <li>Images are created on the drum.</li> <li>MUSIC patterns are created on the transfer belt.</li> <li>The BICU received a LOW feedback signal, but the signal remained LOW (indicating the lasers were still operating), even after creation of the next image should have started.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>PCI I/F on the IPU defective</li> <li>ASIC on the IOB defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC236	D	FGATE error 1: Feedback remains	s HIGH for C write
		<ul> <li>After the start of timing to create the cyan image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert, even after 5 sec. when:</li> <li>Images are created on the drum.</li> <li>MUSIC patterns are created on the transfer belt.</li> <li>The BICU received no feedback (LOW signal) from the LD unit to indicate that the lasers started firing at the prescribed time to create the patterns.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>PCI I/F on the IPU defective</li> <li>ASIC on the IOB defective</li> <li>Controller board disconnected, defective</li> <li>Harness between the BICU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC237	FGATE error 1: Feedback remain	s LOW for C write
	<ul> <li>After the start of timing to create the cyan image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert, even after 5 sec. when:</li> <li>Images are created on the drum.</li> <li>MUSIC patterns are created on the transfer belt.</li> <li>The BICU received a LOW feedback signal, but the signal remained LOW (indicating the lasers were still operating), even after creation of the next image should have started.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>GAVD on the BICU defective</li> <li>PCI I/F on the IPU defective</li> <li>ASIC on the IOB defective</li> <li>Check board connections, replace</li> </ul>

SC240	С	LD error 1: K	
SC241	С	LD error 1: Y	
SC242	С	LD error 1: M	
SC243	С	LD error 1: C	
		An error is asserted at the LD error terminal of the black, yellow, magenta, or cyan LD driver after initialization of the LD because the power to the LD was higher or lower than the prescribed limit.	<ul> <li>LD defective due to wear, damage, short circuit</li> <li>LDB harness disconnected, loose or defective</li> </ul>

SC268	С	Optical unit sensor error	
		At power on, one of the two temperature sensors in the optics unit detected a temperature lower than 0°C for more than 1 sec. -or- It detected a temperature higher than 100°C for more than 1 sec.	<ul> <li>Thermistor disconnected (causes extremely low temperature reading)</li> <li>Thermistor damaged and short circuited (causes extremely high temperature reading)</li> <li>BCU defective</li> </ul>

SC269	С	Exposure thermistor 2 error	
		At power on, exposure thermistor 2 detected a temperature lower than 0°C for more than 1 sec. -or- It detected a temperature higher than 100°C for more than 1 sec.	<ul> <li>Thermistor disconnected (causes extremely low temperature reading)</li> <li>Thermistor damaged and short circuited (causes extremely high temperature reading)</li> <li>BCU defective</li> </ul>

Troubleshooting

SC300	D	AC charge output error 1: K	
SC301	D	AC charge output error 2: M	
SC302	D	AC charge output error 3: C	
SC303	D	AC charge output error 4: Y	
		<ul> <li>An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 2 ms. This SC is issued if the BCU detects a short in the AC charge for black, magenta, cyan, or yellow (V = 0, for example) for 500 ms (250 times).</li> <li>High voltage power supply</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>OPC unit defective</li> </ul>	
		<ol> <li>Disconnect the high voltage cable from Terminal C of the multiple high-voltage supply board.</li> <li>Attach a voltmeter to the terminal.</li> <li>If there is no output from the terminal, replace the high voltage power supply.         <ul> <li>-or-</li> <li>If there is output from the terminal, test the resistance between the high voltage cable and the ground. If resistance is nearly "0", check the high-voltage harness for defects and replace it if necessary.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Test the conductivity between the OPC unit and the ground. If there is no conductivity between the OPC unit and ground, replace the OPC unit.</li> </ol>	

SC Codes Group 3: Image Development – 1

SC312	D	Charge, development error 1: K	
SC313	D	Charge, development error 2: M	
SC314	D	Charge, development error 3: C	
SC315	D	Charge, development error 4: Y	
		500 ms after the black, magenta, cyan, and yellow drums start to rotate, the machine starts to monitor the AC current feedback at 8 ms intervals. This is SC is issued if the feedback for the charge unit of any color drops below 0.5V for 400 ms (50 consecutive readings).	<ul> <li>Make sure that the settings of SP2202 are at the defaults.</li> <li>Defective charge roller</li> <li>Defective power pack</li> </ul>

SC316 SC317	D	AC bias charge adjustment error 1: K AC bias charge adjustment error 2: M	
SC318	D	AC bias charge adjustment error 3: C	
SC319	D	AC bias charge adjustment error 4: Y	
		An average value of 8 ms/cycle could not be attained for Vpp (AC charge bias) within 15 attempts. -or- The output of the AC charge boosted Vpp over 2.8 kV.	<ul> <li>Charge roller dirty</li> <li>Charge roller defective</li> <li>Bias terminal connection at the PCU receptacle is dirty or defective</li> </ul>

SC320	D	Development power pack error 1: K	
SC321	D	Development power pack error 2: M	
SC322	D	Development power pack error 3: C	
SC323	D	Development power pack error 4: Y	
		<ul> <li>An interrupt checks the status of the each power pack every 2 ms. This SC is issued if the BCU detects a short in the development DC charge for black, magenta, cyan, or yellow (or V = 0) for 500 ms (250 times).</li> <li>Development power pack defective</li> <li>High voltage power supply defective</li> <li>High voltage power supply harness defective</li> <li>Development unit defective</li> <li>IOB harness disconnected or defective</li> <li>IOB defective</li> </ul>	
		<ol> <li>Disconnect the high voltage cable from Terminal B of the high-voltage supply board.</li> <li>Attach a voltmeter to the terminal.</li> <li>If there is no output from the terminal, replace the high voltage power supply.         <ul> <li>-or-</li> <li>If there is output from the terminal, test the resistance between the high voltage cable and the ground.</li> <li>If resistance is "0" or nearly "0", check the high-voltage harness for defects and replace it if necessary.</li> <li>If replacing the harness does not solve the problem,</li> </ul> </li> <li>Test the resistance between the development unit terminal and the ground. If there is no resistance (0Ω) between the development unit and the ground, replace the development unit.</li> </ol>	

I			
SC324	D	Development motor error 1: K	
SC325	D	Development motor error 2: M	
SC326	D	Development motor error 3: C	
SC327	D	Development motor error 4: Y	
		The PLL lock signal remained HIGH or LOW for longer than the prescribed time for the development motor of the affected color.	<ul> <li>Development motor shaft locked, blocked by and obstruction</li> <li>DRB (Drive Board) defective</li> </ul>

SC336	D	Developer set error 1: K	
SC337	D	Developer set error 2: M	
SC338	D	Developer set error 3: C	
SC339	D	Developer set error 4: Y	
		The value of Vcnt is set at the maximum or minimum setting when the TD sensor is initialized.	<ul> <li>Film seal not removed from the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow developer case</li> </ul>
		Open the front door. Pull out the film seal from the blac Be sure to do the correct SP for th • SP3801 003 to initialize the TD • SP3801 004 to initialize the TD • SP3801 005 to initialize the TD • SP3801 006 to initialize the TD	sensor for black. sensor for magenta. sensor for cyan.

SC340	D	Toner cartridge set error 1: K		
30340	U	•		
SC341	D	Toner cartridge set error 2: M		
SC342	D	Toner cartridge set error 3: C		
SC343	D	Toner cartridge set error 4: Y		
		The machine cannot read the ID chip of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow toner cartridge.	<ul> <li>Black, magenta, cyan, or yellow toner cartridge set incorrectly</li> </ul>	
		<ol> <li>Open the front door.</li> <li>Press down the release lever on the top edge of the toner bin to of the affect toner cartridge to release it, then pull the bin out to open it.</li> <li>Remove the toner cartridge and set it again.</li> </ol>		

SC348	D	Toner supply motor error	
		2 sec. after the motor START signal is output, a LOCK signal cannot be detected.	<ul> <li>Motor harness disconnected, loose, or defective</li> <li>Powder pump overload</li> <li>Sub hopper overload</li> <li>Toner hopper motor defective</li> </ul>

ГГ			
SC360	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: K	
SC361	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 2: M	
SC362	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 3: C	
SC363	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 4: Y	
		The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor exceeds 4.5V for two counts.	<ul> <li>Black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor disconnected</li> <li>Harness between TD sensor and PCU defective</li> <li>Defective TD sensor.</li> </ul>
		harness between the TD sensor 3. Check the drawer connector. 4. Replace the TD sensor. 5. After replacing the black TD ser	nsor: ize the new black, magenta, cyan, or yellow

SC364	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 1: K	
SC365	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: M	
SC366	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 3: C	
SC367	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 4: Y	
		<ul> <li>The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is below 0.5V for 10 counts.</li> <li>TD sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>A drawer connector (located on the rear of a development unit) disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>TD sensor defective</li> </ul>	
		<ol> <li>Turn the machine off and on.</li> <li>Check the TD sensor connector and harness between the TD sensor and PCU for damage. Replace it if necessary.</li> <li>Check the drawer connector.</li> <li>Replace the TD sensor.</li> <li>After replacing the TD sensor:         <ul> <li>Do SP3801 003-006 to initialize the new black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor.</li> <li>Execute SP3820 001 to do auto process control manually.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	

00070	5		
SC372	D	TD sensor adjustment error 1: K	
SC373	D	TD sensor adjustment error 2: M	
SC374	D	TD sensor adjustment error 3: C	
SC375	D	TD sensor adjustment error 4: Y	
		During TD sensor initialization with <b>SP3801</b> , the output value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is not within the range of 3.2±0.2V	<ul> <li>Film seal not removed from a new developer pack</li> <li>TD harness sensor disconnected, loose or defective</li> <li>TD sensor defective</li> <li>Harness between TD sensor and drawer disconnected, defective</li> </ul>
		<ol> <li>Do SP3812 001 to confirm that the display should show "1111" if de</li> <li>Check the TD sensor connector</li> <li>Check the TD sensor connector PCU for damage. Replace it if nee</li> <li>Check the drawer PCU connector</li> <li>Replace the TD sensor.</li> <li>After replacing the TD sensor:</li> </ol>	and harness between the TD sensor and ecessary. or. ze the new black, magenta, cyan, or yellow

SC396	D	Drum motor error 1: K	
SC397	D	Drum motor error 2: M	
SC398	D	Drum motor error 3: C	
SC399	D	Drum motor error 4: Y	
		When the drum motor of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow PCU starts, the machine cannot detect a LOCK signal within two sec. The motor is trying to rotate but there is an excessive load on the drum shaft. The motor has no traction (due to a bent cleaning blade, for example).	<ul> <li>PCU drum dirty</li> <li>PCU defective</li> <li>Motor harness defective</li> <li>Motor control board defective</li> <li>Drum motor defective</li> <li>Insufficient lubrication on a drum. Open PCU and apply toner to the drum surface</li> </ul>

shooting

### SC codes Group 4: Image Development - 2

SC400	D	ID sensor error 1: Calibration	
		Before adjustment Vsg_reg<0.5 but Vsg_reg could not be adjusted to the target Vsg_reg = $4.0\pm0.2$ V during process control.	<ul> <li>ID sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>ID sensor dirty</li> <li>ID sensor defective</li> <li>ITB unit drawer connector dirty</li> </ul>
		surface of the ITB. The color ID senso to read diffuse light reflected from the	r is not used to read the bare surface of

SC410 SC411	D D	ID sensor error 2: Development	γM	
SC412 SC413	D D	ID sensor error 4: Development		
		Development gamma for black, magenta, cyan, or yellow is not within range (0.3 to 6.0). Process control halts when this SC is issued.	<ul> <li>Toner density not normal: Refer to the procedure for process control self-check error codes 55 to 59 to 59, and 61 (section 4.2.4)</li> <li>Potential sensor defective</li> <li>Laser diode not firing</li> <li>ITB separation for CMY abnormal</li> <li>Transfer power pack defective</li> <li>ID sensor defective</li> </ul>	Trouble-

1					
SC414	D	ID sensor error 6: Development	ID sensor error 6: Development start voltage K		
SC415	D	ID sensor error 7: Development	start voltage M		
SC416	D	ID sensor error 8: Development	start voltage C		
SC417	D	ID sensor error 9: Development	ID sensor error 9: Development start voltage Y		

SC418	С	LED error during Vsg adjustment			
		PWM value: Ifsg>2000 This means the current to the LED of the ID sensor is abnormal.	<ul><li>ID sensor dirty</li><li>ID sensor defective</li></ul>		

SC420	С	Potential sensor error 1: Vd Adjustment K			
SC421	С	Potential sensor error 2: Vd Adju	Potential sensor error 2: Vd Adjustment M		
SC422	С	Potential sensor error 3: Vd Adjustment C			
SC423	С	Potential sensor error 4: Vd Adju	Potential sensor error 4: Vd Adjustment Y		
		The development potential of the drum before exposure (Vd) cannot be adjusted to within $\pm 10$ V of the target voltage (- 900V).	Toner density low		

SC424	С	Potential sensor error 5: VI adjustment K		
SC425	С	Potential sensor error 6: VI adjustment M		
SC426	С	Potential sensor error 7: VI adjustment C		
SC427	С	Potential sensor error 8: VI adjustment Y		
		Vpl could not be adjusted to within ±10V of the target Vpl after exposure of the ID sensor patterns.	Toner density low	

SC432	С	Potential sensor error 1: Vr K	
SC433	С	Potential sensor error 2: Vr M	
SC434	С	Potential sensor error 3: Vr C	
SC435	С	Potential sensor error 4: Vr Y	
		Vr > 200V The residual voltage (Vr), the amount of voltage that remains on the surface of the drum after the QL fires is greater than 200V.	Toner density low

SC436 SC437 SC438	D D D	Potential sensor error 5: Vd K Potential sensor error 6: Vd M Potential sensor error 7: Vd C	
SC439	D	Potential sensor error 8: Vd Y	
		The VdHome reading, the first step of the process control self-check, detected that the development potential of the unexposed areas of the drum are not within the prescribed range (-500 to -700)	<ul> <li>Potential sensor dirty</li> <li>Potential sensor defective</li> <li>Charge roller defective</li> <li>Charge power pack defective</li> <li>OPC defective</li> </ul>

shooting

SC440	D	Image transfer power pack error 1:	K
SC441	D	Image transfer power pack error 2:	M
SC442	D	Image transfer power pack error 3:	C
SC443	D	Image transfer power pack error 4:	Y
		An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 2 ms. This SCis issued if the BCU detects a short in the power pack for K, M, C, or Y 250 times within 500 ms.	<ul> <li>Transfer belt damaged, insulation damaged</li> <li>Insulation on high voltage cable damaged</li> <li>Another hot point inside the machine has damaged insulation</li> <li>Insulation around high-voltage power supply damaged</li> <li>IOB damaged</li> </ul>

SC445	D	Image transfer motor error				
		The control board of the ITB • ITB motor defective				
		motor belt generated signals that  • ITB control board defective				
		indicate there is problem with ITB overloaded				
		the image transfer belt motor.	<ul> <li>Encoder strip on the front edge of the</li> </ul>	_		
			belt damaged.	4		

SC446	D	ITB lift motor error	
		The state of the ITB lift sensor does not change its state (switching from off to on or vice versa), even after the ITB lift motor starts rotating.	<ul> <li>ITB lift sensor dirty, disconnected, defective</li> <li>ITB lift motor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>

SC450	D	Transfer power pack output error	
		An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 2 ms. This SC is issued if the BCU detects a short in the power pack 250 times at T2 within 500 ms.	<ul> <li>Damaged insulation on the high-voltage supply cable</li> <li>Damaged insulation around the high- voltage power supply.</li> </ul>

SC455	D	PTR motor error	
		The lock signal from the paper transfer motor is not detected within 1 sec. after the motor switched on.	<ul> <li>Motor disconnected</li> <li>PTR shaft locked, needs cleaning, blocked by obstruction</li> <li>Drive shaft of the ITB locked and overloaded, needs cleaning, or blocked by obstruction</li> <li>DRB (motor drive board) disconnected, defective</li> </ul>

SC460	D	Separation power pack output error An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 2 ms. This SCis issued if the BCU detects a short in the power pack 250 times at D(ac) within 500 ms.	<ul> <li>Damaged insulation on the high-voltage supply cable</li> <li>Damaged insulation around the high- voltage power supply.</li> </ul>
		<ol> <li>Replace the high-voltage suppl</li> <li>Replace the high-voltage powe</li> <li>Replace the IOB.</li> </ol>	5

SC484	D	Waste toner bottle full	
		The toner full sensor goes HIGH for more than 500 ms, indicating that the waste toner bottle is full.	Remove waste toner bottle, empty it

SC485	D	Waste toner bottle motor error	
		The lock signal of the waste toner bottle motor remains HIGH for more than 600 ms.	Waste toner bottle motor defective

SC487	D	Waste toner bottle set error	
		The set sensor of the waste toner bottle remains LOW for more than 500 ms. (The sensor goes HIGH when the bottle is installed correctly.)	<ul> <li>Install the waste toner bottle</li> <li>Remove waste toner bottle and reinstall correctly</li> </ul>

SC488	D	Waste toner transport lock	
		Waste toner cannot be transported to the waste toner bottle.	Blockage in the line to the waste toner bottle

Ę

h			
SC496	С	MUSIC sensor error	
		<ul> <li>The MUSIC sensor detected an abnormal pattern on the ITB because:</li> <li>ADC exceeded upper or lower limit.</li> <li>The pattern used to calculate the amount of skew is abnormal.</li> <li>The reading of the pattern exceeded the length of time the LED projected light.</li> <li>LED light could not be adjusted correctly.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>MUSIC sensor defective or disconnected</li> <li>MUSIC pattern abnormal; do a forced process control (SP3821) and check the result (section 4.2.4).</li> </ul>

### 5 April, 2005

SC497	С	Temperature and humidity sensor	error 1: PCU
		The thermistor output of the temperature and humidity sensor above the black PCU was not within the prescribed range (0.5V to 4.2V)	<ul> <li>Temperature and humidity sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Temperature and humidity sensor defective</li> </ul>

SC498	С	Temperature and humidity sensor	error 2
		The thermistor output of the temperature and humidity sensor at below the waste toner bottle was not within the prescribed range (0.5V to 4.2V)	<ul> <li>Temperature and humidity sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Temperature and humidity sensor defective</li> </ul>

Г	
	_
	_

SC codes Group 5: Paper Feed

SC501	В	Tray 1 (tandem tray) feed error (Japan Only)		
		<ul> <li>The tray 1 lift sensor does not switch on 10 s after the tray lift motor switches on and starts lifting the bottom plate.</li> <li>When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.</li> <li>The lower limit sensor of the tandem tray does not detect the lower limit within 10 sec.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Tray lift motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor</li> <li>Tray lift sensor disconnected, damaged</li> <li>Lower limit sensor disconnected, damaged</li> <li>Pick-up solenoid disconnected, blocked by an obstacle</li> </ul>	

SC502	В	Tray 2 (paper cassette) feed error (Japan Only)			
		<ul> <li>The lift sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.</li> <li>When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.</li> <li>The lower limit sensor of the tandem tray does not detect the lower limit within 10 sec.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Tray lift motor defective or disconnected</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor</li> <li>Pick-up solenoid disconnected or blocked by an obstacle</li> </ul>		

SC503	В	Tray 1 feed error			
		<ul> <li>The lift sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.</li> <li>When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Tray lift motor defective or disconnected</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor</li> <li>Pick-up solenoid disconnected or blocked by an obstacle</li> </ul>		

SC504	В	Tray 2 feed error		
		<ul> <li>The lift sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.</li> <li>When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Tray lift motor defective or disconnected</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor</li> <li>Pick-up solenoid disconnected or blocked by an obstacle</li> </ul>	

SC505	С	Tandem tray rear fence motor error			
		<ul> <li>The return sensor does not switch on within 10 sec. after the rear fence motor switches on.</li> <li>The HP sensor does not switch on 10 sec. after the rear fence motor switches on.</li> <li>The HP sensor and return sensor switch on at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Rear fence motor defective or poor connection</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle interfering with operation of the sensors</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor</li> <li>Motor mechanical overload due to obstruction</li> <li>Return sensor or HP sensor defective or dirty</li> </ul>		

SC506	В	Tandem tray back fence motor error	
		The back fence should be closed but the fence was not detected in the closed position within 500 ms. -or- The back fence should be open but the fence was not detected in the open within 500 ms.	<ul> <li>Paper loaded incorrectly</li> <li>Back fence motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Back fence motor defective</li> <li>Paper blocking sensors</li> <li>Paper stuck between tray and motor</li> <li>Back fence close, back fence open sensor harnesses disconnected, loose, or defective.</li> <li>Back fence close, back fence open sensor defective</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle is interfering with movement of the fence</li> </ul>

SC510	В	<ul> <li>LCT tray error</li> <li>When the bottom plate is lifted, the upper limit sensor does not come on for 30 sec.</li> <li>When the bottom plate is lowered, the lower limit sensor does not come on for 30 sec.</li> <li>After lift begins, the upper limit sensor does not switch on before the pick-up solenoid switches on.</li> <li>The paper end sensor switches on during lift and the upper limit sensor does not switch on for 2.5 s, and a</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Tray lift motor harness, disconnected, loose, or defective</li> <li>Tray lift motor defective</li> <li>Lift sensor defective or disconnected</li> <li>Pick-up solenoid defective or disconnected</li> <li>Paper end sensor defective</li> </ul>
		message prompts user to reset paper.	

SC515	С	Duplex jogger motor error 1		
		When the jogger fence moves to the home position, the jogger fence HP sensor does not switch on even after the jogger motor has moved the jogger fence 153.5 mm.	<ul> <li>Rear fence motor defective or poor connection</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle interfering with operation of the sensors or motor</li> <li>Return sensor or HP sensor defective or dirty</li> </ul>	

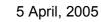
SC516	В	Duplex jogger motor error 2		
		When the jogger fence moves from the home position, the jogger fence HP sensor does not turn off even if the jogger motor has moved the jogger fence 153.5 mm.	<ul> <li>Paper or other obstacle has jammed mechanism</li> <li>HP sensor connector disconnected or defective</li> <li>HP sensor defective</li> </ul>	

SC530	D	Fan error 1: fusing fan motor	
		The BCU does not receive the lock signal 5 seconds after the fusing unit fan switches on.	<ul><li>Fusing unit cooling fan disconnected, defective</li><li>BCU defective</li></ul>

SC531	D	Fan error 2: fusing fan motor		
		The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan at the front of the fusing unit near the heat dissipation fins was operating.	<ul> <li>Motor overload due to obstacle interfering with operation of the fan</li> <li>Fan harness loose, disconnected, defective</li> <li>Fan defective</li> </ul>	

SC532	D	Fan error 3: PCB box fan			
		The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan that cools the printed circuit boards was operating.	•	Motor overload due to obstacle interfering with operation of the fan Fan harness loose, disconnected, defective Fan defective	

SC533	D	Fan error 4: fusing exhaust fan	
		The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan that draws air out of the fusing unit was operating.	<ul> <li>Motor overload due to obstacle interfering with operation of the fan</li> <li>Fan harness loose, disconnected, defective</li> <li>Fan defective</li> </ul>



SC534	D	Fan error 5: duplex exhaust fan	
		The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan that draws air out of the duplex unit was operating.	<ul> <li>Motor overload due to obstacle interfering with operation of the fan</li> <li>Fan harness loose, disconnected, defective</li> <li>Fan defective</li> </ul>

Ę

Ę

SC541	Α	Heating roller thermistor 1 error 1:	Poor connection
		The temperature measured by the heating roller thermistor does not reach 130°C after 10 tries and 65 sec. have elapsed.	<ul> <li>Heating roller thermistor harness connection loose, disconnected, defective</li> <li>Defective heating roller thermistor</li> </ul>

SC542	Α	Heating roller thermistor 1 error 2:	No warmup	
		After the main switch is turned on or the cover is closed, the heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature within 2 sec. after the heater switches on. -or- If the roller was below 45°C, the heating roller did not reach the ready temperature 2 sec. after reaching 45°C. <b>Note</b> : Thermistor 2 stops monitoring the temperature once Thermistor 1 detects ready temperature.	<ul> <li>Thermistor is bent, installed incorrectly</li> <li>Defective heating roller thermistor</li> <li>Heating roller fusing lamp broken</li> </ul>	Trouble- shooting
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusin	g code.	

SC543	Α	Heating roller thermistor 1 error 3:	Software - High temperature
		The thermistor detected a	<ul> <li>TRIAC short, IOB defective</li> </ul>
		temperature over 230°C times	BICU defective
		within 1 sec.  Fusing temperature out of control	
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusin	g code.

SC544	Α	Heating roller thermistor 1 error 4:	Hardware - High temperature
		The thermistor detected a	TRIAC short
		temperature over 260°C	IOB defective
			BICU defective
			Fusing temperature control is erratic
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusin	g code.

SC545	Α	Heating roller thermistor 1 error 5:	Lamp remains on
		After hot roller reaches warmup temperature, the fusing lamps remained on at full capacity for 25 sec. after reaching the warmup temperature while the hot roller was not rotating.	<ul> <li>Thermistor damaged, or out of position</li> <li>Fusing lamp disconnected, broken</li> </ul>
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusin	g code.

SC546	Α	Heating roller thermistor 2 error 1:	Thermistor disconnected
		The temperature measured by the heating roller thermistor does not reach 0°C after 45 sec. and remains over this temperature for 10 readings.	<ul><li>Loose connection of the heating roller thermistor</li><li>Defective heating roller thermistor</li></ul>

SC547	A	Zero cross error When the main switch is turned on, the machine checks how many zero-cross signals are generated within 500 ms. This SC code is issued if the number of zero- cross signals detected is either more than 66 or less than 45 for 10 readings. <b>Note</b> : Zero cross signals, generated from an ac power supply, are used to generate a trigger pulses to control the applied power accurately.	<ul> <li>Electrical noise on the power supply line</li> <li>Fusing relay damaged: replace the PSU.</li> </ul>
		Normally, this SC is cancelled if you do SP581	<b>0</b> to cancel the SC fusing code.

=	-	
	Е	
	н	

Ξ

SC548	Α	Heating roller thermistor 2 error 2: Failed	d to reach warmup temperature
		After the main switch is turned on or the cover is closed, the heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature within 2 sec. after the heater switches on. -or- If the roller was below 45°C, the heating roller did not reach the ready temperature 2 sec. after reaching 45°C. <b>Note</b> : Thermistor 2 stops monitoring the temperature once Thermistor 1 detects warmup temperature.	<ul> <li>Thermistor is bent, installed incorrectly</li> <li>Defective heating roller thermistor</li> <li>Heating roller fusing lamp broken</li> <li>Defective BCU</li> </ul>
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code	е.

# F

Ę

### 5 April, 2005

### SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

SC549	Α	Heating roller thermistor 2 error 3:	Software - High Temperature
		The thermistor detected a	TRIAC short
		temperature over 250°C times	IOB defective
		within 1 sec.	BICU defective
			<ul> <li>Fusing temperature control is erratic</li> </ul>
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.	

SC550	Α	Heating roller thermistor 2 error 4: Hardware - High Temperature		
		The thermistor detected a • TRIAC short		
		temperature over 260°C		
		BICU defective		
			Fusing temperature control is erratic	
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.		

SC551	A	Pressure roller thermistor error 1 The temperature measured by the pressure roller thermistor does not reach 0°C for 200 sec.	<ul> <li>Loose connection of the pressure roller thermistor</li> <li>Defective pressure roller thermistor</li> <li>Defective BCU</li> </ul>	rouble- hooting
		Do <b>SP5810</b> to cancel the SC fusing code.		L S

SC552	Α	Pressure roller thermistor error 2	
		After the main switch is turned on or the cover is closed, the heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature within 2 sec. after the heater switches on. -or- If the roller was below 45°C, the heating roller did not reach the ready temperature 2 sec. after reaching 45°C. <b>Note</b> : Thermistor 2 stops monitoring the temperature once Thermistor 1 detects ready temperature.	<ul> <li>Pressure roller thermistor harness loose, disconnected, defective</li> <li>Pressure roller thermistor defective</li> </ul>

SC553	Α	Pressure roller thermistor error 3: Software - High temperature			
		The thermistor detected a • TRIAC short			
		temperature over 220°C times • IOB defective			
		within 1 sec.  BICU defective			
			Fusing temperature control is erratic		
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.			

Α	Pressure roller thermistor error 4: Hardware - High temperature		
	The thermistor detected a • TRIAC short		
	temperature over 230°C.   • IOB defective		
	BICU defective		
		Fusing temperature control is erratic	
	Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.		
	A	The thermistor detected a temperature over 230°C.	

SC555	Α	Pressure roller thermistor error 5: Lamp remains on		
		After hot roller reaches warmup temperature, the pressure roller fusing lamp remains for 6 sec. while the hot roller is not rotating.	<ul> <li>Thermistor damaged, or out of position</li> <li>Fusing lamp disconnected, broken</li> </ul>	
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.		

SC556	Α	Heating roller thermistor 2 error 5: Lamp remains on		
		After hot roller reaches warmup temperature, the pressure roller fusing lamp remains for 6 sec. while the hot roller is not rotating.	<ul><li>Thermistor damaged, or out of position</li><li>Fusing lamp disconnected, broken</li></ul>	

SC561	Α	Hot roller thermistor error 1: Thermistor disconnected		
		The temperature measured by the hot roller thermistor does not reach the prescribed warm-up temperature within 100 sec.	<ul> <li>Loose connection of the hot roller thermistor</li> <li>Defective hot roller thermistor</li> <li>Defective BCU</li> </ul>	

SC562	Α	Hot roller thermistor error 2: Failure to reach w	armup temperature
		After the main switch is turned on or the cover is closed, the heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature within 2 sec. after the heater switches on. -or- If the roller was below 45°C, the heating roller did not reach the ready temperature 2 sec. after reaching 45°C. <b>Note</b> : Thermistor 2 stops monitoring the temperature once Thermistor 1 detects	<ul> <li>Hot roller fusing lamp broken</li> <li>Defective hot roller thermistor</li> <li>Defective BCU</li> </ul>
		ready temperature.	
		Do <b>SP5810</b> to cancel the SC fusing code.	

#### 5 April, 2005

### SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

shooting

SC563	Α	Hot roller thermistor error 3: Software - High Temperature		
		The thermistor detected a • TRIAC short		
		temperature over 250°C 10 • IOB defective		
		times within 1 sec.    BICU defective		
			Fusing temperature control is erratic	
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.		

SC564	Α	Hot roller thermistor error 4: Hardware - High Temperature			
		The thermistor detected a • TRIAC short			
		temperature over 260°C.			
		BICU defective			
		Fusing temperature control is erratic			
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.			

SC565	Α	Hot roller thermistor error 5: Lamp remains on		
		After hot roller reaches warmup temperature, the hot roller fusing lamp remains for 6300 sec. while the hot roller is not rotating.	<ul><li>Thermistor damaged, or out of position</li><li>Fusing lamp disconnected, broken</li></ul>	Trouble-
		Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.		



SC codes Group 6: Device Communication

SC620	D	ARDF communication error	
		A BREAK signal occurs after the machine detects the ARDF, or a communication timeout occurs.	<ul> <li>ARDF disconnected</li> <li>IPU board harness disconnected, defective</li> <li>IPU board defective</li> <li>Spurious noise from the power supply line</li> <li>ARDF control board defective</li> </ul>

SC621	D	Mailbox-to-Finisher communication	n error
		Communication between the mailbox and finisher is interrupted. An ACK/NCK signal was not received within 100 ms after a data frame is sent and 3 retries failed.	<ul> <li>Connection cable between mailbox and finisher disconnected, defective</li> <li>Finisher main board defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>PSU defective</li> </ul>

SC622	D	LCT communication error	
		Communication between the copier and LCT is interrupted. An ACK/NCK signal was not received within 100 ms after a data frame is sent and 3 retries failed.	<ul> <li>Connection cable between the LCT and copier is disconnected, defective</li> <li>LCT main board defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>PSU defective</li> </ul>

SC624	D	Mailbox-to-copier communication	error
		Communication between the mailbox and copier is interrupted. An ACK/NCK signal was not received within 100 ms after a data frame is sent and 3 retries failed.	<ul> <li>Mailbox cable disconnected, defective</li> <li>Mailbox main board defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>PSU defective</li> </ul>

SC630	С	RSS communication error	
		An error was detected in communication via RSS between the machine and the RSS center. Error occurred on a public line at the RSS terminal.	No action required

SC632	В	Key/card counter device error 1	
		After 1 data frame is sent to the device, an ACK signal is not received within 100 ms, and is not received after 3 retries.	• The serial line from the device to the copier is unstable, disconnected, or defective.

SC633	В	Key/card counter device error 2	
		During communication with the device, the BCU received a break (Low) signal.	<ul> <li>The serial line from the device to the copier is unstable, disconnected, or defective.</li> </ul>

SC634	В	Key/card counter device error 3	
		After installation of the device, a message alerts user to a backup RAM error.	<ul> <li>Device control board defective</li> <li>Device control board backup battery defective</li> </ul>

SC635	В	Key/card counter device error 4	
		After installation of the device a message alerts user to a battery voltage abnormal error.	<ul> <li>Device control board defective</li> <li>Device control board backup battery defective</li> </ul>

SC670	D	Engine startup error	
		<ul> <li>Engine does not respond within 30 s after power on.</li> <li>Engine down detected suddenly</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>BCU installation incorrect</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>Sudden communication reset occurred</li> </ul>
		during power on and warmup.	between the BCU and the controller.

SC672	D	Controller startup error	
		<ul> <li>After power on, the line between the controller and the operation panel did not open for normal operation.</li> <li>After normal startup, communication with the controller stopped.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Controller stalled</li> <li>Controller installed incorrectly</li> <li>Controller board defective</li> <li>Operation panel harness disconnected or defective</li> </ul>

_
_
_
_

SC680	D	BCU-MUSIC communication error	
		The main CPU fails to communicate with the MUSIC CPU within 5 sec. and three attempts failed.	<ul> <li>Toner cartridge ID chip harness disconnected, defective</li> <li>Toner cartridge ID chip defective</li> <li>Toner cartridge installed incorrectly</li> <li>Toner cartridge defective</li> <li>UART communication failure; replace the BCU</li> </ul>

SC687	D	Memory address command error		
		The BCU does not receive a memory address command from the controller 120 seconds after paper is in the position for registration.	<ul> <li>BCU-Controller connection loose, defective</li> <li>BCU defective</li> <li>Controller defective</li> </ul>	

SC codes Group 7: Peripherals

SC701	D	Original pickup operation error	
		Even though the pickup motor is rotating clock-wise, the pickup roller home position sensor cannot detect the position of the pickup roller.	<ul> <li>Pickup roller HP sensor harness loose, disconnected, defective</li> <li>Pickup roller HP sensor defective</li> <li>Pickup motor harness loose, disconnected, defective</li> <li>Pickup motor defective</li> <li>ARDF control board defective</li> </ul>

SC705	D	<ul><li>ARDF bottom plate lift motor</li><li>The bottom plate HP sensor</li></ul>	ARDF feed motor disconnected,
		<ul> <li>did not detect the home position of the bottom plate after the bottom plate lift motor switches on and lowers the bottom plate.</li> <li>The bottom plate position sensor does not detect the position of the plate after the lift motor switches on and raises the bottom plate.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>ARDF field motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>ARDF main board defective</li> </ul>

SC720	D	Finisher lower transport motor error		
		No encoder pulse signal is detected for the transport motor within the prescribed time. The 1st failure issues an original jam message, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Lower transport motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Finisher connection to transport motor loose, defective</li> <li>Lower transport motor defective</li> <li>Finisher main board defective</li> </ul>	

SC721	В	Finisher jogger motor error The jogger fences move out of the home position but the HP sensor output does not change within the specified number of pulses. The 1st failure issues an original jam message, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code	<ul> <li>Jogger HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Jogger motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Jogger motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> <li>Finisher main board and jogger motor</li> </ul>
		2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul><li>connection loose, defective</li><li>Finisher main board defective</li></ul>

SC723	В			
		The stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not activate within the specified time after the stack feed-out belt motor turns on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Stack feed-out HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Feed-out motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Finisher main board connection to feed out motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Motor overload due to obstruction</li> </ul>	

SC724	D	Finisher stapler hammer motor error		
		Stapling does not finish within the prescribed time after the staple hammer motor turns on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Stapler hammer motor overloaded due to obstruction, jammed staple, number of sheets exceeds limit for stapling</li> <li>Stapler hammer motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Staple hammer motor HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>	

SC725	D	Finisher exit guide plate motor error After moving away from the guide plate position sensor, the exit guide is not detected at the home position within the prescribed time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam	<ul> <li>Guide plate motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Guide plate motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> <li>Guide plate position sensor</li> </ul>
		detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	disconnected, defective

SC726	В	Shift jogger motor 1 error		
		The sides fences do not retract within the prescribed time after the shift jogger motor switches on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Shift jogger motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Shift jogger motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> <li>Shift jogger HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>	

SC727	В	Shift jogger motor 2 error	
		The side fences do not retract within the prescribed time after the shift jogger motor switches on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Motor defective</li> <li>Motor overload</li> <li>HP defective</li> </ul>

SC728	В	Shift jogger retraction motor error			
		The side fences do not retract within the prescribed time after the retraction motor switches on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Motor defective</li> <li>Motor overload</li> <li>HP defective</li> </ul>		

SC730	В	Finisher Tray 1 shift motor error The shift roller HP sensor of the upper tray does not activate within the prescribed time after the shift tray starts to move toward or away from the home position. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC	<ul> <li>Shift tray HP sensor of the upper tray disconnected, defective</li> <li>Shift tray motor of the upper tray is disconnected, defective</li> <li>Shift tray motor of the upper tray overloaded due to obstruction</li> </ul>
		the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	

SC740	В	Finisher corner stapler motor error The stapler motor does not switch off within the prescribed time after operating. The 1st detection failure issues a jam	<ul> <li>Staple jam</li> <li>Number of sheets in the stack exceeds the limit for stapling</li> <li>Stapler motor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>	Trouble- shooting
		error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.		

SC741	В	Finisher corner stapler rotation mo	Finisher corner stapler rotation motor error		
		The stapler does not return to its home position within the specified time after stapling. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Stapler rotation motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Stapler rotation motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> <li>Stapler rotation HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>		

SC742	В	Finisher stapler movement motor errorThe stapler HP sensor is not• Stapler movement motor disconnected,			
		activated within the specified time after the stapler motor turned on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>defective</li> <li>Stapler movement motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> <li>Stapler HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>		

SC743	В	Booklet stapler motor error 1	
		The front stapler unit saddle- stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Front motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Front motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> </ul>

SC744	В	Booklet stapler motor error 2	
		The rear stapler unit saddle- stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Rear motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Rear motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> </ul>

SC750	В	Finisher tray 1 (upper tray lift) motor error		
		The upper tray paper height sensor does not change its status with the specified time after the tray raises or lowers. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Tray lift motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Upper tray paper height sensor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Finisher main board connection to motor loose</li> <li>Finisher main board defective</li> </ul>	

SC751	В	Finisher tray 2 (lower tray lift) moto	pr error
		The lower tray paper height sensor does not change its status with the specified time after the tray raises or lowers. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Tray lift motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Upper tray paper height sensor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Finisher main board connection to motor loose</li> <li>Finisher main board defective</li> </ul>

SC752	В	Finisher pressure plate motor error			
		Pressure plate motor operating but the plate is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Pressure plate HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Pressure plate motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Pressure plate motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> </ul>		

SC753	В	Return roller motor error	
		Occurs during the operation of the lower tray pressure motor.	<ul> <li>Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Motor overloaded</li> <li>Home position sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Home position defective</li> </ul>

SC760	D	Finisher punch motor error The punch HP sensor is not activated within the specified	Punch HP sensor disconnected, defective
		time after the punch motor turned on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul><li>Punch motor disconnected, defective</li><li>Punch motor overload due to obstruction</li></ul>

SC761	В	Finisher folder plate motor error		ble- ting
		The folder plate moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Folder plate HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Folder plate motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Folder plate motor overloaded due to obstruction.</li> </ul>	Trou

SC762	В	Finisher pressure plate motor erro	r
		Pressure plate motor operating but the plate is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Pressure plate HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Pressure plate motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Pressure plate motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> </ul>

SC763	D	Punch movement motor error	
		Occurs during operation of the punch unit. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul><li>Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li><li>Motor defective</li></ul>

SC764	D	Paper position sensor slide motor error	
		Occurs during operation of the punch unit. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul><li>Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li><li>Motor defective</li></ul>

SC765	В	Folding unit bottom fence lift motor	
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective Motor defective

SC766	В	Clamp roller retraction motor error	
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	<ul> <li>Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Motor defective</li> </ul>

SC767	В	Stack junction gate motor error			
		Occurs during operation of the punch unit. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.	•	Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective Motor overload Motor defective	

SC770	В	Cover interposer tray bottom plate motor error		
		<ul> <li>After the motor starts to raise the bottom plate, the bottom plate position sensor does not detect the plate at the specified time (3 s).</li> <li>After the motor starts to lower the bottom plate, the bottom plate HP sensor does not detect the bottom plate.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Bottom plate position sensor, disconnected, defective</li> <li>Bottom plate HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>	

SC775	D	Cover interposer tray feed motor	
			<ul> <li>Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective</li> <li>Motor overload</li> <li>Motor defective</li> </ul>

SC780	В	Z-Fold feed motor error Japan On	ly
		The feed motor does not attain	Feed motor disconnected, defective
		the prescribed speed within the specified time.	<ul> <li>Feed motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> </ul>
			Feed motor lock

## 5 April, 2005

SC781	В	Z-Fold lower stopper motor Japan	Only
		The lower stopper motor does not attain the prescribed speed within the specified time.	<ul> <li>Lower stopper motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Lower stopper motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> <li>Lower stopper HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>

SC782	В	Z-Fold upper stopper motor Japar	n Only
		The upper stopper motor does not attain the prescribed speed within the specified time.	<ul> <li>Upper stopper motor disconnected, defective</li> <li>Upper stopper motor overloaded due to obstruction</li> <li>Upper stopper HP sensor disconnected, defective</li> </ul>

SC790 E	В	Finisher staple waste hopper full		
		The staple waste hopper is full of cut staples.	<ul> <li>If the hopper is full, empty the hopper</li> <li>If the hopper is not full, the hopper full sensor is disconnected, defective</li> </ul>	rouble- hooting

# SC800: Overall System

SC817	С	Boot loader error	
		The boot loader cannot read one of the following: self-diagnostic module, kernel, or one of the files of the root file system, or the check of one of these items on the system SD card failed.	<ul> <li>File or module on the system SD card is corrupted</li> <li>File or module on the system SD card is illegal</li> <li>Make sure that the system SD card is the one designed for the machine</li> <li>Replace system ROM on the controller board</li> </ul>

SC818	С	Watchdog error		
		While the system program is running, a bus hold or interrupt program goes into an endless loop, preventing any other programs from executing.	<ul> <li>System program defective; switch off/on, or change the controller firmware if the problem cannot be solved</li> <li>Controller board defective</li> <li>Controller option malfunction</li> </ul>	

SC819	С	Fatal kerr	nel error	
		overflow oprocessin	control error, a RAM occurred during system g. One of the following s was displayed on the panel.	<ul><li>System program defective</li><li>Controller board defective</li><li>Optional board defective</li><li>Replace controller firmware</li></ul>
		0x696e	init died	
		0x766d	vm_pageout: VM is full	
		4361	Cache Error	
		Other		

**NOTE:** For more details about this SC code error, execute **SP5990** to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel.

SC821	С	Self-dia	gnostic error 2: ASIC			
			The ASIC provides the central point for the control of bus arbitration for CPU			
		access, for option bus and SDRAM access, for SDRAM refresh, and for management of the internal bus gate.				
		0B00	Error code 0xffff ffff is returned when the register Write & Verify check is executed on the ASIC mounted on the controller board. The ASIC controls the ROM and buses for other devices.	ASIC (controller board defective)		
		0B06	ASIC not detected	<ul> <li>ASIC (controller board defective)</li> <li>Poor connection between North Bridge and PCI I/F: Replace controller board</li> </ul>		
		0B10	Failed to initialize or could not read connection bus. Data in SHM register incorrect.	Replace controller board		

NOTE:	For more details about this SC code error, execute <b>SP5990</b> to print an SMC
	report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the
	operation panel.

Troubleshooting

SC822	С	Self-dia	gnostic error 3: HDD	
		3003	<ul> <li>Check performed when HDD is installed:</li> <li>HDD device busy for over 31 s.</li> <li>After a diagnostic command is set for Sthe HDD, but the device remains busy for over 6 s.</li> <li>A diagnostic command is issued to the HDD device but the result is an erro</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>HDD defective</li> <li>HDD harness disconnected, defective</li> <li>Controller board defective</li> </ul>
		3004	No response to the self- diagnostic command from the ASIC to the HDDs	HDD defective
		3013	Mandolin does not respond, the HDD device remains BUSY for more than 31 s, or the BUSY signal does not drop within 6 s after the diagnostic command is issued to the HDDs.	<ul> <li>HDD defective</li> <li>HDD connector loose or defective</li> <li>Controller defective</li> </ul>
		3014	Error returned from HDD in response to the self- diagnostic command, Mandolin could not be located due to a read/write error at the HDD register.	HDD defective

SC824	С	Self-diagnostic error 4: NVRAM		
		NVRAM device does not exist, NVRAM device is damaged, NVRAM socket damaged	<ul> <li>NVRAM defective</li> <li>Controller board defective</li> <li>NVRAM backup battery exhausted</li> </ul>	
			<ul><li>NVRAM backup battery exhausted</li><li>NVRAM socket damaged</li></ul>	

SC826	С	Self-dia	gnostic error 6: NVRAM (option I	NVRAM)
		1501	The difference between the 1 s measured for RTC in the NVRAM and the 1 s timeout of the CPU is out of range, or the NVRAM is not detected.	<ul><li>NVRAM defective</li><li>NVRAM installed incorrectly</li><li>Replace RTC backup battery</li></ul>
		15FE	Backup battery error. Battery is exhausted or not within rated specification.	Replace RTC backup battery

SC828	С	Self-diagnostic error 7: ROM		
		<ul> <li>Measuring the CRC for the boot monitor and operating system program results in an error.</li> <li>A check of the CRC value for ROMFS of the entire ROM area results in an error.</li> </ul>	<ul><li>Software defective</li><li>Controller board defective</li><li>ROM defective</li></ul>	

**NOTE:** For more details about this SC 833, SC834 error, execute **SP5990** to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel. The additional error codes (0F30, 0F31, etc. are listed in the SMC report.

SC833	D	Self-diagnostic error 8: Engine I/F AS	IC
0F30 0F31		ASIC (Mandolin) for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked.	Replace the mother board
0F41		The read/write check done for resident RAM on the mother board could not be done correctly.	Replace the mother board
50B1		Could not initialize or read the bus connection.	<ul><li>Check for loose connections at the mother board.</li><li>Replace the mother board</li></ul>
50B2		Value of the SSCG register is incorrect.	<ul><li>Check for loose connections at the mother board.</li><li>Replace the mother board</li></ul>

SC834	D	Self-diagnostic error 9: Optional Memory RAM DIMM		
5101		The write/verify check for the optional RAM chip on the engine mother board gave an error. <ul> <li>Controller defective</li> <li>Mother board defective</li> </ul>		

SC850	В	Net I/F error		
		<ul><li>Duplicate IP addresses.</li><li>Illegal IP address.</li><li>Driver unstable and cannot be used on the network.</li></ul>	<ul><li>IP address setting incorrect</li><li>Ethernet board defective</li><li>Controller board defective</li></ul>	
JI				

SC851	В	IEEE 1394 I/F error	
		Driver setting incorrect and cannot be used by the 1394 I/F.	<ul> <li>NIB (PHY), LINK module defective; change the Interface Board</li> <li>Controller board defective</li> </ul>

SC853	В	Wireless LAN Error 1	
		During machine start-up, the machine can get access to the board that holds the wireless LAN, but not to the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth).	<ul> <li>Wireless LAN card missing (was removed)</li> </ul>

SC854	В	Wireless LAN Error 2			
		During machine operation, the machine can get access to the board that holds the wireless LAN, but not to the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth).	<ul> <li>Wireless LAN card missing (was removed)</li> </ul>	T T	

SC855	В	Wireless LAN error 3		
		An error was detected on the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth).	<ul><li>Wireless LAN card defective</li><li>Wireless LAN card connection incorrect</li></ul>	

SC856	В	Wireless LAN error 4		
		An error was detected on the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth).	<ul> <li>Wireless LAN card defective</li> <li>PCI connector (to the mother board) loose</li> </ul>	

SC857	В	USB I/F Error		
		The USB driver is not stable and	Bad USB card connection	
		caused an error.	<ul> <li>Replace the controller board</li> </ul>	

SC860	В	HDD startup error at main power on	
		<ul> <li>HDD is connected but a driver error is detected.</li> <li>The driver does not respond with the status of the HDD within 30 s.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>HDD is not formatted</li> <li>Label name input during formatting is corrupted; format the hard disk again</li> <li>HDD is defective</li> </ul>

SC861	D	HDD re-try failure		
		At power on with the HDD detected, power supply to the HDD is interrupted, after the HDD is awakened from the sleep mode, the HDD is not ready within 30 s.	<ul> <li>Harness between HDD and board disconnected, defective</li> <li>HDD power connector disconnected</li> <li>HDD defective</li> <li>Controller board defective</li> </ul>	

SC863	D	HDD data read failure	
		The data written to the HDD cannot be read normally, due to bad sectors generated during operation.	• HDD defective <b>Note</b> : If the bad sectors are generated at the image partition, the bad sector information is written to NVRAM, and the next time the HDD is accessed, these bad sectors will not be accessed for read/write operation.

SC864	D	HDD data CRC error	
		During HDD operation, the HDD cannot respond to an CRC error query. Data transfer did not execute normally while data was being written to the HDD.	HDD defective

SC865	D	HDD access error		
		HDD responded to an error during operation for a condition other than those for SC863, 864.	HDD defective.	

SC866	В	SD card error 1: Confirmation	
		The machine detects an electronic license error in the application on the SD card in the controller slot immediately after the machine is turned on. The program on the SD card contains electronic confirmation license data. If the program does not contain this license data, or if the result of the check shows that the license data in the program on the SD card is incorrect, then the checked program cannot execute and this SC code is displayed.	<ul> <li>Program missing from the SD card</li> <li>Download the correct program for the machine to the SD card</li> </ul>

SC867	D	SD card error 2: SD card removed				
		The SD card in the boot slot when the machine was turned on was removed while the machine was on.	<ul> <li>Insert the SD card, then turn the machine off and on.</li> </ul>			

SC868	D	SD card error 3: SC card access		
		An error occurred while an SD card	SD card not inserted correctly	
		was used.	ed. • SD card defective	
			<ul> <li>Controller board defective</li> </ul>	
			Note: If you want to try to reformat the SC	
			card, use SD Formatter Ver 1.1.	

SC870	В	Address book data error		
		Address book data on the hard disk was detected as abnormal when it was accessed from either the operation panel or the network. The address book data cannot be read from the HDD or SD card where it is stored, or the data read from the media is defective.	<ul> <li>Software defective. Turn the machine off/on. If this is not the solution for the problem, then replace the controller firmware.</li> <li>HDD defective.</li> </ul>	
		<ul> <li>More Details</li> <li>Do SP5846 050 (UCS Settings – address book data.</li> <li>Reset the user information with S Information).</li> <li>Replace the HDDs.</li> <li>Boot the machine from the SD ca</li> </ul>		Trouble- shooting

SC873	В	HDD mail send data error				
		An error was detected on the HDD immediately after the machine was turned on, or power was turned off while the machine used the HDD.	<ul> <li>Do SP5832-007 (Format HDD – Mail TX Data) to initialize the HDD.</li> <li>Replace the HDD =</li> </ul>			

SC874	D	Delete All error 1: HDD		
		A data error was detected for the HDD/NVRAM after the Delete All option was used. <b>Note</b> : The source of this error is the Data Overwrite Security Unit B660 running from an SD card.	<ul> <li>Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again.</li> <li>Install the Data Overwrite Security Unit again. For more, see section "1. Installation".</li> <li>HDD defective</li> </ul>	

SC875	D	Delete All error 2: Data area			
		An error occurred while the machine deleted data from the HDD. <b>Note</b> : The source of this error is the Data Overwrite Security Unit B660 running from an SD card.	<ul> <li>Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again.</li> </ul>		

SC880	D	File Format Converter (MLB) error			
		A request to get access to the MLB • MLB defective, replace the MLB was not answered within the specified time.			

# SC900: Miscellaneous

SC900	D	Electrical total counter error			
		The total counter contains something that is not a number.	<ul> <li>NVRAM incorrect type</li> <li>NVRAM defective</li> <li>NVRAM data scrambled</li> <li>Unexpected error from external source</li> </ul>		

SC910	В	External controller error 1	
SC911		External controller error 2	
SC912		External controller error 3	
SC913		External controller error 4	
		The external controller (Fiery) sends an error message.	Turn the machine power     off/on

SC914	В	External controller error 5	
		The external controller (Fiery) sends an error message.	Turn the machine power off/on

SC919	D	External controller down				
		The EAC received an interrupt signal from the FLUTE serial driver during print jobs in progress and the connection between the copier and external controller was broken. Note: The EAC is the External Api Converter.	• Switch the machine off and on.			

SC920	В	Printer error 1			
		An internal application error was detected and operation cannot continue.	<ul><li>Software defective; turn the machine off/on, or change the controller firmware</li><li>Insufficient memory</li></ul>		

SC921	В	Printer error 2	
		When the application started, the necessary font was not on the SD card.	Font not on the SC card

SC925	В	Net File function error	Net File function error	
		The NetFile file management on the HDD cannot be used, or a NetFile management file is corrupted and operation cannot continue. The HDDs are defective and they cannot be debugged or partitioned, so the Scan Router functions (delivery of received faxes, document capture, etc.), Web services, and other network functions cannot be used. HDD status codes are displayed below the SC code:	<ul> <li>Refer to the four procedures below (Recovery from SC 925).</li> </ul>	

Here is a list of HDD status codes:

Display	Meaning
(-1)	HDD not connected
(-2)	HDD not ready
(-3)	No label
(-4)	Partition type incorrect
(-5)	Error returned during label read or check
(-6)	Error returned during label read or check
(-7)	"filesystem" repair failed
(-8)	"filesystem" mount failed
(-9)	Drive does not answer command
(-10)	Internal kernel error
(-11)	Size of drive is too small
(-12)	Specified partition does not exist
(-13)	Device file does not exist

Troubleshooting

### **Recovery from SC 925**

### Procedure 1

If the machine shows SC codes for HDD errors (SC860  $\sim$  SC865) with SC 925, do the recovery procedures for SC860  $\sim$  SC865.

### Procedure 2

If the machine does not show one of the five HDD errors (SC860 ~ SC865), turn the machine power off and on. If this is not the solution for the problem, then initialize the NetFile partition on the HDD with **SP5832-011** (HDD Formatting – Ridoc I/F).

NetFiles: Jobs printed from the document server using a PC and DeskTopBinder

- Before you initialize the NetFile partition on the HDD, tell the customer that:
  - · Received faxes on the delivery server will be erased
  - All captured documents will be erased
  - DeskTopBinder/Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor job history will be erased
  - Documents on the document server, and scanned documents, will not be erased.
  - The first time that the network gets access to the machine, the management information must be configured again (this will use a lot of time).

Before you initialize the Netfile partition with **SP5832-011**, do these steps:

- 1. Go into the User Tools mode and do "Delivery Settings" to print all received fax documents that are scheduled for delivery. Then erase them.
- 2. In the User Tools mode, do Document Management> Batch Delete Transfer Documents.
- 3. Do **SP5832-011**, then turn the machine power off and on.

### Procedure 3

If "Procedure 2" is not the solution for the problem, do **SP5832-001** (HDD Formatting – All), then turn the machine power off and on.

**SP5832-001** erases all document and address book data on the hard disks. Ask the customer before you do this SP code.

# Procedure 4

If "Procedure 3" is not the solution for the problem, replace the HDD.

SC990	D	Software error 2	
		The software performs an unexpected function and the program cannot continue.	<ul> <li>Software defective, re-boot<sup>*1</sup></li> </ul>

SC991	С	Software error 3	
		The software performs an unexpected function and the program cannot continue. However, unlike SC990, recovery processing allows the program to continue.	<ul> <li>Software defective, re-boot<sup>*1</sup></li> </ul>

<sup>\*1</sup>: In order to get more details about SC990 and SC991:

- 1) Execute **SP7403** or print an SMC Report (**SP5990**) to read the history of the 10 most recent logged errors.
- 2) If you press the zero key on the operation panel with the SP selection menu displayed, you will see detailed information about the recently logged SC990 or SC991, including the software file name, line number, and so on. 1) is the recommended method, because another SC could write over the information for the previous SC.

SC992	С	Software error 4: Undefined		
		An error not controlled by the system occurred (the error does not come under any other SC code).	<ul> <li>Software defective</li> <li>Turn the machine power off and on. The machine cannot be used until this error is cleared.</li> </ul>	

SC997	В	Cannot select application function	
		An application does not start after the user pushed the correct key on the operation panel.	<ul> <li>Software bug</li> <li>A RAM or DIMM option necessary for the application is not installed or not installed correctly.</li> </ul>

SC998	D	Application cannot start	
		Register processing does not operate for an application within 60 s after the machine power is turned on. No applications not start correctly, and all end abnormally.	<ul> <li>Software bug</li> <li>A RAM or DIMM option necessary for the application is not installed or not installed correctly.</li> </ul>

# 4.3.4 ADDITIONAL SC CODES PRINTED IN SMC REPORTS

These codes are also used in the SMC report.

Codes that have the same number in this series are identified by an additional 4digit hexadecimal number.

SC	No.	Symptom	Possible Cause	
853	D	IEEE802 11b card startup error		
		Not used.		
854	D	IEEE802 11b card access error		
		Not used.		
855	D	IEEE802 11b card error		
		Not used.		
856	D	IEEE802 11b card connection board e	error	
		Not used.		
870	В	Address book data error		
		The address book in the hard disk is	Data corruption	
		accessed. $\rightarrow$ An error is detected in	<ul> <li>Defective hard disk</li> </ul>	
		the address book data; address book	Defective software	
		data is not read; or data is not written into the address book.		
		NOTE: To recover from the error, do a	any of the following countermeasures:	
		NOTE: To recover from the error, do any of the following countermeasures: Format the address book by using <b>SP5-832-008</b> (all data in the address book–		
		including the user codes and counters		
		Initialize the user data by using SP5-8	32-006 and -007 (the user codes and	
		counters are recovered when the mair	/	
			and counters are recovered when the main	
		switch is turned on).		
920	D	Printer error	-	
		The printer program cannot be	Defective hardware	
		continued.	Data corruption	
			Defective software	
925	D	Net file error		
		The management file for net files is	Defective hardware	
		corrupted; net files are not normally read.	Data corruption	
		Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the	Defective software	
		document server using a PC and the		
		DeskTopBinder software		
992	С	Other system SCs		
		The controller received an unknown	Contact your product specialist.	
		SC code from the engine.		
993	D	Network error		
		The ASIC program of GW controller	Defective GW controller	
		cannot be continued.		

# 5. SERVICE TABLES

# 5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

# 5.1.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE OPERATION

The service program (SP) mode is used to check electrical data, change modes, and adjust values.

# 

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

# Service Mode Lock/Unlock

At locations where the machine contains sensitive data, the customer engineer cannot operate the machine until the Administrator turns the service mode lock off. This function makes sure that work on the machine is always done with the permission of the Administrator.

- If you cannot go into the SP mode, ask the Administrator to log in with the User Tool and then set "Service Mode Lock" to OFF. After he or she logs in: [User Tools] > System Settings > Administrator Tools > Service Mode Lock > OFF
  - This unlocks the machine and lets you get access to all the SP codes.
  - The service technician can do servicing on the machine and turn the machine off and on. It is not necessary to ask the Administrator to log in again each time the machine is turned on.
- 2. If you must use the printer bit switches, go into the SP mode and set **SP5169** to "1".
- 3. After machine servicing is completed:
  - Change SP5169 from "1" to "0".
  - Turn the machine off and on.
  - Tell the administrator that you completed servicing the machine.
  - The administrator will then set the "Service Mode Lock" to ON.

# To Enter and Exit the Service Mode

- 1. Press the [Clear Modes] ()key.
- 2. On the operation panel keypad, press "107".
- Hold down the Clear/Stop (<sup>(C)</sup>) key for more than 3 seconds. The Copy SP or PM Counter items are displayed. If the printer or scanner/printer option is installed, the Printer SP and Scanner SP items are also displayed.

To enter normal Copy SP mode, touch "Copy SP".

4. When you are finished, press "Exit" to exit the SP mode, then press again to return to the Copier Window.

# To Switch to the Copy Window for Test Printing

- 1. In the SP mode display, touch "Copy Window" to switch to the copy operation screen when you need to select paper for a test print.
- 2. Use the copy window (copier mode) to select the appropriate settings (paper size, etc.) for the test print.
- 3. Press the [Start] ( $^{\odot}$ ) key to execute the test print.
- 4. Touch "SP Mode" (highlighted) to return to the SP mode screen and repeat from step 1.

# Using the SP Mode

SP command numbers can be entered directly (if you know the number) or the command can be selected from the menus.

### **Direct Entry**

**SP5831** an executable SP that initializes the User Tools settings, can be executed immediately by just entering the numbers.

- 1. On the keypad press "5831".
- 2. Press [#] (Enter).
- 3. Touch "Execute" on the touch panel.

If you know all seven digits of the SP code, enter the seven numbers and press Execute.

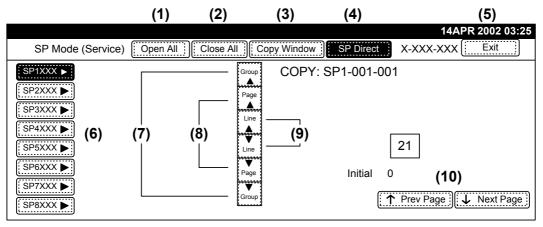
If you do not know all the numbers, enter only the first four numbers of the sevendigits and press [#]. The display goes immediately to the first SP of that group. Then you can use the buttons to browse to the desired selection.

### **Button Selection Entry**

- 1. Refer to the SP Mode Tables in this section to find the SP that you want to adjust.
- 2. Press the Group number on the left side of the SP Mode window that contains the SP that you want to adjust.
- 3. Use the scrolling buttons in the center of the SP mode window to display the SP number that you want to open, then press that number to expand the list.
- 4. Use the center touch-panel buttons to scroll to the number and title of the item that you want to set, and press [#]. The small entry box on the right is activated and displays the default or the current setting below.
- 5. To enter a setting
  - Press [#] to enter a minus sign. Then use the keypad to enter the appropriate number. The number you enter will write over the previous setting.
  - Press [#] to enter the setting. (If you enter a number that is out of range, the key press is ignored.)
  - When you are prompted to complete the selection, press Yes.
- 6. If you need to perform a test print, touch "Copy Window" to open the copy window and select the settings for the test print. Press the [Start] (\*) key twice, then touch "SP Mode" (highlighted) in the copy window to return to the SP mode display.
- 7. When you are finished, touch "Exit" twice to return to the copy window.

# SP Mode Button Summary

Here is a short summary of the touch-panel buttons.



B132S902.WMF

#### (1): **Open All**.

Opens all SP groups and sublevels.

#### (2): Close All.

Closes all open groups and sublevels and restores the initial SP mode display.

#### (3): Copy Window.

Opens the copy window (copy mode) so you can make test copies. To return to the SP mode screen, press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window.

#### (4): SP Direct.

Enter the SP code directly with the number keys if you know the SP number, then press [#]. (SP Direct must be highlighted before you can enter the number. Just press SP Direct if it is not highlighted.)

#### (5): **Exit**.

Press twice to leave the SP mode and return to the copy window to resume normal operation.

#### (6): SPnxxx.

Press any group number to open a list of SP codes and titles for that group. For example, to open the SP code list for SP1-nnn, touch "SP1XXX". If an SP has sublevels, it is marked with a right pointing triangle.

#### (7): **Group**.

Press to scroll the display to the previous or next group.

(8): Page.

Press to scroll to the previous or next display in segments the size of the screen display (page).

#### (9): Line.

Press to scroll the display to the previous or next line, line by line.

#### (10): Prev Page or Next Page.

Press to move the highlight on the left to the previous or next selection in the list.

# SP Mode Print (SMC Print)

You can print an SMC Report to check the machine's condition. The SMC Report is a list of the SP commands and their settings.

5990	SP Print Mode (SMC Print)
	In the SP mode, push 'Copy Window' to move to the copy screen, select the paper size, then push Start. Select A4/LT (Sideways) or larger to make sure that all the information is printed. Push 'SP Window' to go back to the SP mode, select the necessary SP Print Mode, and push Execute.
001	All (Data List)
002	SP (Mode Data List)
003	User Program
004	Logging Data
005	Diagnostic Report
006	Non-Default (Prints only SPs that are set to values other than defaults.)
007	NIB Summary (Configuration, Systemlog, Nvramlog)
008	Capture Log
021	Copier User Program (Copy Management Report)
022	Scanner SP
023	Scanner User Program (Scanner Management Report)

# 5.2 RESETS

# 5.2.1 MEMORY ALL CLEAR: SP5801

Before shipping, the SP mode data settings are printed in an SMC Report and attached to the exposure glass of the machine for your reference. Store this report in a safe place (next to the toner collection bottle, for example). It is a list of all the SP initial settings. Refer to this list if you need to initialize one or more SPs. The initial SP settings are also written in the SP mode tables at the end of this section.

As a rule, you should always print an SMC Report before initializing or adjusting the SP settings. The SMC Report provides a concise list of all the SP commands and their current settings. The report can be used for reference if the service manual is not available.

Executing Memory All Clear resets all the settings stored in the NVRAM to their default settings except the following:

SP8381	Electrical total counter value
SP5811-002:	Machine serial number
SP5907:	Plug & Play Brand Name and Production Name Setting

- 1. Execute **SP5990** to print out all SMC Data Lists.
- 2. Open SP5801.
- 3. Press the number for the item that you want to initialize. The number you select determines which application is initialized. For example, press 1 if you want to initialize all modules.

No.	What It Initializes	Comments
1	All Clear	Initializes items 2 ~ 15 below.
2	Engine	Initializes all registration settings for the engine and copy
		process settings.
3	SCS	Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control
		Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM
		update information.
4	IMH Memory	Initializes the image file system.
		(IMH: Image Memory Handler)
5	MCS	Initializes the automatic delete time setting for stored
		documents.
		(MCS: Memory Control Service)
6	Copier application	Initializes all copier application settings.
7	Fax application	Not used.
8	Printer application	Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer
		SP bit switches, and the printer CSS counter.
9	Scanner application	Initializes the defaults for the scanner and all the scanner SP
		modes.
10	Web Service/	Deletes the Netfile (NFA) management files and thumbnails,
	Network application	and initializes the Job login ID.
		Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a
4.4	NOO	PC and the DeskTopBinder software
11	NCS	Initializes the system defaults and interface settings (IP
		addresses also), the SmartNetMonitor for Admin settings,
		WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings. (NCS: Network Control Service)
14	Clear DCS Setting	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.
14	Clear UCS Setting	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.
	MIRS Setting	Initializes the OCS (Oser Information Control Service) settings. Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service)
16	5	settings.
17	CCS	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service)
		settings.

Service Tables

- 4. Touch "Execute", then follow the prompts on the display to complete the procedure.
- 5. Make sure that you perform the following settings:
  - Do the printer and scanner registration and magnification adjustments (
     3-19-1 to 3-19-3)
  - Do the touch screen calibration ( 3-20).
  - Refer to the SMC data lists and re-enter any values which had been changed from their factory settings.
  - Execute **SP3820-001** Manual Process Control Self Check
- 6. Check the copy quality and the paper path, and do any necessary adjustments.

# 5.2.2 SOFTWARE AND SETTING RESET

# Software Reset

The software can be rebooted when the machine hangs up.

To do a software reset:

Turn the main power switch off and on.

-or-

Push and hold down [•/] and [#] together for at least 10 seconds.

When the machine beeps once, release both buttons. After "Now loading. Please wait" is displayed for a few seconds, the copy window will open. The machine is ready for operation.

# Resetting the User Tool Settings

The system settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults with this procedure.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in the copier standby mode.
- 2. Press the [User Tools] key.
- 3. Hold down the [#] key and touch "System Setting" on the display.
- 4. A confirmation message will be displayed, then press "Yes".

# Resetting Copy/Document Server Features Only

The copy/document server settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults with this procedure.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in the copier standby mode.
- 2. Push the [User Tools] key.
- 3. Hold down the [#] key and touch "Copy/Document Server Features" on the display.
- 4. When the message appears, touch "Yes".

# **Resetting Scanner Features Only**

The scanner settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults with this procedure

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in the copier standby mode.
- 2. Push the [User Tools] key.
- 3. Hold down the [#] key and touch "Scanner Features" key.
- 4. When the message appears, touch "Yes"

# 5.3 TEST PATTERN PRINTING

# 5.3.1 PRINTING TEST PATTERN: SP2109 002

Some of these test patterns are used for copy image adjustments but most are used primarily for design testing. These test patterns do not use the IPU.

**NOTE:** Do not operate the machine until the test pattern is printed out completely. Otherwise, an SC may occur.

- 1. Enter the SP mode and select SP2109 002
- 2. Enter the number for the test pattern that you want to print and press [#].
- 3. When you are prompted to confirm your selection, touch "Yes" to select the test pattern for printing.
- 4. Touch "Copy Window" to open the copy window, then select the settings for the test print (paper size, etc.)
- 5. Press the [Start] (<sup>(©)</sup>) key twice <u>(ignore the "Place Original" messages</u>) to start the test print.
- 6. After checking the test pattern, press SP Mode (highlighted) to return to the SP mode display.
- 7. Touch "Exit" twice to exit the SP mode.

### Test Pattern Table

These patterns can be selected with SP2109 002.

0	Off	14	Horizontal Cross-Stitch
1	1-Dot Line	15	Crop Marks
2	1-Dot Slant Cross-Stripe	16	Vertical Belt
3	2-Dot Horizontal Line	17	Checkered Flag
4	2-Dot Vertical Line	18	1-Dot 20 mm Grid
5	1-Dot Horizontal Line	19	1-Dot 20 mm Slant Grid
6	1-Dot Vertical Line	20	Horizontal Grayscale
7	1-Dot Independent	21	Horizontal Grayscale-White Stripes
8	2-Dot Independent		
9	4-Dot Independent		
10	Trim Area		
11	Belt Pattern		
12	100% Coverage		
13	Vertical Cross-Stitch		

# 5.3.2 IPU TEST PATTERNS: SP4417

The IPU test patterns are primarily used for design purposes. However, they can be used as follows:

- To confirm that the IPU is processing images correctly.
- To fine tune image processing
- To trace the causes of poor images. For example, if the IPU test patterns are normal when the machine is producing poor quality images, then the problem must be after the IPU if the flow of image processing.
- 1. Enter the SP mode, select SP4417.
- 2. Scroll then select the number of the test pattern that you want to print.
- 3. Press [#].
- 4. Touch "Copy Window" to open the copy window, then select the settings for the test print (paper size, etc.)
- 5. Press the [Start] (<sup>(®)</sup>) key to start the test print.
- 6. Touch "SP Mode" (highlighted) to return to the SP mode display. Here is a list of the text patterns you can select.

<b></b>			1
0	Scanned Image	13	Grid Pattern CMYK
1	Gradation Main Scan A	14	Color Patch CMYK
2	Gradation Main Scan B	15	Gray Pattern (1)
3	Gradation Main Scan C	16	Gray Pattern (2)
4	Gradation Main Scan D	17	Gray Pattern (3)
5	Gradation Sub Scan (1)	18	Shading Pattern
6	Grid Pattern	19	Thin Line Pattern
7	Slant Grid Pattern	20	Scanned + Grid Pattern
8	Gradation RGBCMYK	21	Scanned +Gray Scale
9	UCR Pattern	22	Scanned + Color Patch
10	Color Patch 16 (1)	23	Scanned + Slant Grid C
11	Color Patch 16 (2)	24	Scanned + Grid D
12	Color Patch 64		

# 5.4 FIRMWARE UPDATE

# 5.4.1 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE

SD cards are used to update the software and to back up important data. Here is a list of the firmware modules that can be updated or restored from an SD card:

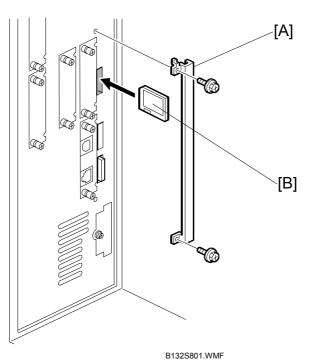
- GW controller software
- BICU software
- LCDC (operation panel) software
- Network Sys (network) software
- Web Sys (Web Image Monitor)
- Document Server software
- NFA (Net File) software
- Printer application software
- Scanner application software
- DESS (encryption module) software

Important: Always obey these rules when handling and using SD cards:

- Never connect or remove an SD card with the machine powered on.
- Never turn the power off while the machine is downloading data from an SD card.
- The SD card is a precision item. Use it carefully. Do not keep the card in a location where there is high temperature, high humidity, or light from the sun.
- Never bend an SD card, make scratches on it, or apply strong shock or vibration to it.

Service Tables

#### FIRMWARE UPDATE



## Firmware Update Procedure

- 1. Disconnect these items if they are installed:
  - Network cable

Ξ.

• Interface cable

**NOTE**: This prevents outside interference from data transfers to the machine while the software is being uploaded.

- 2. Obtain the System SD card (P/N B1325730).
- 3. Turn the main switch off.
- 4. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] from the controller ( $\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$ ).
- 5. Hold the SD card [B] (the surface with printing must be away from the front of the machine), and insert the SD card in **Slot 3** [B].
- 6. Open the front door of the copier.
- Turn the main power switch on. You see "Please Wait.
   NOTE: Opening the front door during the firmware update prevents motor rotation and the generation of any electrical noise.

The first screen appears after about 10 sec.

					_		
PCca	PCcard -> ROM Page01						
	Engine	(1)	ROM:00000000 ROM:0.01	NEW:G000000 NEW:0.08			
	System	(2)	ROM:60705254 ROM:12.1616	NEW:60705254 NEW:12.16:16			
	NA		ROM:B0705370 ROM:11.22	NEW : B0705370 NEW : 12.31			
	EU				ļ		
				Exit (0)			
				(0)			

B132S901.WMF

#### Using the Screen:

- To select the item for upgrade, touch the selection on the touch panel, or push the corresponding key on the 10-key pad (1 to 5) of the operation panel. The number in parentheses tells you which key to push. When you make a selection, the [Verify(./)] and [Update(#)] buttons come on the screen.
- If you push [Exit] (or the [0] key), you go back to the usual operation screen.
- Push the [Start] key on the operation panel to select and download all the options shown on the screen.
- Push the [Clear] key on the operation panel if you want to cancel your selections and make new ones.

### While the Update Is in Progress...

- Remain with the machine. Do not leave it unattended.
- The [Start] key flashes RED during firmware update, and then lights GREEN when the update is finished.
- Never switch the machine off while the [Start] key is flashing RED. If the machine is switched off or accidentally unplugged before the update is finished, <u>do not remove the SD card</u>. Just switch the machine on again. The firmware update should restart automatically. If the firmware update does not recover, order another System SD card (P/N B1325730).
- Never close the front door during firmware update.

Service Tables

PCcard -> ROM	
Loading	
System	
*****	
	_
B132	2S903.WMF

- 8. Check the notations to the right.
  - "ROM" tells you the module number and version of the currently installed software.
  - "NEW" tells you the module number and version of software on the SD card in Slot 3.
- 9. Touch the names of the items on the left that you want to update (Engine, System, or Operation Panel). The items you select change to dark gray.

**Recommended:** If you intend to update all the modules, select "Engine" and "System" for the first update. After this is completed, do the "Opeation Panel" update. (The screen goes off during the operation panel update. If a problem occurs, you will not be aware of it.)

10. Touch "Update" or push [#] on the 10-key pad.

Here is what happens on the screen:

- The top bar tells you what the machine is doing ("Loading")
- The middle bar shows the name of the module that the machine is presently updating. (The example above shows that the machine is updating the "Printer" module.)
- The bottom bar is a progress bar. The '\_' marks in the progress bar are replaced by '' marks as uploading progresses.
- When the update is completed, you will see the message "Update done."
- Immediately below the message you will see the name of the SD card and a notation for the number of cards ("1/1", "1/2")

**NOTE**: During operation panel update the screen is blank and the progress bar is not displaye. To monitor the progress of the operation panel update watch the [Start] key. While operation panel update is in progress, the [Start] key LED flashes RED. The [Start] key lights GREEN when the operation panel update has completed.

- 11. Turn the power off and on.
- 12. Remove the SD card.

This completes the update procedure, but you should do the next procedure to verify that the update was successful.

## Verifying the Firmware Update

This "Verify" procedure is not necessary but is strongly recommended.

- 1. Open the front door of the copier.
- 2. With the System SD card in **Slot 3**, turn the main power switch on. You see "Please Wait" and then the door-open alert. The first screen appears after about 10 sec.
- 3. Touch "Firmware".
- 4. Select the items that you updated, and then push the [Verify] button.
- If there are no errors the machine displays the "Verify done" message for each updated item. Go to the next step.
   -or-

If you see "Verify Error" in the first bar on the screen, then you must do the procedure again for the module shown in the bottom bar. For more details, see "Errors During Firmware Update" below.

- 6. After the firmware is correctly updated, turn the main power switch off.
- 7. Push the System SD card in a small distance to release it, then pull it out of the slot.
- 8. Turn the main power switch on, and confirm that the machine operates correctly.

Service Tables

### **Errors During Firmware Update**

If an error occurs during a download, an error message will be shown in the first line. The error code consists of the letter "E" and a number ("E20", for example).

### Error Message Table

NO.	MEANING	SOLUTION
20	Cannot map logical address	Make sure the SD card is installed correctly, or use a
		different SD card.
21	Cannot access memory	HDD connection not correct, or replace hard disk.
22	Cannot decompress	The ROM data on the SD card is not correct, or data
	compressed data	is damaged.
23	Error occurred when ROM	Controller program defective. If the second attempt
	update program started	fails, replace the controller board.
24	SD card access error	Make sure the SD card is installed correctly, or use a
		different SD card.
30	No HDD available for stamp	HDD connection not correct or replace hard disks.
0.4	data download	
31	Data incorrect for continuous	Install the SD card with the remaining data necessary
00	download	for the download, then re-start the procedure.
32	Data incorrect after download	Do the recovery procedure for the module, then
22	interrupted	repeat the installation procedure.
33	Incorrect SD card version	The ROM data on the SD card is not correct, or data
34	Module mismatch - Correct	is damaged. The data on the SD is not correct. Get the correct
34	module is not on the SD card	
35	Module mismatch – Module on	data (Japan, Overseas, OEM, etc.) then install again. SD update data is not correct. The data on the SD
35	SD card is not for this machine	card is for a different machine. Get the correct data
	SD card is not for this machine	then install again.
36	Cannot write module – Cause	SD update data is not correct. The data on the SD
50	other than E34, E35	card is for a different machine. Get the correct data
		then install again.
40	Engine module download failed	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and
	5	try again, or replace the BCU board.
42	Operation panel module	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and
	download failed	try again, or replace the LCDC.
43	Stamp data module download	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and
	failed	try again, or replace the hard disk.
44	Controller module download	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and
	failed	tray again, or replace the controller board.
50	Electronic confirmation check	SD update data is not correct. The data on the SD
	failed	card is for a different machine. Get the correct data
		then install again.

# 5.4.2 DOWNLOADING STAMP DATA

You must download the fixed stamp data from the machine ROM onto the hard disk after the HDD has been formatted or has been replaced and formatted. Then these stamps can be used by the system. If this is not done, the user will not have access to the fixed stamps ("Confidential", "Secret", etc.).

- 1. Go into the SP mode.
- 1. Select SP5853 then press "Execute".
- 2. Obey the instructions on the screen to complete the procedure.
- 3. Switch the machine off and remove the SD card.



### 5.4.3 UPLOADING AND DOWNLOADING NVRAM DATA

### Uploading NVRAM Data to an SD card

Always upload the NVRAM data to an SD card before you repolace the NVRAM.

- 1. Before you turn the machine off, do **SP5990 001** (SMC Print). This gives you a record of the NVRAM settings if the upload fails and tells you the serial number of the machine.
- 2. Turn the copier main power switch off.
- 3. Put the SD card into Slot 3, then turn the copier on.
- Do SP5824 001 then push the "Execute" key When uploading is completed, a file is coped to the NVRAM folder on the SD card. The file is saved to this path and filename:

#### NVRAM\<serial number>.NV

Here is an example for Serial Number "B0700017":

NVRAM\B0700017.NV

5. To prevent an error during the download, write the serial number of the machine on the SD card.

### Downloading an SD Card to NVRAM

Do this procedure to take the data uploaded from the NVRAM and download it to the new NVRAM.

- If the SD card with the NVRAM data is damaged, or if the connection between the controller and BICU is defective, the NVRAM data download will not complete correctly.
- If the download does not complete correctly, do the download procedure again.
- If this does not complete correctly, input the NVRAM data manually from the SMC print that you made before you uploaded the NVRAM data.
- 1. Turn the copier main power switch off.
- 2. Put the SD card with the NVRAM data into Slot 3.
- 3. Open the front door of the copier and keep it open.
- 4. Turn the copier main power switch on.

If the NVRAM is new, SC195 (Machine Serial Number Error) may appear. If this occurs:

- Enter the SP mode and do SP5801 001 to set the memory to the defaults (All).
- Switch the machine off/on and start from Step 1. Important! WHEN SC195 OCCURS, THE SERIAL NUMBER MUST BE INPUT. PLEASE CONTACT YOUR TECHNICAL SUPERVISOR.
- Do SP5825-001 (NVRAM Data Download) and push the "Execute" key.
   NOTE: The serial number of the file on the SD card must match the serial number of the machine. If the serial numbers do not match, the download will not complete correctly.
- 6. Turn the copier main power switch off and close the front door.
- 7. Remove the SD card from **Slot 3**.

Important: This procedure does not download the following data to the NVRAM:

- Total Count
- C/O Count

# 5.5 SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

# 5.5.1 SERVICE TABLE KEY

Notation	What it means	
[range/step]	Example: [–9~+9/0.1 mm]	
	The default setting can be adjusted in 0.1mm steps in the range $\pm 9$ . <b>Note</b> : The default setting for each SP mode is shown on the screen in the "Initial" box immediately below the entry box. Some of the default settings for the B064 Series and B140 Series are slightly different, so be sure to check the "Initial" box on the SP mode screen.	
DFU	Denotes "Design or Factory Use". Do not change this value.	
Japan only	The feature or item is for Japan only. Do not change this value.	
LEF	Long Edge Feed	
SEF	Short Edge Feed	

#### Abbreviations for Venus-C1 SP Service Tables

The SP titles are abbreviated so they can be used in smaller the 2-line displays of future printer models. Refer to this list if you do not understand the meaning of an abbreviation.

Code	Meaning	Code	Meaning	Code	Meaning
1/3S	One-third Speed	HS	Half Speed	Recov	Recovery
1C	One Color	Htg	Htg	Reg	Registration
1 <b>O</b> p	1 Operation (execution cycle)	Htg Roll	Heating Roller	Reps	Repetitions
1-S	1-Side (Simplex)	I/O	Input/Output	Rev	Reverse
2-S	2-Side (Duplex)	Init	Initial power on	Roll	Roller
Abs	Absolute	Int	Interval	Rot	Rotation
Adj	Adjustment	IntCnt	Interval Count	S	seconds
Agi	Agitation	Inv	Inverter	S	Sideways (LEF)
Amt	Amount	ITR	Image Transfer	SApli	Scanner Application
B/W	Black-and-White (2-Color)	JG	Junction Gate	Sep	Separation
BotPlt	Bottom Plate (Tray)	ĸ	Black, BK	Shts	Sheets
C	Cyan	L	Lengthways (SEF)	Sn	Sensor
Calib	Calibration	LEdge	Leading Edge	Sp1	Special Paper 1
Chg	Change	LL	Lowest (Low Low)	SS	Saddle-Stitch
Chk	Check	Lvl	Level	Std	Standard
Chrg	Charge	M	Motor	Stp	Staple
Cir.	Circulation	M	Magenta	StrTemp	Start Temperature
Cnt	Count	Meas	Measurement	Sub	Sub Hopper
Coeff	Coefficient	Mem	Memory	SWT	Switch Timing
Col	Color	MH	Medium High	Syn	Synchronization
Cont	Continuous Operation	ML	Medium Low	T1	Tray 1
Cor	Correction	MM	Medium (Medium Medium)	T2	Tray 2
Ctrl	Control	Norm	Normal Paper	T3	Tray 3
Den	Density	NS	Normal Speed	T4	Tray 4
Dev	Development	Opt.	Optical	Tan	Tandem
Devr	Developer	Patt	Pattern	TC	Toner Control
Disp	Display	PE	Paper End	TE	Toner End
Dupx	Duplex	Pgs	Pages	TE Sn	Toner End Sensor
EMargin	Erase Margin	Photo	Pht	TEdge	Trailing Edge
EngSave	Energy Save	PM	Pulse Modulation	Temp	Temperature
Ent	Entrance	PolyM	Polygon Motor	Temp Chg	Temperature
	Entranoc	. orym		Tomp ong	Change
Env	Environment	Pos	Position	Thk	Thick (Paper)
Err	Error	Poten	Potential	Thresh	Threshold
Exe	Execute	PPr	Photo Paper	Tmg	Timing
FC	Full Color	Press	Pressure	TNĚ	Toner Near End
Fin1	Euphrates	Prior	Priority	Tnr	Toner
Fin2	Victoria-D	Prmr	Parameter	Tnr M	Toner Motor
Fin3	Zaire (国内)	ProCon	Process Control	Tra	Trace (thin) Paper
Fwd	Forward	Pt	Point	TxtOCR	Text (OCR)
Gray	Grayscale	PT	Paper Transfer	TxtPrt	Text (Print)
Haf	Half Speed	PTR	Paper Transfer Roller	Usd Tnr	Used Toners
Height	Hat	Ptype	Paper Type	Vert	Vertical
HH	Highest (High High)	Pwr	Power	Y	Yellow

# 5.5.2 COPIER SERVICE TABLES

## Group 1000

1001	Lead Edge Reg	Leading Edge Regisration Adjustment
001	Adjusts the printing le (SP2109, Pattern No [–9~+9/0.1mm] Specification: 3±2mm	

1002	Side-to-Side Reg	Side-to-Side Registration Adjustment
	Adjusts printing side-to-side registration for each feed station, using the test	
	pattern (SP2109, Pa	e adjusted after replacing the laser synchronization detector or
	the laser optical unit.	
001	Tray 1	[–9~+9/0.1 mm]
002	Tray 2	
003	Tray 3	
004	Tray 4	Japan Only
005	Bypass Tray	
006	LCT	
007	Dupx Tray	

1003	Reg Buckle Adj	Registration Buckle Adjustment
		n motor timing. This timing determines the amount of paper (A higher setting causes more buckling.)
001	Trays & LCT	[–9~+9/1 mm]
002	Dupx Tray	[–9~+9/1 mm]
003	Bypass Tray	[–9~+9/1 mm]

1007	Bypass Size Disp	Bypass Paper Size Detection Display
	Use this SP to display and confirm the if paper is skewing during feeding. [0~255/1 mm]	e size of the paper detected in the by-pass tray

1008	Duplex Fence Adj	Duplex Side Fence Position Adjustment
		e between the edges of the sheet and the together to position the sheet in the duplex
	[-3~+3/0.1 mm]	

1009	Fine Adj Reg Spd	Fine Adjust Registration Line Speed
		ine adjustment of the registration roller speed to
	adjust the line speed.	
001	Reg. Roller	Registration Roller: Fine Adjust Speed
		Allows fine adjustment of the registration roller line
		speed.
		[-3~+3/0.1%]
	Motor Adj:Norm	Motor Speed Fine Adjustment (Normal)
002	Drum Motor:K	"Normal" is normal speed for copying.
003	Drum Motor:M	[-3 ~ +3/ 0.1%]
004	Drum Motor:C	
005	Drum Motor: K	
006	PCU Motor:K	
007	PCU Motor:M	
008	PCU Motor:C	
009	PCU Motor:Y	
010	ITB Motor	
011	PTR Motor	
012	Fusing Motor	[-5 ~ +5/ 0.1%]
	Motor Adj:Half	Motor Speed Fine Adjustment (Half-Speed)
013	Drum Motor:K	"Half-Speed" is the half-speed mode.
014	Drum Motor:M	[-3 ~ +3/ 0.1%]
015	Drum Motor:C	
016	Drum Motor:Y	
017	PCU Motor:K	
018	PCU Motor:M	
019	PCU Motor:C	
020	PCU Motor:Y	
021	ITB Motor	
022	PTR Motor	
023	Fusing Motor	
	Motor Adj: 1/3	Motor Speed Fine Adjustment (One-Third Speed)
024	Fusing Exit Motor	"One-Third Speed" is the one-third speed mode. The one-third speed mode is used when OHP goes through the fusing unit. [-5 ~ +5/ 0.1%]
		Registration Roller Speed
025	Reg. Roller	This SP allows fine adjustment of the registration roller speed. [-3 ~ +3/ 0.1%]

1105	Htg Roll Sn1:Ctr	Heating Roller: Sensor 1 (Center)
	Htg Roll Sn1:Ctr	Heating Roller: Sensor 1 (Center)
	0	SP codes 001 to 027 control the temperature of the
		heating roller.
001	Prefeed Temp	Free-rotation start time.
		[60~200/1 deg.]
002	Reload Temp	At normal standby temperature.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
003	Wait Temp:Norm	At normal standby temperature.
		[50~200/1 deg.]
004	Wait Temp:Low	At low standby temperature.
		[50~200/1 deg.]
005	Wait Temp:High	At high standby temperature.
		[50~200/1 deg.]
006	1-S Norm:1Col	During copying.
		[130~20/1 deg.]
007	1-S:Norm :FC	During copying.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
008	1-S:Trace:1C	During copying.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
009	1-S:Trace:FC	During copying.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
010	1-S:Thk1:1C:HS	During copying in half-speed mode.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
011	1-S:Thk1:FC:HS	During copying in half-speed mode.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
012	1-S:Thk3:1C:NS:CPM	During copying in normal speed mode on thick paper in
		black-and-white.
010	1-S:Thk3:FC:NS:CPM	[130~200/1 deg.]
013	1-5:TNK3:FC:NS:CPM	During copying in normal speed mode on thick paper in full color.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
014	2-S:Norm:1C	During normal speed copying.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
015	2-S:Norm:FC	During normal speed copying.
		[130~200/1 deg.]
016	2-S:Trace:1C	During normal speed copying (paper setting).
	0.11000110	[130~200/1 deg.]
017	2-S:Trace:FC	During normal speed coyping (paper setting).
		[130~200/1 deg.]
018	2-S:Thk1:1C:HS	During half-speed copying (paper setting).
		[130~200/1 deg.]
019	2-S:Thk1:FC:HS	During half-speed copying (paper setting)
	2 · · · · · ·	[130~200/1 deg.]
020	2-S:Thk3:1C:NS:CPM	During half-speed copying (paper setting)
		[130~200/1 deg.]
021	2-S:Thk3:FC:NS:CPM	During half-speed copying (paper setting)
		[130~200/1 deg.]

022Thk2:TC:HSDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]023Thk2:FC:HSDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]024Cont OHP:1CDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]025Cont OHO:FCDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]026OHP:1C:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHot Roller038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]			
023Thk2:FC:HSDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130-200/1 deg.]024Cont OHP:1CDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130-200/1 deg.]025Cont OHO:FCDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130-200/1 deg.]026OHP:1C:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130-200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130-200/1 deg.]028Reload TempIntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]	022	Thk2:1C:HS	During half-speed copying (paper setting).
I 130~200/1 deg.]024Cont OHP:1CDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]025Cont OHO:FCDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]026OHP:1C:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]			[130~200/1 deg.]
024Cont OHP:1CDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]025Cont OHO:FCDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]026OHP:1C:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]	023	Thk2:FC:HS	During half-speed copying (paper setting).
Image: Second			[130~200/1 deg.]
[130~200/1 deg.]025Cont OHO:FCDuring half-speed copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]026OHP:1C:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]	024	Cont OHP:1C	During half-speed copying (paper setting).
[130~200/1 deg.]026OHP:1C:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]028PressRollPressure Roller028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]			[130~200/1 deg.]
026OHP:1C:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]028PressRollPressure Roller028Reload TempUntil warnup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]	025	Cont OHO:FC	During half-speed copying (paper setting).
Interview[130~200/1 deg.]027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]PressRollPressure Roller028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature.			[130~200/1 deg.]
027OHP:FC:100mm/sDuring 100 mm/s copying (paper setting). [130~200/1 deg.]PressRollPressure Roller028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]	026	OHP:1C:100mm/s	During 100 mm/s copying (paper setting).
PressRollPressure Roller028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]			[130~200/1 deg.]
PressRollPressure Roller028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]	027	OHP:FC:100mm/s	During 100 mm/s copying (paper setting).
028Reload TempUntil warmup (reload) ends. [70~180/1 deg.]029Wait Temp:NormAt normal standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]			[130~200/1 deg.]
Image: Constraint of the stand s		PressRoll	Pressure Roller
Image: Constraint of the stand s	028	Reload Temp	Until warmup (reload) ends.
Image: Second			[70~180/1 deg.]
030Wait:Temp:LowAt low standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature.	029	Wait Temp:Norm	At normal standby temperature.
Image: Second			[50~180/1 deg.]
031Wait:Temp:HighAt hight standby temperature. [50~180/1 deg.]0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature.	030	Wait:Temp:Low	At low standby temperature.
Image: Solution of the sector of the secto			[50~180/1 deg.]
0321-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature.	031	Wait:Temp:High	At hight standby temperature.
Image: Construct of the construction[70~180/1 deg.]0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036HotRollHot Roller036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature.			[50~180/1 deg.]
0332-S NormTarget temperature. [70~180/1 deg.]034Cont OHPDuring continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]035SemiT OHP:100mm/sTarget temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]036HotRollHot Roller036Wait Temp: NormNormal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature.	032	1-S Norm	Target temperature.
Image: 100 of the image: 100 of			[70~180/1 deg.]
034       Cont OHP       During continuous OHP copying. [130~200/1 deg.]         035       SemiT OHP:100mm/s       Target temperature (paper setting). [70~180/1 deg.]         036       HotRoll       Hot Roller         036       Wait Temp: Norm       Normal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]         037       Wait Temp: Low       Low standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]         038       Wait Temp: High       High standby temperature.	033	2-S Norm	Target temperature.
Image: 130~200/1 deg.]         035       SemiT OHP:100mm/s         Target temperature (paper setting).         [70~180/1 deg.]         HotRoll       Hot Roller         036       Wait Temp: Norm         Normal standby temperature.         [50~170/1 deg.]         037       Wait Temp: Low         Low standby temperature.         [50~170/1 deg.]         038       Wait Temp: High			[70~180/1 deg.]
Image: 130~200/1 deg.]         035       SemiT OHP:100mm/s         Target temperature (paper setting).         [70~180/1 deg.]         HotRoll       Hot Roller         036       Wait Temp: Norm         Normal standby temperature.         [50~170/1 deg.]         037       Wait Temp: Low         Low standby temperature.         [50~170/1 deg.]         038       Wait Temp: High	034	Cont OHP	During continuous OHP copying.
[70~180/1 deg.]         HotRoll       Hot Roller         036       Wait Temp: Norm       Normal standby temperature.         [50~170/1 deg.]       Low standby temperature.         037       Wait Temp: Low       Low standby temperature.         [50~170/1 deg.]       1000000000000000000000000000000000000			
HotRoll     Hot Roller       036     Wait Temp: Norm     Normal standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]       037     Wait Temp: Low     Low standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]       038     Wait Temp: High     High standby temperature.	035	SemiT OHP:100mm/s	Target temperature (paper setting).
036       Wait Temp: Norm       Normal standby temperature.         [50~170/1 deg.]       [50~170/1 deg.]         037       Wait Temp: Low       Low standby temperature.         [50~170/1 deg.]       [50~170/1 deg.]         038       Wait Temp: High       High standby temperature.			[70~180/1 deg.]
037     Wait Temp: Low     [50~170/1 deg.]       038     Wait Temp: High     High standby temperature.		HotRoll	
037Wait Temp: LowLow standby temperature. [50~170/1 deg.]038Wait Temp: HighHigh standby temperature.	036	Wait Temp: Norm	Normal standby temperature.
[50~170/1 deg.]       038     Wait Temp: High       High standby temperature.			[50~170/1 deg.]
038 Wait Temp: High High standby temperature.	037	Wait Temp: Low	Low standby temperature.
	038	Wait Temp: High	High standby temperature.

1106	Fusing Temp Disp	Fusing Lamp Control Method/Temperature Display
	These SP codes control the temperature control of the hot roller and display the	
		t roller, pressure roller, heating roller, and heating roller
	lamps.	
001	Temp Ctrl On/Off	Hot roller fusing lamp control switch
		0: OFF, <b>1: PID</b>
002	Phase Ctrl On/Off	Hot roller phase control
		0:OFF 1:ON
003	Htg Roll Ctr Temp	Displays the temperature in centigrade of the fusing lamp (center) in the heating roller. Range: 0 to 230
004	Htg Roll End Temp	Displays the temperature in centigrade of the fusing lamp (ends) in the heating roller. Range: 0 to 230
005	Press Roll Temp	Displays the temperature in centigrade of the pressure roller. Range: 0 to 230
006	Hot Roll Temp	Displays the temperature in centigrade of the hot roller. Range: 0 to 230

1107	Mode Shift Setting	Mode Shift Setting
	Mode Shift	Mode Shift Setting
001	Low Temp SW	The calculated value for the specified temperatures when the readings of the environmental sensors are low. [0~20/1 deg.]
002	High Temp SW	The calculated value for the specified temperatures when the readings of the environmental sensors are high. [-20~0/1 deg.]
003	Pres Roll Reload	Press Roll Reload
004	Idle Temp On/Off	The hot roller temperature that determines whether the fusing unit rollers are rotated freely during warmup. [80~200/1 deg.]
005	Idle Time:Extend	The length of time the fusing/exit motor remains on after the fusing unit has reached the warmup temperature. [0~10/1 min.]
006	Feed Norm Temp	Determines whether fusing exit motor remains before feeding plain paper after warmup temperature for the heating roller has been reached. <b>0: No</b> 1: Yes
007	Press Temp:Norm	The temperature calculated for the specified temperature when the fusing/exit motor starts to rotate when plain paper starts to feed. [0~20/1 deg.]
008	Press Time:Norm	The time calculated to be added to the rotation time of the fusing/exit motor at the start of plain paper feed, based on the temperature specified temperature.
009	Fuse Exit M Cycles	The cycles of the fusing/exit motor at standby. [10~240/1 min.]
010	Fuse Exit M Rot	The time the fusing exit motor rotates at standby. [0~1/1]

011	Fuse Exit Temp	The temperature used to calculate the temperature specified for the hot roller at the end of fusing/exit motor rotation when the warmup temperature has been reached. [0~30/1 deg.]
012	Add Rot Time	The amount of time added to the rotation time of the fusing/exit motor after warmup temperture has been reached, based on the temperature specified for the hot roller at standby. [0~90/10]
	Stand Cool On/Off	Standby Ventilation Cooling: On/Off
013	Thk2 (0:Off 1:On)	Switches on/off standby for cooling after printing thick paper. <b>0: Off</b> 1: On
	To Cooling Mode	Standby Ventilation Cooling: Setting
014	Thk2/OHP Cool End	Sets the temperature to end the cool down period after printing with thick paper or OHP. [0~40/1 deg.]
015	Trace Cool End	Sets the temperature to end the cool down period after printing with tracing (thin) paper. [0~40/1 deg.]
	Edge Cool On/Off	Standby Ventilation Cooling: On/Off High Edge Temp.
016	Start (0:No 1:Yes)	Switches on/off standby for cooling for the ends of the fusing rollers after printing on wide paper. <b>0: Off</b> 1: On

1108	Htg Roll Lamp 1	Heating Roller: Fusing Lamps
		the power (percentage) supplied to the heating rollers (Watts)
		s in the specified mode.
	At Reload	During warmup after the machine is switched or returns from
		and energy save mode.
	Wait Time	While the machine is in the standby mode and ready for
	Norm:1C	operation.
	Norm:FC	Normal operation for black-and-white copying and printing. Normal operation for full color copying and printing
	Scan:Norm:1C	Black-and-white scanning.
	Scan:Norm:FC	Full color scanning.
	At ProCon Reload	Reload temperature after completing the process control
		cycle.
	Heating Roller: Fus	5
001	At Reload	[ 0~100 / <b>100</b> /0.1%]
002	Wait Time	
003	Norm:1C	
004	Norm:FC	
	Heating Roller: Fus	
005	Wait Time	[ 0~1000 /0.1%]
	Norm:1C	[ 0~1000 / <b>1000</b> /0.1%]
007	Scan:Norm:1C	[ 0~100 /0.1%]
	Norm:FC	
009	Scan:Norm:FC	[ 0~1000 /0.1%]
	Pressure Roller Fu	
010	At Reload	[ 0~100 / <b>100</b> /0.1%]
011	At ProCon Reload	[ 0~100 /0.1%]
012	Wait Time	[ 0~100 / <b>100</b> /0.1%]
013	Norm:1C	
014	Norm:FC	
	Hot Roller Fusing I	
015	At Reload	[ 0~100 / <b>100</b> /0.1%]
016	Wait Time	
	Heating Roller: Fus	
017	At Reload	[ 0~100 / <b>100</b> /0.1%]

1110	Paper Type Selet	Paper Type Select
	-	s switch the on/off the paper type type detection and double-feed
	functions.	
	[0~1/1]	
	0: Enable	
	1: Disable	
	Two sensors, one mounted above and one below the paper at the registration rollers, detect the opacity of the first sheet and compares this reading for every subsequent sheet. If the reading is higher (thicker paper) or lower (thinner paper)	
	the sensor trigger	s an error.
004	Paper Type	
001	Tray 1	
002	Tray 2	
003	Tray 3	
004	Tray 4	Japan Only
005	Bypass	
006	LCT	
	Double-Feed	
007	Tray 1	
008	Tray 2	
009	Tray 3	
010	Tray 4	Japan Only
011	Bypass	
002	LCT	

1111	Nip Width Mode	Nip Width Measurement Setting Mode
001	Execute	Determines whether the nip at the hot roller and pressure roller is calibrated. Touch [Execute].
002	Stop Time	Determines the down time of the fusing/exit motor in the fusing nip band calibration mode. [1~100/1 sec.]
003	Stop Interval	Determines the intervals between the down times of the fusing/exit motor in the nip band calibration mode. [0~2000/100 msec.]

1112	Fuser Unit In/Out	Fusing Unit: In/Out – Start Fusing Unit
	Determines whether th creation and paper fee 0:OFF, <b>1:ON</b>	e fusing unit operates during the copy cycle for image d.

1200	1st CMP Down	
		nperature of the heating roller at the start of the CMP down
		hite copying in normal/high temperature environments.
	1st CPM Down	1st CMP Down (Heating Roller Temperature)
001	StrTemp:Low/Hi:1C	Normal temperature, high temperature environment
002	StrTemp:Low/Hi:FC	[–20~0/1 deg.]
003	StrTemp:Low:1C	Low temperature environment
004	StrTemp:Low:FC	[–20~0/1 deg.]
005	CPM Norm/Hi:1C	Normal, high temperature environment, A4 SEF [10~60/5 cpm]
006	CPM Norm/Hi:FC	Normal, high temperature environment, A4 SEF [10~60/5 cpm]
007	CPM Low Temp:1C	Low temperature environment, A4 SEF [10~60/5 cpm]
800	CPM Low Temp:FC	Low temperature environment, A4 SEF [10~60/5 cpm]
	2nd CPM Down	2nd CPM Down
009	CPM Norm/Hi:1C	Normal, high temperature environment, A4 SEF [10~60/5 cpm]
010	CPM Norm/Hi:FC	Normal, high temperature environment, A4 SEF [10~60/5 cpm]
011	CPM Low:1C	Low temperature environment, A4 SEF [10~60/5 cpm]
012	CPM Low:FC	Low temperature environment, A4 SEF [10~60/5 cpm]
	3rd CPM Down:Thk	3rd CPM Down: Thick Paper
013	1C:60/45/30cpm	CPM down settings (based on A4 SEF) for black and white. [0~4/1]
014		<b>0</b> : 60 cpm 1 : 50 cpm 2 : 45 cpm 3 : 30 cpm)
014	FC:45/25/15cpm	CPM down settings (based on A4 SEF) for full color. [0~4/1]
		<b>0</b> : 60 cpm 1 : 50 cpm 2 : 45 cpm 3 : 30 cpm)
015	(0:Yes 1:No)	Switches the CPM down feature on/off <b>0:OFF</b> 1:ON

1201	HtgRoll L2:Hys	Heating Roller 2: Hysterisis On/Off
		ntrol temperature of the heating roller when Lamp 2 in the
	heating roller is switche	ed on.
001	On	[-5~+5.0/0.5]
		Note: Every "0.1" increment adjusts temperature "0.1 deg."
002	Off	Switches off Lamp 2, no adjust allowed.

1202	Set Fusing Temp	Set Fusing Temperature (for shift to low power mode)
	This SP sets the time in	nterval for the machine to remain idle to trigger lower power
	mode 1.	
	Set Fusing Temp	
001	EngSave Time 1	[0~60/1 deg.]
002	EngSave Time 2	
003	EngSave Time 3	
	Heating Roller	
004	Energy Save 1	
005	Energy Save 2	
006	Energy Save 3	
	Pressure Roller	
007	Energy Save 1	
008	Energy Save 2	
009	Energy Save 3	
	Hot Roller	
010	Energy Save 1	
011	Energy Save 2	
012	Energy Save 3	

1203	Fusing:I/O	Fusing Input/Output
	This SP adjusts the op	peration of the fusing exit sensor.
001	FuseExitSn:On/Off	Display indicates whether the fusing exit sensor is on or off.
		0: OFF 1:ON
002	FuseExitSn Timing	Displays the time interval from when the registration motor
		goes off to when it restarts.
		[0~5000/1 msec.]
003	FuseExitSn ON	Display indicates whether the fusing paper remains sensor is
		on or off.
		[0~5000/1 msec.]
004	FuseExitSn Disp	Dsiplays whether the paper remains sensor is on or off from
		when the registration motor goes off until it restarts.
		0: OFF 1:ON
005	FuseExit M ON	Switches forced rotation of the fusing/exit motor on/off.
		[0~1/1]

1901	CPM Down:Thk	CPM Down Mode: Thick Paper
	This SP adjusts the CI	PM down time for thick paper and tab sheets.
001	CPM Down:Thk	Special CPM Down Setting: Thick Paper
		[0~4/1]
002	CPM Down:Tab	Special CPM Down Setting: Index Tabs
		[0~4/1]

1905	Bypass Thk	Bypass Tray: Thick Paper
		e thick paper mode on and off for thick paper and index sheet
	feed from the bypas	ss tray.
001	0:No 1:Yes	Bypass Feed: Thick Paper Mode
		Switches the thick paper mode on/off for feed from the bypass tray.
		0:OFF 1:ON
002	0:No 1:Yes	Bypass Feed: Thick Paper Mode Switches the thick paper mode on/off for feed of index sheets from the bypass tray. <b>0:OFF</b> 1:ON

## Group 2000

2101	Reg Col Interval	Color Interval Registration Adjustment		
		problems with color registration. Color registration		
	problems can be detected by checking the results of 2901 002 Pattern 1. Before			
		try to solve the problem by doing SP2111. For more, see		
001	Section "4. Troubleshootin Main Scan Dot:K	<u> </u>		
001		[-99~+99/1 dot]		
002	Main Scan Dot:M			
003	Main Scan Dot:C			
004	Main Scan Dot:Y			
005	MainScan Dot:K	[-31~+31/1 sub dot]		
006	MainScan Dot:K-M			
007	MainScan Dot:K-C			
008	MainScan Dot:K-Y			
009	MainScan Dot:K 0-1	[-63~+63/1 line]		
010	MainScan Dot:M 0-1			
011	MainScan Dot:C 0-1			
012	MainScan Dot:Y 0-1			
013	SubScan Line:K-M	[-63~+63/1 sub dot]		
014	SubScan Line:K-C			
015	SubScan Line:K-Y			
016	SubScan M Adj:K-M	[-33~+33/ 1 step]		
017	SubScan M Adj:K-C			
018	SubScan M Adj:K-Y			

2102	Prt Mag Adj	Print Magnification Adjustment
	No information is available	e at this time.
001	Main Scan Mag	[-100~+100/0.01%]
005	Mag Rate:K 0-1	[-63~+63/1 sub dot]
006	Mag Rate:M 0-1	
007	Mag Rate:C 0-1	
800	Mag Rate:Y 0-1	

2103	Prt Erase Margin	Print Erase Width Adjustment
	Adjusts the white space	at the leading edge.
001	Adj LEdge Margin	[-50~+50/0.1 mm]
002	Adj TEdge Margin	[-20+20/1 mm]
003	Adj Left Margin	
004	Adj Right Margin	
005	TEdge Margin:Tra	[0~20/0.1 mm]

2104	Skew Adj	Skew A	Skew Adjustment		
		lse these SP to correct skew in color registration. For more, see Section "4. roubleshooting".			
001	Skew Adj	K-M	[-75~+75/1 pulse]		
002	Skew Adj	K-C [-50~+50/1 pulse]			
003	Test Pattern	K-Y	[-75~+75/1 pulse]		

#### SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

2105	LD Syn	PM Adj	LD Pulse Modulation Synchronization Adjustment
	No info	mation is avail	able at this time.
001	K0	[-117~127/]	
002	M0		
003	C0		
004	Y0		
005	K1		
006	M1		
007	C1		
008	Y1		

2106 Poly Mi	Poly Mtr OFF Polygon Motor Off Setting	
	d in this SP mode a	rns off if the machine receives no print job for the time ter the previous job was completed.

2107	Prt Param On/Off	Printer Parameter Settings: On/Off
	No information is availat	ble at this time.
005	Shade Corr Flag	[0~1/1]
006	Phase Ctrl Flage	

2108	Col P	rt Stop	Specify Color to Stop Printing		
	This S	This SP switches off printing of a color.			
001	К	[0~1/1]	0:Off (Color prints), 1:On (Color does not print)		
002	Μ				
003	С				
004	Y				

2109	Test	t Pattern	Write Test Patte	ern		]
					copy image adjustments but most are used	
			gn testing. These		atterns do not use the IPU.	
001					"1" to have the patterns selected with	
					09 002 print overlapped on one another.	
000	0.1			-	] 0:Off, 1:On	-
002	Sele	ect Pattern			you to select the pattern to print.	
	•	Off		[0~21/ <b>14</b>	IJ Horizontal Cross-Stitch	-
	0 1	1-Dot Line		14		-
			Croco String	15	Crop Marks Vertical Belt	-
	2 3	2-Dot Sian	Cross-Stripe	17	Checkered Flag	-
	3 4	2-Dot Horiz		17	1-Dot 20 mm Grid	-
	4 5	1-Dot Verti		10	1-Dot 20 mm Slant Grid	-
	5 6	1-Dot Horiz		20		-
	о 7	1-Dot Verti		20	Horizontal Grayscale Horizontal Grayscale-White Stripes	-
	7 8	2-Dot Indep		21	Not Used	-
	0 9	4-Dot Indep		22	Not Used	4
	9 10	Trim Area	Dendent	23	Not Used	4
	11	Belt Patteri	2	25	Not Used	-
	12	100% Cove		26	Not Used	-
	13			20	Not Used	-
004	13 Vertical Cross-Stitch Col Select:YCMK			[0~255		-
005	Density:K			[0~63/	-	
006		sity:M		10 00,	.]	ice es
007		sity:C				Service Tables
008		sity:Y				ST
011		/ Density 1		[0~63/	11	-
012	•	/ Density 2			•	
013		/ Density 3		1		
014		/ Density 4		1		
015	•	/ Density 5		1		
016	Gray	/ Density 6		-		
017	Gray	/ Density 7				
018	Gray Density 8					
019	Gray Density 9					
020	Gray	/ Density 10		1		
021	Gray	/ Density 11		]		
022	Gray	/ Density 12		]		
023	•	y Density 13		]		
024	•	/ Density 14				
025	Gray	/ Density 15				

2110	Force Tnr Cycle	Force Toner Supply Cycle
001	Forces 2-Point interval correction.	

2111	Force Tnr Pos	Force Toner Position Alignment		
	Executes the MUSIC feature. MUSIC is the "Mirror Unit for Skew and Interval Correction". Three MUSIC sensors mounted above the ITB read three MUSIC sensor patterns developed on the ITB. The sensors read the patterns and the machine uses this feedback to adjust 1) the positions of the 3rd scanner mirrors to correct skew (main scan), and 2) the speed of the drum motors to correct the intervals (sub scan) between the patterns. If the vertical alignment of the patterns or the intervals are not correct, this causes color offset. This adjustment is done for each color (Y, M, C, K).			
	Normally, MUSIC exe	Normally, MUSIC executes automatically:		
	<ul> <li>When the machine is turned on or returns from an energy save mode.</li> <li>At the interval prescribed by SP2153 015 (Default: 8 min.)</li> <li>After completion of the process control cycle.</li> <li>When the machine receives a job after remaining idle for a long period.</li> <li>After the fusing unit exceeds the prescribed temperature.</li> </ul>			

2112	Mag Point	t Adj	Maginification Point Adjustment			
	Corrects th	Corrects the difference in magnification for each color in the left and right direction.				
	[-4~+4/1 (5	50μm)]				
	scaled lupe	Do SP2109 002 and print Pattern 1 on A3 size paper. Examine the pattern with a scaled lupe. For every 50µm adjust the setting in the left or right direction. A 1 step correction corrects 50µm. For more, see Section "4. Troubleshooting".				
001	M Left					
002	M Right					
003	C Left					
004	C Right					
005	Y Left					
006	Y Right					

2150	Prt Area Pulse	Pulse Setting: Print Area Only <b>DFU</b>
		nagnification in the main scan direction in increments
	of 1/32 dots.	
001-010	K Area 0 – Area 9	[-120~+120/32 sub dot]
011-020	M Area0 – Area 9	
021 - 029	C Area0 – Area 9	
031 - 040	Y Area0 – Area 9	

Ξ

2151	Prt Area Coeff	Coeffici	ent Sett	ing: Print Area Only	DFU
	These SPs adju	ust the magnifica	tion coe	efficient for each col	or in these areas:
	Mid Area 0-3				
	• Small Area <sup>2</sup>	1-3			
	Small Area 8	5-8			
001	K MidArea0	[1~99/0.01]	021	C MidArea0	[1~99/0.01]
002	K MidArea3		022	C MidArea3	
003	K SmallArea1	[1~99/0.01]	023	C SmallArea1	[1~99/0.01]
004	K SmallArea2		024	C SmallArea2	
005	K SmallArea3		025	C SmallArea3	
006	K SmallArea6		026	C SmallArea6	
007	K SmallArea7		027	C SmallArea7	
008	K SmallArea8		028	C SmallArea8	
011	M MidArea0	[1~99/0.01]	031	Y MidArea0	[1~99/0.01]
012	M MidArea3		032	Y MidArea3	
013	M SmallArea1	[1~99/0.01]	033	Y SmallArea1	[1~99/0.01]
014	M SmallArea2		034	Y SmallArea2	
015	M SmallArea3		035	Y SmallArea3	
016	M SmallArea6		036	Y SmallArea6	
017	M SmallArea7		037	Y SmallArea7	
018	M SmallArea8		038	Y SmallArea8	

2152	Shading Coeff	Shading Correction Coefficient DFU
		he shading correction coefficient for Areas 01 to 19 for each of the ranges and default settings, print the SMC report with
001 - 019	K Area01 - Area1	19
021 -039	M Area01 - Area	19
041 - 058	C Area01 - Area1	19
061 - 079	Y Area01 - Area1	19

2153	MUSIC Settings	MUSIC Condition Settings
	These SPs determine how MUSIC executes.	
	In the settings below 0:	On, 1:Off.
001	Auto Execute	Sets MUSIC to execute automatically.
		[0~1/1]
002	During ProCon	Sets MUSIC to execute after completion of the process
		control self-check.
		[0~1/1]
003	Initialization	Sets MUSIC to execute after the machine is switched on.
		[0~1/1]
004	During Data In	Sets MUSIC to execute before image data output.
		[0~1/1]
005	Writing	Sets MUSIC to execute during long print jobs.
		[0~1/1]
		Note: Use SP2153 010 to set the number of pages
		between MUSIC executions (Default: 100 pages).

	<b>_</b>	
007	PaperInt:2Pt Meas	Sets MUSIC to execute with 2-point measurement of image page intervals.
		[0~1/1]
008	JobInt:2Pt Meas	Sets MUSIC to execute with 2-point measurements
		immediately before image output.
		[0~1/1]
010	Interrupt Int	Sets the page interval beween MUSIC executions during
010	interrupt int	
		long jobs print jobs.
		[10~300/1 page]
		Note: This SP is effective only when SP2153 005 is
		switched on.
012	MUSIC:Temp Chg	Prescribes the exposure unit temperature change at which
012	meere remp eng	MUSIC executes at the start of a job.
		[1~300/0.1 deg]
013	MUSIC:2Pt TempChg	Sets MUSIC to execute with 2-point measurement of the
		room temperature change.
		[1~300/0.1 deg]
014	MUSIC Density Lvl	Sets the density of the MUSIC test patterns. Note that the
014		
		default is set at the maximum setting.
		[0~63/1]
015	Door Open:Wait	Sets the time interval for MUSIC to execute after the front
		door is opened and then closed to remove a paper jam or
		perform some other task.
		[2~99/1 min.]
010	Clear Main Slin	
016	Clear Main Slip	Clears the skew correction amount for MUSIC in the main
		scan direction.
		[0~1/1]
020	Sensor Light 1	Sets the light intensity of MUSIC sensor 1.
	_	[0~65535/1]
021	Sensor Light 2	Sets the light intensity of MUSIC sensor 2.
021	Censor Light 2	[0~65535/1]
022	Sensor Light 3	Sets the light intensity of MUSIC sensor 3.
		[0~65535/1]
023	AutoLight:PreAdj	Executes automatic adjustment of the light emitted from
-	<b>2</b> - <b>1</b>	the MUSIC sensors.
		[0~1/1]
0.05	AdiCooff From 1/f	
025	AdjCoeff:FrontKf	Sets the value of the coefficient of the front MUSIC
		sensor.
		[0~100/0.1]
026	AdjCoeff:CtrKc	Sets the value of the coefficient for the center MUSIC
	-	sensor.
		[0~100/0.1]
007	AdiCooff Doorkr	Sets the value of the coefficient of the center MUSIC
027	AdjCoeff:RearKr	
		sensor.
		[0~100/0.1]
028	Min Patch Fine	Sets the minimum amount of patch shift for MUSIC fine
0_0		adjustment.
		-
		[0~100/0.1]
029	Min Patch:Rough	Sets the minimum amount of patch shift for MUSIC rough
		adjustment.
		[0~100/0.1]
		l · · · J

030	CMY:LowMin.	No information is available at this time. [0~50/0.1V]
004		
031	CMY:MidMin.	No information is available at this time.
		[0~50/0.1V]
032	Base MaxDiff	No information is available at this time.
		[0~50/0.1V]
033	Patch Mini Gap	No information is available at this time.
	·	[0~50/0.1V]
034	Light Target Adj	Sets the target value for the intensity of the MUSIC sensor
		lights.
		[0~50/0.1V]
035	MY Light Max	Sets the maximum value for the intensity of the MUSIC
		sensor lights.
		[0~255/0.1V]
036	Add Upper Limit	No information is available at this time.
037	Add Lower Limit	
038	LaserX:FrontXf	
039	LaserX:CenterXc	
040	LaserX: RearXr	
041	LaserX: TempCoeff	

2154	2-Point	Target	2-Point Interval Target Setting
			ings done at the factory affect the characteristics of the
	lenses. These target values must be entered when when the laser unit is replaced.		
	The correct settings are printed below the first barcode on one A5 sheet of paper		
	provided with the replacement laser unit.		
001	K	[60700~63230/	<b>61984</b> /1]
002	М		
003	С		
004	Y		

2155	2-Point Int Set	2-Point Interval Target Setting DFU	
	These SPs adjust the difference in the position of color registration for MUSIC in the main scan direction, using K (black) as the reference point.		
	Do SP2109 002 and print Pattern 1 on A3 size paper. Examine the pattern with a scaled lupe. For every 43.2µm adjust the setting in the left or right direction. A 1 step correction corrects 50µm. For more, please refer to Section "3. Replacement and Adjustment".		
001	M Main Scan	[-5~+5/1 (43.2μm)	
002	2 C Main Scan		
003	Y Main Scan		

2180	Lens Temp	Lens Temperature Monitor
	These SPs display the m	neasured temperatures of the optical lenses for each color.
001	M-K	Displays the measured temperature of the magenta and black lenses (in the laser optics). [0~999/0.1 deg]
002	Y-C	Displays the measured temperature of the yellow and cyan lenses (in the laser optics). [0~999/0.1 deg]

2181	Alignment Result	Position Alignment Result
		mount of shift correction for each color, the amount of sensor in both the main scan and sub scan direction.
001	M Skew Amt	The amount of skew correction for magenta.
002	M Main Skew 1	Amount of shift correction for magenta in the main scan direction at sensor 1.
003	M Main Skew 2	Amount of shift correction for magenta in the main scan direction at sensor 2.
004	M Main Skew 3	Amount of shift correction for magenta in the main scan direction at sensor 3.
005	M Sub Skew 1	Amount of shift correction for magenta in the sub scan direction at sensor 1.
006	M Sub Skew 2	Amount of shift correction for magenta in the sub scan direction at sensor 2.
007	M Sub Skew 3	Amount of shift correction for magenta in the sub scan direction at sensor 3.
011	C Skew Amt	The amount of skew correction for cyan.
012	C Main Skew 1	Amount of shift correction for cyan in the main scan direction at sensor 1.
013	C Main Skew 2	Amount of shift correction for cyan in the main scan direction at sensor 2.
014	C Main Skew 3	Amount of shift correction for cyan in the main scan direction at sensor 3.
015	C Sub Skew 1	Amount of shift correction for cyan in the sub scan direction at sensor 1.
016	C Sub Skew 2	Amount of shift correction for cyan in the sub scan direction at sensor 2.
017	C Sub Skew 3	Amount of shift correction for cyan in the sub scan direction at sensor 3.
021	Y Skew Amt	The amount of skew correction for yellow.
022	Y Main Skew 1	Amount of shift correction for yellow in the main scan direction at sensor 1.
023	Y Main Skew 2	Amount of shift correction for yellow in the main scan direction at sensor 2.
024	Y Main Skew 3	Amount of shift correction for yellow in the main scan direction at sensor 3.
025	Y Sub Skew 1	Amount of shift correction for yellow in the sub scan direction at sensor 1.
026	Y Sub Skew 2	Amount of shift correction for yellow in the sub scan direction at sensor 2.

#### SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

027	Y Sub Skew 3	Amount of shift correction for yellow in the sub scan direction at sensor 3.
030	MUSIC Result	Displays the result of MUSIC adjustment

2182	Skew Cori	r Total	Skew Correction Total
	These SPs	display the to	otal skew correction for magenta, cyan, and yellow.
001	М	[-50~+50/1 p	oulse]
002	С	[-33~+33/1 pulse]	
003	Y	[-50~+50/1 p	oulse]

2183	2-Point Measure	2-Point Interval Measurement Monitor
	These SPs allow you to s	set the focal points for the execution of 2-point
	measurement of each co	lor.
001	Focus Value:K	[-100~+100/0.01%]
002	Focus Value:M	
003	Focus Value:C	
004	Focus Value:Y	

2201	Set DC Charge	Fixed DC Charge Setting
	effect only when SP3 is set to +200, making normally adjusted by	bias for the standard speed and low speed mode, but take 501 001 is set to "1" (Fixed). The dc bias (an absolute value) the default values for each color –700. The dc bias is the process control self-check, but when automatic process (by setting SP3501 001 to "1"), these values are used for the
001	Std Speed:K	[-999 to -200/1V]
002	Std Speed:M	
003	Std Speed: C	
004	Std Speed: Y	
006	Low Speed:K	
007	Low Speed: M	
008	Low Speed: C	
009	Low Speed: Y	

2202	Set AC Charge	Fixed DC Charge Setting
		as for the standard speed mode and low speed mode,
		SP3501 001 is set to "1" (Fixed). The default ac bias for
	each color is 2.2 kV (220) The ac bias is normally adjusted by process control	
	-	omatic process control is switched off (by setting SP3501
	001 to "1"), these values	are used for the charge potential.
001	Std Speed: K	[0~300/1 kV]
002	Std Speed: M	
003	Std Speed: C	
004	Std Speed: Y	
006	Low Speed: K	
007	Low Speed: M	
008	Low Speed: C	
009	Low Speed: Y	

2204	AC Charge Corr	AC Charge: Setting for Ambient Correction
	These SPs adjust the target ac current for each operating environment (LL, ML, etc.). The process control self-check adjusts the ac current to achieve the target voltage. SP2901 003 (PCU) displays the most recent absolute temperature. If the auto process control self-check fails to achieve the threshold value, then the target	
001	selected with these SPs	
001	Ū.	[100~350/0 mA]
	LL:Target:M	
003	5	
004	LL:Target:Y	
006	ML:Target:K	
007	ML:Target:M	
800	ML:Target:C	
009	ML:Target:Y	
011	MM:Target:K	
012	MM:Target:M	
013	MM:Target:C	
014	MM:Target:Y	
016	MH:Target:K	
017	MH:Target:M	
018	MH:Target:C	
019	MH:Target:Y	
021	HH:Target:K	
022	HH:Target:M	
023	HH:Target:C	
024	HH:Target:Y	

2211	Set LD Power LD Power: Fixed Setting	
	These SPs set the power levels of the laser diodes in the exposure unit for the standard speed mode and low speed mode for each color, but take effect only when SP3501 001 is set to "1" (Fixed). With the setting at "0" the LD output is 100%. This can be adjusted in the range –117 to +127 (44% to 160%). The "0" setting is equivalent to 0.171 mW exposed on the surface of the drum. The LD power level is normally adjusted during the process control self-check. These values are used only when automatic process control is switched off (by setting SP3501 001 to "1").	
001	Std Speed:K	[-117~+127/1]
002	Std Speed:M	
003	Std Speed:C	
004	Std Speed:Y	
005	Low Speed:K	[-117~+127/1]
006	Low Speed:M	
007	Low Speed:C	
008	Low Speed:Y	

2212	Set Dev DC	Development DC: Fixed Setting	
	These SPs set the development dc bias for the standard speed mode and low speed mode for each color, but take effect only when SP3501 001 is set to "1" (Fixed). The dc development bias (absolute value) is set to –200 V, and the default for each color is set to –500 V. These values are used only when automatic process control is switched off (by setting SP3501 001 to "1").		
001	Std Speed:K	[-800~0/1 V]	
002	Std Speed:M		
003	Std Speed:C		
004	Std Speed:Y		
005	Low Speed:K	[-800~0/1 V]	
006	Low Speed:M		
007	Low Speed:C		
008	Low Speed:Y		

2251	Force Tnr Supply         Forced Toner Supply: Manual Execution		
	Use SPs to increase manually the supply of toner to the sub hopper of the development unit to determine if toner supply is abnormal or to recover normal operation of a color toner supply when image density becomes light. After you touch "Execute" the toner supply switches on for 0.1 sec. and then off for 0.45 sec. four times for the select color or colors.		
001	Execute:K	Executes forced toner supply to the selected	
002	Execute:M	development unit.	
003	Execute:C	[0~1/1]	
004	Execute:Y		
005	Execute:Col	Executes forced toner supply to the Y, M, C development units only. [0~1/1]	
006	Execute:All Col	Executes forced toner supply to all development units (Y, M, C, K). [0~1/1]	

2252	Set Tnr Supply	Forced Toner Supply: Setting
	Use these SPs to adjust the number of rotations done by the toner supply clutch when SP2251 001~006 is executed manually. The number of toner supply cluth rotations can be adjusted for each color. A high setting increases the number of rotations and increases the amount of toner supply to the development unit, resulting in a darker image for the selected color.	
001	Supply Times:K	[0~30/1]
002	Supply Times:M	
003	Supply Times:C	
004	Supply Times:Y	

2253	Manual Tnr Fill Manually Fill Development Unit Sub Hoppers		
	Use SPs to increase manually the supply of toner to the sub hopper of the development unit to determine if toner supply is abnormal or to recover normal operation of a color toner supply when image density becomes light. After you		
	touch "Execute" the toner supply cluth switches on for 2 sec. and then off for 0.1 sec. to fill the sub hopper of the development unit. This on/off sequence is repeated up to 20 times or until the toner end sensor detects that toner is present in the sub hopper.		
001	Execute:K	Executes forced filling of the selected development unit.	
002	Execute:M	[0~1/1]	
003	Execute:C		
004	Execute:Y		
005	Execute:Col	Executes forced filling of the Y, M, C development units only. [0~1/1]	
006	Execute:All Col	Executes forced filling of all development units (Y, M, C, K). [0~1/1]	

2260	Pot.Sn Check	Potential Sensor Check
	This SP executes a check of all or one selected potential sensor.	
001	All Colors	Select and touch "Execute".
002	К	Display the results with SP2261 001 to 012
003	Μ	
004	С	
005	Y	

2261	Pot.Sn Chk Disp		Potential Sensor Check Results Display
	Displays results of the p		otential sensor check executed with 2260.
001	Vd:K	007	Vr:C
002	Vd:M	008	Vr:Y
003	Vd:C	009	Voffset:K
004	Vd:Y	010	Voffset:M
005	Vr:K	011	Voffset:C
006	Vr:M	012	Voffset:Y

#### Notes for SP2261

Reading	Definition	Abnormal Reading
Vd	Charge bias (Cdc). This is the output of the potential sensor after –700V is applied to the drum. Range: -500 to –700 V	<ul><li>If the reading is out of range:</li><li>Potential sensor damaged</li><li>Charge unit malfunction</li></ul>
Vr	Residual voltage. This is the output of	Charge power pack malfunction     If above –200V:
	the potential sensor after the LD fires at full power. Normal: -200 V	<ul> <li>Drum deteriorated</li> <li>Toner shield glass dirty</li> <li>Potential sensor out of position</li> </ul>
Voffset	This is the reading of the potential sensor with no charge applied to the drum. Normal: 0±10V	<ul><li>If reading is out of range:</li><li>Potential sensor dirty</li><li>Potential sensor out of position</li></ul>

2262	TD Sn Chk	TD (toner density) Sensor Check Execution				
	This SP executes	This SP executes a check of all or one selected TD sensor.				
001	All Colors	Select and touch "Execute".				
002	K	Display the results with SP2663 001 to 004				
003	М					
004	С					
005	Y					

2263	TD Sn Chk Disp	Disp Toner Density Sensor Check Execution Display				
	Displays results of 2262. Vt is the most recent output of the TD sensor.					
001	Vt:K					
002	Vt:M					
003	Vt:C					
004	Vt:Y					

2264	ID Sn Chk	ID Sensor Check Execution		
	This SP executes a check of the ID sensors.			
2265	ID Sn Chk Disp			
	Displays the most recent Notes:	ID sensor Vsg and Voffset readings.		
	<ul> <li>Vsg_reg is the reading of the direct sensors in the black and color ID sensors that detect the reflectivity of the bare surface of ITB. If Vsg_reg is less than 3.8V, the ID sensor may be dirty, damaged, or disconnected</li> <li>F (Front) refers to the color ID sensor.</li> <li>R (Rear) refers to the black ID sensor.</li> <li>If Voffset_reg is less greater than 0.15, the ID sensor should be replaced. (The ID sensors are replaced as a unit.)</li> </ul>			
001	Vsg_reg F			
002	Vsg_reg R			
003	Voffset_reg F			
004	Voffset_reg R			

2301	Apply Oil	Not Used

2302	Temp/Humid Disp	Temperature/Humidity Display			
	This SP displays the current temperature and humidity. These readings are output by the temperature humidity display located on the bottom of the machine below the waste toner bottle.				
001	Temp Disp	Room temperature (°C). [0~100/1 deg.]			
002	Rel Humidity Disp	Relative humidity (saturation point at current temperature). [0~100/1 %rh.]			
003	Abs Humidity Disp	Absolute humidity. [0~1000/m <sup>2</sup> ]			
004	Current Env Disp	Displays the current environment control mode. The control modes are divided into 5 levels: LL, ML, MM, MH, HH. These levels are determined by thresholds determined for the other readings of this SP and the reading of the absolute humidity (SP2301 003).			

2303	Force Temp Corr	Force Ambient Temperature Correction DFU	
	The temperature/humidity sensor reading is used to adjust settings during process control when this SP is set to zero (the default). The value of the absolute humidity reading displayed by SP2302 003, as well as the other readings of the conditions around the machine displayed with SP2302, are used in the process control calculations. If you touch any key (1 to 5) below, the value you select is used and the readings of the temperature/humidity sensor are ignored. <b>Note</b> : After you press any key (1 to 5), the setting you select remains in effect only while the machine is in the SP mode. Once you leave the SP mode, this SP is reset to zero automatically.		
	0 Sensor Detect		
	1 LL		
	2 ML		
	3 MM		
	4 MH		
	5 HH		

2304	Set Humid Thresh	Ambient HumidityThreshold Setting			
	Sets the threshold values for the absolute humidity of the current LL and ML setting				
	for the main machine in t	he present environment.			
001	Abs Humid:Thresh1	[0~1000/gm <sup>2</sup> ]			
002	Abs Humid:Thresh2	[0~1000/gm <sup>2</sup> ]			
003	Abs Humid:Thresh3	[0~1000/gm <sup>2</sup> ]			
004	Abs Humid:Thresh4	[0~1000/gm <sup>2</sup> ]			

2306	Vd Link Corr	Vd Link Correction		
	No information is available at this time.			
001	Set	[0~1/1] 0:Off, 1: On		
002	Correction Coeff	[1~250/ <b>100</b> ]		

2307	Set Ptype Link	Paper Type Link Setting			
		ted, these SPs 1) switch the image transfer bias for each			
	color and 2) switch the p	aper transfer and separation bias			
001	Norm	[0~5/1]			
002	Recycled Paper	0: Normal Paper			
003	Special Paper	1: Thick Paper			
004	Color 1	2: OHP			
005	Color 2	3: Special Paper 1 4: Special Paper 2			
006	OHP	5: Special Paper 3			
007	Thick				
008	Letterhead				
009	Tab Sheet				
010	Labels				
011	Preprinted				
012	Prepunched				
013	Bond				
014	Custom 1				
015	Custom 2				
016	Custom 3				

2308	Set Psize Thresh	Set Paper Size Thresholds			
	Sets the correction value	Sets the correction values (Threshold 1, 2, 3, 4) for paper size.			
001	Thresh 1	[0~25-/1 mm]			
002	Thresh 2	[0~25-/1 mm]			
003	Thresh 3	[0~25-/1 mm]			
004	Thresh 4	[0~25-/1 mm]			

2312	Margin K Bias	Margin K Bias: Setting			
	Full Speed: 52 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (normal paper) Half Speed: 128 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> (thick paper)				
005	Full Spd:ITB	Sets the value of image transfer bias for K in the areas of the image where nothing is printed. [0~500/0.1]			
006	Full Spd:PTR	[-100 to –6/1 μa]			
007	Full Spd:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]			
008	Full Spd:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]]			
009	Half Spd:ITB	[0~500/0.1 μa]			
010	Half Spd:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]			
011	Half Spd:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]			
012	Half Spd:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]]			

2313	Margin FC Bias		Margin FC Bias: Setting for K		
	This SP sets the image transfer bias for each in areas of the image where nothing is printed in the full-color mode.				
2314	Set ProCon Bias Process Control: Bias Setting for K				
	This SP sets the ima check.	age transfer bias for ea	ach color during the p	process control self-	
2315	Set MUSIC Bias	MUSIC Bias Set	0		
	This SP sets the image	age transfer bias for ea	ach color during MUS	SIC.	
	Note:				
	-	28 g/m <sup>2</sup> (normal paper)			
	Half Speed: 128 to 2	256 g/m <sup>2</sup> (thick paper)	1		
		2313	2314	2315	
011	Full Spd:ITB:K	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	
012	Full Spd:ITB:M	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	
013	Full Spd:ITB:C	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	
014	Full Spd:ITB:Y	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	
016	Full Spd:PTR	[-6~0/1μa]	[-6~0/1µa]	[-6~0/1µa]	
017	Full Spd:SepDC	[0~100/0.1µa]	[0~100/0.1µa]	[0~100/0.1µa]	
018	Full Spd:SepAC	[80~120/0.1µa]	[70~100/0.1µa]	[80~120/0.1µa]	
020	Half Spd:ITB:K	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	
021	Half Spd:ITB:M	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	
022	Half Spd:ITB:C	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	
023	Half Spd:ITB:Y	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	[0~500/0.1µa]	
025	Half Spd:PTR	[-100~0/1µa]	[-100~0/1µa]	[-100~0/1µa]	
026	Half Spd:SepDC	[0~100/0.1µa]	[0~100/0.1µa]	[0~100/0.1µa]	
027	Half Spd:SepAC	[80~20/0.1kV]	[80~20/0.1kV]	[80~20/0.1kV]	

2316	Pwr On Ja	m Bias	Power On/Jam Recovery: Bias Setting
	Sets the image developr		nent bias to be applied for each color after recovery from a
	paper jam	at power on.	
002	ITB:K	[0 to 50/0.1 µ	JA]
003	ITB:M		
004	ITB:C		
005	ITB:Y		
007	PTR		

2381	Ptype K:LL	Paper Type K: LL
	This SP sets image transfer bias for <u>LL</u> (lowest) speed during <u>black-and-white</u>	
	copying in areas where black is used to develop the image.	
006	Full Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]
011	Half Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]

2382	Ptype K:ML	Paper Type K: ML
	This SP sets image transfer bias for <u>ML</u> (Medium Low) speed <u>during black-and-</u>	
	white copying in areas w	here <u>black</u> is used to develop the image.
006	Full Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]
011	Half Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]

2383	Ptype K:MM	Paper Type K: MM
	This SP sets image transfer bias for <u>MM</u> (Medium) speed during <u>black-and-white</u>	
	copying in areas where black is used to develop the image.	
006	Full Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]
011	Half Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]

2384	Ptype K:MH	Paper Type K:MH
	This SP sets image transfer bias for <u>MH</u> (Medium High) speed <u>during black-and-</u> white copying in areas where <u>black</u> is used to develop the image.	
006	Full Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]
011	Half Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]

2385	Ptype K:HH	Paper Type K:HH
		sfer bias for <u>HH</u> (Highest) speed <u>during black-and-white</u>
	<u>copying</u> in areas where <u>b</u>	black is used to develop the image.
006	Full Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]
011	Half Spd:ITB	[10~250/1%]

2391	Ptype FC:LL	Paper Type FC	:LL		
			e transfer bias for <u>LL</u> (Lowest) speed <u>during full-color copying</u> in		
	areas where eac	<u>ch color</u> is used to d	levelop the image.		
2392	Ptype FC:ML	Paper Type FC	Paper Type FC:ML		
	This SP sets ima	age transfer bias for	transfer bias for ML (Medium Low) speed during full-color		
	copying in areas	where each color i	s used to develop the i	mage.	
2393	Ptype FC:MM	Paper Type FC	:MM		
	This SP sets ima	age transfer bias for	r <u>MM</u> (Medium) speed	during full-color copying in	
	areas where eac	<u>ch color</u> is used to d	levelop the image.		
		2391	2392	2393	
012	Full Spd:ITB:K	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
013	Full Spd:ITB:M				
014	Full Spd:ITB:C				
015	Full Spd:ITB:Y				
022	Half Spd:ITB:K				
023	Half Spd:ITB:K				
024	Half Spd:ITB:C				
025	Half Spd:ITB:Y				

2394	Ptype FC:MH	Paper Type FC:MH	
	This SP sets image	e transfer bias for <u>MH</u> (Medium	High) speed during full-color
	copying in areas w	here each color is used to deve	elop the image.
2395	Ptype FC:HH	Paper Type FC:HH	
			speed during full-color copying in
	areas where each	color is used to develop the im	age.
012	Full Spd:ITB:K	2394	2395
013	Full Spd:ITB:M	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]
014	Full Spd:ITB:C		
015	Full Spd:ITB:Y		
022	Half Spd:ITB:K		
023	Half Spd:ITB:K		
024	Half Spd:ITB:C		
025	Half Spd:ITB:Y		

2401	Norm K Bias	
	Sets the standard value of bias voltages at image transfer, and paper separation areas where black is used on plain paper during black-and-white printing.	
001	ITB	$[0 \sim 500/0.1 \mu\text{A}]$
007	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/0.1 μA]
008	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]
009	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]
012	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/1 μA]
013	Side2:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]
014	Side2:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]

2406	Norm FC Bias	Set Bias for Plain Paper: FC
	Sets the standard value of bias voltages at image transfer, and paper separation in	
	areas the four colors are	used on plain paper during full color printing.
001	ITB:K	[0~500/0.1 μA]
002	ITB:M	[0~500/0.1 μA]
003	ITB:C	[0~500/0.1 μA]
004	ITM:Y	[0~500/0.1 μA]
013	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μA]
014	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]
015	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 μA]
021	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μA]
022	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]
023	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/1 μA]

2411	Size Coeff:Norm	Size Correction Coefficient for Plain Paper: Size 1	
	These settings apply to paper sizes wider than the paper size of <b>SP2308 001</b>		
	(Threshold 1) and are applied only to 1) areas where image is created, 2) plain paper at full speed only, 3) both black-and-white or full color mode		
007	Side1:Size 1 :PTR	Applies to Side 1 of duplex page.	
		[100~600/1%]	
012	Side2:Size 1 :PTR	Applies to Side 2 of duplex page.	
		[100~600/1%]	

2412	Size Coeff:Norm	Size Correction Coefficient for Plain Paper: Size 2
	(Threshold 2) and are ap	paper sizes wider than the paper size of <b>SP2308 002</b> pplied only to 1) areas where image is created, 2) plain 3) both black-and-white or full color mode
007	Side1:Size2:PTR	Applies to Side 1 of duplex page. [100~600/1%]
012	Side2:Size2:PTR	Applies to Side 2 of duplex page. [100~600/1%]

2413	Size Coeff:Norm	Size Correction Coefficient for Plain Paper: Size 3	
	These settings apply to paper sizes wider than the paper size of SP2308 003		
	(Threshold 3) and are applied only to 1) areas where image is created, 2) plain		
	paper at full speed only, 3) both black-and-white or full color mode		
007	Side1:Size3:PTR	Applies to Side 1 of duplex page.	
		[100~600/1%]	9
012	Side2:Size3:PTR	Applies to Side 2 of duplex page.	
		[100~600/1%]	3

2414	Size Coeff:Norm	Size Correction Coefficient for Plain Paper: Size 4	
	These settings apply to paper sizes wider than the paper size of <b>SP2308 004</b> (Threshold 4) and are applied only to 1) areas where image is created, 2) plain paper at full speed only, 3) both black-and-white or full color mode		
007	Side1:Size4:PTR	Applies to Side 1 of duplex page. [100~600/1%]	
012	Side2:Size4:PTR	Applies to Side 2 of duplex page. [100~600/1%]	

2415	Size Coeff:Norm	Size Correction Coefficient for Plain Paper: Size 5	
	These settings apply to paper sizes wider than the paper size of SP2308 004		
	(Threshold 4), or narrower than the paper size of SP2308 003 (Threshold 3), and are		
	applied only to 1) areas where image is created, 2) plain paper at full speed only, 3)		
	both black-and-white or full color mode.		
007	Side1:Size5:PTR	Applies to Side 1 of duplex page.	
		[100~600/1%]	
012	Side2:Size5:PTR	Applies to Side 2 of duplex page.	
		[100~600/1%]	

2421	LEdge Cor:Norm K	Leading Edge Correction for Plain Paper: K		
	This SP sets the coefficient used to 1) correct bias at the leading edge for black image transfer (ITB) 2) bias at image to paper transfer, and 3) correct the dc and ac voltages applied at paper separation. <b>Notes</b> : These settings apply:			
	• To the distance	from the leading edge set with SP2422		
	<ul> <li>Only to black pr selected).</li> </ul>	ack printing on plain paper at full speed (even when full-color is		
001	ITB	[0~400/1%]		
007	Side1:PTR	Note: ITB applies to both sides.		
008	Side1:SepDC			
009	Side1:SepAC			
012	Side2:PTR			
013	Side2:SepDC			
014	Side2:SepAC			

2422	LEdge SWT:Norm K		Leading Edge Switch Timing for Plain Paper: K	
	Sets the switch off timing <b>SP2421</b> . The value selected is the number of mm from the leading edge of the paper. These settings 1) apply only to black printing on plain paper at full speed (even when full-color is selected), and 2) apply to to both sides of a duplex page.			
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mr	m]	
002	PTR	[0/1 mm]	[0/1 mm]	
003	SepDC	[0~30/1 mr	m]	
004	SepAC			

2423	TEdgeCor:Norm K Trailing Edge Correction for Plain Paper: K			
	This SP sets the coefficient used to correct bias at image to paper transfer for each side of the paper. These settings are applied to the trailing edge for black printing on plain paper at full speed and apply to black, even when printing in full color mode.			
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/1%]		
012	Side2:PTR			

2424	TEdgeSWT:Norm K PTR	Trailing Edge Switch Timing for Plain Paper: K
	each sheet (Side 1, Side 2). Th printing on plain paper at full sp color mode. [-100~0/1 mm]	g for application of <b>SP2423</b> at the trailing edge of his setting is applied to the trailing edge for black beed and apply to black, even when printing in full away from the trailing edge of the image.

2426	LEdgeCor:Norm FC	Leading Edge Correction for Plain Paper: FC		
	This SP sets the coefficient used to 1) correct bias at the leading edge for full-color image transfer (ITB) bias at image to paper transfer when using plain paper, and 3) correct the dc and ac voltages applied at paper separation. <b>Notes</b> : These settings apply:			
	Only the distance from	om the leading edge set with <b>SP2427</b> .		
	Only to full color prir	nting on plain paper at full speed.		
001	ITB	[0~400/1%]		
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/1%]		
008	Side1:SepDC	[0~400/1%]		
009	Side1:SepAC	[0~400/1%]		
012	Side2:PTR	[0~400/1%]		
013	Side2:SepDC	[0~400/1%]		
014	Side2:SepAC	[0~400/1%]		

2427	LEdgeSWT:Norm FC	Leading Edge Switch Timing for Plain Paper: FC	
	This SP sets switch timing that sets the distance from the leading edge where the settings of <b>SP2426 001</b> are to apply. The value selected is the number of mm from the leading edge of the paper. These settings 1) apply only full-color printing on plain paper at full speed, and 2) apply to to both sides of a duplex page.		
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mm]	
002	PTR	[0~30/1 mm]	
003	SepDC	[0~30/1 mm]	
004	SepAC	[0~30/1 mm]	

2428	TEdgeCor:Norm FC	Trailing Edge Correction for Plain Paper: FC	
	This SP sets the coefficient used to correct bias at image to paper transfer for each side of the paper. These settings are applied to the trailing edge for full-color printing on plain paper at full speed as far as where <b>SP2429 002</b> takes effect.		
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/1%]	
012	Side2:PTR		

2429	TEdgeSWT:Norm FC – PTR	Switch Timing for Plain Paper: FC	
	This setting sets the start timin	g for application of <b>SP2428 007, 2428 012</b> at the	
	trailing edge of each sheet (Sid	le 1, Side 2). These settings are applied to the	
	trailing edge for black printing on plain paper at full speed and apply to black, even		
	when printing in full color mode.		
	[-100~0/1 mm]		
	The mm distance is measured	away from the trailing edge of the image.	

2431	Norm:K:LL	Plain Paper: K Low				
2432	Norm:K:ML	Plain Paper: K Medium Low				
2433	Norm:K:MM	Plain Paper: K Mediu	Plain Paper: K Medium			
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304</b> . <b>SP2431</b> – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1 <b>SP2432</b> – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2. <b>SP2433</b> – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3 These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in black (in either black- and-white or full-color mode) on plain paper at full speed.					
		2431 2432 2433				
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
008	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]			
009	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]			
012	Side2:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]			
013	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]			
014	Side2:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]			

2434	Norm:K:MH	Plain Paper: K Medium High		
2435	Norm:K:HH	Plain Paper: K High		
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304</b> . <b>SP2434</b> – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4 <b>SP2435</b> – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4 These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in black (in either black- and-white or full-color mode) on plain paper.			
		SP2432	SP2432	
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
008	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/1%]		
009	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/1%]		
012	Side2:PTR	[10~250/1%]		
013	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/1%]		
014	Side2:SepAC	[10~250/1%]		

2441	Norm:FC:LL	Plain Paper: FC I	_OW		
2442	Norm:FC:ML	Plain Paper: FC I	Plain Paper: FC Medium Low		
2443	Norm:FC:MM	Plain Paper: FC I	Plain Paper: FC Medium Medium		
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304</b> . <b>SP2441</b> – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1 <b>SP2442</b> – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2. <b>SP2443</b> – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3 These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in full-color on plain paper at full speed.				
		SP2441	SP2442	SP2443	
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
018	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
019	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
027	Side2:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
028	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
029	Side2:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		

2444	Norm:FC:MH	Plain Paper: FC Medium Hig	Plain Paper: FC Medium High		
2445	Norm:FC:HH	Plain Paper: FC High			
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304</b> . <b>SP2444</b> – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4 <b>SP2445</b> – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4 These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in black (in either black- and-white or full-color mode) on plain paper.				
		SP2444	SP2445		
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
018	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
019	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
027	Side2:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
028	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
029	Side2:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		

2501	Set Bias:Thk:K	Set Bias for Thick Paper: K
		ransfer bias for the drum to ITB image transfer at the black
	PCO when using thick pa	aper and printing in black-and-white mode.
001	ITB	[-100~0/1 μA]
007	Side1:PTR	[0~100/0.1 μA]
008	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]
009	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 μA]
012	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/1 μA]
013	Side2:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]
014	Side2:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 μA]

2506	Set Bias:Thk:FC	Set Bias for Thick Paper: FC
	This SP sets the following items with printing full-color on thick paper: 1) the image transfer bias for the drum to ITB image transfer for each color, 2) the ITB image to paper transfer, 3) dc/ac paper separation voltages for both sides duplex sheets.	
001	ITB:K	[0~500/0.1 μA]
002	ITB:M	[0~500/0.1 μA]
003	ITB:C	[0~500/0.1 μA]
004	ITB:Y	[0~500/0.1 μA]
013	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μA]
014	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]
015	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV
021	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/1 μA]
022	Side2:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]
023	Side2:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV

2511	Size Coeff:Thk	Size Correction Coefficient: Thick Paper
	These settings 1) apply to thick paper sizes wider than the paper size of 2308 001	
	Threshold 1, 2) apply to image areas only, 3) apply to thick paper mode (1/2 speed:	
	128 to 256 g/m²).	
007	Side1:Size 1 :PTR	[100~600/1%]
012	Side2:Size 1 :PTR	

2512	Size Coeff:Thk	Size Correction Coefficient: Thick Paper
	These settings 1) apply to above <b>2308 002</b> Threshold 2, and below <b>SP2308 003</b> Threshold 3, 2) apply to image areas only, 3) apply to thick paper mode (1/2 speed: 128 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).	
007	Side1:Size2:PTR	[100~600/1%]
012	Side2:Size2:PTR	[100~600/1%]

2513	Size Coeff:Thk	Size Correction Coefficient: Thick Paper
	These settings 1) apply to above <b>2308 003</b> Threshold 3, and less than <b>SP2308 002</b> Threshold 2, 2) apply to image areas only, 3) apply to thick paper mode (1/2 speed: 128 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).	
007	Side1:Size3:PTR	[100~600/1%]
012	Side2:Size3:PTR	[100~600/1%]

2514	Size Coeff:Thk	Size Correction Coefficient: Thick Paper
	These settings 1) apply to above <b>2308 004</b> Threshold 4, and less than <b>SP2308 003</b> Threshold 3, 2) apply to image areas only, 3) apply to thick paper mode (1/2 speed: 128 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).	
007	Side1:Size4:PTR	[100~600/1%]
012	Side2:Size4:PTR	[100~600/1%]

2515	Size Coeff:Thk	Size Correction Coefficient: Thick Paper
		o paper widths up to SP2308 004 Threshold 4, 2) apply to
	image areas only, 3) apply to thick paper mode (1/2 speed: 128 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).	
007	Side1:Size5:PTR	[100~600/1%]
012	Side2:Size5:PTR	[100~400/1%]

2521	LEdge Cor:Thk:K	Leading Edge Correction: Thick Paper: K
	This SP sets the coefficient used to 1) correct bias at the leading edge for black image transfer (ITB), 2) bias at image to paper transfer on thick paper, and 3) correct the dc and ac voltages applied at paper separation. <b>Notes</b> : These settings apply:	
	To the distance from the leading edge set with SP2522 001	
	<ul> <li>Only to black printing on plain paper at half-speed (128~256 g/m<sup>2</sup>), regardless of whether black-and-white or full-color is selected.</li> </ul>	
001	ITB	[0~400/1%]
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/1%]
008	Side1:SepDC	[0~400/1%]
009	Side1:SepAC	[0~400/1%]
012	Side2:PTR	[0~400/1%]
013	Side2:SepDC	[0~400/1%]
014	Side2:SepAC	[0~400/1%]

2522	LEdge SWT:Thk:K	Leading Edge Switch Timing for Thick Paper: K	
	paper. The value selecte These settings 1) apply o	ng that switches off the application of <b>SP2521</b> for thick ed is the number of mm from the leading edge of the paper. only to black printing on thick paper at half-speed (128~256 both sides of a duplex page.	Service Tables
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mm]	
002	PTR	[0/1 mm]	
003	SepDC	[0~30/1 mm]	
004	SepAC		

2523	TEdge Cor:Thk K	Trailing Edge Correction for Thick Paper: K
	side of the paper. These	ent used to correct bias at image to paper transfer for each settings are applied to the trailing edge for black printing on n <sup>2</sup> ) at half-speed and apply to black, even when printing in
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/1%]
012	Side2:PTR	

2524	TEdge Cor:Thk:K – PTR	Trailing Edge Correction for Thick Paper: K
	each sheet (Side 1, Side 2). Th	g for application of <b>SP2523 012</b> at the trailing edge of his setting is applied to the trailing edge for black $56 \text{ g/m}^2$ ) at half-speed and applies to black, even e.

2526	LEdge Cor:Thk:FC	Leading Edge Correction for Thick Paper: K
		ent used to 1) correct bias at the leading edge for full-color
		s at image to paper transfer when using thick paper
	(128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), and 3) o	correct the dc and ac voltages applied at paper separation.
	Notes: These settings a	pply:
	Only the distance from	om the leading edge set with SP2527.
	<ul> <li>Only to full color print</li> </ul>	nting on thick paper at half speed.
001	ITB	[0~400/1%]
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/1%]
008	Side1:SepDC	[0~400/1%]
009	Side1:SepAC	
012	Side2:PTR	[0~400/1%]
013	Side2:SepDC	[0~400/1%]
014	Side2:SepAC	

2527	LEdge SWT:Thk:FC	Leading Edge Switch Timing for Thick Paper: FC
	This SP sets switch timing that sets the distance from the leading edge where the settings of <b>SP2526 001</b> are to apply. The value selected is the number of mm from the leading edge of the paper. These settings 1) apply only full-color printing on thick paper ( $128 \sim 256 \text{ g/m}^2$ ) at half speed, and 2) apply to to both sides of a duplex page.	
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mm]
002	PTR	[0~30/1 mm]
003	SepDC	[0~30/1 mm]
004	SepAC	

2528	TEdge Cor:Thk FC	Trailing Edge Correction for Thick Paper: FC		
	This SP sets the coefficient used to correct bias at image to paper transfer for each side of the paper. These settings are applied to the trailing edge for full-color printing on thick paper (128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) at half speed as far as where <b>SP2529 002</b> takes effect.			
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/1%]		
012	Side2:PTR			

2529	TEdge Cor:Thk:FC – PTR	Trailing Edge Correction for Thick Paper: FC
	This setting sets the start timin	ng for application of <b>SP2528 007, 2528 012</b> at the
		de 1, Side 2). These settings are applied to the trailing
	edge for black printing on plain paper at full speed and apply to black, even when	
	printing in full color mode.	
	[-100~0/1 mm]	
	The mm distance is measured	I away from the trailing edge of the image.

2531	Thk:K:LL	Thick Paper: K Low	V		
2532	Thk:K:ML		Thick Paper: K Medium Low		
2533	Thk:K:MM	Thick Paper: K Med			
	bias threshold values cal the temperature/humidity <b>SP2431</b> – Up to SP2304 <b>SP2432</b> – More than SP <b>SP2433</b> – More than SP	er size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer alculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from ty sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304 001</b> 4 001: Threshold 1 P2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2. P2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3 Ily to the image area printed on thick paper in black-and-			
		SP2531	SP2532	SP2533	
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
008	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
009	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
012	Side2:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
013	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]		
014	Side2:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	]	

2534	Thk:K:MH	Thick Paper: K Medium High		
2535	Thk:K:HH	Thick Paper: K High		
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304</b> . <b>SP2534</b> – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4 <b>SP2535</b> – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4 These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in black (in either black-and- white or full-color mode) on plain paper.			
	SP2534 SP2535		SP2535	
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
008	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
009	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
012	Side2:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
013	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
014	Side2:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	

2541	Thk:FC:LL	Thick Paper: FC Lo	)W	
2542	Thk:FC:ML	Thick Paper: FC M	edium Low	
2543	Thk:FC:MM	Thick Paper: FC M	edium	
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304</b> . <b>SP2541</b> – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1 <b>SP2542</b> – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP2304 002 Threshold 2. <b>SP2543</b> – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3 These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in full-color on thick paper (128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) at full speed.			
		2541	2542	2543
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]
018	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
019	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
027	Side2:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
028	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
029	Side2:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	]

2544	Thk:FC:MH	Thick Paper: FC Medium Higl	ſ	
2545	Thk:FC:HH	Thick Paper: FC High		
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304</b> . <b>SP2544</b> – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4 <b>SP2545</b> – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4 These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in full-color on thick paper (128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) at full speed.			
	SP2544 SP2545		SP2545	
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
018	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
019	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
027	Side2:PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
028	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
029	Side2:SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	

2601	OHP K Bia	s Set Bias for Transparency: K		
	This SP sets the following standard bias voltages applied for the image area on OHF in the black-and-white mode at 1) image transfer from drum to ITB, 2) image transfer			
		from ITB to paper, and 3) at paper separation from the ITB.		
001	ITB	ITB [0~500/0.1 μA]		
002	PTR	R [-100~0/0.1 μA]		
003	SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]		
004	SepAC	[80~120/0.1 μA]		

2606	OHP FC B	ias	Set Bias for Transparency: K	
	This SP sets the following standard bias voltages applied for the image area on OHP in the full-color mode at 1) image transfer from drum to ITB for each color, 2) image transfer from ITB to paper, and 3) at paper separation from the ITB.			
001	ITB:K	[0~500/0.1 μ	A]	
002	ITB:M	[0~500/0.1 μ	[0~500/0.1 μA]	
003	ITB:C	[0~500/0.1 μ	[0~500/0.1 μA]	
004	ITB:Y	[-100~0/0.1 µ	[-100~0/0.1 μA]	
005	PTR	[0~100/0.1 μ	[0~100/0.1 μA]	
006	SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μA]		
007	SepAC	[80~120/0.1	μΑ]	

2611	Size Coeff:OHP         Size Correction Coefficient for Transparency		
	This SP setting applies to 1) OHP widths above Threshold 1 ( <b>SP2308 001</b> ), 2) the image area only, 3) OHP only, 4) either black-and-white or full-color mode.		
002	2 Size 1 :PTR [100~600/1%]		

2613	Size Coeff:OHP	Size Correction Coefficient for Transparency
		o 1) OHP widths larger Threshold 3 ( <b>SP2308 002</b> ) and 2) the image area only, 3) OHP only, 4) either black-and-

2621			00	Correction for Transparency: K	
		These SPs do the following settings when printing on OHP in the black-and-white			
		mode at half-speed (128~256 g/m2):			
		1) ITB: Sets strength/timing of the correction coefficient for the application of bias when the image is transferred from the drum to the ITB.			
	when the image	age is transf	erred from ITB.	on coefficient for the application of bias	
				g of the dc and ac charges applied to per so they will separate more easily.	
		-		bias coefficient, and SP2622 sets the start	
	timing of the		•		
2622	LEdge SWT	:OHP K	Leading Edge S	Switch Timing for Transparency: K	
				selected value is the number of mm from	
				in black-and-white mode on OHP in half-	
	speed mode	<u>(128~256 g</u>	/m²).		
		-	2621	2622	
001	ITB	[0~400/1%]	]	[0~30/1 mm]	
002	PTR	[0~400/1%]	]	[0~30/1 mm]	
003	SepDC	[0~400/1%]	]	[0~30/1 mm]	
004	SepAC	[0~400/1%]	]	[0~30/1 mm]	

2623	TEdge Cor:OHP K –	PTR	Trailing Edge C	orrection for Transparency: K
	Sets the strength of the	Sets the strength of the bias coe		as applied at the trailing edge when
				ed when printing in black-and-white
2624	TEdge SWT:OHP K -	- PTR	Trailing Edge S	witch Timing for Transparency: K
	SP2623 002 setting is	applied d	uring image trans	ce from the leading edge where the fer from ITB to paper. Applied only t half speed (128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).
	2623		2624	
	[0~400/1%]	[-100~0/1	1%]	

2626	LEdge Cor:	OHP FC	eading Edge C	Correction for Transparency: FC
		These SPs do the following settings when printing on OHP in the full-color mode at half-speed (128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ):		
		1) ITB: Sets the correction coefficient for the application of bias when the image is transferred from the drum to the ITB. The selected value is the distance in mm from the leading edge		
	2) PTR: Sets transferred f		coefficient for	r the application of bias when the image is
	, ,		•	s applied to neutralize the charges on the
	belt and paper so they will separate more easily. <b>Note: SP2626</b> selects the strength of the bias coefficient, and <b>SP2627</b> sets the start timing of the bias application.			
2627	LEdge SWT:OHP FC         Leading Edge Switch Timing for Transparency: FC			
	Sets the switch off timing of SP2626. The selected value is the number of mm from the leading edge. Applies only to printing in full-color mode on OHP in half-speed mode (128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).			
		2626 2627		
001	ITB	[0~400/1%]		[0~30/1 mm]
002	PTR	[0~400/1%]		[0~30/1 mm]
003	SepDC	[0~400/1%]		[0~30/1 mm]
004	SepAC	[0~400/1%]		[0~30/1 mm]

2628		R Trailing Edge Correction	
	Sets the start timing for <b>SP2629 002</b> at the trailing edge. Applied to the trailing edge for full-color printing on OHP at half-speed ( $128 \sim 256 \text{ g/m}^2$ ).		′m²).
2629	TEdge SWT:Thk FC – PT	R Switch Timing for Transp	parency: FC
	Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the settings of <b>SP2628 002</b> are applied during image transfer from ITB to OHP during full-color printing at half-speed (128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).		
	2628	2629	
	[0~400/1%]	[-100~0/1%]	

2631	OHP:K:LL	Transparency: K Lov	A/	
	-			
2632	OHP:K:ML	Transparency: K Medium Low		
2633	OHP:K:MM	Transparency: K Medium		
	bias threshold v the temperature SP2631 – Up to SP2632 – More SP2633 – More SP2634 – More SP2635 – More	the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from e/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304 001</b> . o <b>SP2304 001:</b> Threshold 1 e than <b>SP2304 001</b> Threshold 1, up to <b>SP2304 002</b> Threshold 2. e than <b>SP2304 002</b> Threshold 2, up to <b>SP2304 003</b> Threshold 3. e than <b>SP2304 003</b> Threshold 3, up to <b>SP2304 004</b> Threshold 4. e than <b>2304 004</b> Threshold 4 apply only to the image area printed on OHP in black-and-white wood (128~256 g(m <sup>2</sup> ))		
		2631	2632	2633
002	PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]
003	SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]
004	SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]
2634	OHP:K:MH	Transparency: K Me	edium High	
2635	OHP:K:HH	Transparency: K High		
		2634	2635	
002	PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
003	SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
004	SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	

·				
2641	OHP:FC:LL			
2642	OHP:FC:MI			
2643	OHP:FC:MI	M Transparency: FC	; Medium	
2644	OHP:FC:MI	H Transparency: FC	Medium High	
2645	OHP:FC:H		0	
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304 001</b> . <b>SP2631</b> – Up to <b>SP2304 001</b> : Threshold 1 <b>SP2632</b> – More than <b>SP2304 001</b> Threshold 1, up to <b>SP23204 002</b> Threshold 2. <b>SP2633</b> – More than <b>SP2304 002</b> Threshold 2, up to <b>SP2304 003</b> Threshold 3. <b>SP2634</b> – More than <b>2304 003</b> Threshold 3, up to <b>SP2304 004</b> Threshold 4. <b>SP2635</b> – More than <b>2304 004</b> Threshold 4 These settings apply only to the image area printed on OHP in full-color mode at half-speed (128~256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ).			
<u> </u>		2641	2642	2643
007	PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]
800	SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]
009	SepAC [10~250/1%] [10~250/1%] [10~250/1%]		[10~250/1%]	
	2644 2645			
007	PTR	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
008	SepDC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	
009	SepAC	[10~250/1%]	[10~250/1%]	

2751	Sp1 K Bias	Set Bias for Special Paper 1: K
	These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1) create bias for image transfer from drum to ITB, 2) create bias for image transfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the charges on the both sides of the paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC). These settings are used when printing on Special Paper 1 in the black-and-white mode and are applied only to the image area.	
001	ITB	[0~500/0.1 μa]
007	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]
008	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]
009	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]
012	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/0.1 μa]
013	Side2:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]
014	Side2:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]

2756	Sp1 K Bias	Set Bias for Special Paper 1: K
		ard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1)
		nsfer from drum of each color (Y, M, C, K) to the ITB, 2)
		nsfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the charges
		paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC).
	0	only for Y, M, C, K when printing on Special Paper 1 in the
	full-color mode and are a	applied only to the image area.
001	ITB:K	[0~500/0.1 μa]
002	ITB:M	[0~500/0.1 μa]
003	ITB:C	[0~500/0.1 μa]
004	ITB:Y	[0~500/0.1 μa]
013	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]
014	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]
015	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]
021	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]
022	Side2:SepDC	[200~1000/0.1 μa]
023	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]

These SPs (SP2761~SP2765) set the paper size correction coefficients for Special Paper 1 relative to the settings done with SP2308 (Set Psize Thresh). All of hese settings:

- Apply to printing on Special Paper 1 in the black-and-white mode
- Apply only to the image area

The title of each SP tells you the side and size where the setting is applied at ITBto-paper transfer, for example: "Side1:Size1:PTR" means the setting applies to only the first side of Size 1 when the image is transferred from belt to paper.

2761	Size Coeff:Sp1	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 1
007	Side1:Size1:PTR	SP2308 001 Threshold 1
012	Side2:Size1:PTR	[100~600/5%]
2762	Size Coeff:Sp1	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 1
007	Side1:Size2:PTR	SP2308 002 Threshold 2, < SP2308 001 Threshold 1
012	Side2:Size2:PTR	[100~600/5%]
2763	Size Coeff:Sp1	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 1
007	Side1:Size3:PTR	SP2308 003 Threshold 3, < SP2308 002 Threshold 2
012	Side2:Size3:PTR	[100~600/5%]
2764	Size Coeff:Sp1	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 1
007	Side1:Size4:PTR	SP2308 004 Threshold 4, < SP2308 003 Threshold 3
012	Side2:Size4:PTR	[100~600/5%]
2765	Size Coeff:Sp1	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 1
007	Side1:Size5:PTR	Up to SP2308 004 Threshold 4
012	Side2:Size5:PTR	[100~600/5%]

2771	LEdge Cor:Sp1:K	Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 1: K
		correction coefficient when bias is applied as far as allowed
		<b>2</b> for drum to image transfer of the image during black and
	white copying on Speci	al Paper 1.
001	ITB	[0~400/5%]
007	Side1:PTR	
008	Side1:SepDC	
009	Side1:SepAC	
012	Side2:PTR	
013	Side2:SepDC	
014	Side2:SepAC	
2772	LEdge SWT:Sp1:K	Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 1: K
	Sets the switch off timir	ng of <b>SP2771</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from
	the leading edge. Appli	es only to printing in black-and-white mode on Special Paper
	1.	
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mm]
002	PTR	
003	SepDC	
004	SepAC	

2773	TEdge Cor:Sp1 K	Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 1: K
	paper by setting the start	the trailing edge when the image is transferred from ITB to t timing for <b>SP2774 002</b> at the trailing edge. Applied to the d-white mode on Special Paper 1 only.
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/5%]
012	Side2:PTR	
2774	TEdge SWT:Sp1 K	Trailing Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 1: K
	the settings of SP2773 is	at determines the distance from the leading edge where applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied white mode on Special Paper 1.
002	PTR	[-100~0/1 mm]

2776	LEdge Cor:Sp1 FC	Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 1: FC		
		ing settings when printing on Special Paper 1 in the full-		
	color mode:			
		ing of the correction coefficient for the application of bias		
	0	erred from the drum to the ITB.		
		n/timing of thecorrection coefficient for the application of		
	bias when the image is tr			
	, , , , ,	ne strength/timing of the dc and ac charges applied to		
		n the belt and paper so they will separate more easily.		
		e strength of the bias coefficient, and <b>SP2777</b> sets the start		
	timing of the bias applica	tion.		
001	ITB	[0~400/5%]		
007	Side1:PTR			
008	Side1:SepDC			
009	Side1:SepAC			
012	Side2:PTR			
013	Side2:SepDC			
014	Side2:SepAC			
2777	LEdge SWT:Sp1 FC	Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 1: FC		
	Sets the switch off timing	of <b>SP2776</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from		
	the leading edge. Applies	s only to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 1.		
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mm]		
002	PTR			
003	SepDC			
004	SepAC			

2778	TEdge Cor:Sp1 FC – PTR	Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 1: FC
	0	coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge when ITB to paper. Applied when printing in full-color mode
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/5%]
012	Side2:PTR	
2779	TEdge SWT:Sp1 FC – PTR	Switch Timing for Special Paper 1: FC
	Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the <b>SP2778</b> settings are applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied only when printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 1. [-100~0/1 mm]	

2781	Sp1:K:LL	Special Paper 1:	Special Paper 1: K Low			
2782	Sp1:K:ML	Special Paper 1: K Medium Low				
2783	Sp1:K:MM	Special Paper 1: K Medium				
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity fro the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with SP2304. SP2781 – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1 SP2782 – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2. SP2783 – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3. SP2784 – More than 2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4. SP2785 – More than 2304 004 Threshold 4 These settings apply only to the image area printed on Special Paper 1 in black-ar white mode.			solute humidity from 2304. 102 Threshold 2. 13 Threshold 3. Fhreshold 4.		
		2781	2781 2782 2783			
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]		
008	Side1:SepDC					
009	Side1:SepAC					
012	Side2:PTR	[10~250/5%]				
013	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/5%]				
014	Side2:SepAC					
2784	Sp1:K:MH	Special Paper 1: K Me	edium High			
2785	Sp1:K:HH	Special Paper 1: K Hi	gh			
		2784	2784 2785			
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
008	Side1:SepDC		[10~250/5%]			
009	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
012	Side2:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
013	Side2:SepDC					
014	Side2:SepAC					

2791	Sp1:FC:LL	Special Paper 1:	Special Paper 1: FC Low			
2792	Sp1:FC:ML	Special Paper 1:	Special Paper 1: FC Medium Low			
2973	Sp1:FC:MM	Special Paper 1:	Special Paper 1: FC Medium			
		aper size correction co				
		s calculated based on				
	•	nidity sensor and the th	resholds set with <b>SP</b> 2	2304.		
	•	2304 001: Threshold 1				
		SP2304 001 Thresho	, ,			
		n SP2304 002 Thresho	, ,			
		n <b>2304 003</b> Threshold 3 n <b>2304 004</b> Threshold 4	•	i nresnold 4.		
				Papar 1 in full color		
	mode.	only to the image area	a printed on Special F			
	mode.	2791	2792	2973		
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]		
008	Side1:SepDC	[				
009	Side1:SepAC					
012	Side2:PTR					
013	Side2:SepDC					
014	Side2:SepAC					
2794	Sp1:FC:MH	Special Paper 1: FC N	Medium High			
2795	Sp1:FC:HH	Special Paper 1: FC I	High			
		2794	2795			
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
018	Side1:SepDC		[10~250/5%]			
019	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
027	Side2:PTR					
028	Side2:SepDC					
029	Side2:SepAC					

2801	Sp2 K Bias	Set Bias for Special Paper 2: K			
	These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1)				
		nsfer from drum to ITB, 2) create bias for image transfer			
		, and 3) neutralize the charges on the both sides of the			
		per from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC). These settings are			
	used when printing on Special Paper 2 in the black-and-white mode and are applied				
	only to the image area.				
001	ITB	[0~500/0.1 μa]			
007	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]			
008	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]			
009	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]			
012	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]			
013	Side2:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]			
014	Side2:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]			

2806	Sp2 FC Bias	Set Bias for Special Paper 2: K			
	These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1)				
	5	nsfer from drum of each color (Y, M, C, K) to the ITB, 2)			
	create bias for image transfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the				
		charges on the both sides of the paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC,			
		are used only for Y, M, C, K when printing on Special			
		node and are applied only to the image area.			
001	ITB:K	[0~500/0.1 μa]			
002	ITB:M	[0~500/0.1 μa]			
003	ITB:C	[0~500/0.1 μa]			
004	ITB:Y	[0~500/0.1 μa]			
013	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]			
014	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]			
015	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]			
021	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]			
022	Side2:SepDC	[0~1000/0.1 μa]			
023	Side2:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]			

These SPs (**SP2811~SP2815**) set the paper size correction coefficients for Special Paper 2 relative to the settings done with **SP2308** (Set Psize Thresh). All of hese settings:

- Apply to printing on Special Paper 2 in the black-and-white mode
- Apply only to the image area

The title of each SP tells you the side and size where the setting is applied at ITBto-paper transfer, for example: "Side1:Size1:PTR" means the setting applies to only Side 1 of Size 1 when the image is transferred from belt to paper at the PTR.

ce	es
βV	abl
Š	H

2811	Size Coeff:Sp2	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 2	
007	Side1:Size 1 :PTR	SP2308 001 Threshold 1	
012	Side2:Size 1 :PTR	[100~600/5%]	
2812	Size Coeff:Sp2	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 2	
007	Side1:Size2:PTR	SP2308 002 Threshold 2, < SP2308 001 Threshold 1	
012	Side2:Size2:PTR	[100~600/5%]	
2813	Size Coeff:Sp2	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 2	
007	Side1:Size3:PTR	SP2308 003 Threshold 3, < SP2308 002 Threshold 2	
012	Side2:Size3:PTR	[100~600/5%]	
2814	Size Coeff:Sp2	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 2	
007	Side1:Size4:PTR	SP2308 004 Threshold 4, < SP2308 003 Threshold 3	
012	Side2:Size4:PTR	[100~600/5%]	
2815	Size Coeff:Sp2	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 2	
007	Side1:Size5:PTR	Up to SP2308 004 Threshold 4	
012	Side2:Size5:PTR	[100~600/5%]	

2821	LEdge Cor:Sp2:K	Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 2: K		
	Sets the leading edge correction coefficient when bias is applied as far as allowed			
		for drum to image transfer of the image during black and		
	white copying on Specia	Paper 2.		
001	ITB	[0~400/5%]		
007	Side1:PTR			
008	Side1:SepDC			
009	Side1:SepAC			
012	Side2:PTR			
013	Side2:SepDC			
014	Side2:SepAC			
2822	LEdge SWT:Sp2:K	Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 2: K		
	Sets the switch off timing	of SP2771. The selected value is the number of mm from		
	the leading edge. Applies	s only to printing in black-and-white mode on Special Paper		
	2.			
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mm]		
002	PTR			
003	SepDC			
004	SepAC			

2823	TEdge Cor:Sp2 K – PTR	Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 2: K			
	Sets the bias applied at the trailing edge when the image is transferred from ITB to paper by setting the start timing for <b>SP2824 002</b> at the trailing edge. Applied to the trailing edge for black-and-white mode on Special Paper 2 only.				
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/5%]			
012	Side2:PTR				
2824	TEdge SWT:Sp2 K – PTR         Trailing Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 2: K				
	Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the settings of <b>SP2823</b> is applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied only when in black-and-white mode on Special Paper 2. [-100~0/5%]				

2826	LEdge Cor:Sp2 FC	Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 2: FC		
	These SPs do the following settings when printing on Special Paper 2 in the full-			
	color mode:			
		ing of the correction coefficient for the application of bias erred from the drum to the ITB.		
	<ol><li>PTR: Sets the strength bias when the image is to</li></ol>	h/timing of thecorrection coefficient for the application of ransferred from ITB.		
		he strength/timing of the dc and ac charges applied to n the belt and paper so they will separate more easily.		
	Note: SP2826 selects th	e strength of the bias coefficient, and <b>SP2827</b> sets the start		
	timing of the bias applica	ition.		
001	ITB	[0~400/5%]		
007	Side1:PTR			
008	Side1:SepDC			
009	Side1:SepAC			
012	Side2:PTR			
013	Side2:SepDC			
014	Side2:SepAC			
2827	LEdge SWT:Sp2 FC	Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 2: FC		
	Sets the switch off timing	of <b>SP2826</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from		
	the leading edge. Applies	s only to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 2.		
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mm]		
002	PTR			
003	SepDC			
004	SepAC			

2828	TEdge Cor:Sp2 FC – PTR	Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 2: FC	
	Sets the strength of the bias coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge when the image is transferred from ITB to paper. Applied when printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 2.		
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/5%]	
012	Side2:PTR		
2829	TEdge SWT:Sp2 FC – PTR         Switch Timing for Special Paper 2: FC		
	Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the <b>SP2828</b> settings are applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied only when printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 2. [-100~0/1 mm]		

2831	Sp2:K:LL	Special Paper 2:	Special Paper 2: K Low			
2832	Sp2:K:ML	Special Paper 2: K Medium Low				
2833	Sp2:K:MM	Special Paper 2: K Medium				
		aper size correction co				
		s calculated based on				
		nidity sensor and the th	resholds set with SP2	2304 001.		
		2304 001: Threshold 1				
		SP2304 001 Thresho	· •			
		SP2304 002 Thresho	•			
		n 2304 003 Threshold 3	•	nresnoid 4.		
		n <b>2304 004</b> Threshold 4 / only to the image area		aper 2 in black and		
	white mode.	only to the inage area	a printed on Special F	aper 2 in Diack-anu-		
	white mode.	2831	2831 2832 2833			
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]		
008	Side1:SepDC					
009	Side1:SepAC					
012	Side2:PTR					
013	Side2:SepDC					
014	Side2:SepAC					
2834	Sp2:K:MH	Special Paper 2: K Me	edium High			
2835	Sp2:K:HH	Special Paper 2: K Hi	gh			
		2834	2835			
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
008	Side1:SepDC					
009	Side1:SepAC					
012	Side2:PTR					
013	Side2:SepDC					
014	Side2:SepAC					

2841	Sp2:FC:LL	Special Paper 2: F	C Low			
2842	Sp2:FC:ML	Special Paper 2: FC Medium Low				
2843	Sp2:FC:MM		Special Paper 2: FC Medium			
2045	These SPs set the stand			t are applied to 1)		
	create bias for image tra					
	from ITB to paper (PTR)					
	paper to separate the pa					
	used when printing on S			5		
	the image area.					
		2841	2842	2843		
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]		
018	Side1:SepDC					
019	Side1:SepAC					
027	Side2:PTR					
028	Side2:SepDC					
029	Side2:SepAC					
2844	Sp2:FC:MH	Special Paper 2: F	C Medium High			
2845	Sp2:FC:HH	Special Paper 2: F	C High			
		2844	2845			
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
018	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/5%]				
019	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
027	Side2:PTR		[10~250/5%]			
028	Side2:SepDC					
029	Side2:SepAC					

2851	Sp3 K Bias	Set Bias for Special Paper 3: K			
	These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1)				
	create bias for image transfer from drum to ITB, 2) create bias for image transfer				
		, and 3) neutralize the charges on the both sides of the			
		per from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC). These settings are			
		pecial Paper 3 in the black-and-white mode and are applied			
	only to the image area.				
001	ITB	[0~500/0.1 μa]			
007	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]			
008	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]			
009	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]			
012	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]			
013	Side2:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]			
014	Side2:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]			

2856	Sp3 FC Bias	Set Bias for Special Paper 3: K				
	These SPs set the stand	These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1)				
	create bias for image transfer from drum of each color (Y, M, C, K) to the ITB, 2)					
		nsfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the				
		s of the paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC,				
		are used only for Y, M, C, K when printing on Special				
	Paper 3 in the full-color r	node and are applied only to the image area.				
001	ITB:K	[0~500/0.1 μa]				
002	ITB:M	[0~500/0.1 μa]				
003	ITB:C	[0~500/0.1 μa]				
004	ITB:Y	[0~500/0.1 μa]				
013	Side1:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]				
014	Side1:SepDC	[0~100/0.1 μa]				
015	Side1:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]				
021	Side2:PTR	[-100~0/1 μa]				
022	Side2:SepDC	[0~1000/0.1 μa]				
023	Side2:SepAC	[80~120/0.1 kV]				

These SPs (**SP2861~SP2865**) set the paper size correction coefficients for Special Paper 3 relative to the settings done with **SP2308** (Set Psize Thresh). All of hese settings:

- Apply to printing on Special Paper 3 in the black-and-white mode
- Apply only to the image area

The title of each SP tells you the side and size where the setting is applied at ITBto-paper transfer, for example: "Side1:Size1:PTR" means the setting applies to only Side 1 of Size 1 when the image is transferred from belt to paper at the PTR.

2861	Size Coeff:Sp3	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 3
007	Side1:Size 1 :PTR	SP2308 001 Threshold 1
012	Side2:Size 1 :PTR	[100~600/5%]
2862	Size Coeff:Sp3	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 3
007	Side1:Size2:PTR	SP2308 002 Threshold 2, < SP2308 001 Threshold 1
012	Side2:Size2:PTR	[100~600/5%]
2863	Size Coeff:Sp3	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 3
007	Side1:Size3:PTR	SP2308 003 Threshold 3, < SP2308 002 Threshold 2
012	Side2:Size3:PTR	[100~600/5%]
2864	Size Coeff:Sp3	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 3
007	Side1:Size4:PTR	SP2308 004 Threshold 4, < SP2308 003 Threshold 3
012	Side2:Size4:PTR	[100~600/5%]
2865	Size Coeff:Sp3	Size Correction Coefficient for Special Paper 3
007	Side1:Size5:PTR	Up to SP2308 004 Threshold 4
012	Side2:Size5:PTR	[100~600/5%]

2074	LEdge Comen21K	Londing Edge Correction for Special Depart 2: K				
2871	LEdge Cor:Sp3:K	Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 3: K				
	Sets the leading edge correction coefficient when bias is applied as far as allowed					
	by the seting of <b>SP2872</b> for drum to image transfer of the image during black and					
	white copying on Special Paper 3.					
001	ITB	[0~400/5%]				
007	Side1:PTR					
008	Side1:SepDC					
009	Side1:SepAC					
012	Side2:PTR					
013	Side2:SepDC					
014	Side2:SepAC					
2872	LEdge SWT:Sp3:K	Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 3: K				
	Sets the switch off timing	g of <b>SP2871</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from				
	the leading edge. Applie	s only to printing in black-and-white mode on Special Paper				
	3.					
001	ITB	[0~30/1 mm]				
002	PTR					
003	SepDC					
004	SepAC					

2873	TEdge Cor:Sp3 K – PTR	Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 3: K	
	Sets the bias applied at the trailing edge when the image is transferred from ITB to paper by setting the start timing for <b>SP2874 002</b> at the trailing edge. Applied to the trailing edge for black-and-white mode on Special Paper 3 only.		
007	Side1:PTR	[0~400/5%]	
012	Side2:PTR		
2874	TEdge SWT:Sp3 K – PTR	Trailing Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 3: K	
	Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the settings of <b>SP2873</b> are applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied only when in black-and-white mode on Special Paper 3. [-100~0/1 mm]		

2876	LEdge Cor:Sp3 FC	Lea	ading Edge Correction for Special Paper 3: FC			
			ettings when printing on Special Paper 3 in the full-			
	color mode:	Ū				
	<ol> <li>ITB: Sets strength/timing of the correction coefficient for the application of bias when the image is transferred from the drum to the ITB.</li> <li>PTR: Sets the strength/timing of thecorrection coefficient for the application of</li> </ol>					
	bias when the image is t					
			rength/timing of the dc and ac charges applied to			
			belt and paper so they will separate more easily.			
			ength of the bias coefficient, and <b>SP2877</b> sets the start			
0.0.1	timing of the bias applica					
001	ITB	[0~	400/5%]			
007	Side1:PTR					
008	Side1:SepDC					
009	Side1:SepAC					
012	Side2:PTR					
013	Side2:SepDC					
014	Side2:SepAC					
00==						
77 20	I Edan QW/T·Qn2 EC		ding Edge Switch Timing for Special Daper 3: EC			
2877	LEdge SWT:Sp3 FC		ading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 3: FC			
2877	Sets the switch off timing	g of S	SP2876. The selected value is the number of mm from			
	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie	g of <b>S</b> s onl	<b>SP2876</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3.			
001	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB	g of <b>S</b> s onl	SP2876. The selected value is the number of mm from			
001 002	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR	g of <b>S</b> s onl	<b>\$P2876</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3.			
001 002 003	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR SepDC	g of <b>S</b> s onl	<b>\$P2876</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3.			
001 002	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR	g of <b>S</b> s onl	<b>SP2876</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3.			
001 002 003	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR SepDC	g of <b>S</b> s onl [0~	<b>\$P2876</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3.			
001 002 003 004	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR SepDC SepAC <b>TEdge Cor:Sp3 FC – P</b> Sets the strength of the l	g of <b>S</b> s onl [0~ TR bias o	SP2876. The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3. 30/1 mm] Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 3: FC coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge			
001 002 003 004	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR SepDC SepAC <b>TEdge Cor:Sp3 FC – P</b> Sets the strength of the I when the image is transf	of S s onl [0~ TR bias of ferred	<b>SP2876</b> . The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3. 30/1 mm]			
001 002 003 004 2878	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR SepDC SepAC <b>TEdge Cor:Sp3 FC – P</b> Sets the strength of the I when the image is transf mode on Special Paper	of S s onl [0~ TR bias of ferred	SP2876. The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3.         30/1 mm]         Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 3: FC coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge d from ITB to paper. Applied when printing in full-color			
001 002 003 004 2878	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR SepDC SepAC <b>TEdge Cor:Sp3 FC – P</b> Sets the strength of the I when the image is transf mode on Special Paper 3 Side1:PTR	of S s onl [0~ TR bias of ferred	SP2876. The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3. 30/1 mm] Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 3: FC coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge			
001 002 003 004 2878	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR SepDC SepAC <b>TEdge Cor:Sp3 FC – P</b> Sets the strength of the I when the image is transf mode on Special Paper	of S s onl [0~ TR bias of ferred	SP2876. The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3.         30/1 mm]         Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 3: FC coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge d from ITB to paper. Applied when printing in full-color			
001 002 003 004 2878 007	Sets the switch off timing the leading edge. Applie ITB PTR SepDC SepAC <b>TEdge Cor:Sp3 FC – P</b> Sets the strength of the R when the image is transf mode on Special Paper 3 Side1:PTR Side2:PTR <b>TEdge SWT:Sp3 FC –</b> <b>PTR</b>	r of S s onl [0~ [0~] TR bias of ferreo 3.	SP2876. The selected value is the number of mm from y to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3.         30/1 mm]         Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 3: FC coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge d from ITB to paper. Applied when printing in full-color			

Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the **SP2878** settings are applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied only when printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 3. [-100~0/1 mm]

2881	Sp3:K:LL	Special Paper 3: K	Low			
2882	Sp3:K:ML	Special Paper 3: K	Medium Low			
2883	Sp3:K:MM	Special Paper 3: K	Medium			
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with <b>SP2304</b> . <b>SP2881</b> – Up to <b>SP2304 001:</b> Threshold 1 <b>SP2882</b> – More than <b>SP2304 001</b> Threshold 1, up to <b>SP23204 002</b> Threshold 2. <b>SP2883</b> – More than <b>SP2304 002</b> Threshold 2, up to <b>SP2304 003</b> Threshold 3. <b>SP2884</b> – More than <b>2304 003</b> Threshold 3, up to <b>SP2304 004</b> Threshold 4. <b>SP2885</b> – More than <b>2304 004</b> Threshold 4 These settings apply only to the image area printed on Special Paper 3 in black-					
	and-white mode.	2881	2882	2883		
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]		
008	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/5%]				
009	Side1:SepAC					
012	Side2:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
013	Side2:SepDC	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
014	Side2:SepAC					
2884	Sp3:K:MH	Special Paper 3: K				
2885	Sp3:K:HH	Special Paper 3: K	High			
		2884	2885			
007	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
008	Side1:SepDC					
009	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
012	Side2:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
013	Side2:SepDC					
014	Side2:SepAC					

2891	Sp3:FC:LL	Special Paper 3: F	C Low				
2892	Sp3:FC:ML	Special Paper 3: F	C Medium Low				
2893	Sp3:FC:MM	Special Paper 3: F	C Medium				
	These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer						
		bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from					
	the temperature/humidity		esholds set with SP2	304.			
	SP2891 – Up to SP2304						
	SP2892 – More than SP						
	SP2893 – More than SP						
	SP2894 – More than 230 SP2895 – More than 230		up to <b>5P2304 004</b> 1	nreshold 4.			
	These settings apply onl		orinted on Special P	aper 3 in full-color			
	mode.	y to the image area j					
		2891	2892	2893			
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]			
018	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/5%]		[10~250/5%]			
019	Side1:SepAC			[10~250/5%]			
027	Side2:PTR	[10~250/5%]		[10~250/5%]			
028		[10~250/5%]					
029							
2894	Sp3:FC:MH	Special Paper 3: F					
2895	Sp3:FC:HH	Special Paper 3: F	-				
		2894	2895				
017	Side1:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]				
018	Side1:SepDC	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]				
019	Side1:SepAC	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]				
027	Side2:PTR	[10~250/5%]	[10~250/5%]				
028	Side2:SepDC						
029	Side2:SepAC						

2901	Disp T/H Sn:K_PCU	Te	emperature/Humidity Ser	nsor: PCU
	<ul> <li>This SPs display the the temperature (oC) and humidity (both relative and absolute readings of the temperature and humidity sensor located at the black PCU on the right side of the machine. These readings are updated every 60 sec.</li> <li>001~004 display the current readings.</li> <li>005~008 display the previous readings.</li> </ul>			
001	Temp Disp	005	Temp:Prev	Range: 0~100/1 deg.
002	Rel Humidity Disp	006	Rel Humid:Prev	Range: 0~100/1% RH.
003	Abs Humidity Disp	007	Abs Humid:Prev	Range: 0~1000 g/m <sup>3</sup>
004	Env Disp:Current	008	Env Disp:Prev	

2902	Set Temp: K_PCU		S	et Temperature: PCU: Forced Setting	
	Use these settings to turn detection. [0~5/1]		off ו	off the temperature/humidity sensor, or set its level of	
	0:	Sensor Detect	3	MM:	
	1:	LL	4	MH:	
	2:	ML	5	HH:	

2903	Env Thresh:K_PCU Room Temperature Correction Threshold: PCU	
	This SP sets the threshold	value of LL and ML for the current room temperature.
001	Abs Humid:Thresh1	[0~10000/0 g/m <sup>3</sup> ]
002	Abs Humid:Thresh2	[0~10000/m <sup>3</sup> ]
003	Abs Humid:Thresh3	[0~10000/m <sup>3</sup> ]
004	Abs Humid:Thresh4	[0~10000/m <sup>3</sup> ]

2904	Blade Bend Ctrl	Blade Bend Prevention Pattern Control	
	A blade-bend prevention pattern is created with K toner on the ITB between every copy image to lubricate the ITB cleaning blade so it will not bend or scour the surface of the ITB. These SPs set 1) pattern creation interval, 2) density of the pattern, 3) whether the pattern is displayed.		
	Note: This function is OF machine.	F. Changing this setting is normally not required for this	
001	Pattern Interval	Sets the number of pages between patterns. [0~200/1 pg.]	
002	Pattern Light	Sets the density of the pattern. [0~63/1]	
003	Page Cnt Disp	Displays the count for the number of blade prevention patterns. [0~200/1 pg.]	

2905	Used Toner Mtr 2	Used Toner Motor 2 Control	
	distributes the used tone near-full motor that rotate	s provided with a near-full sensor and an augur that evenly er inside the bottle. To extend the life of the waste toner bottle es this augur, the motor and augur do not operate is turned on only after a prescribed amout of toner has been	Service Tables
001	Toner Consumed	Sets the amount of toner to be used before the toner [1~10/1 g]	
002	Waste Tnr M Time	Sets the amount of time the motor remains on. [1~10/1 sec.]	

## Group 3000

3001	TD Sn:Vt Display	TD Sensor: Vt Display
	that the machine u The toner density i inversely proportio If toner densit If toner densit Note: These readin logic to control the difference between time of the subhop	nt value of Vt (output voltage of the TD sensor). This is the value ses to calculate the density of the toner in each development unit. s checked after every page prints. The TD sensor output voltage is nal to the toner density: y is high, the voltage is low. y is low, the voltage is high. ngs are used to control toner supply. When the machine uses PID machine (the default method selected with SP3301 001). The to Vt and Vtref is calculated and this result is used to control the on per clutches that control the supply of toner to the PCUs. For more Control" in Section "6. Details" of the Service Manual.
001	Current Val:K	[0.00~5.00/00.00/0.1 V]
002	Current Val:M	
003	Current Val:C	
004	Current Val:Y	

3002	Vtcnt:Disp/Set	Display Vtcnt (TD Sensor Control Voltage)
	TD sensor control value of SP3002-0 large adjustments determined when	to 004 to display and confirm the present Vtcnt setting. Vtcnt is the voltage. If there is a large difference between this value and the 005 to 008 (Initial Vtcnt), this means that over time Vtcnt will require due to environmental conditions. The initial value of Vtcnt is the developer is initialized. This value is used as a reference to e auto process control self check and when the TD sensor checks between pages.
001	Current Val:K	[0~1200/0 V]
002	Current Val:M	
003	Current Val:C	
004	Current Val:Y	
005	Initial Val:K	[0~1200/0 V]
006	Initial Val:M	
007	Initial Val:C	
008	Initial Val:Y	

3003	Vtref:Disp/Set	Set/Display Vtref
		he TD sensor target voltage. This target voltage is inversely
	proportional to the	e density of the toner:
	<ul> <li>If the target is</li> </ul>	s high, toner density is lowered.
	<ul> <li>If the target is</li> </ul>	s low, toner density is raised.
		s readings of the ID sensor patterns between pages to determine
		er coverage and compared with the threhold values for the upper
		coverate. The result of this calculation is used to calculate Vtref.
		TD sensor reference voltage. It is frequently updated to stabilize
	the toner concentr	ration in the development unit.
001	Current Val:K	[0~5.00/0 V]
002	Current Val:M	
003	Current Val:C	
004	Current Val:Y	
005	Initial Val:K	[0~5.00/0 V]
006	Initial Val:M	
007	Initial Val:C	
008	Initial Val:Y	

3021	Set Vt Shift	Set Vt Shift Amount
		Vt (TD sensor output voltage) in the low speed mode nachine then uses this value to calculate Vt for low speed
001	Shift (Low Spd):K	[0~500/0 V]
002	Shift (Low Spd):M	
003	Shift (Low Spd):C	
004	Shift (Low Spd):Y	

3042	Set Vtref Cor	Set Vtref Correction
	Vtref is frequently updated	d in the toner supply cycle to stabiize the concentration of
		ef is corrected between every printed page in the paper path
		ints listed below for each color. This is the default setting (0)
		, you can use this SP to switch this function off.
		e voltage). It is frequently updated to stabilize the toner
	concentration in the devel	
001	Vtref Corr Mode	[0~1/1] <b>0:On</b> , 1:Off
		Setting this SP to <b>1</b> switches of Vtref correction between
		pages.
002	Corr Amt(+):k	[0~100/0 V]
003	Corr Amt(+):M	
004	Corr Amt(+):C	
005	Corr Amt(+):Y	
006	Corr Amt(-):k	[0~100/0 V]
007	Corr Amt(-):M	
008	Corr Amt (-) :C	
009	Corr Amt(-):Y	
010	Vtref Corr Target:K	[-100~0/cm <sup>2</sup> ]
011	Vtref Corr Target:M	
012	Vtref Corr Target:C	
013	Vtref Corr Target:Y	
014	Corr Thresh:M	[-100~0/cm <sup>2</sup> ]
015	Corr Thresh:C	
016	Corr Thresh:Y	
017	Corr Thresh:K	

3101	ID Pattern:Disp	ID Sensor Pattern Coverage Display
	between pages. The much reflectivity frequencies hatched pattern.	Int toner to be used (coverage) to create the ID sensor patterns he ID sensors cannot accurately detect the patterns if there is too om the black toner. This SP changes the solid ID sensor pattern to a I sets detection and update timing for the creation of the ID sensor
001	Applied:K	[0~2000/cm <sup>2</sup> ]
002	Applied:M	
003	Applied:C	
004	Applied:Y	

3111	ID Sn:Voffset	Voffset Value Detected by ID Sensor DFU
		ge of the directly reflected light when the LED of the ID
	sensor is switched off.	
001	Voffset_Reg:Col:F	[0~500/0 V]
002	Voffset_Dif:Col:F	
003	Voffset_Reg:K:R	

3121	Adjusted Vsg	Vsg Reading After Vsg Adjustment
	of recent Vsg adjustm	<ol> <li>results of the most recent Vsg adjustment, 2) averaged value ents. This can be done for both ID sensors. The rear sensor is</li> <li>and the front sensor is the color ID sensor (Y,M,C).</li> </ol>
001	Vsg_Reg:Col:Last	[0~500/0 V]
002	Vsg_Dif:Col:Last	
003	Vsg_Reg:K:Last	
004	Vsg_Dif:K:Last	
005	Vsg_Reg:Col:Ave	
006	Vsg_Dif:Col:Ave	
007	Vsg_Reg:K:Ave	

3131	Isfg After Vsg	Ifsg After Reading Adjusted Vsg
	Displays as a PWM value (pulse width modulation) the level of the ID sensor LED after Vsg has been adjusted. Normal Vsg readings of the ITB bare surface reflectivity	
	should be in the ra	inge 4.0±0.2V.
001	lfsg:Col:Ctr	[0~4096/1]
002	lfsg:K:Last	
003	lfsg:Col:Ave	Not used
004	lfsg:K:Ave	Not used

3141	ID Sn:Vmin	Vmin Value Read by ID Sensor
		num values read from the 10-grade patterns read by the ID sensors ntrol. The "Front" is the color ID sensor (Y,M,C), and the "Rear" is or.
001	Vmin:Col(Front)	[0~500/0 V]
002	Vmin:K(Rear)	

3161	Set ID Pattern	Set ID Sensor Pattern
		rage of black ID sensor pattern between sheets. During toner or pattern is created between the prescribed number of sheets

3171	ID Pattern:Int	ID Sensor Pattern: Black Interval
	Sets the number of pages between which the ID sensor patterns are created on the ITB. Normally, the ID sensor patterns are created and read every 10 pages.	
001	Create Int:K	[0~100/1]
002	Create Int:M	
003	Create Int:C	
004	Create Int:Y	

3194	ID Coeff Display	ID Sensor Sensitivity Coefficient Display
	Displays the most re	ecent and averaged readings of the sensitivity correction coeffients
	(K2 and K5).	
001	K2:Col:Last	[0~10000/0]
002	K5:Col:Last	
005	K2:Col:Ave	
006	K5:Col:Ave	

3251	Tnr Supply Time	Toner Calibration Time: Display
		the length of time the sub hopper clutch remained on to send
	toner to the sub hopper a	after a new toner cartridge was installed.
001	K	[0~10000/1 sec.]
002	Μ	
003	С	
004	Y	
005	Toner Pump CL:K	Use these SPs to display the accumulated drive time for
006	Toner Pump CL:M	each powder pump clutch before installing a new one.
007	Toner Pump CL:C	These SPs are reset to zero after the clutches are replaced.
008	Toner Pump CL:Y	

3301	Tnr Supp	y Select Toner Supply Method	
001	K	[0~2/1]	
002	М	0: Fixed toner supply	
003	С	1: PID Toner Supply	
004	Y	Only use this for specified troubleshooting procedures in Section "4 Troubleshooting".	

3302	Tnr Supply	Select Toner Supply Rate
		ply rate for fixed toner supply mode. The rate is set by adjusting the er supply clutch. This setting is used only if SP3301 is set to "0".
001	Supply Rate:K	[0~100/1%]
002	Supply Rate:M	
003	Supply Rate:C	
004	Supply Rate:Y	

3303	Tnr Supply Rate	Toner Supply Rate: Display
	Displays for confirma	tion the toner supply rate of toner supply control using the PID
		ipply rate is calculated as:
	Toner Supply Rat	e = Toner Supply Time/Time Allowed for Toner Supply x 100
	where:	
	<ul> <li>Time is measured i</li> </ul>	n msec.
	<ul> <li>"Time Allowed for "</li> </ul>	Foner Supply (ms)" = Length of the paper (mm) + Width of the
	<b>U</b>	s (mm)/Drum speed (mm/s) x 1000.
	Note: The toner supp	ly control method is selected with SP3301.
001	Last Val:K	[0~100/1%]
002	Last Val:M	
003	Last Val:C	
004	Last Val:Y	
005	Last 10 Ave:K	
006	Last 10 Ave:M	
007	Last 10 Ave:C	
008	Last 10 Ave:Y	

3304	Tnr SupplyLimits	Set Upper/Lower Limits for Toner Supply
	Sets the upper and lower limits for toner supply supply rate with the fuzzy logic (PID) used as the toner supply control method. This SP takes effect only if <b>1</b> or <b>2</b> is selected for <b>SP3301</b> to enable fuzzy logic as the toner supply method. The machine reads 1) the maximum and minimum settings of this SP and 2) the toner consumption of the output image surface (pixel count data). Then it calculates the maximum and minimum amount of toner for that image. After this is done, toner supply amount will not change during the job, even if Vt or any other measurement determines that more toner is necessary.	
001	Max Supply Rate:K	[0~100/1%]
002	Max Supply Rate:M	
003	Max Supply Rate:C	
004	Max Supply Rate:Y	
005	Min Supply Time:K	[0~1000/1 ms]
006	Min Supply Time:M	
007	Min Supply Time:C	
008	Min Supply Time:Y	

3306	Tnr Supply Coeff	Set Toner Supply Coefficient
	These SPs set the toner supp supply control.	oly coefficients for the fuzzy logic method of toner
	Note: These SP codes opera	te only when 1 or 2 is selected for SP3301.
001 – 004	Ratio Coeff1:K, M, C, Y	[0~4300/1]
021 – 024	P_Vt_Coeff:K, M, C, Y	[0~100/1%]
025 – 028	I_Vt_Coeff:K, M, C, Y	[0~1000/1]
029 – 032	Si:K, M, C, Y	[-500~500/ <b>0</b> ]
033 –036	P_Px1_Coeff1:K, M, C, Y	[0~100/1%]
037 – 040	P_Px1_Coeff3:K, M, C, Y	[0~255/ <b>100</b> ]

3401	TE Detect Set	Detect/No Setting DFU
	These SP codes modify the operation of the toner end sensor. Switches toner end off and on.	
	[0~1/1] <b>0</b> :Detect, 1: No Detect	

3411	TE Pgs Min:K		
	Use this SP to set the number of pages to print after the toner near-end alert has been issued. Once the specified number of pages have printed, the machine issues the toner-end alert, and the machine will not operate until the toner supply has been replenished. Note:		
	(005~006).	unters for toner end, page count (003~4) and pixel count	
		ert is issued by whichever limit is exceed first, page count rerage (005~006).	
001	TE Sheets Min:K	Sets the minimum number of pages to print (black or color)	
002	TE Sheets Min:Col	after the toner near-end alert until toner end. [0~50/1]	
003	TE Sheets Max:K	Sets the maximum number of pages to print (black-and-white,	
004	TE Sheets Max:Co	<ul> <li>or full-color) after the toner near-end alert until toner end, based on page count (regardless of coverage).</li> <li>[0~1000/1]</li> </ul>	
005	TE:Pixels:K	Sets the number of images to print (black-and-white or full-	
006	TE:Pixels:Col	color) after the toner near-end alert until toner end based on coverage (30 A4 pages at 100% coverage). [0~100/1]	
007	TNE:Sheets:K	Sets the number of times that the toner supply clutch is	
008	TNE:Sheets:Col	activated when toner is low, to detect the toner end condition. [0~30/1]	

3501	Select ProCon	Select Process Control Method
	The settings of these SP of	codes modify the operation of the automatic process control
	self-check. Automatic process control is done at these times:	
	When the machine is turned on	
	• At the end of the job, if t	he number of pages since the previous process contro,
	exceeds the value of SP 3551	
	Before ACC adjustment	
	When the developer is initialized with SP3811.	
	•	ontrol, see "Process Control" in Section "6. Details" of the
	service manual.	
001	Potential Control	
	[0~2/1] <b>0:Auto</b> , 1:Fixed	
		(with the front door closed), the process control self-check
		e bias voltages set with the Group 3 SP codes. The
	Referenced SPs with "A	ifferent, depending on whether "Auto" or "Fixed" is set:
	SP3575 000~008	Dev DC Control
	SP3575 000~008 SP3576 000~008	Chrg DC Control
		0
	SP3577 000~008	Chrg AC Control
	SP3581 000~008	LD Power Control
	SP3551 001, 002	Procon Int
	SP3554 001	Init ProCon Set
	SP3801 001	DevSetup Execute
	SP3811 001~006	DevSetup Execute
	Reference SPs with "Fix	
	SP2201 001~009	Set DC Charge
	SP2202 001~009	Set AC Charge
	SP2211 001~009	Set LD Power
000	SP2212 001~009	Set Dev DC
002	Potential Ctrl	Switches process control gamma correction off (0) and on
		(1). [0:1/1]
002	Depaity Adi Mada	[0~1/1]
003	Density Adj Mode	Sets the execution timing of toner density adjustment with the automatic process control self-check.
		[0~2/1]
		0: Do not execute, 1: 1st Power On, 2:1st Power On &
		Job End
004	ACC Before ProCon	Determines whether process control is executed before a
		gradation test pattern is printed using the operation panel
		with:
		[User Tools]> Maintenance> Auto Color Calibration
		[0~2/ <b>2</b> ]
		0:Do not execute
		1:Execute Potential Control
		2:Execute Potential Control and Toner Density
		Adjustment
005	DnstyAdjTimes	Sets the upper limit of the loop wherein density is
		adjusted during process control. Default: 10

006	DevGamma(EnvCorrct)	Switches correction of the development gamma adjustment with the readings of the temperature/humidity sensor off and on. Touch either the "OFF" or "ON" button to toggle the setting.
007	DevGamma(TimeCorrct)	Switches the timing of the development gamma adjustment during process control off and on. Touch either the "OFF" or "ON" button to toggle the setting.

0.54 5			
3511	Poten Tbl:Dis		
	<ul> <li>Displays the numbers in the Potential Table selected for process control.</li> <li>The Potential Table is the lookup table that contains the potential target values (Vd, Vb, Vl) for adjustment of the development potential.</li> <li>Vd: Initial charge applied to the drum by the charge roller.</li> <li>Vb: Development bias</li> <li>VI: Value used to correct the strength of the lasers.</li> <li>A 10-grade pattern is first created on the drum and then transferred to the ITB:</li> <li>On the drum, the potential sensor uses their readings of this pattern to determine development potential.</li> <li>On the ITB, the ID sensors use their readings of this pattern to determine the amount of toner coverage necessary.</li> <li>For more about process control, see "Process Control" in Section "6. Details" of the Service Manual</li> </ul>		
001	K Value	Displays the current numbers in the Potential Table for each color.	
002	M Value	[1~99/1]	
003	C Value		
004	Y Value		
005	Target: K	Displays the target values for Vd*, Vb*, VI* after measurements of	
006	Target: M	ambient conditions and compensating for residual charge on the drum	
007	Target: C	(Vr).	
008	Target: Y	If the actual development gamma is less than the target development gamma, this SP shows a smaller value than the selected pointer table value. If the actual development gamma is greater than the target development gamma, this SP shows a larger value than the selected pointer table value. [1~99/1]	
009	Initial: K	Not used at this time (March 2005).	
010	Initial: M		
011	Initial: C		
012	Initial: Y		

31 Mar	ch 2005	SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES
3531	ProCon Target	Set Target Amount for Process Control
	This SP sets the v control self-check. pattern, calculates voltage), and then power levels nece <b>Note</b> • This SP can be	value for the maximum coverage to be achieved by the process Process control then analyzes the readings of the 10-grade the potentials required for develoment gamma and Vk (starting determines the drum charge levels, development biases, and LD essary to achieve the target coverage. used to darken printed images.
001	<ul> <li>After this SP is of Max Tnr Amt:K</li> </ul>	changed, process control must be executed manually with SP3820.
001	Max Thr Amt:M	
002	Max Thr Amt:C	
003	Max Thr Amt:Y	
004		
3551	ProCon Int	Set Interval Between Process Control Executions
	control executes a interrupts a job to	g of the process control self-check for job end. Normally, process automatically after 250 jobs. The process control self-check never execute, even if it is time for the next self-check.
001	B/W Mode	[0~2000/1]
002	Color Mode	[0~2000/1]
3554	Init ProCon Set	Set Process Control for 1st Power On
	temperature rema	tic process control self-check will not execute if the fusing ins above 100C (default). 4 001 to display the results of the process control self-check.
3561	Dev γ:Disp/Set	Set/Display Gamma Value for Development
	order for the mach coverage. During drums and then or and the ID sensor Plotting the develo	e of development gamma, an indicator of development capacity. In hine to determine the development potential to obtain the target processing control the 10-grade patterns are created first on the n the ITB. The potential sensors read the development potential, s read the amount of coverage on the ITB. opment potential on the X axis against coverage on the Y-axis elopment gamma curve. For more, see "Process Control" in Section
	The normal range	for development gamma is greater than 0.3 and less than 6.0.
001	Actual Val:K	[0.00~6.00/0.1]
002	Actual Val:M	4
003	Actual Val:C	4
004	Actual Val:Y	4
005	Target Val:K	4
006	Target Val:M	4
007	Target Val:C	4
008 009	Target Val:Y Initial Val: K	4
010	Initial Val: K	
010	Initial Val: M	4
012	Initial Val: Y	

3562	Display Vk	Display Vk (Development Start Voltage)		
	Displays Vk, the development start voltage. This development start voltage is used			
		to indicate whether the developer has deteriorated. However, this is only a rough		
	measurement due	to other factors:		
	<ul> <li>A low thresho</li> </ul>	Id setting for the target development gamma.		
	<ul> <li>Operational v</li> </ul>	ariations between machines		
		ne ID sensor measurements		
	Normal range fo	r Vk: -150V to +150V		
3563	Display Vr	Display Vr (Residual Potential)		
		that remains on the surface of the drum after full exposure to the		
		ce of this residual voltage is used as an indicator to determine the		
	level of deterioration of the drum. Vr becomes larger as the drum deteriorates.			
	Normal range for Vr: -200V to 0V			
001	К	[-300 to +300/1 V]		
002	М			
003	С			
004	Y			

3571	Display V	<b>′</b> 0	Display Vd (Value for Control of Charge Potential)
			for <b>V0</b> , the measure of drum potential on dark areas of the drum
	before las	er expos	sure.
	Normal ra	nge: -70	0 V to –500 V
001	К	[-999~0	D/1 V]
002	М		
003	С		
004	Y		

3572	Display Vdhome	Display VI (Value for Control of Halftone Drum Potential)
		or Vdhome, the electrical potential of the drum after a fixed dc
	bias (dc –700V) is a	pplied by the drum charge roller.
	Normal range: -700	/ to _500V
001	VI Ctrl:Half:K	[-999~0/1 V]
002	VI Ctrl:Half:M	
003	VI Ctrl:Half:C	
004	VI Ctrl:Half:Y	

3573	Targ	et Poten:Vd	Display Target Potential (VdDisplay)	
	•	Vd (read by the potential sensor) is the potential of dark areas of a drum before full		
			P displays the value of Vd used by processing control to	
			otential (Vd). The machine performs a calculation using Vk and the maximum coverage, and then uses the result to	
			correct voltage from the Potential Table. This retrieved value	
			arge of the charge roller that charges the drums.	
3574	Targ	et Poten:VI	Display Target Potential (VIDisplay)	
			al sensor) is the potential of the exposed areas after full laser	
			plays the value of VI used by processing control to determine	
	the target potential (VI). The machine performs a calculation using development			
	•	-	aximum coverage, and then uses the result to lookup and	
	retrieve the correct voltage from the Potential Table. This retrieved value is used to raise the input current of the laser diode			
001				
	K	[-999~0/1 V]		
002	М			
003	С			
004	Y			

3575	Dev DC Control	Display Value for Control of Development DC
	Displays the deveopment bias that was referenced duing processing control and used in the the previous jobs (Process control is set for <b>Auto</b> with <b>SP3501 001</b> .)	
001	Std Spd:K	[-800~0/1 V]
002	Std Spd:M	Std Spd (normal speed): 52 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup>
003	Std Spd:C	
004	Std Spd:Y	
005	Low Spd:K	[-800~0/1 V]
006	Low Spd:M	Low Spd (half-speed): Paper weight 128 o 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>
007	Low Spd:C	
008	Low Spd:Y	

3576	Chrg DC Control	Display Value for Control of Development DC
001	Std Spd:K	[-999 to -200/1 V]
002	Std Spd:M	Std Spd (normal speed): 52 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup>
003	Std Spd:C	
004	Std Spd:Y	
006	Low Spd:K	[-999 to -200/1 V]
007	Low Spd:M	Low Spd (half-speed): Paper weight 128 o 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>
008	Low Spd:C	
009	Low Spd:Y	

3577	Chrg AC Control	Display Value for Control of Development AC
		s that was referenced during processing control and used in the
	previous jobs. (Pro	cess control is set for Auto with SP3501 001.)
001	Std Spd:K	[0~300/0 kV]
002	Std Spd:M	Std Spd (normal speed): 52 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup>
003	Std Spd:C	
004	Std Spd:Y	
006	Low Spd:K	[0~300/0 kV]
007	Low Spd:M	Low Spd (half-speed): Paper weight 128 o 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>
008	Low Spd:C	
009	Low Spd:Y	

3581	LD Power Control	Display Value for Control of LD Power
		wer that was referenced during processing control and used in
	the previous jobs. (	(Process control is set for Auto with SP3501 001.)
001	Std Spd:K	[-117~127/1]
002	Std Spd:M	Std Spd (normal speed): 52 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup>
003	Std Spd:C	
004	Std Spd:Y	
006	Low Spd:K	[-117~127/1]
007	Low Spd:M	Low Spd (half-speed): Paper weight 128 o 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>
800	Low Spd:C	
009	Low Spd:Y	

3605	Factory Files	Set Up Developer <b>DFU</b>
3701	Small Img Mode	Set Small Image Mode
	This feature is not	presently not used in process control (March 2005)
	[0~1/1]	

3801	Init TD Sensor	Execute Developer Setup	
		cing the developer in one or more of the PCUs when servicing	
	the machine. This SP:		
	<ul> <li>Checks for the presence of developer in the development unit. (This ensures that the film seal has been removed from the developer pack.)</li> </ul>		
	Initializes TD sensor. (Calibrates Vtcnt).		
	Calibrates development gamma and calibrates toner density. Also does the		
	MUSIC check and c		
		r drum and cleaning blade replacement. <b>SP3811</b> should	
	always be done at the	-	
	, 3	installation procedure after the developer and toner have	
	been installed, and		
	<ol> <li>During machine ma replaced.</li> </ol>	intenance after a drum and cleaning blade have been	
	•	prevents the blade from scouring a dry drum.	
001	All Colors	[0~1/1]	
002	Col (Y, M, C not K)		
003	K		
004	Μ		
005	С		
006	Y		

3802	TD Sn Init OK?	Display Result of TD Sensor Initialization	
	This SP displays the results of the TD sensor initialization with <b>SP3801 001~006</b> . The machine returns the status of the previous initialization with numbers, 1 digit for		
	each PCU. The numbers are read in order as "K, M, C, Y".		
	Four numbers are used to indicate the status of the execution.		
	1: OK (success)		
	2: Cancelled (door opened, etc.)		
	4: Not executed (not selected for execution; this is not an error)		
	9: Vtcnt abnormal. Vtcnt (TD sensor control voltage) could not be adjusted to within		
	2.5±0.2V. The machine issued a TD sensor error for the PCU where there is a problem (SC372~SC375).		

3810	CIngInitSet	xe	Initial Cleaning After Replacement
	These SPs should be cleaning blade.		executed after replacement of the drum cleaning roller or
001	All Colors		
002	Col	Excludes K (Black)	
003	К	Allows adjusment of colors separately.	
004	М		
005	С		
006	Y		

3811	DevSetup Execute	Execute Developer Setup
	<ul> <li>Do this SP during the i have been installed in replaced. This SP:</li> <li>Confirms that all the developer is present</li> <li>Switches on toner si</li> <li>Sends toner to the F blades from bending</li> <li>Initializes the TD ser</li> <li>Starts the process c adjusts toner density</li> <li>Starts the MUSIC ser</li> <li>After doing SP3811</li> <li>SP3811 001 is done blade has been replaced.</li> </ul>	Installation procedure after the developer and toner cartridges the machine, or after the drum and cleaning blade have been seals have been removed from each developer cartridge and in each PCU. Upply and sends toner to the sub hopper of each PCU. PCU to coat the drum with toner. This prevents the cleaning and scouring the drums. nsor. ontrol self-check to set the target for development gamma and /. equence to check and correct color image offset. always to <b>SP3812</b> to confirm that <b>SP3811</b> executed correctly. only at machine installation, or after a drum and cleaning
001	Devr Setup:All	[0~1/1]
002	Devr Setup:Col	
003	Devr Setup:K	
004	Devr Setup:M	
005	Devr Setup:C	
006	Devr Setup:Y	

3812	DevSetup Execute	Display Result of Developer Setup Execution
	displays a "1" to confirr	nat SP3811 executed correctly. After execution the machine n that SP3811 executed correctly for each PCU. The "1111" turn value for each PCU: K, M, C, Y

3813	Used Tnr Mode Exe	Used Toner Mode Execute
		rinting in full-color mode, the waste toner in the PCUs are e toner bottle for the amount of time specified with <b>SP3813</b>
001	All Colors	[0~1/1] 0:Off, 1: On
002	K Only	
003	Set Op. Time	[10~240/1 sec.]

3820	Manual ProCon	Execute Process Control Manually	
	Use this SP to execute process control manually.		
	3820 001 does potential control only.		
	3820 002 does potential control and toner density adjustment.		
	Note:		
	• You must do SP3820 to enable any values you change with SP3531 (Procon Target).		
	<ul> <li>Use SP3561 to disp</li> </ul>	lay the resuls of SP3820 execution.	
001	Normal ProCon	[0~0/1]	
002	Exe Density Adj		

3821	ProCon OK?	Display I	Result of Process Control Execution
	used to troublesho	ot proces	story of process control executions. These SP codes are sing control. For more, see "4.2 Process Control "4. Troubleshooting".
001	History:Last	006	History:Last 6
002	History:Last 2	007	History:Last 7
003	History:Last 3	008	History:Last 8
004	History:Last 4	009	History:Last 9
005	History:Last 5	010	History:Last 10

3891	Set ProCon Send	Set ProCon Send Set Up Sending Process Control Data to NRS Center			
	This feature is not presently used. (March 2005)				
	[0~1/1]				
			Sei Ta		
3900	0         RsetProConSP         Reset All Process Control SP Codes				
	Do this SP to reset all process control related SP codes to their default values.				

erv Tabl	ice	es
<u>e</u> <u>c</u>	Ž	١d
S	Se	Ţ

3900	RsetProConSP	Reset All Process Control SP Codes
	Do this SP to reset all process control related SP codes to their default values.	

## Group 4000

4008	Sub Scan Mag	Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment
	Adjusts the sub-scan magnification by changing the scanner motor speed.	
	[-10~+10/0.1%]	

4010	Sub Scan Reg	Sub Scan Registration Adjustment	
	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the scanning start timing in the sul scan direction.		
	[-30~+30/0.1 mm]		

4011	Main Scan Reg         Main Scan Registration Adjustment		
	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the scanning start timing in the mair scan direction. <b>Note</b> : This adjustment is done for the ADF with <b>SP6006</b> (ADF Reg. Adj.).		
	[-25~+25/0.1 mm]		

4012	Set Scale Mask Set Mask for Scale Edge				
	Sets the blank margin at each side for erasing the original shadow caused by the gap between the original and the scale. This can be done for both scanning on the exposure glass (book mode) and the ADF (ADF) for the leading and trailing edges.				
001	Book:Sub LEdge	[0~30/0.1 mm]			
002	Book:Sub TEdge				
003	Book:Main:LEdge				
004	Book:Main:TEdge				
005	ADF:Sub:LEdge				
007	ADF:Main:LEdge				
008	ADF:Main:TEdge				

4013	Scan Free Run	Free Run: Scanner	
	Performs the scanner free run with the exposure lamp on or off for full-color, full size		
	(A3 or DLT).		
001	Lamp:OFF [0~1/1] 0:Off, 1:On		
002	Lamp:ON		

4014	Scan	Execute Scan DFU
	These SP	enable/disable detection of the scanner at its home position.
001	Enable	Enables detection of the scanner at its home position.
002	Disable	Disables detection of the scanner at its home position.

4000	Durat Ohio ala	Oat fas Dust Obash an ADE Europeuro Olass	
4020	Dust Check	Set for Dust Check on ADF Exposure Glass	
	These SP codes adjust the dust check operation at the ADF scanning glass and the white scanning belt.		
		s a warning could be removed from the glass by the originals in st is removed by passing originals, this is not detected and the	
	warning remains on.		
001	Dust Detect:On/Off	Switches the dust warning on and off. When this SP is on, a warning is issued if the check detects dust on the ADF scan glass or the white plate above the scanning glass. Always clean the ADF scanning glass and white plate before turning this SP on.	
		[0~1/1] 0:Off, 1:On	
002	Dust Detect:Lvl	Adjusts the sensitivity of the check. If you see black streaks in copies when no warning has been issued, raise the setting to increase the level of sensitivity. If warnings are issued when you see no black streaks in copies, lower the setting. [0~8/1]	
003	Dust Reject:LvI	Sets the level for vertical line correction caused by dust. A high setting can eliminate unwanted vertical lines caused by dust but it can also thin vertical lines of the original. [0~4/1]	

4205	B/W ADS LvI Black-and-White ADS Level	
	background level of the	ground level for black-and-white ADS. ADS mode detects the e original, also known as the peak white level, and removes make a white background. This setting initializes the SBU at

4301	APS Confirm         Confirm Correct Operation of APS	
	This SP confirms and displays the threshold for operation of the APS mode.	
	[0~255/1]	

4303	APS Min Size Set Minimum Size for APS Operation	
	Sets the minimum size [0~2/1] 0:No, 1:A5S, 2:	that the will be detected by APS A5L

4305	8K/16K Detect 8K/16K Detection		
	This SP enables the machine to recognize 8K/16K size paper automatically.		
	[0~1/1] 0: Off, 1: On		

4400	Org Edge Mask	Set the Mask for Original		
	This SP sets the area to be masked during platen (book) mode scanning.			
001	Book:Sub:LEdge	[0~30/0.1 mm]		
002	Book:Sub:TEdge			
003	Book:Main:LEdge			
004	Book:Main:Tedge			
005	ADF:Sub:LEdge			
007	ADF:Main:TEdge			
008	ADF:Main:TEdge			

4417	IPU Test Pattern		Set IPU Test Pa	Set IPU Test Pattern	
	Use this SP to select		the IPU test pattern to print.		print.
	Test Pattern		[0~24/1]	[0~24/1]	
	0	Scanned Image		13	Grid Pattern CMYK
	1	Gradation Main	Scan A	14	Color Patch CMYK
	2	Gradation Main	Scan B	15	Gray Pattern (1)
	3	Gradation Main Scan C		16	Gray Pattern (2)
	4	Gradation Main	Scan D	17	Gray Pattern (3)
	5	Gradation Sub	Scan 1	18	Shading Pattern
	6	Grid Pattern		19	Thin Line Pattern
	7	Slant Grid Patte	ern	20	Scanned + Grid Pattern
	8	Gradation RGB	CMYK	21	Scanned + Grayscale
	9	UCR Pattern		22	Scanned + Color Patch
	10	Color Patch 16	(1)	23	Scanned + Slant Grid C
	11	Color Patch 16	(2)	24	Scanned + Slant Grid D
	12	Color Patch 16	64		

4440	Saturation Adj	Adjust Color Saturation
	This SP adjusts the saturation	level for copying.
	[0~5/1]	
	0: High	
	1: Lowest	
	2: Lower	
	3: Default	
	4: Higher	
	5: Highest	

4501	ACC Target Den	ACC Target Notch Density
	This SP sets the target density for the ACC adjustment for machines connected with the Copier Connection Kit. For more see "4.3.1 Color Adjustment for Connected Copiers".	
001	Copy:K:Text	[0~50/1]
002	Copy:C:Text	
003	Copy:M:Text	
004	Copy:Y:Text	
005	Copy:K:Photo	
006	Copy:C:Photo	
007	Copy:M:Photo	
008	Copy:Y:Photo	

4505 ACC Cor:Bright		ACC Correction: Bright Areas
	Sets correction for bright areas for ACC correction. For more see "4.3.1 Color Adjustment for Connected Copiers".	
4506 ACC Cor:Dark ACC Correction: Dark		ACC Correction: Dark Areas
	Sets correction for dark areas for ACC correction.	
001 – 004	Master:K, M, C, Y	[-128~+128/1]
005 – 008	Slave:K, M, C, Y	

4540	Print Coverage	Print Coverage Correction	
	This SP corrects printer	coverage of 12 hues (RY, YR, YG, etc. x 4 Colors (K,	
	C, M, Y) for a total of 48	parameters.	
001 – 004	RY:K, C, M, Y	[-128~+128/1]	
005 – 008	YR:K, C, M, Y		Q
009 – 012	YG:K, C, M, Y		
013 – 016	GY:K, C, M, Y		
017 – 020	GC:K, C, M, Y		
021 – 024	CG:K, C, M, Y		
025 – 028	CB:K, C, M, Y		
029 – 032	BC:K, C, M, Y		
033 – 036	BM:K, C, M, Y		
037 – 040	MB:K, C, M, Y		
041 – 044	MR:K, C, M, Y		
045 – 048	RM:K, C, M, Y		
049 – 052	W:K, C, M, Y		
053 – 056	K:K, C, M, Y		

These SPs (**SP4550~SP4562**) allow adjustments for the MTF level, smoothing, brightness and contrast of the scanning applications used on the document server (scan-to-email, scan-to-folder).

4550	SApli:TxtPrt	Scanner Application: Text (Print)
4551	SApli:TxtOCR1	Scanner Application: Text (OCR)
4552	SApli:TxtOCR2	Scanner Application: Text (OCR: Dropout Color)
4553	SApli:T/P	Scanner Application: Text/Photo
4554	SApli:Photo	Scanner Application: Photo
4555	SApli:Gray	Scanner Application: Grayscale
4558	SApli:Col:T/P	Scanner Application: Color Text/Photo
4559	SApli:Col:PPr	Scanner Application: Color Photo Paper
4560	SApli:sRGB:T/P	Scanner Application: sRGB Text/Photo
4561	SApli:sRGB:PPr	Scanner Application: sRGB Color Photo Paper
4562	SApli:Auto Col	Scanner Application: Auto Color
005	MTF LvI:0-15	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. [0~15/1]
006	Smooth:0-7	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother. [0~7/1]
007	Brightness:1-255	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter. [1~255/1]
008	Contrast:1-255	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast. [1~255/1]

4600	Display SBU ID	Display the ID of the SBU DFU
		the SBU ID (includes VSBCNT_ID). If the ID is abnormal, this
	will generate SC144	
001	Board&VSBCNT	
002	DAGL	

4603	Do AGC	Execute AGC DFU
	This SP executes automatic g	ain control (AGC) for HP detection.
001	HP Detect:Enable	[0~1/1] 0:Off, 1:On
002	HP Detect:Disable	

4604	Open/Close FGATE	Open/Close FGATE <b>DFU</b>
	This SP opens and closes scanner FGATE. (FGATE is the laser write signal.)	
	[0~1/1] 0:Off, 1:On	

4609	White Plate:R         Standard White Plate Adjustment: Red DFU	
4610	White Plate: G Standard White Plate Adjustment: Green DFU	
4611	White Plate:B Standard White Plate Adjustmetn: Blue DFU	
	Red, Green, and BI	lay the reference voltages stored in NVRAM at the factory for ue before the machine was shipped. The SBU acquires these the machine is switched on.

4628	Gain Adj F	Range:R	Gain Adjustment Range: R DFU
4629	Gain Adj F	Range:G	Gain Adjustment Range: G DFU
4630	Gain Adj F	Range:B	Gain Adjustment Range: B <b>DFU</b>
	and BLUE		e SP display the current range for the gain of RED, GREEN, in the SBU after white level adjustment every time the
001	Color	[0~1/1]	
002	B/W		

4631	Gain Adj I	Range:R	Gain Adjustment Range: R DFU
		I on the SBU after v	splays the current range for the E (EVEN) or O (ODD) white level adjustment every time the machine is
001	RE	[0~1/1]	
002	RO		

4632	Gain Adj Range:G		Gain Adjustment Range: G DFU
	When switched on, this SP displays the current range for E (E) gain of GREEN or B/W in the ASCI on the SBU after white level time the machine is switched on.		ASCI on the SBU after white level adjustment every
001	Color:GE	[0~1023/1]	
002	Color:GO		
005	B/W:GE		
006	B/W:GO		

4633	Gain Adj Range:B	Gain Adjustment Range: B <b>DFU</b>
		splays the current range for E (EVEN) or O (ODD) gain BU after white level adjustment every time the machine
001	BE	
002	BO	

4641	White LvI Loop	White Level Loops DFU
	Displays the number of loops done color correction for AGC (Automatic Gain	
	Correction) during white level	adjustment.
001	Color	[0~1023/ <b>1</b> ]
002	B/W	

4646	Scan Auto	o Error	Error Flag for Automatic Adjustment: Scanning DFU	
	This SP se	This SP sets the error flag to display as the SBU is updated automatically when the		
	machine is	switched	on.	
001	Gain	[0x00~0x	FFFF]	
002	K Level			
	b7	GAIN_EF	R_BO	
	b6	GAIN_EF	R_BE	
	b5	GAIN_ERR_BK_GO		
	b4	GAIN_EF	R_BK_GE	
	b3	GAIN_EF	R_GO	
	b2	GAIN_EF	R_GE	
	b1	GAIN_EF	R_RO	
	b0	GAIN_EF	R_RE	

4647	HW Error Flag	Hardware Error Flag Adjustment: Scanning <b>DFU</b>
	This SP sets the erro switched on. [0x00~0x3F]	r flag to confirm machine ON processing when the machine is

4680	Fact G	ain Adj:R	Factory Gain Adjustment at Factory: Red DFU
	and E (		splays the setting done at the factory for RED O (ODD) I on the SBU after white level adjustment every time
001	RE	[0~1023/1]	
002	RO		

4681	Fact Gain Adj:G	Factory Gain Adjustment at Factory: Green DFU
		splays the setting done at the factory for GREEN and E (EVEN) gain in the ASCI on the SBU after white e machine is switched on.
001	Color:GE	[0~1023/1]
002	Color:GO	
005	B/W:GE	
006	B/W:GO	

4682	Fact G	ain Adj:B	Factory Gain Adjustment at Factory: Blue DFU
	(ODD)		splays the setting done at the factory for BLUE O he ASCI on the SBU after white level adjustment every on.
001	BE	[0~1023/1]	
002	BO		

4690	White LvI Peak:R	White Level Peak: Red Scan Data DFU
		codes display E (EVEN) or O (ODD) for the white level el detection (AGC) after the machine is switched on.
001	RE	[0~255/1]
002	RO	

#### SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

4691	White LvI Peak:G	White Level Peak: Green Scan Data DFU
	When switched on, these SP codes display E (EVEN) or O (ODD) for the white level detection (AGC) after the machine is switched on	
001	Color:GE	[0~255/1]
002	Color:GO	
005	B/W:GE	
006	B/W:GO	

4692	White LvI Peak:B	White Level Peak: Blue Scan Data DFU
		codes display E (EVEN) or O (ODD) for the white level vel detection (AGC)a fter the machine is switched on
001	BE	[0~255/1]
002	BO	

4693	Black Lv	d Scan:R	Black Level Scan Value: Red DFU
			codes display E (EVEN) or O (ODD) for the black level D after the machine is switched on
001	REE	[0~255/1]	
002	ROE		
003	REO		
004	ROO		

4694	Black LvI Scan:G	Black Level Scan Value: Green DFU	
		codes display E (EVEN) or O (ODD) for the black level	C O
	check done in the SBU for GREEN after the machine is switched on		
001	Color:GEE	[0~255/1]	Serv
002	Color:GOE		
003	Color:GEO		
004	Color:GOO		
005	B/W:GEE		
006	B/W:GOE		
007	B/W:GEO		
008	B/W:GOO		

4695	Black LvI Scan:B	Black Level Scan Value: Blue DFU
		codes display E (EVEN) or O (ODD) for the black level UE after the machine is switched on
001	BEE	[0~255/1]
002	BOE	
003	BEO	
004	BOO	

4800	DF Densit	y Adj	ADF Density Adjustment
	This SP adjusts the white shading parameter for scanning an image with the		ding parameter for scanning an image with the ADF.
	Adjusts the different.	e density level if the	ID of outputs from the DF and Platen mode are
001	:R	[1~200/1]	
002	:G	[1~200/1]	
003	:В	[1~200/1]	

4902	Disp ACC [	Data	Display ACC Data	
	This SP outputs the final data read at the end of A		CC execution. A zero is returned if	
	there was a	n error reading the data.		
001	R_DATA1	Photo C Patch L	evel 1 (8-bit)	[0~255/1]
002	G_DATA1	Photo M Patch L	evel 1 (8-bit)	
003	B_DATA1	Photo Y Patch L	evel 1 (8-bit)	
004	R_DATA2	Photo C Patch L	evel 17 (8-bit)	
005	G_DATA2	Photo M Patch L	evel 17 (8-bit)	
006	B_DATA2	Photo Y Patch L	evel 17 (8-bit)	

4904	Test Scan IPU	Test Scanner IPU Board	
	This SP tests the components of the BICU:		
	• Test 1 performs write and read tests the CPU by conducting a compare check that reads and writes to each register of the ASIC.		
	<ul> <li>Test 2 performs a check of the image paths and connections and displays the location of a defect of an error is detected.</li> </ul>		
001	Test 1 [0~65535/1]		
002	Test 2		

4905	Select Dithering	Select Dithering Type
	This SP changes the threshold parameters of error diffusion.	
	[0~255/1]	

4907	SBU Pattern	Set SBU Test Pattern
	This SP selects the pattern ge	enerated by the SBU.
001	Test Pattern	[0~4/1]
002	Select Fixed Patt	[0~0x3FF/ <b>0x3FF</b> ]

491	3 Man Gamma Adj	Manual Printer Gamma Adjustment:
		printer gamma for black, cyan, magenta, and yellow in ne last section of Section "3. Replacement and

4929	Man Scan Gamma Adj	Manual Scan Gamma Adjustment
		printer gamma for black, cyan, magenta, and yellow in nore, see the last section of Section "3. Replacement

4932	MainScan Dot Adj	Main Scan Dot Position Adjustment
	•	alignment of the red or blue filter on the CCD. For
	more, see the last section in S	Section "3. Replacement and Adjustment".
001	R:Left	[0~9/1]
002	R:Right	
003	B:Left	
004	B:Right	

4954	Read/Restore Std	Chart Standard: Read/Restore
	Use this SP to calibrate the scanner gamma on each machine connected with the Copier Connection Kit.	
001	Read New Chart	Reads the "Standard Color Test Chart" to calibrate the scanner gamma curve for two machines connected with the Copier Connection Kit. Do this SP with the test chart on each connected machine.
002	Recall Prev Chart	Restores the scanner gamma to the previous value (not the factory setting).
004	Set Std Chart	DFU

4991	Image	Path SW Image Path Switch	
	Use this	s SP to use the 10-key pad to enter the number to determine the image path.	
001	IPU 0	~14/1]	
	0	DFID input RGB images (upper 8 bits)	
	1	Synchronous RGB images in DFID	
	2	Data with shading correction on	
	3	Data with shading correction off	
	4	4 Data before black offset correction	
	5	Data after black offset correction	
	6	Shading data	
	7	7 Test pattern data (grayscale)	
	8	RGB image after line interval correction	
	9	RGB image after dot correction and pre-gamma	
	10	10 RGB image after vertial line correction	
	11	RGB image after scanner gamma correction	
	12	RTB image after filtering with MTF	
	13	RTB image after ADS	
	14	RGB image after color processing	

4992	ProCon γ Unit	Select Process Control Unit
		nter or IPU to reflect process control gamma. 0 (Printer) and the setting cannot be changed.

# Group 5000

5024	mm/inch Display Selection	
	Selects the unit of measurement.	
	After selection, turn the main power switch off and on.	
	[0~1/1]	
	0: mm	
	1: inch	

5045	Accounting Counter	Counter Method
	0	nod if the meter charge mode is enabled with SP5-930-
	001.	
	<b>Note:</b> You can change the setting only one time.	
	[0 to 1/1]	
	0: Development counter.	Shows the total counts for color (Y,M,C) and black (K).
		the total page counts for: Color Total, Black Total, Color Color Prints, Black Prints.

5047	Reverse Paper Display	
	Determines whether the tray loaded with paper printed on one side is displayed.	
	[0~1/1]	
	0: Not displayed	
	1: Displayed	

5051 Toner Refill Detection Display Japan Only	

5112	Non-Std. Paper Sel.	
	Determines whether a non-standard paper size can be input for the universal cassette trays (Tray 2, Tray 3)	
	[0~1/1] 0: No	
	1: Yes. If "1" is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using the UP mode.	

5113	Optional Counter Type	
001	Default Optional Counter Type	
	Selects the type of counter:	
	0: None	
	1: Key card (RK3, 4) Japan only	
	2: Key card down	
	3: Pre-paid card	
	4: Coin Lock	
	5: MF key card	
	11: Exp Key Card (Add)	
	12: Exp Key Card (Deduct)	
002	External Optional Counter Type	
	Enables the SDK application. This lets you select a number for the external	
	device for user access control.	
	Note: "SDK" refers to software on an SD card.	
	[0~3/1]	
	0: None	
	1: Expansion Device 1	
	2: Expansion Device 2	
	3: Expansion Device 3	

5118	Disable Copying	
	Temporarily denies access to the machine. Japan Only	
	[0~1/1]	
	0: Release for normal operation	
	1: Prohibit access to machine	

5120	Mode Clear Opt. Counter Removal	
	Do not change. Japan Only	
	[0~2/1]	
	0: Yes. Normal reset	
	1: Standby. Resets before job start/after completion	
	2: No. Normally no reset	

5121	Counter Up Timing	
	Determines whether the optional key counter counts up at paper feed-in or at paper exit. <b>Japan Only</b> [0~1/1] 0: Feed count 1: No feed count	

F Org Size	Set F Original Size Selection
Sets the original	size that the machine detects for F sizes.
[0~2/1]	
0: 8½ x 13	
1: 8¼ x 13	
2: 8 x 13	
	Sets the original [0~2/1] 0: 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> x 13 1: 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> x 13

5127	APS Mode
	This SP can be used to switch APS (Auto Paper Select) off when a coin lock or pre-paid key card device is connected to the machine. [0~1/1] 0: On 1: Off

## 5128 Code Mode With Key/Card Option Japan Only

5131	Set Paper Size	Set Paper Size Handling
	Selects the paper size type (for originals and copy paper). (Only needs to be adjusted if the optional printer controller is installed)	
	[0~2/1] 0: JP (Japan)	
	1: NA (North America) 2: EU (Europe)	
	After changing the v	alue, turn the main power switch off and on.

5150	Bypass Length Setting	
	Sets up the by-pass tray for long paper.	
	[0~1/1]	
	0: Off	
	1: On. Sets the tray for feeding paper up to 600 mm long.	
	With this SP selected on, paper jams are not detected in the paper path.	

5154	Exit Tray Set	
001	Limitless	
	Allows 'limitless' paper output.	
	[0~1/1]	
	0: Off	
	1: On. Once the initial paper exit is full, another will be selected automatically.	
	Switch this SP on only in the job queuing mode, i.e. when printing jobs in the ord of selection with the print priority function. Print priority is set in the User Tools mode (System Settings> General Features> Print Priority> Job Order.)	
002	Override	
	Allows overriding of the setting for SP5154-001.	
	[0~1/1]	
0: Off		
	1: On	
	This SP can be set only when on is selected for SP5154-001. Changing this setting has no effect on the machine when SP5154-001 is off.	

Ę

5162	2 App. Switch Method	
	Controls if the application screen is changed with a hardware switch or a software switch.	
[0~1/1] 0: Soft Key Set		
	0: Soft Key Set	
	1: Hard Key Set	

5169	CE Login	
	If you will change the printer bit switches, you must 'log in' to service mode with this SP	
	before you go into the printer SP mode.	
	[0~1/1]	
	0: Off. Printer bit switches cannot be adjusted.	
	1: On. Printer bit switches can be adjusted.	

5212	Page Numbering		
003	Duplex Printout Left/Right Position	Horizontally positions the page numbers printed on both sides during duplexing. [–10~+10/1 mm] 0 is center, minus is left, + is right.	
004	Duplex Printout High/Low Position	Vertically positions the page numbers printed on both sides during duplexing. [–10~+10/1 mm] 0 is center, minus is down, + is up.	

5302	Set Time DFU	
	Sets the time clock for the local time. This setting is done at the factory before delivery. The setting is GMT expressed in minutes.	
	[–1440~1440/1 min.]	
	JA: +540 (Tokyo)	
	NA: -300 (NY)	
	EU: +6- (Paris)	
	CH: +480 (Peking)	
	TW: +480 (Taipei)	
	AS: +480 (Hong Kong)	

-1

5307	Summer Time		
	Lets you set the machine to adjust its date and time automatically with the change Daylight Savings time in the spring and back to normal time in the fall. This SP let set these items:		
	- Day and time to go forward automatically in April.		
	- Day and time to go back automatically in October.		
	- Set the length of time to go forward and back automatically.		
	The settings for 002 and 003 are done with 8-digit numbers:		
	Digits	Meaning	
	1st, 2nd	Month. 4: April, 10: October (for months 1 to 9, the first digit of 0 cannot be input, so the eight-digit setting for 002 or 003 becomes a seven-digit setting)	
	3rd	Day of the week. 0: Sunday, 1: Monday	
selected for "Sunday", for example, and the selected Sund		The number of the week for the day selected at the 3rd digit. If "0" is selected for "Sunday", for example, and the selected Sunday is the start of the 2nd week, then input a "2" for this digit.	
	5th, 6th The time when the change occurs (24-hour as hex code). Example: 00:00 (Midnight) = 00, 01:00 (1 a.m.) = 01, and so on.		
	7th The number of hours to change the time. 1 hour: 1		
8th If the time change is not a whole number (1.5 hours for exan		If the time change is not a whole number (1.5 hours for example), digit 8 should be 3 (30 minutes).	
001	Setting	Enables/disables the settings for 002 and 003. [0~1/1]	
		0: Disable 1: Enable	
002	Rule Set (Start)	The start of summer time.	
003	Rule Set (End)	The end of summer time.	

Ę

5401	Access Control		
	This SP stores the settings that limit uses access to SDK application data.		
200	SDK1 Unique ID	This data can be converted from SAS (VAS) when installed	
201	SDK1 Recognition	or uninstalled.	
210	SDK2 Unique ID		
211	SDK2 Recognition		
220	SDK3 Unique ID	1	
221	SDK3 Recognition		

5404	User Code Count Clear		
	001	User Code Counter Clear	Clears all user code counters.
			Press [#] to execute.

5501	PM Alarm	
	Sets the count level for the PM alarm.	
	[0~9999/1]	
	0: Alarm disabled	
	The PM alarm goes off when the print count reaches this value multiplied by	
	1,000.	

5504	Jam Alarm	Japan Only	
5505	Error Alarm		
5507	Supply Alarm		

5508	CC Call Japan Only	
001	Jam Remains	Enables/disables initiating a call.
002	Continuous Jams	[0~1/1]
003	Continuous Door Open	0: Disable
		1: Enable
004	Low Call Mode	Enables/disables the new call specifications designed to reduce the number of calls. [0~1/1] 0: Normal mode
		1: Reduced mode
011	Jam Detection: Time Length	Sets the length of time to determine the length of an unattended paper jam. [03~30/1] This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1).
012	Jam Detection Continuous Count	Sets the number of continuous paper jams required to initiate a call. [02~10/1] This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1).
013	Door Open: Time Length	Sets the length of time the remains opens to determine when to initiate a call. [03~30/1] This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1).
021	Jam Operation: Time Length	Determines what happens when a paper jam is left unattended. [0~1/1] 0: Automatic Call 1: Audible Warning at Machine
022	Jam Operation: Continuous Count	Determines what happens when continuous paper jams occur. [0~1/1] 0: Automatic Call 1: Audible Warning at Machine

#### SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

023	Door Operation: Time	Determines what happens when the front door remains
	Length	open.
		[0~1/1]
		0: Automatic Call
		1: Audible Warning at Machine

5513	Parts	Parts Alarm Level Count Japan Only	
	001	Normal	Sets the parts replacement alarm counter to sound for the number of copies. [1~999/1 K]
	002	DF	Sets the parts replacement alarm counter to sound for the number of scanned originals. [1~999/1 K]

5514	Parts Alarm Level Japan Only
001	Normal
002	DF

5610	ACC Factory Setting	DFU
004	Recall	
005	Overwrite	
005	Previoius Setting	

5611	2-Col Tnr Ratio	Adjust Toner Ratio Between 2 Colors DFU
	Adjusts the toner ratio	b between color pairs: <u>B</u> lack, <u>C</u> yan, <u>M</u> agenta, <u>G</u> reen, and <u>Y</u> ellow.
001	B-C	
002	B-M	
003	G-C	
004	G-Y	
005	R-M	
006	R-Y	

5801	Memory Clear	Memory Clear
	Resets NVRAM data to the default se	ettings. Before executing this SP, print an SMC
	Report.	
001	All Clear	Initializes items 2 ~ 15 below.
002	Engine Clear	Initializes all registration settings for the engine
		and copy process settings.
003	SCS	Initializes default system settings, SCS
		(System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update
		information.
004	IMH Memory Clear	Initializes the image file system.
		(IMH: Image Memory Handler)
005	MCS	Initializes the automatic delete time setting for
		stored documents.
000	Opering and lighting	(MCS: Memory Control Service)
006	Copier application	Initializes all copier application settings.
007 008	Fax application	Not used.
000	Printer application	Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer SP bit switches, and the
		printer CSS counter.
009	Scanner application	Initializes the defaults for the scanner and all
		the scanner SP modes.
010	Web Service/ Network application	Deletes the Netfile (NFA) management files
		and thumbnails, and initializes the Job login ID.
		Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document
		server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software
011	NCS	Initializes the system defaults and interface
011		settings (IP addresses also), the
		SmartNetMonitor for Admin settings,
		WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET
		settings.
		(NCS: Network Control Service)
014	Clear DCS Setting	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service)
015	Clear UCS Setting	settings. Initializes the UCS (User Information Control
015		Service) settings.
016	MIRS Setting	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information
		Report Service) settings.
017	CCS	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-
		control Service) settings.

5802	Engine Free Run	Copier Engine Free Run
	Makes a base engine free run	
	[0~1/1]	
	0: Disable: Release free run mode	
	1: Enable: Enable free run mode	
	Return this setting to off (0) after testing is completed.	

### SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

5803	Input Chk	Input Check (Mainframe) (🖝 5.6.1)

5804	Output Chk	Output Check ( 5.6.2)

5810	Cancel Fusing SC	Cancel Fusing SC Code
	indicates a serious probler	g roller thermistor 1 g roller thermistor 2 r thermistor ure roller thermistor

5811	Machine No. Setting	Displays the machine serial number.

5812	Service Tel. No. Setting	
001	Service	Inputs the telephone number of the CE (displayed when a service call condition occurs.)
002	Facsimile	Use this to input the fax number of the CE printed on the Counter Report (UP mode). <b>Not Used</b>
003	Supply	Displayed on the initial SP screen.
004	Operation	Allows the service center contact telephone number to be displayed on the initial screen.

Ę

5816	Remote Service	
001	I/F Setting	Turns the remote diagnostics off and on. [0~2/1] 0: Remote diagnostics off. 1: Serial (CSS or NRS) remote diagnostics on. 2: Network remote diagnostics.
002	CE Call	Lets the customer engineer start or end the remote machine check with CSS or NRS; to do this, push the center report key.
003	Function Flag	Enables and disables remote diagnosis over the NRS network. [0~1/1] 0: Disables remote diagnosis over the network. 1: Enables remote diagnosis over the network.
006	Device Information Call Display	Controls if the item for initial setting of the screen for the NRS device-information notification-call is shown. [0~1/1] 0: Enabled. Item initial setting not shown. 1: Disable. Item for initial setting shown.
007	SSL Disable	Controls if RCG (Remote Communication Gate) confirmation is done by SSL during an RCG send for the NRS over a network interface. [0~1/1] 0: Yes. SSL not used. 1: No. SSL used.
008	RCG Connect Timeout	Sets the length of time (seconds) for the time-out when the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) connects during a call via the NRS network. [1~90/1 sec.]
009	RCG Write to Timeout	Sets the length of time (seconds) for the time-out when sent data is written to the RCG during a call over the NRS network. [0~100/1 sec.]
010	RCG Read Timeout	Sets the length of time (seconds) for the timeout when sent data is written from the RCG during a call over the NRS network. [0~100/1 sec.]
011	Port 80 Enable	Controls if permission is given to get access to the SOAP method over Port 80 on the NRS network. [0~1/1] 0: No. Access denied 1: Yes. Access granted.

5821	Remote Service Address Japan Only			
001	CSS PI Device Code	Sets the PI device code. After you change this setting, you must turn the machine off and on.		
002	RCG IP Address	Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [00000000h~FFFFFFFh/1]		

5824	NVRAM Data Upload
	Uploads the NVRAM data to an SD card (B140). Push Execute.
	Note: When uploading in this SP mode data, the front door must be open.

5825	NVRAM Data Download
	Downloads data from an SD card to the NVRAM in the machine. After downloading is completed, remove the card and turn the machine power off and on.

5828	Network Setting				
050	1284 Compatibility (Centro)	on a c	the parallel connect omputer. 1/1] )ff		ectional communication between the machine and
052	ECP (Centro)	for [0~ 0: [	Disables and enables the ECP feature (1284 Mode) for data transfer. [0~1/1] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled		
065	Job Spool Setting	Switches job spooling spooling on and off. <b>0</b> : No spooling 1: Spooling enabled			
066	Job Spool Clear	This SP determines whether the job interrupted at power off is resumed at the next power on. This SP operates only when SP5828 065 is set to 1. 1: Resumes printing spooled jog. 0: Clears spooled job.			
069	Job Spool Protocol				r job spooling is enabled col. This is a 8-bit setting.
		0	LPR	4	BMLinks (Japan Only)
		1	FTP (Not Used)	5	DIPRINT
		2	IPP	6	Reserved (Not Used)
		3	SMB	7	Reserved (Not Used)
077	IPv4 DNS Server 2				DNS server. This address
078	IPv4 DNS Server 3				s that have IPv4 devices IEEE 802.11b, etc.)
079	Domain Name (Ethernet)				
084	Setting List Print	Pri	nts a list of the NCS	para	ameter settings.

090	TELNET Operation Settings	Disables or enables Telnet operation. If this SP is disabled, the Telnet port is closed. [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable
091	Web Operation	Disables or enables the Web operation. [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable
096	Rendezvous Operation	This SP disables/enables Rendezvous operation. This is a set of protocols that allows a device on an IP network to automatically recognize and connect with other devices (such as a printer) on a network. Once a new device is connected to the network, it can be used immediately by every computer on the network. No special setup procedures or configuration settings are required 1: Enable 0: Disable

5832	HDD Formatting
	Enter the SP number for the partition to initialize, then press #. When the
	execution ends, cycle the machine off and on.
001	HDD Formatting (All)
002	HDD Formatting (IMH)
003	HDD Formatting (Thumbnail)
004	HDD Formatting (Job Log)
005	HDD Formatting (Printer Fonts)
006	HDD Formatting (User Info.)
007	Mail RX Data
800	Mail TX Log
009	HDD Formatting (Log)
010	HDD Formatting Log
011	HDD Formatting (Ridoc DiskTopBinder)

5833	e-Cabinet Enable
	Enables the e-Cabinet function. Then, the user names in the cabinet are enabled
	for use with the POP server.
	[0~1/1]
	0: Disabled
	1: Enabled

5836	Capture				
001	Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)				
	With this function disabled, the settings related to the capture feature cannot be				
	initialized, displayed, or selected.				
	[0~1/1]				
	0: Disable				
002	1: Enable				
002	Panel Setting           Determines whether each capture related setting can be selected or updated from				
	the initial system screen.	capture related setting can be selected of updated norm			
	[0~1/1]				
	0: Disable				
	1: Enable				
	The setting for SP5836-007				
003	Print Backup Function (0:C	,			
		ure on and off. Default: <b>0</b> (Off)			
		e print backup features are shown in the initial system			
	Board) is installed.	n optional File Format Converter (MLB:Media Link			
	[0~1/1]				
	0: Disable				
	1: Enable				
071	Reduction for Copy Color	[0~3/1]			
		0:1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 <b>DFU</b>			
072	Reduction for Copy B&W	[0~6/1]			
	Text	0:1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 6:2/3			
073	Reduction for Copy B&W Other	0~6/1]			
074	Reduction for Printer	0:1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 6:2/3 [0~3/1]			
074	Color	0:1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 <b>DFU</b>			
075	Reduction for Printer	[0~6/1]			
••••	B&W	0 1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 6:2/3			
076	Reduction for Printer	[1~5/1]			
	B&W HQ	1:1/2 3:1/4 4:1/6 5:1/8			
077	Reduction for Printer Col				
	1200 dpi				
078	Reduction for Printer				
081	B&W 1200 dpi	[0~2/1]			
001	Format for Copy Color	[0~3/1] 0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR,			
		2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR <b>DFU</b>			
082	Format for Copy B&W	[0~3/1]			
	Text	0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR,			
		2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR			
083	Format Copy B&W Other	[0~3/1]			
		0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR,			
	2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR				

084	Format for Printer Color	[0~3/1]
001		0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR,
		2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR <b>DFU</b>
085	Format for Printer B&W	[0~3/1]
000		0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR,
		2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
086	Format for Printer B&W	[0~3/1]
000	HQ	0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR,
		2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
091	Default for JPEG	[5~95/1]
091		• •
		ult for documents sent to the document management PEG selected as the format. <i>Enabled only when</i>
		rter (MLB: Media Link Board) is installed.
092	High Quality for JPEG	Sets the quality level of JPEG images for high quality
092		sent to the Document Server with the MLB (Media Link
		Board).
		[5~95/1]
093	Low Quality for JPEG	Sets the quality level of JPEG images for low quality
	, ,	sent to the Document Server with the MLB (Media Link
		Board).
		[5~95/1]
094	Default Format for	Sets the format of the backup files.
	Backup Files	[0~2/1]
		0: TIFF 1: JPEG
		2: For printing
		This feature can be selected only if SP5836-3 is set to
		"1".
095	Default Resolution for	Sets the resolution conversion ratio for the backup files.
	Backup Files	[0~3/1]
		0: 1x
		1: 1/2x
		2: 1/3 x
007		3: 1/4x
097	Default Compression for	Sets the rate of compression for the backup files.
	Backup Files	[0~2/1] 0: Standard
		1: Low
		2: High
098	Back Projection Removal	Removes the ghost images that are copied from the
	-,	back sides of two-sided originals.
		[0~1/1]
		0: Disable
		1: Enable

5839	IEEE 1394
	This SP is displayed only when an IEEE 1394 (firewire) card is installed.
004	
001	Enter the name of the device used on the network. Example: RNP0000000000
007	Cycle Master
001	Enables or disables the cycle master function for the 1394 bus standard.
	$[0 \sim 1/1]$
	0: Disable (Off)
	1: Enable (On)
008	BCR Mode
	Determines how BCR (Broadcast Channel Register) operates on the 1394 standard bus when the independent node is in any mode other than IRM. (NVRAM: 2-bits) [Always Effective]
009	IRM 1394a Check
	Conducts a 1394a check of IRM when the independent node is in any mode other than IRM.
	[0~1/1]
	0: Checks whether IRM conforms to 1394a
	1: After IRM is checked, if IRM does not conform then independent node switches to IRM.
010	
010	Unique ID Lists the ID (Node Unique ID) assigned to the device by the system
	administrator.
	Bit0: Off
	Bit1: On
	OFF: Does not list the Node_Unique_ID assigned by the system administrator. Instead, the Source_ID of the GASP header in the ARP is used.
	ON: The Node_Unique_ID assigned by the system administrator is used, and the Source_ID of the GASP header in the ARP is ignored. Also, when the serial bus is reset, extra bus transactions are opened for the enumeration.
011	Logout
	Handles the login request of the login initiator for SBP-2. (1-bit)
	Bit0: Off
	Bit1: On
	OFF: Disable (refuse login). Initiator retry during login. Login refusal on arrival of login request (standard operation)
	ON: Enable (force logout). Initiator retry during login. Login refusal on arrival of login request, and the initiator forces the login.
012	Login
	Enables or disables the exclusive login feature (SBP-2 related).
	Bit0: Off
	Bit1: On
	OFF: Disables. The exclusive login (LOGIN ORB exclusive it) is ignored. ON: Enables. Exclusive login is in effect.

013	Login MAX	
	Sets the maximum number of logins from the initiator (6-bits)	
	[0~63/1]	
	0: Reserved	
	63: Reserved	

5840	IEEE 802.11b
006	Channel MAX
	Sets the maximum range of the bandwidth for the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries. [1~14/1]
007	Channel MIN
	Sets the minimum range of the bandwidth for operation of the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries. [1~14/1]
011	WEP Key Select
	Determines how the initiator (SBP-2) handles subsequent login requests. [0~1/1]
	<ol> <li>If the initiator receives another login request while logging in, the request is refused.</li> </ol>
	<ol> <li>If the initiator receives another login request while logging in, the request is refused and the initiator logs out.</li> </ol>
	Note: Displayed only when the wireless LAN card is installed.

5841	Supply Name Setting	
	Press the User Tools key. These names appear when the user presses the	
	Inquiry button on the User Tools scre	en.
001	Toner Name Setting: Black	
002	Toner Name Setting: Cyan	
002	Toner Name Setting: Yellow	
004	Toner Name Setting: Magenta	
011	StapleStd1	
012	StapleStd2	Standard Staples for B698
013	StapleStd3	Standard Staples for B700/b701
021	StapleBind1	
022	StapleBind2	Booklet Staples for B700
023	StapleBind3	

5842	Net File Analysis Mode Setting	DFU	
	This is a debugging tool. It sets	Bit	Groups
	the debugging output mode of each Net File process. Bit SW 0011 1111	0	System & other groups (LSB)
		1	Capture related
		2	Authentication related
		3	Address book related
		4	Machine management related
		5	Output related (printing, delivery)
		6	Repository related

5844	USB
001	Transfer Rate
	Sets the speed for USB data transmission.
	[Full Speed]
	[Auto Change]
002	Vendor ID
	Sets the vendor ID:
	Initial Setting: 0x05A Ricoh Company
	[0x0000~0xFFFF/1] <b>DFU</b>
003	Product ID
	Sets the product ID.
	[0x0000~0xFFFF/1] <b>DFU</b>
004	Device Release No.
	Sets the device release number of the BCD (binary coded decimal) display.
	[0000~9999/1] <b>DFU</b>
	Enter as a decimal number. NCS converts the number to hexadecimal number
	recognized as the BCD.

5845	Delivery Server
These are delivery server settings.	
001	FTP Port No.
	[0~65535/1]
002	IP Address
	Use this SP to set the Scan Router Server address. The IP address under the transfer tab can be used with the initial system setting. [0~FFFFFFF/1]
006	Delivery Error Display Time
	Use this setting to set the length of time that the message is shown when a test error occurs during document transfer with the NetFile application and an external device. [0~999/1]
008	IP Address (Secondary)
	Sets the IP address that is given to the computer that is the secondary delivery server for Scan Router. This SP lets you set only the IP address, and does not refer to the DNS setting.
009	Delivery Server Model
	Lets you change the model of the delivery server that is registered by the I/O device. [0~4/1] 0: Unknown 1: SG1 Provided 2: SG1 Package 3: SG2 Provided 4: SG2 Package

010	Delivery Svr. Capability
	Changes the functions that the registered I/O device can do.
	[0~255/1]
	Bit7 = 1 Comment information exits
	Bit6 = 1 Direct specification of mail address possible
	Bit5 = 1 Mail RX confirmation setting possible
	Bit4 = 1 Address book automatic update function exists
	Bit3 = 1 Fax RX delivery function exists
	Bit2 = 1 Sender password function exists
	Bit1 = 1 Function to link MK-1 user and Sender exists
	Bit0 = 1 Sender specification required (if set to 1, Bit6 is set to "0")
011	Delivery Svr.Capability (Ext)
	These settings are for future use. They will let you increase the number of
	registered devices (in addition to those registered for SP5845 010).
	There are eight bits (Bit 0 to Bit 7). All are unused at this time.

5846	UCS Setting
001	Machine ID (Delivery Server)
	Displays the unique device ID in use by the delivery server directory. The value is
	only displayed and cannot be changed.
	This ID is created from the NIC MAC or IEEE 1394 EUI.
	The ID is displayed as either 6-byle or 8-byte binary.
	6-byte %02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X
	8-byte %02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X
002	Machine ID Clear (Delivery Server)
	Clears the unique ID of the device used as the name in the file transfer directory. Execute this SP if the connection of the device to the delivery server is unstable. After clearing the ID, the ID will be established again automatically by cycling the machine off and on.
003	Maximum Entries
	Changes the maximum number of entries that UCS can handle. [2000~50000/1] If a value smaller than the present value is set, the UCS managed data is cleared,
	and the data (excluding user code information) is displayed.
006	Delivery Server Retry Timer
	Sets the interval for retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book. [0~255/1 s] 0: No retries
007	Delivery Server Retry Times
	Sets the number of retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book. [0~255/1]
008	Delivery Server Maximum Entries
	Lets you set the maximum number of account entries and information about the users of the delivery server controlled by UCS. [20000~50000/1]

010	LDAP Search Timeout
	Sets the length of the time-out for the search of the LDAP server.
	[1~255/1]
047	Initialize Local Address Book
	Clears all of the address information from the local address book of a machine
	managed with UCS.
048	Initialize Delivery Info.
	Push [Execute] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the delivery address book that is controlled by UCS.
049	Initialize LDAP Info.
	Push [Execute] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the LDAP address book that is controlled by UCS.
050	Initialize Local Info.
	Clears everything (including users codes) in the directory information managed by UCS. However, the accounts and passwords of the system administrators are not deleted.
051	Upload All Directory Info.
	Uploads all directory information to the IC card.
052	Download All Directory Info.
	Downloads all directory information from the IC card.
053	Update Info Clear
	Deletes the address book uploaded from the SD card in the slot. Deletes only the files uploaded for that machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected.
	<b>Note</b> : After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, turn the power off. Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing.
090	Plain Data Forbidden
	Lets you to prevent the address from transmission as plain data. This is a security function that prevents unauthorized access to address book data. [0~1/1]
	0: No check. Address book data not protected.
	<ol> <li>Check. Enables operation of UCS without data from HDD or SC card and without creating address book information with plain data.</li> </ol>
091	FTP Auth. Port Settings
	Sets the FTP port to get the delivery server address book that is used in the individual authorization mode. [0~65535/1]
094	Encryption Status
	Shows the status of the encryption function of the address book on the LDAP
	server.
	[0~255/1] No default

5847	Net File Resolution Reduction				
	5847 1 through 5847 6 changes the default settings of image data sent externally				
	by the Net File page reference f				
	5847 21 sets the default for JPEG image quality of image files controlled by				
	NetFile.				
	"NetFile" refers to jobs to be printed from the document server with a PC and the				
	DeskTopBinder software.				
001		[0~5/1]	0: 1x		
002		[0~6/1]	1: 1/2x		
003		[0~6/1]	2: 1/3x		
004		[0~5/1]	3: 1/4x		
004		[0~6/1]	4: 1/6x		
			5: 1/8x		
006	Rate for Printer B&W HQ	[0~6/1]	6: $2/3x^1$		
			<sup>1</sup> : "6: 2/3x" applies to 003, 005, 006		
021	Notwork Quality Default for JDE	<u> </u>	only.		
021	Network Quality Default for JPE				
			PEG images sent as NetFile pages. This		
	-	e MLB (I	Media Link Board) option installed.		
	[5~95/1]				
5848	Web Service				
5040		ianmont	for the access control setting. Setting of		
	0001 has no effect on access ar				
			•		
		e or ima	ges that can be downloaded. The default is		
001	equal to 1 gigabyte. Access Control. : NetFile (Lower	r / Bite (			
001	Bit switch settings.		() () () () () () () () () () () () () (		
	5				
	0000: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder. Access and deliveries from Scan Router				
	have no effect on capture.	рыпае	. Access and deliveries from Scan Rouler		
002		wor 1	0000: No access control		
002	Access Control. : Repository (Lo	Jwer 4			
000	Bits)		0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder.		
003	Access Control. : Doc. Svr. Print		Switches access control on and off.		
004	(Lower 4 Bits)		0000: OFF		
004	Access Control. : User Directory	/			
	(Lower 4 Bits)				
005	Access Control. : Delivery Input				
	(Lower 4 Bits)				
009		ower 1			
555	Access Control. : Job Control (L	Ower 4			
	Bits)				
011	Bits) Access Control: Device Manage				
011	Bits) Access Control: Device Manage (Lower 4 Bits)	ement			
	Bits)Access Control: Device Manage (Lower 4 Bits)Access Control: Delivery (Lower	ement			
011 021	Bits)Access Control: Device Manage (Lower 4 Bits)Access Control: Delivery (Lower Bits)	ement <sup>-</sup> 4			
011	Bits)Access Control: Device Manage (Lower 4 Bits)Access Control: Delivery (Lower Bits)Access Control: User Administration	ement <sup>-</sup> 4			
011 021 022	Bits)Access Control: Device Manage (Lower 4 Bits)Access Control: Delivery (Lower Bits)Access Control: User Administra (Lower 4 Bits)	ement <sup>-</sup> 4 ation			
011 021	Bits)Access Control: Device Manage (Lower 4 Bits)Access Control: Delivery (Lower Bits)Access Control: User Administra (Lower 4 Bits)Access Control: User Administra (Lower 4 Bits)	ement <sup>-</sup> 4 ation			
011 021 022	Bits)Access Control: Device Manage (Lower 4 Bits)Access Control: Delivery (Lower Bits)Access Control: User Administra (Lower 4 Bits)	ement - 4 ation	[1~1024/1 K]		

5849	Installation Date	
	Displays or prints t	he installation date of the machine.
001	Display	The "Counter Clear Day" has been changed to "Installation Date" or "Inst. Date".
002	Switch to Print	Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter. [0~1/1] 0: No Print 1: Print

5853	Stamp Data Download
	Push [Execute] to download the fixed stamp data from the machine ROM onto the hard disk. Then these stamps can be used by the system. If this is not done, the user will not have access to the fixed stamps ("Confidential", "Secret", etc.). You must always execute this SP after replacing the HDD or after formatting the HDD. Always switch the machine off and on after executing this SP.

5856	Remote ROM Update
	When set to "1" allows reception of firmware data via the local port (IEEE 1284) during a remote ROM update. This setting is reset to zero after the machine is cycled off and on. Allows the technician to upgrade the firmware using a parallel cable [0~1/1] 0: Not allowed 1: Allowed

5857	Save Debug Log		
001	On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)		
	Switches on the debug log feature. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on.		
	[0~1/1]		
	0: OFF		
	1: ON		
002	Target (2: HDD 3: SD Card)		
	Selects the destination where the debugging information generated by the event selected by SP5858 will be stored if an error is generated		
	[2~3 /1]		
	2: HDD		
	3: SD Card		
005	Save to HDD		
	Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the hard disk.		
006	Save to SD Card		
	Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the SD Card.		
009	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)		
	Takes the most recent 4 MB of the log written to the hard disk and copies them to the SD Card.		
	A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card.		

IF

010	Copy HDD to SD Card Latest 4 MB Any Key)
	Takes the log of the specified key from the log on the hard disk and copies it to the SD Card.
	A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4 MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card. This SP does not execute if there is no log on the HDD with
	no key specified.
011	Erase HDD Debug Data
	Erases all debug logs on the HDD
012	Erase SD Card Debug Data
	Erases all debug logs on the SD Card. If the card contains only debugging files generated by an event specified by SP5858, the files are erased when SP5857 010 or 011 is executed.
	To enable this SP, the machine must be cycled off and on.
013	Free Space on SD Card
	Displays the amount of space available on the SD card.
014	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4MB)
	Copies the last 4MB of the log (written directly to the card from shared memory) onto an SD card.
015	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4MB Any Key)
	This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number. (-5.10)
016	Make HDD Debug
	This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD.
017	Make SD Debug
	This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card.

5858	Debug Save WhenThese SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857 002.SP5858 3 stores one SC specified by number. Refer to Section 4 for a list of SC error codes.		
001	Engine SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores SC codes generated by copier engine errors. [0~1/1] 0: OFF 1: ON	
002	Controller SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores SC codes generated by GW controller errors. [0~1/1] 0: OFF 1: ON	
003	Any SC Error	[0~65535/1]	
004	Jam (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores jam errors. [0~1/1] 0: OFF 1: ON	

Service Tables

71

5859	Debug Log	g Save Function
001	Key 1	These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that
002	Key 2	use common memory on the controller board. (
003	Key 3	[-9999999~9999999/1]
004	Key 4	
005	Key 5	
006	Key 6	
007	Key 7	
008	Key 8	
009	Key 9	
010	Key 10	

5860	SMTP/POP3/IMAP4
020	Partial Mail Receive Timeout
	[1~168/1]
	Sets the amount of time to wait before saving a mail that breaks up during
	reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not
	received during this prescribed time.
021	MDN Response RFC2298 Compliance
	Determines whether RFC2298 compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail.
	[0~1/1]
	0: No
	1: Yes
022	SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement
	Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the
	validated account after the SMTP server is validated.
	[0~1/1]
	0: No. "From" item not switched.
	1: Yes. "From" item switched.
025	SMTP Auth Direct Sending
	No information is available at this time.

5866	E-Mail Alert	
001	Notice of E-mail	Not used with this machine.
005	Add Date Field	

5870	Common Key Info Writing	
	Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for NRS specifications.	
001	Writing	Note: These SPs are for future use and currently are not used.
003	Initialize	

5871	HDD Function Disable	
	Disables the HDD functions by suppressing all functions that write data to the HDD. After this SP is executed, the machine must be switched off and on to enable the setting. [0~1/1] 0: OFF 1: ON <b>Note</b> : This SP is intended for use during installation of the Data Overwrite Security Unit B735 (a new option). For more, see section "1. Installation".	

5873	SD Card Apli.	
	Allows you to move applications from one SD card another. For more, see "1.16.5 Mergining Applications on One SD Card".	
001	Move Exec	Executes the move from one SD card to another.
002	Undo Exec	This is an undo function. It cancels the previous execution.

5875	SC Auto Reboot
	Determines whether the machine reboots automatically when an SC error
	occurs.
	[0~1/1]
	0: The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues an SC error and logs the SC error code. If the same SC occurs again, the machine does not reboot.
	1: The machine does not reboot when an SC error occurs.
	The reboot does not occur for Type A SC codes.

5878	Option Setup	Data Overwrite Security (DOS) Setup
		nitialize the Data Overwrite Security option for the copier. MFP Controller Options" in Section "1. Installation".

5880	ACS High Performance Mode
	This SP enables and disables ACS. In the ACS mode the machine raises/lowers the ITB to print color/black-and-white. If a job contains both full-color and black-and-white pages, the ITB raises for the color pages and lowers for the black-and-white pages. ACS reduces wear on the color drums but reduces printing speed slightly.
	<ul> <li>0: ACS enabled. The ITB raises/lowers for full-color/black-and-white printing.</li> <li>1: ACS disabled. The ITB remains in contact with all four drums regardless of whether the job is for full-color or black-and-white. This setting allows the machine to print faster than the ACS mode because no time is required for the raising/lowering of the ITB.</li> </ul>

5907	Plug & Play Maker/Model Name	
	Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again. After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "#" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times.	

5913	Switchover Permission Time
002	Print Application Timer
	Sets the length of time to elapse before allowing another application to take control of the display when the application currently controlling the display is not operating because a key has not been pressed. [3~30/1 s]
102	Print Application Set No information is available at this time.
	[0~1/1/1]

5959	Set Size	Set Size
		d the LCT do not have automatic paper size detection. Use
	these SP codes to set t	ne paper size for Tray 1 and the optional LCT.
001	Tray 1:Tandem	
	The following paper size use settings 0 and 1	es can be set. If the A3 DLT kit is not installed, you can only
	0 A4	6 8.5 x 14 SEF
	1 8.5 x 11	7 8.5 x 11 SEF
	2 A3 SEF	8 B5
	3 B4 SEF	9 B5 SEF
	4 A4 SEF	10 Custom
	5 11 x 17	
005	LCT	
	The LCT accepts three paper sizes. Enter the correct number of the size of the paper loaded in the LCT:	
	0 A4	4 8.5 x 11 SEF
	1 8.5 x 11	5 B4 SEF
	2 B5	6 8.5 x 14 SEF
	3 A4 SEF	7 Custom Size

5967	Copy Server: Set Function	
	Enables and disables the document server. This is a security measure that prevents image data from being left in the temporary area of the HDD. After changing this setting, you must switch the main switch off and on to enable the new setting.[0~1/1] 0: ON 1: OFF	

5974	Cherry Server	
	Selects which version of the Scan Router application program, "Light" or "Full (Professional)", is installed.	
	[0 ~ 1 / <b>0</b> / 1 /step]	
	0: Light version (supplied with this machine) 1: Full version (optional)	

5990	SP Print Mode	SMC Print
		Copy Window to move to the copy screen, select the
		Start. Select A4/LT (Sideways) or larger to ensure that all
		Press SP Window to return to the SP mode, select the
	desired print, and pres	s Execute.
001	All (Data List)	
002	SP (Mode Data List)	
003	User Program Data	
004	Logging Data	
005	Diagnostic Report	
006	Non-Default (Prints on	ly SPs set to values other than defaults.)
007	NIB Summary	
008	Capture Log	
021	Copier User Program	
022	Scanner SP	
023	Scanner User Program	n

# Group 6000

6006	ADE Bog Adi	ADE Degistration Adjustment
6006	ADF Reg Adj	ADF Registration Adjustment
001	ADF Main Reg Adj	Adjusts the side-to-side registration for the front/back in ADF
		mode.
		[–3~+3/0.1 mm]
003	ADF Sub Reg Adj	Adjusts the vertical registration for the front/back in ADF
		mode.
		[–30 ~+30/0.17 mm]
		-30 = -5.1 mm
		+30 = +5.1 mm
005	ADF Buck Adj:Front	Adjusts the roller timing at the skew correction
		sensor/entrance roller. A higher setting causes more
		buckling.
		[–12.0~+12/0.25 mm]
		-12 = -3.0 mm
		+12 = +3.0 mm
006	ADF Buck Adj:Back	Adjusts the roller timing at the interval sensor/scanning roller.
	-	A higher setting causes more buckling.
		[-8.0~+8/0.25 mm]
		[-8.0~+8/0.25 mm]
		-8 = -2 mm
		+8 = +2 mm
007	ADF TEdge EMargin	These settings adjust the erase margin for the trailing edges
	5 0	for the front/back.
		[–20~+20/0.5 mm]
		-20 = -10  mm
		+20 = +10 mm
		-20 10 mm

6007	ADF Input Chk	ADF Input Check
	Displays signals receive	ed from sensors and switches in the ADF. ( \$\circ\$.7.1)

6008	ADF Output Chk	ADF Output Check
	Turns on the ADF elect	rical components individually for testing. (  5.7.2)

6009	ADF Free Run	ADF Free Run
	This SP does an ADF fi	ree run in duplex original mode.
001	Simplex	
002	Duplex	

6016	ADF OrgSizePrior	ADF Original Size Detection Priority
	Allows selection of alte	ernate settings for automatic original size detection. (  6.4.3)

6017	ADF Mag Adj	ADF Magnification Adjustment
001	ADF Sub Mag Adj	This changes the magnification by adjusting the speed of scanning. [-50(-5%)~+50(+5%)/0.1%]

6020	ADF Skew Adj	ARDF Skew Adjustment at the Scanning Entrance Roller
	This SP switches on sto	pping the scanning entrance roller for all paper sizes.
	Normally, the scanning e	entrance roller stops briefly to correct skew of small paper
		bath and for the 2nd side scanning of originals during
	duplexing. Setting this SP to "1" sets the ADF to stop the scanning entrance roller for	
	all paper sizes to correct	t for skew a second time.
	[0~1/1]	

6050	Adj Staple Pos	Staple Position Adjustment
	Adjusts the position of the staples during corner stapling.	

6090	LCT Output Chk	LCT Output Check
	Performs the output check for	the optional LCT.
001	LCT Feed Motor	
002	LCT Pickup SOL	

6101	Adj Punch Pos 1	Punch Position Adjustment
	Adjusts the punch hole pos	itions in the direction of paper feed.
	NA: North America	
	DOM: Japan	
	EU: Europe	
	SCAN: Scandinavia	
001	2-Hole:DOM	[-75~+75/0.5 mm]
002	3-Hole:NA	+ Value: Shifts punch unit in the direction of feed.
003	4-Hole:EU	- Value: Shift punch unit against direction of feed.
004	4-Hole:SCAN	⊕←_→⊝
005	2-Hole:NA	Paper Feed B132S921.WMF

6102	Adj Punch Pos	2 Punch Position Adjustment
	Adjusts the punc	h position perpendicular to the direction of feed.
	[-20~+20/0.4 mm	1]
	+ Value: Shifts p	ounch unit toward back of the finisher.
	- Value: Shi	ft punch unit toward front of the finisher.
001	2-Hole:DOM	<b>▲</b>
002	3-Hole:NA	
003	4-Hole:EU	
004	4-Hole:SCAN	
005	2-Hole:NA	
		Paper Feed
		B132S922.WMF

6103	Punch Hole Reg 1	Punch Hole Registration Adjustment
		n hole alignment by correcting the skew of each by adjusting
		finisher entrance roller remains off while the exit roller of the
		his buckles the leading edge of the sheet slightly against the
	finisher entrance roller	
001	A3 SEF	[-500~+500/0.3 mm]
002	B4 SEF	+ Value:Increases time finisher entrance roller remains off.
003	A4 SEF	- Value: Descreases time finisher entrance roller remains off.
004	A4 LEF	
005	B5 SEF	
006	B5 LEF	
007	DLT SEF	
008	LG SEF	
009	LT SEF	
010	LT LEF	
011	12" x 18"	
012	Custom Size	

6104	Punch Hole Reg 2	Punch Hole Control
	This SP determines whether the second	nether the finisher entrance roller stops to correct skew when
	paper enters the finish	er.
001	A3 SEF	[0~2/1]
002	B4 SEF	0: No adjustment. Quickly restores the default setting of you
003	A4 SEF	forget what the other settings do.
004	A4 LEF	0: Paper stops for skew correction
005	B5 SEF	1: Paper does not stop
006	B5 LEF	2: Paper stops (same as default)
007	DLT SEF	
008	LG SEF	
009	LT SEF	
010	LT LEF	
011	12" x 18"	
012	Custom Size	

6105	Fine Adj Staple	Fine Adjust Staple Jogger Fence Postion
		istance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack
	on the finisher stapling	tray.
001	A3 SEF	[-15~+15/0.5 mm]
002	B4 SEF	+ Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the
003	A4 SEF	sides of the stack.
004	A4 LEF	- Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences
005	B5 SEF	and the sides of the stack.
006	B5 LEF	
007	DLT SEF	
008	LG SEF	
009	LT SEF	
010	LT LEF	
011	12"x18"	
012	Custom Size	

6106	Fine Adj Out Jog	Fine Adjust Output Jogger Unit Fences
		istance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack
		r unit attached to the side of the machine jogs sheets as they
	exit the finisher.	
	+ Value: Increases dis	stance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack.
	- Value: Decreases th	he distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the
	stack.	
001	A3 SEF	[-15~+15/0.5 mm]
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 LEF	
004	B5 LEF	
005	DLT SEF	[-15~+15/0.5 mm]
006	LT LEF	[-15~+15/0.5 mm]
007	Custom	[-15~+15/0.5 mm]

6107	Interposer Size	erposer Size Paper Size Priority: Cover Interposer	
	Controls the paper size for the cover interposer tray. Select a paper size and push		
	[Execute]		
001	A3SEF/12x18	[0~1/1]	
		0: A3 SEF, 1: 12" x 18"	
002	EU China	[0~2/1]	
		0: 8½" x 13", 1: 8" x 13", 2: 8¼ " x 13"	
003	NA 1	[0~1/1]	
		0: 8½" x 14", 1: 8½" x 13"	
004	NA 2	[0~1/1]	
		0: LT LEF, 1: 101⁄2" x 71⁄4"	
005	NA 3	[0~1/1]	
		0: LT SEF, 1: 8" x 10"	
006	EU Taiwan	[0~1/1]	
		0: 8-Kai, 1: DLT	
007	EU Taiwan	[0~1/1]	
		0: 16-Kai SEF, 1: LT	
008	EU Taiwan	[0~1/1]	
		0: 16-Kai SEF, 1: LT SEF	

6108	Adj Fold: 1 Sheet	Adjust Fold Position: 1 Sheet Japan Only
001	A3 SEF	[-75~+75/0.5 mm]
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 SEf	
004	B5 SEF	
005	DLT SEF	
006	LG SEF	
007	LT SEF	
008	12"x18"	
009	Custom Size	



6109	Adj Corner Staple	Adjust Staple Position of Corner Stapler
	This SP corrects the s	tapling position of the corner stapler.
	[-3.5~+3.5/0.5 mm]	
	- Value: Moves stap	ling position toward the rear of the machine.
	+ Value: Shifts the st	apling position toward the front of the machine.
	1	

6111	Adj Z-Fold 2	Adjust Fold Position: Z-Fold Unit: Fold 2 Japan Only
	Adjusts the position	on of the second fold for the Z-folding unit.

F

6112	Book Staple Adj	Adjust Booklet Stapling Position
	This SP corrects the sta	apling postion of the booklet stapler when paper is stapled
	and folded.	
001	A3 SEF	[-75~+75/0.5 mm]
002	B4 SEF	+ Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease.
003	A4 SEF	- Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease.
004	B5 SEF	
005	DLT SEF	Feed Out
006	LG SEF	
007	LT SEF	, j
008	12" x 18"	
009	Custom	$\wedge$
		1. 7
		$- \underbrace{\bullet} \underbrace{\bullet} \underbrace{\bullet} \underbrace{\bullet} \underbrace{\bullet} \underbrace{\bullet} \underbrace{\bullet} \underbrace{\bullet}$
		B132S923.WMF

6113	Book Fold Adj	Adjust Booklet Fold Position
	This SP corrects the	folding postion when paper is stapled and folded.
001	A3 SEF	[-3~+3/0.2 mm]
002	B4 SEF	+ Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease.
003	A4 SEf	- Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease.
004	B5 SEF	
005	DLT SEF	
006	LG SEF	
007	LT SEF	$\sim$
008	12"x18"	
009	Custom Size	$(\underline{+})  (\underline{-})$
1		B132S924.WMF

6114	Book Fold Repeat	Set Number of Folds
		of times the folding rollers are driven forward and reverse a folded booket before it exits the folding unit. When set at
	• The folding rollers rotate	es the center of the stack into the nip of the folding roller. ed ccw to crease the booklet, reverse cw, then rotate ccw et fold twice before feeding to the folding unit exit rollers.
	0:2Reps-6:30Reps	[0~6/1 reverse/forward feed.]
		0: 2 4: 20
		1: 5 5: 25
		2: 10 6: 30
		3: 15

6115	Max Prestack	Number of Pre-Stack Sheets	
	This SP sets the number of sheets sent to the pre-stack tray. With this SP set to the		
	default (3):		
	3 sheets are sent to the pre-stack tray.		
	• When the 4th sheet feeds, the 4th sheet and 3 sheets from the pre-stack tray are sent to the stapling tray together.		
	<b>Note</b> : You may need paper.	You may need to adjust this setting or switch it off when feeding thick or slick	
	0:None-3:3Shts [0~3/1 sheet]		
		0: None	
	1: 1 sheet		
		2: 2 sheets	
		3: 3 sheets	

6116	Thk Sht Count	Thick Sheet Count
		mber of sheets of normal thickness to count for one thick sheet. Its three sheets of normal thickness for one thick sheet.

6117	Allow Tnk Punch	Allow Punching of OHP Sheets
		n punching of OHP sheets. Normally, OHP sheets is switched on (1), the performance of the finisher cannot y jam).

6118	Output Jog On	Output Jogger Operation Off/On
		jogging operation of the output jogger attached to the side of the
	finisher off and on.	
	[0~1/1] 0: Off, 1: On	
	<b>Note</b> : After installation of the Output Jogger Unit B703, this SP must be set to "1" for the jogging motor to operate the jogging fences.	

6119	No Z-Fold/Punch	Prohibit Z-Folding and Punching Japan Only
	Switch Z-folding off and on. Default: 0 (Off)	
	0:No 1:Yes	

6120	Free Run	Free Run 1: Post Processing	
	These SPs set the peripherals list below in the free run mode for testing.		mode for testing.
001	Free Run 1	System Free Run	Finishers B701/B700, B706
002	Free Run 1	Free Run (Endurance Testing)	Finisher B706
003	Free Run 3	Free Run	Finishers B760, B468/B469
004	Free Run 4	Shift, Free Run	Finisher B706

6121	Input Chk:Fin1	Input Check: Finisher 1 (B700/B701) (
	These are the input checks for the 2000-Sheet/3000-Sheet Finishers B700/B701.	

6122	Input Chk:Fin2	Input Check: Finisher 2 (B706) (🖝 5.9.1)
	These are the input checks for the 3000-Sheet Finisher B706.	

6123	Output Chk:Fin1	Output Check: Finisher 1 (B700/B701) (€5.8.2)
	These are the output checks for the 2000-Sheet/3000-Sheet Finishers B700/B701.	

6124	Output Chk:Fin3	Output Check: Finisher 3 Japan Only
	These are output checks	for the 3000-Sheet Finishers B468/B469.
001	Proof JG SOL:	
002	Stp JG SOL:	
003	End Roll SOL	
004	Main M 1	
005	Main M 2	
006	Exit M	
007	Stapler M	
008	Punch M	
009	Tray Lift M	
010	Jogger M	
011	Stp Shift M	
012	Feed Out M	
013	Shift M	
014	Stp Rot M	

6125	Output Chk:Fin2	Output Check: Finisher 2 (B706) (
	These are the input checks for the 3000-Sheet Finisher B706.	

6126	Book Fold Adj	
	These SPs adjust the positi	on for booklet stapling with the 2000/3000-Sheet Finisher
	B700/B701. The initial settin	ng is at "0" and can be adjusted in increments of 0.2 mm
001	A3 SEF:Sub Scan	[-3 to +3/0.2 mm]
002	B4 SEF:Sub Scan	
003	A4 SEF:Sub Scan	
004	B5 SEF:Sub Scan	
005	DLT SEF:Sub Scan	
006	LG SEF:Sub Scan	
007	LT SEF:Sub Scan	
008	12"x18":Sub Scan	
009	Custom:Sub Scan	

6900	ADF Bottom Lift	ADF Bottom Lift Plate
	switches on when the or pressed. The ARDF bott original tray and raises in [0~1/1] 0: Bottom plate lifts imm	hes whether the bottom plate lift motor of the of the ARDF iginal is set in the ARDF original tray, or when the [Start] key is from plate lift motor raises the bottom plate that pushes up the t to the optimum feed position. ediately after originals are set (Default) t lift until [Start] key is pushed.

# Group 7000

7001	Op Time Disp	Main Motor Operation Time
	Displays the total drum rotation time.	

7401	Total SC Counter	Total SC Counter
	Displays the total number of SCs logged.	

7403	SC History		
	001	Latest	Displays the latest 10 SC codes.
	002	Latest 1st	
	003	Latest 2nd	
	004	Latest 3rd	
	005	Latest 4th	
	006	Latest 5th	
	007	Latest 6th	
	008	Latest 7th	
	009	Latest 8th	
	010	Latest 9th	

7502	Total Paper Jam Counter	
	Displays the total number of copy ja	ims.

7503	Total Original Jam Counter		
Displays the total number of copy jams.			

Service Tables

7504	Paper Jam Loc	Paper Jam Locations - Copier	
		e locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the	
		the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by	
	the failure of a sensor to activate.		
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name	
008	Trans 1 Sn:Late	1st Vertical Transport Sensor	
009	Trans 2 Sn:Late	2nd Vertical Transport Sensor	
010	Trans 3 Sn:Late	3rd Vertical Transport Sensor	
011	Trans 4 Sn:Late	4th Vertical Transport Sensor	
012	Relay Sn: Late	Relay Senosor	
013	Reg Sn:Late	Registration Sensor	
014	Fusing Ex Sn:Late	Fusing Exit Sensor	
016	Main Ex Sn:Late	Paper Exit Sensor	
019	Dup Ent Sn:Late	Duplex Entrance Sensor	
020	Dup Trans Sn1:Late	Duplex Transport Sensor 1	
021	Dup Trans Sn2:Late	Duplex Transport Sensor 2	
022	Dup Trans Sn3:Late	Duplex Transport Sensor 3	
023	Dup Ent Sn:Late	Duplex Entrance Sensor	
024	LCT Relay	LCT Relay Sensor:Late	
034	Bypass PE Sn:Off	Bypass Paper End Sensor	
053	1st Feed Sn:Lag	1st Paper Feed Sensor:Lag	
054	2nd Feed Sn:Lag	2nd Paper Feed Sensor:Lag	
055	3rd Feed Sn:Lag	3rd Paper Feed Sensor:Lag	
056	4th Feed Sn:Lag	4th Paper Feed Sensor:Lag	
057	LCT Feed Sn:Lag	LCT Paper Feed Sensor	
058	Trans 1 Sn:Lag	1st Vertical Transport Sensor:Lag	
059	Trans 2 Sn:Lag	2nd Vertical Transport Sensor:Lag	
060	Trans 3 Sn:Lag	3rd Vertical Transport Sensor:Lag	
061	Trans 4 Sn:Lag	4th Vertical Transport Sensor:Lag	
062	Relay Sn:Lag	Relay Sensor:Lag	
063	Reg Sn:Lag	Registration Sensor	
064	Fusing Ex Sn:Lag	Fusing Exit Sensor:Lag	
066	Main Ex Sn:Lag	Main Exit Sensor	
069	Dup Ent Sn:Lag	Duplex Entrance Sensor	
071	Dup Trans Sn2:Lag	Duplex Transport Sensor 1	
072	Dup Trans Sn3:Lag	Duplex Transport Sensor 2	
074	LCT Relay Sn:Lag	LCT Relay Sensor:Lag	
078	Dummy TBelt Sn	Dummy Transfer Belt Sensor	
084	Bypass Feed Sn	Bypass Paper Feed Sensor	
098	Paper Type	Paper Type	
099	Bypass Paper Feed Sn	Bypass Paper Feed Sensor	

7504	Paper Jam Loc		Jam Locations - 3000-Sheet Finisher B468/B469 n Only)
	Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate.		
	On Operation Par		Actual Component Name
121	Entrance Jam	-	Entrance Sensor
122	Proof Tray Exit		Proof Tray Exit Sensor
123	Shift Tray Exit		Shift Tray Exit Sensor
124	Stapler Exit		Stapler Exit Sensor
125	Exit After Jogging		Exit Sensor After Jogging
126	Corner Stapling		Corner Stapling: Stapler Unit 1
127	Saddle Stapling		Saddle-Stitch Stapler Unit
128	Paper Folding		Paper Folding
129	Shift Tray Motor		Shift Tray Motor
130	Jog Fence Motor		Jogger Fence Motor
131	Shift Roller Motor		Shift Roller Motor
132	Stapler Shift M		Stapler Shift Motor
133	Stapler M		Stapler Motor: Unit 2
134	Folder Plate M		Folder Plate Motor
135	Feed Out Belt M		Feed Out Belt Motor
136	Paper Punch Moto	r	Paper Punch Motor
137	Z-Folding		Z-Fold Jam

7504	Paper Jam Loc	Paper Jam Locations - 3000-Sheet Finisher B706
	Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the	
	appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by	
	the failure of a sensor to	activate.
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name
141	Entrance Sn	Entrance Sensor
142	Proof Tray Exit Sn	Proof Tray Exit Sn
143	Shift Exit Sn	Shift Exit Sn
144	Stapler Exit	Stapler Exit Sensor
145	Feed Out	Feed Out
148	Upper Trans M	Upper Transport Motor
149	Shift Tray Motor	Shift Tray Motor
150	Jogger Fence Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
151	Shift Roller Motor	Shift Roller Motor
153	Stapling Motor	Stapling Motor
155	Feed Out Belt Motor	Feed Out Belt Motor
156	Paper Punch Motor	Paper Punch Motor
157	Bad PC Command	Command from PC Incorrect

7504	Paper Jam Loc	Paper Jam Locations - Mail Box B762
	Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the	
		ay the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by
	the failure of a sensor t	o activate.
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name
161	Vert Trans Sn 1	Vertical Transport Sensor 1
162	Vert Trans Sn 2	Vertical Transport Sensor 2
163	Vert Trans Sn 3	Vertical Transport Sensor 3
164	Vert Trans Sn 4	Vertical Transport Sensor 4
165	Vert Trans Sn 5	Vertical Transport Sensor 5

7504	Paper Jam Loc	Paper Jam Locations - B704 Cover Interposer
	Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate.	
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name
166	Paper Feed Sn	Paper Feed Sensor
167	Vert Transport Path	Vertical Transport Path
168	BotPlt Pos Sn	Bottom Plate Position Sensor

7504	Paper Jam Loc	Paper Jam Locations - 3000-Sheet Finisher B701
		ole locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the
		y the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by
	the failure of a sensor to	
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name
171	Entrance Trans	Entrance Sensor
172	Proof Tray Exit Sn	Proof Tray Exit Sn
173	Shift Exit Sn	Shift Exit Sensor
174	Stapler Exit Sn	Stapler Exit Sensor
175	Belt Feed Out	Belt Feed Out
176	Corner Staple	Corner Stapling
179	Shift Tray Motor	Shift Tray Motor
180	Jogger Fence Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
181	Shift Roller Motor	Shift Roller Motor
182	Stapler Shift M	Stapler Shift Motor
183	Stapling Motor	Stapling Motor
185	Feed Out Belt Motor	Feed Out Belt Motor
186	Paper Punch Motor	Paper Punch Motor

7504	Paper Jam Loc	Paper Jam Locations – 3000-Sheet Finisher B700
	Displays the list of possible	locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the
		ne jam count for that location. These jams are caused by
	the failure of a sensor to act	ivate.
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name
191	Entrance Sn	Entrance Sensor
192	Stapler Exit	Stapler Exit Sensor
193	Shift Exit Sn	Shift Exit Sensor
194	Stapler Exit	Stapler Exit Sensor
195	Belt Feed Out	Belt Feed Out
196	Corner Staple	Corner Stapling
197	Saddle Stapling	Saddle Stapling
198	Paper Folding	Paper Folding
199	Shift Tray Motor	Shift Tray Motor
200	Jogger Fence Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
201	Shift Roller Motor	Shift Roller Motor
202	Stapler Shift M	Stapler Shift Motor
203	Stapling Motor	Stapling Motor
204	Paper Folding	Paper Folding
205	Feed Out Belt Motor	Feed Out Belt Motor
206	Paper Punch Motor	Paper Punch Motor

7504	Paper Jam Loc	Paper Jam Locations – <b>Z-Folding Unit B660</b> (Japan Only)	1
		ble locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the	ø
	appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by		Service
	the failure of a sensor to	activate.	Ser
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name	
211	Paper Feed:Late	Paper Feed Sensor: Late	
212	Paper Feed:Lag	Paper Feed Sensor: Lag	1
213	Fold Timing Sn:Late	Fold Timing Sensor: Late	1
214	Fold Timing Sn:Lag	Fold Timing Sensor: Lag	
215	Lead Edge Sn:Late	Leading Edge Sensoor:Late	1
216	Lead Edge Sn:Lag	Leading Edge Sensor:Lag	
217	Up Stopper Sn:Late	Upper Stopper Path Sensor:Late	
218	Up Stopper Sn:Lag	Upper Stopper Path Sensor:Lag	
219	Lower Ex Sn:Late	Lower Exit Sensor:Late	
220	Lower Ex Sn1:Lag	Lower Exit Sensor:Lag	
223	Up Ex Sn:Late	Upper Exit Sensor:Late	
224	Up Ex Sn:Lag	Upper Exit Sensor:Lag	
225	Paper Fold M	Paper Fold Motor	1
226	Lower Stopper M	Lower Stopper Motor Lock	]
227	Upper Stopper M	Upper Stopper Motor Lock	

7504	Paper Jam Loc	Paper Jam Location – All Finishers
		ble locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the y the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by activate.
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name
230	Fin:No Ex Response	Finisher:No Exit Response

7505	Original Jam Det	Original Jam Detection – ARDF B652
	Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the	
		a jam count for that location. These jams are caused by
	the failure of a sensor to activ	vate.
	On Operation Panel	Actual Component Name
001	At Power On	At Power On
003	Separation Sn:Late	Separation Sensor:Late
004	Skew Cor Sn:Late	Skew Correction Sensor:Late
005	Interval Sn:Late	Interval Sensor:Late
006	Reg Sn:Late	Registration Sensor:Late
007	Exit Sn:Late	Exit Sensor:Late
008	Inv Switch Sn:Late	Inverter Switchback Sensor:Late
009	Low Inv Sn:Late	Lower Inverter Sensor:Late
053	Separation Sn:Lag	SeparationsSensor:Lag
054	Skew Cor Sn:Lag	Skew Correction Sensor:Lag
055	Interval Sn:Lag	Interval Sensor:Lag
056	Reg Sn:Lag	Registration Sensor:Lag
057	Exit Sn:Lag	Exit Sensor:Lag
058	Inv Switch Sn:Lag	Inverter Switchback Sensor:Lag
059	Low Inv Sn:Lag	Lower Inverter Sensor:Lag

7506	Jam Count by Paper Size	
	Displays the total number of jams by paper size.	
005	A4 LEF	Displays the total number of jams by paper size.
006	A5 LEF	
014	B5 LEF	
038	LT LEF	
044	HLT LEF	
132	A3	
133	A4 SEF	
134	A5 SEF	
141	B4 SEF	
142	B5 SEF	
160	DLT SEF	
164	LG SEF	
166	LT SEF	
172	HLT SEF	
255	Others	

7507	Plotter Jam History	
001	Latest	Displays the following items for the last 10 copy paper jams: 1)
002	Latest 1	Jam code, 2) Paper size, 3) Total count when jam occurred, 4)
003	Latest 2	Date of jam.
004	Latest 3	The "jam codes" are listed in the SMC report under SP7504.
005	Latest 4	
006	Latest 5	
007	Latest 6	
008	Latest 7	
009	Latest 8	
010	Latest 9	

7508	Original Jam Histo	bry
001	Original Latest	Displays the following items for the Latest 10 original jams: 1)
002	Latest 1	Jam code, 2) Paper size, 3) Total count when jam occurred,
003	Latest 2	4) Date of jam.
004	Latest 3	The "jam codes" are listed in the SMC report under SP7504.
005	Latest 4	
006	Latest 5	
007	Latest 6	
008	Latest 7	
009	Latest 8	
010	Latest 9	

7617	Parts PM Counter Display	
001	Normal	Japan Only
002	DF	Japan Only

7618	PM Parts Counter Reset Japan Only	
001	Normal	Push [Execute] to clear the parts replacement alarm counter for the main machine.
002	DF	Push [Execute] to clear the parts replacement alarm counter for the ADF.

7801	ROM Ver	ROM Version Numbers
	Displays the ROM peripheral devices	version numbers of the main machine and connected

7803	PM Counter Display	Displays the PM count since the last PM.

7804	PM Counter Reset	Resets the PM count.

7807	SC/Jam Counter Reset	Push [Start] to reset the SC and jam counters.
------	----------------------	--

7826	MF Error Counter Japan Only	
	Displays the number of counts requested of the card/key counter.	
001	Error Total	A request for the count total failed at power on. This error will occur if the device is installed but disconnected.
002	Error Staple	The request for a staple count failed at power on. This error will occur if the device is installed but disconnected.

7827	MF Error Counter Clear
	Press Execute to reset to 0 the values of SP7826. Japan Only

7832	Self-Diagnostic Report Details	
	Push [#] to display a list of error codes. Nothing is displayed if no errors have	
	occurred.	

7834	Covera	ge Clear	
	No information is available at this time.		lable at this time.
	001	Total Averag	je
	002	Toner	
	003	Sheets & Toner	
	004	Dot:0%-100%	
	255	All Counts	

7835	ACC Counter		
1030			this time
004	No information is av	allable at	
001	Copy ACC		
002	Printer ACC		
7836	Total Memory Siz	ze	
			memory on the controller board.
7852	ADF Scan Glass		ADF Scan Glass
			nber of times the machine has detected dust on the
	SP4020 001 has be		beginning of copy jobs. This SP operates only after
001	Dust Counter		
001	Clear Counter		
002			
7901	Assert Info DF	U	
001	Filename	Used for o	lebugging.
002	Line No.		
003	Value		
7024	Toner Info:K	Tara	
7931 7932	Toner Info:K		er Information: Black
7932	Toner Info:M		er Information: Magenta er Information: Cyan
7933	Toner Info:Y		er Information: Cyan
7954	Displays detailed information about the toner used in the machine.		
001	Model ID		
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Production ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New		
009	Recycle Count		
010	Product Date		
011	Serial No		
012	EDP Code		
013	Toner Remaining		
014	Toner End		
015	Toner Refill		
020	Total Count Start		
021	Color Count:Start		
022	Total Count End		
023	Color Count:End		
050	Set Date		
051	End Date		

7935	MotdrvtimeDisp	Motor Drive Time Display	
	These SPs display the total drive times for each of motor listed below. The 8-digit		
	display shows the	total in minutes.	
001	OPCMot:K	Drum Motors	
002	OPCMot:M		
003	OPCMot:C		
004	OPCMot:Y		
005	DrvMot:K	PCU motor (drives all components of PCU other than the drum)	
006	DrvMot:M		
007	DrvMot:C		
008	DrvMot:Y		
009	Image Trans Mot	ITB Motor	
010	Paper Trans Mot	Paper Feed Motor	
011	Fusing Exit Mot	Fusing Exit Motor	

7936	TtldrvtimeDisp	Total Drive Time Display
	This SP displays the total drive time of the K drum motor before the last reset.	

7937	MotdrvtimeRst	Motor Drive Time Reset
	These SPs allow you to reset (to zero) the total drive time for each motor listed	
	below.	
001	OPCMot:K	Drum Motors
002	OPCMot:M	
003	OPCMot:C	
004	OPCMot:Y	
005	DrvMot:K	PCU motor (drives all components of PCU other than the drum)
006	DrvMot:M	
007	DrvMot:C	
008	DrvMot:Y	
009	Image Trans Mot	ITB Motor
010	Paper Trans Mot	Paper Feed Motor
011	Fusing Exit Mot	Fusing Exit Motor

7999	Engine Debug Log Switch	DFU
	Used for design and testing.	

## Group 8000

Group 8 is a new section of the SP Service Table. These new SP counters are provided for MFP, LP, and Wide Format machines after May 2003 that employ GW Architecture.

These new SP codes have been created in response to requests by customers, sales personnel and customer engineers, and R&D staff for a standardized set of counters that can be used to log more detailed information about machine operation.

These new SPs are absolutely essential to provide more detailed counters and job logs to match similar features that are being developed by Ricoh competitors.

### **Current Status of the SP8xxx Counters**

Many of these counters are provided for features that are currently not available, such as sending color faxes, and so on. However, here are some Group 8 codes that when used in combination with others, can provide useful information.

SP Numbers	What They Do
SP8 211~SP8 216	The number of pages scanned to the document server.
SP8 401~SP8 406	The number of pages printed from the document server
SP8 691~SP8 696	The number of pages sent from the document server

Specifically, the following questions can be answered:

- How is the document server actually being used?
- What application is using the document server most frequently?
- What data in the document server is being reused?

#### SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

## Group 8 Service Table Keys

Many of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an 'application'). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

PREFIXES		WHAT IT MEANS
T:	Total: (Grand Total).	Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.)
C:	Copy application.	Totals (pages, jobs, etc.) executed for each
P:	Print application.	application when the job was <i>not</i> stored on the
S:	Scan application.	document server.
L:	Local storage (document server)	Totals (jobs, pages, etc.) for the document server. The L: counters work differently case by case. Sometimes, they count jobs/pages stored on the document server; this can be in document server mode (from the document server window), or from another mode, such as from a printer driver or by pressing the Store File button in the Copy mode window. Sometimes, they include occasions when the user uses a file that is already on the document server. Each counter will be discussed case by case.
O:	Other applications (external network applications, for example)	Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future.

The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

ABBREVIATION	WHAT IT MEANS		
1	"By", e.g. "T:Jobs/Apl" = Total Jobs "by" Application		
>	More (2> "2 or more", 4> "4 or more"		
AddBook	Address Book		
Apl	Application		
B/W	Black & White		
Bk	Black		
C	Cyan		
ColCr	Color Create		
ColMode	Color Mode		
Comb	Combine		
Comp	Compression		
Deliv	Delivery		
DesApl	Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan,		
	Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example.		
Dev Counter	Development Count, no. of pages developed.		
Dup, Duplex	Duplex, printing on both sides		
Emul	Emulation		
FC	Full Color		
FIN Full Bleed	Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.)		
	No Margins		
GenCopy	Generation Copy Mode		
GPC	Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10 =1)		
IFax	Internet Fax		
ImgEdt	Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc.		
К	Black (YMCK)		
LS	Local Storage. Refers to the document server.		
LSize	Large (paper) Size		
Mag	Magnification		
MC	One color (monochrome)		
NRS	New Remote Service, which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. "NRS" is used overseas, "CSS" is used in Japan.		
Org	Original for scanning		
OrgJam	Original Jam		
	U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U		
Palm 2	Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats.		
PC	Personal Computer		
PGS	Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON.		
PJob	Print Jobs		

ABBREVIATION	WHAT IT MEANS	
Ppr	Paper	
PrtJam	Printer (plotter) Jam	
PrtPGS	Print Pages	
R	Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model	
	A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available.	
Rez	Resolution	
SC	Service Code (Error SC code displayed)	
Scn	Scan	
Sim, Simplex	Simplex, printing on 1 side.	
S-to-Email Scan-to-E-mail		
SMC	SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8	
	counters are recorded in the SMC report.	
Svr	Server	
TonEnd	Toner End	
TonSave Toner Save		
TXJob Send, Transmission		
YMC	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan	
YMCK Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, BlacK		

**NOTE:** All of the Group 8 SPs are reset with SP5801 1 Memory All Clear, or the Counter Reset SP7808.

#### 31 March 2005

#### SP8-xxx: Data Log2

0.001	<b>TTTIIIIIIIIIIIII</b>	These OBs as all the second second filling a second
8 001	T:Total Jobs	These SPs count the number of times each
8 002	C:Total Jobs	application is used to do a job.
8 004	P:Total Jobs	[0~9999999/ 1]
8 005	S:Total Jobs	Note: The L: counter is the total number of
8 006	L:Total Jobs	times the other applications are used to send a job to the document server, plus the number of times a file already on the document server is used.

- These SPs reveal the number of times an application is used, not the number of pages processed.
- When an application is opened for image input or output, this counts as one job.
- Interrupted jobs (paper jams, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- Only jobs executed by the customer are counted. Jobs executed by the customer engineer using the SP modes are not counted.
- When using secure printing (when a password is required to start the print job), the job is counted at the time when either "Delete Data" or "Specify Output" is specified.
- When a copy job on the document server is printed, SP8022 also increments, and when a print job stored on the document server is printed, SP8024 also increments.
- When an original is both copied and stored on the document server, the C: and L: counters both increment.
- When a print job is stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user presses the Document Server button to store the job on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user enters document server mode and prints data stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When an image received from Palm 2 is received and stored, the L: counter increments.

8 011	T:Jobs/LS	These SPs count the number of jobs stored to
8 012	C:Jobs/LS	the document server by each application, to
8 014	P:Jobs/LS	reveal how local storage is being used for input.
8 015	S:Jobs/LS	[0~9999999/1]
8 016	L:Jobs/LS	The L: counter counts the number of jobs
8 017	O:Jobs/LS	<ul> <li>stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.</li> </ul>

- When a scan job is sent to the document server, the S: counter increments. When you enter document server mode and then scan an original, the L: counter increments.
- When a print job is sent to the document server, the P: counter increments.
- When a network application sends data to the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When an image from Palm 2 is stored on the document server, the O: counter increments.

8 021	T:Pjob/LS	These SPs reveal how files printed from the
8 022	C:Pjob/LS	document server were stored on the document
8 024	P:Pjob/LS	server originally.
8 025	S:Pjob/LS	[0~9999999/ 1]
8 026	L:Pjob/LS	The L: counter counts the number of jobs
8 027	O:Pjob/LS	stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.

- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the C: counter increments.
- When an application like DeskTopBinder merges a copy job that was stored on the document server with a print job that was stored on the document server, the C: and P: counters both increment.
- When a job already on the document server is printed with another application, the L: counter increments.
- When a scanner job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the S: counter increments. If the original was scanned from within document server mode, then the L: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application (including Palm 2), are printed with another application, the O: counter increments.
- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with a network application (Web Image Monitor, for example), the C: counter increments.

8 031	T:Pjob/DesApl	These SPs reveal what applications were used
8 032	C:Pjob/DesApl	to output documents from the document server.
8 034	P:Pjob/DesApl	[0~9999999/ 1]
8 035	S:Pjob/DesApl	The L: counter counts the number of jobs
8 036	L:Pjob/DesApl	printed from within the document server mode
8 037	O:Pjob/DesApl	screen at the operation panel.

- When documents already stored on the document server are printed, the count for the application that started the print job is incremented.
- When the print job is started from a network application (Desk Top Binder, Web Image Monitor, etc.) the L: counter increments.

8 041 8 042 8 044 8 045 8 046	042         C:TX Jobs/LS           044         P:TX Jobs/LS           045         S:TX Jobs/LS	These SPs count the applications that stored files on the document server that were later accessed for transmission over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail). [0~9999999/1]		
		Note: Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. The L: counter counts the number of jobs scanned from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.		

- When a stored copy job is sent from the document server, the C: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application or Palm2 are sent as an e-mail, the O: counter increments.

8 051	T:TX Jobs/DesApl	These SPs count the applications used to		
8 052	C:TX Jobs/DesApl	send files from the document server over the telephone line or over a network		
8 054	P:TX Jobs/DesApl			
8 055	S:TX Jobs/DesApl	(attached to an e-mail. [0~99999999/ 1] The Lis equator equate the number of isbe		
8 056	L:TX Jobs/DesApl			
8 057	O:TX Jobs/DesApl	<ul> <li>The L: counter counts the number of jobs sent from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.</li> </ul>		

• If the send is started from Desk Top Binder or Web Image Monitor, for example, then the O: counter increments.

8 061	T:FIN Job	DS	[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs total the finishing methods. The finishing method is specified by the application.			
8 062	C:FIN Jobs		[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for copy jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.			
8 064	P:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/ 1]		[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for print jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.			
8 065	S:FIN Jobs		[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for scan jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. Note: Finishing features for scan jobs are not available at this time.			
8 066	L:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/1]			
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs output from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. The finishing method is specified from the print window within document server mode.			
8 067	O:FIN Jo		[0~9999999/ 1]	
	applicatio	ese SPs total finishing methods for jobs executed by an external plication, over the network. The finishing method is specified by a application.		
8 06x 1	Sort	Number of jobs started in Sort mode. When a stored copy job is set for Sort and then stored on the document server, the L: counter increments. (See SP8 066 1)		
8 06x 2	Stack	Number of jobs started out of Sort mode.		
8 06x 3	Staple	Number of jobs started in Staple mode.		
8 06x 4	Booklet	Number of jobs started in Booklet mode. If the machine is in staple mode, the Staple counter also increments.		
8 06x 5	Z-Fold	Number of jobs started In any mode other than the Booklet mode and set for folding (Z-fold).		
8 06x 6 8 06x 7	Punch	Number of jobs started	for folding (Z-fold). d in Punch mode. When Punch is P: counter increments. (See SP8	

	1			
8 071	T:Jobs/PGS [0~9999999/ 1]			•
	These SPs count the number of jobs broken down by the number of			
	pages in the job, regardless of which application was used.			
8 072	C:Jobs/PGS [0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count and calculate the number of copy jobs by size			
	based on the number of pages in the job.			
8 074	P:Jobs/PGS [0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count and calculate the number of print jobs by size			
	based on the number of pages in the job.			
8 075	S:Jobs/PGS [0~9999999/ 1]			99/ 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of scan jobs by size			
	based on the number of pages in the job.			
8 076	L:Jobs/PGS [0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count and calculate the number of jobs printed from			
	within the document server mode window at the operation panel, by			
	the number of pages in the job.			
8 077	O:Jobs/PGS		[0~99999	
	These SPs count and calculate the number of "Other" application			
	jobs (Web Image Monitor, Palm 2, etc.) by size based on the			
	number of pages in the job.			
8 07x 1	1 Page	8 07x 8		21~50 Pages
8 07x 2	2 Pages	8 07x 9		51~100 Pages
8 07x 3	3 Pages	8 07x 10		101~300 Pages
8 07x 4	4 Pages	8 07x 11		301~500 Pages
8 07x 5	5 Pages	8 07x 12		501~700 Pages
8 07x 6	6~10 Pages	8 07x 13		701~1000 Pages
8 07x 7	11~20 Pages	8 07x 14	4	1001~ Pages

- For example: When a copy job stored on the document server is printed in document server mode, the appropriate L: counter (SP8076 0xx) increments.
- Interrupted jobs (paper jam, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- If a job is paused and re-started, it counts as one job.
- If the finisher runs out of staples during a print and staple job, then the job is counted at the time the error occurs.
- For copy jobs (SP 8072) and scan jobs (SP 8075), the total is calculated by multiplying the number of sets of copies by the number of pages scanned. (One duplex page counts as 2.)
- The first test print and subsequent test prints to adjust settings are added to the number of pages of the copy job (SP 8072).
- When printing the first page of a job from within the document server screen, the page is counted.

8 131	T:S-to-E	Email Jobs	[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These S	These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and attached to		
	an e-ma	ail, regardless of whether t	he document server was used or	
	not.			
8 131 1	B/W	Count for the number of	jobs with black-and-white.	
8 131 2	Color Count for the number of jobs with color.		jobs with color.	
8 131 3	ACS Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode.		jobs using ACS mode.	
8 135	S:S-to-Email Jobs			
	These SPs count the number of jobs scanned and attached to an e- mail, without storing the original on the document server.			
8 135 1	B/W Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white.		jobs with black-and-white.	
8 135 2	Color Count for the number of jobs with color.			
8 131 3	ACS	Count for the number of	jobs using ACS mode.	

• These counters count jobs, not pages.

- If the job is stored on the document server, after the job is stored it is determined to be color or black-and-white then counted.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- If several jobs are combined for sending to the Scan Router, Scan-to-Email, or Scan-to-PC, or if one job is sent to more than one destination. each send is counted separately. For example, if the same document is sent by Scan-to-Email as well as Scan-to-PC, then it is counted twice (once for Scan-to-Email and once for Scan-to-PC).

8 141	T:Deliv	Jobs/Svr	[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These S	SPs count the total number	r of jobs scanned and sent to a	
	Scan R	outer server.		
8 141 1	B/W	Count for the number of	jobs with black-and-white.	
8 141 2	Color	Count for the number of	jobs with color.	
8 141 3	ACS	ACS Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode.		
8 143 3	ACS	ACS Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode.		
8 145	S:Deliv Jobs/Svr			
	These S	These SPs count the number of jobs scanned in scanner mode and		
	sent to a	sent to a Scan Router server.		
8 145 1	B/W	B/W Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white.		
8 145 2	Color	Color Count for the number of jobs with color.		
8 145 3	ACS	Count for the number of	jobs using ACS mode.	

• These counters count jobs, not pages.

- The jobs are counted even though the arrival and reception of the jobs at the Scan Router server cannot be confirmed.
- If even one color image is mixed with black-and-white images, then the job is counted as a "Color" job.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be delivered, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8 151	T:Deliv Jobs/PC[0~9999999/1]These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC).Note: At the present time, 8 151 and 8 155 perform identical		
	counts.		
8 151 1	B/W	Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white.	
8 151 2	Color Count for the number of jobs with color.		
8 151 3	ACS	Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode.	
8 155	S:Deliv Jobs/PC		
	These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and sent with Scan-to-PC.		
8 155 1	B/W Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white.		
8 155 2	Color	Count for the number of jobs with color.	
8 155 3	ACS	Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode.	

• These counters count jobs, not pages.

- If the job is cancelled during scanning, it is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled while it is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8 191	T:Total Scan PGS	These SPs count the pages scanned by
8 192	C:Total Scan PGS	each application that uses the scanner to
8 195	S:Total Scan PGS	scan images.
8 196	L:Total Scan PGS	[0~9999999/ 1]

- SP 8 191 to 8 196 count the number of scanned sides of pages, not the number of physical pages.
- These counters do not count reading user stamp data, or reading color charts to adjust color.
- Previews done with a scanner driver are not counted.
- A count is done only after all images of a job have been scanned.
- Scans made in SP mode are not counted.

#### Examples

- If 3 B5 pages and 1 A3 page are scanned with the scanner application but not stored, the S: count is 4.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server using the Store File button in the Copy mode window, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied but not stored, the C: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 201	T:LSize Scan PGS		[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan and copy jobs.			
	<b>Note</b> : These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.			
8 205	S:LSize Scan PGS	S:LSize Scan PGS [0~9999999/1]		
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan jobs only			
	<b>Note</b> : These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display			
8 20x 1	A3/DLT, Larger	Counts A3/D	LT and larger pages.	
8 20x 2	A2, Larger	Counts A2 ar	nd larger pages.	

8 211	T:Scan PGS/LS	These SPs count the number of pages
8 212	C:Scan PGS/LS	scanned into the document server .
8 215	S:Scan PGS/LS	[0~9999999/ 1]
8 216	L:Scan PGS/LS	The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen

- Reading user stamp data is not counted.
- If a job is cancelled, the pages output as far as the cancellation are counted.
- If the scanner application scans and stores 3 B5 sheets and 1 A4 sheet, the S: count is 4.
- If pages are copied but not stored on the document server, these counters do not change.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 221	ADF Org	Feeds	[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SF	Ps count the number of p	ages fed through the ADF for	
	front and	front and back side scanning.		
8 221 1	Front	Number of front sides f	ed for scanning:	
			scan both sides simultaneously,	
			the same as the number of pages	
		fed for either simplex o	5	
			ot scan both sides simultaneously,	
			the same as the number of pages	
		fed for duplex front side scanning. (The front side is		
		determined by which side the user loads face up.)		
8 221 2	Back Number of rear sides fed for scanning:		ed for scanning:	
		With an ADF that can s	scan both sides simultaneously,	
			ame as the number of pages fed	
		for duplex scanning.		
		With an ADF that cann	ot scan both sides simultaneously,	
			ame as the number of pages fed	
		for duplex rear-side sca	anning.	

- When 1 sheet is fed for duplex scanning the Front count is 1 and the Back count is 1.
- If a jam occurs during the job, recovery processing is not counted to avoid double counting. Also, the pages are not counted if the jam occurs before the first sheet is output.

8 231	Scan PGS/Mode	[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by each ADF mode to determine the work load on the ADF.		
8 231 1	Large Volume	Selectable. Large copy jobs that cannot be loaded in the ADF at one time.	
8 231 2	SADF	Selectable. Feeding pages one by one through the ADF.	
8 231 3	Mixed Size	Selectable. Select "Mixed Sizes" on the operation panel.	
8 231 4	Custom Size	Selectable. Originals of non-standard size.	
8 231 5	Platen	Book mode. Raising the ADF and placing the original directly on the platen.	

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.
- If the user selects "Mixed Sizes" for copying in the platen mode, the Mixed Size count is enabled.
- In the SADF mode if the user copies 1 page in platen mode and then copies 2 pages with SADF, the Platen count is 1 and the SADF count is 3.

8 241	T:Scan PGS/O	rg		[0~	99999999/ 1	
	These SPs cou					y original type
	for all jobs, regardless of which application was used.					
8 242	C:Scan PGS/O	rg		[0~9	9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs cou	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for				
	Copy jobs.					
8 245	S:Scan PGS/O	rg		[0~9	9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs cou	int the numbe	r of pages	s sca	nned by orig	ginal type for
	Scan jobs.					
8 246	L:Scan PGS/O	rg		[0~9	9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs cou					
	within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, ar					
	with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen					
		8 241	8 242	2	8 245	8 246
	8 24x 1: Text		Yes		Yes	Yes
8 24x 2: Tex	t/Photo	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
8 24x 3: Pho	to	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
8 24x 4: Gen	iCopy, Pale	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
8 24x 5: Map	)	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
8 24x 6: Normal/Detail		Yes	No		No	No
8 24x 7: Fine	8 24x 7: Fine/Super Fine		No		No	No
8 24x 8: Bina	ary	Yes	No		Yes	No
8 24x 9: Gra	8 24x 9: Grayscale		No		Yes	No
8 24x 10: Co	lor	Yes	No		Yes	No

• If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.

8 251	T:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	These SPs show how many times Image
8 252	C:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	Edit features have been selected at the
8 254	P:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	operation panel for each application. Some
8 256	L:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	examples of these editing features are:
8 257	O:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	<ul> <li>Erase&gt; Border</li> </ul>
		Erase> Center
		<ul> <li>Image Repeat</li> </ul>
		Centering
		<ul> <li>Positive/Negative</li> </ul>
		[0~9999999/ 1]
		Note: The count totals the number of times
		the edit features have been used. A
		detailed breakdown of exactly which
		features have been used is not given.

The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen.

8 261	T:Scn PGS/ColCr		[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count the total number of scanned pages by the color		
	processing mode use	d.	
8 261 1	Color Conversion		
8 261 2	Color Erase		
8 261 3	Background		
8 261 4	Other		
8 262	C:Scn PGS/ColCr [0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count the number of pages by the color processing		
	mode used for Copy jobs only.		
8 262 1	Color Conversion		
8 262 2	Color Erase	Color Erase	
8 262 3	Background		
8 262 4	Other		

• These counters are enabled only for MFP machines that support color. The wide format machines do not support the "Background" or "Other" counters.

8 281	T:Scan PGS/TWAIN	These SPs count the number of pages
8 285	S:Scan PGS/TWAIN	scanned using a TWAIN driver. These counters reveal how the TWAIN driver is used for delivery functions. [0~99999999/ 1] <b>Note</b> : At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.

8 291	T:Scan PGS/Stamp	These SPs count the number of pages stamped with the stamp in the ADF unit. [0~9999999/1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen
8 295	S:Scan PGS/Stamp	
8 296	L:Scan PGS/Stamp	

9 204		[0, 000000/ 1]	
8 301	T:Scan PGS/Size	[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by all		
	applications. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-441].		
0.000			
8 302	C:Scan PGS/Size	[0~9999999/1]	
		the total number of pages scanned by the	
		ese totals to compare original page size rinting) page size [SP 8-442].	
8 305	S:Scan PGS/Size	[0~9999999/ 1]	
0 303			
		the total number of pages scanned by the ese totals to compare original page size	
	(scanning) and output pa		
8 306	L:Scan PGS/Size	[0~9999999/ 1]	
		the total number of pages scanned and	
		cument server mode screen at the	
	operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy		
	mode screen. Use these totals to compare original page size		
	(scanning) and output page size [SP 8-446].		
8 30x 1	A3		
8 30x 2	A4		
8 30x 3	A5		
8 30x 4	B4		
8 30x 5	B5		
8 30x 6	DLT		
8 30x 7	LG		
8 30x 8	LT		
8 30x 9	HLT		
8 30x 10	Full Bleed		
8 30x 100	A2	Not supported for this printer.	
8 30x 101	B3	Not supported for this printer.	
8 30x 254	Other (Standard)		
8 30x 255	Other (Custom)		

8 311	T:Scan PGS/Rez	[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages		
	scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings.		
8 315	S:Scan PGS/Rez [0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings.		
	<b>Note</b> : At the present time, 8 311 and 8 315 perform identical counts.		
8 31x 1	1200dpi ~		
8 31x 2	600dpi~1199dpi		
8 31x 3	400dpi~599dpi		
8 31x 4	200dpi~399dpi		
8 31x 5	~199dpi		

• Copy resolution settings are fixed so they are not counted.

• The Fax application does not allow finely-adjusted resolution settings so no count is done for the Fax application.

8 381	T:Total PrtPGS	These SPs count the number of pages
8 382	C:Total PrtPGS	printed by the customer. The counter for
8 384	P:Total PrtPGS	the application used for storing the pages
8 385	S:Total PrtPGS	increments.
8 386	L:Total PrtPGS	[0~9999999/ 1]
8 387	O:Total PrtPGS	- The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
  - Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
  - Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.
  - Reports printed to confirm counts.
  - All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
  - Test prints for machine image adjustment.
  - Error notification reports.
  - Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.

8 391	LSize PrtPGS		[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger.		
	<b>Note</b> : In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		
8 391 1	A3/DLT, Larger		
8 391 2	A2, Larger	Not supported	with this printer.

1		
8 401	T:PrtPGS/LS	These SPs count the number of pages
8 402	04P:PrtPGS/LS05S:PrtPGS/LS	printed from the document server. The
8 404		counter for the application used to print the
8 405		pages is incremented.
8 406		The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. [0~99999999/ 1]

 Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the L: count.

8 411	Prints/Duplex	This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0~9999999/1]
-------	---------------	--

8 421	T:PrtPGS/Dup Com	D	[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number		
	of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications.		
8 422	C:PrtPGS/Dup Comb [0~9999999/ 1]		
			ombine, and n-Up settings the number
	of pages processed for printing by the copier application.		
8 424	P:PrtPGS/Dup Com		[0~9999999/ 1]
			ombine, and n-Up settings the number
			the printer application.
8 425	S:PrtPGS/Dup Com		[0~9999999/ 1]
			ombine, and n-Up settings the number
			the scanner application.
8 426	L:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		[0~9999999/ 1]
			ombine, and n-Up settings the number
			m within the document server mode
	window at the operation panel.		
8 427	0:PrtPGS/Dup Comb [0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number		
	of pages processed for printing by Other applications		
8 42x 1	Simplex> Duplex		
8 42x 2	Duplex> Duplex		
8 42x 3	Book> Duplex		
8 42x 4	Simplex Combine		
8 42x 5	Duplex Combine		
8 42x 6	2>	2 pages on 1	、 <i>17</i>
8 42x 7	4>	4 pages on 1	
8 42x 8	6>	6 pages on 1	
8 42x 9	8>	8 pages on 1	
8 42x 10	9>	9 pages on 1	
8 42x 11	16>	16 pages on	1 side (16-Up)
8 42x 12	Booklet		
8 42x 13	Magazine		

• These counts (SP8 421 to SP8 427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.

- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

Booklet	-	Magazine		
Original Count		Origin	nal	Count
Pages		Origin Pages	5	
1	1		1	1
2	2		2	2
3	2		3	2
4	2	4	4	2
5	3	Į	5	4
6	4	(	6	4
7	4		7	4
8	4	8	8	4

8 431	T:PrtPGS/ImgEdt		[0~9999999/ 1]
			of pages output with the three
	features below, rega	ardless of whic	h application was used.
8 432	C:PrtPGS/ImgEdt		[0~9999999/ 1]
			of pages output with the three
	features below with	the copy applie	cation.
8 434	P:PrtPGS/ImgEdt		[0~9999999/ 1]
			of pages output with the three
	features below with	the print applic	ation.
8 436	L:PrtPGS/ImgEdt		[0~9999999/ 1]
			of pages output from within the
		ode window t th	ne operation panel with the three
	features below.		
8 437	O:PrtPGS/ImgEdt		[0~9999999/ 1]
			of pages output with the three
	features below with		
8 43x 1	Cover/Slip Sheet		of covers or slip sheets inserted.
			a cover printed on both sides
0.40.0		counts 2.	
8 43x 2	Series/Book		of pages printed in series (one
		pagination.	ed as a book with booklet right/left
8 43x 3	Lloor Storen	- •	of pages printed where stomps
0 43X 3	User Stamp		of pages printed where stamps , including page numbering and
	date stampir		
dute s		uale stamping.	

8 441	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size		[0~9999999/ 1]
	-	print paper si	ze the number of pages printed
	by all applications.		
8 442	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Size		[0~9999999/ 1]
			ze the number of pages printed
	by the copy applicat	ion.	
8 444	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size		[0~9999999/ 1]
	-		ze the number of pages printed
	by the printer application	ation.	
8 445	S:PrtPGS/Ppr Size		[0~9999999/ 1]
			ze the number of pages printed
	by the scanner appli	cation.	
8 446	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Size		[0~9999999/ 1]
			ze the number of pages printed
		ment server n	node window at the operation
	panel.		
8 447	O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size		[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed		
	by Other application	S.	
8 44x 1	A3		
8 44x 2	A4		
8 44x 3	A5		
8 44x 4	B4		
8 44x 5	B5		
8 44x 6	DLT		
8 44x 7	LG		
8 44x 8	LT		
8 44x 9	HLT		
8 44x 10	Full Bleed		
8 44x 100	A2		ed with this printer.
8 44x 101	B3	Not supporte	ed with this printer.
8 44x 254	Other (Standard)		
8 44x 255	Other (Custom)		

• These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

8 451	PrtPGS/Ppr	[0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs	These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed			
	station.				
8 451 1	Bypass	Bypass Tra	ау		
8 451 2	Tray 1	Copier			
8 451 3	Tray 2	Copier			
8 451 4	Tray 3	Tray 3 Paper Tray Unit (Option)			
8 451 5	Tray 4	Tray 4 Paper Tray Unit (Option)			
8 451 6	Tray 5	LCT (Optio	LCT (Option)		
8 451 7	Tray 6	Currently r	Currently not used.		
8 451 8	Tray 7	Currently not used.			
8 451 9	Tray 8	Currently r	Currently not used.		
8 451 10	Tray 9	Currently r	Currently not used.		

8 461	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all				
	applications.				
	These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM				
	counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based				
	on output timing.	However, these counts are based			
	Blank sheets (covers, chapter of counted.	covers, slip sheets) are also			
	• During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1.				
8 462	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the copy application.				
8 464	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type [0~9999999/ 1]				
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application.				
8 466	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count by paper type the				
	within the document server mode	window at the operation panel.			
8 46x 1	Normal				
8 46x 2	Recycled				
8 46x 3	Special				
8 46x 4	Thick				
8 46x 5	Normal (Back)				
8 46x 6	Thick (Back)				
8 46x 7	OHP				
8 46x 8	Other				

8 471	PrtPGS/Mag	[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count by magnification	rate the number of pages printed.
8 471 1	~49%	
8 471 2	50%~99%	
8 471 3	100%	
8 471 4	101%~200%	
8 471 5	201% ~	

- Counts are done for magnification adjusted for pages, not only on the operation panel but performed remotely with an external network application capable of performing magnification adjustment as well.
- Magnification adjustments done with printer drivers with PC applications such as Excel are also counted.
- Magnification adjustments done for adjustments after they have been stored on the document server are not counted.
- Magnification adjustments performed automatically during Auto Reduce/Enlarge copying are counted.
- The magnification rates of blank cover sheets, slip sheets, etc. are automatically assigned a rate of 100%.

8 481 1	T:PrtPGS/TonSave	These SPs count the number of pages
8 484 1	P:PrtPGS/TonSave	printed with the Toner Save feature switched on. <b>Note</b> : These SPs return the same results as this SP is limited to the Print application. [0~9999999/1]

8 491	T:PrtPGS/Col Mode [0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages output		
	by the Copy, document server, and Fax applications.			
8 492	C:PrtPGS/Col Mo	ode	[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count by color mode the total output by the Copy application only			
8 496	L:PrtPGS/Col Mo	ode [0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count by color mode the total output from within the			
	document server	document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 496 1	B/W			
8 496 2	Single Color	Color MFP/2-color MFP machines only.		
8 496 3	Two Color	Color MFP/2-color MFP machines only.		
8 496 4	Full Color	Color MFP machines only		

#### Notes for SP8 491 to SP8 496

- These SPs apply to the Copy, document server, and Fax applications only. They do not apply to the Print application.
- When the ACS feature is used to select the color settings automatically, the results of the ACS execute is used to increment the appropriate counter.
- If a color stamp is selected for printing on a monochrome document, the count is for B/W.
- If the output is black and white even if color print mode was selected, the pages count as Full Color.
- The color mode selected for a document stored on the document server is counted. (The color selection cannot be changed once the document is stored on the document server.)

8 501	T:PrtPGS/Col M	lode	[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages printed.		
8 501 1	B/W		
8 501 2	Single Color	Color MFP and 2	-Color MFP machines only.
8 501 3	Full Color	Color MFP and Color LP machines only.	
8 504	P:PrtPGS/Col N	GS/Col Mode [0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages printed with the Print application.		
8 504 1	B/W		
8 504 2	Single Color	Color MFP and 2-Color MFP machines only.	
8 504 3	Full Color	Color MFP and Color LP machines only.	

**NOTE:** At the present time, 8 501 and 8 504 perform identical counts, because they are both limited to the Print application.

8 511	T:PrtPGS/Emul	[0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.			
8 514	P:PrtPGS/Emul [0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.			

8 514 1	RPCS	
8 514 2	RPDL	
8 514 3	PS3	
8 514 4	R98	
8 514 5	R16	
8 514 6	GL/GL2	
8 514 7	R55	
8 514 8	RTIFF	
8 514 9	PDF	
8 514 10	PCL5e/5c	
8 514 11	PCL XL	
8 514 12	IPDL-C	
8 514 13	BM-Links	Japan Only
8 514 14	Other	

- SP8 511 and SP8 514 return the same results as they are both limited to the Print application.
- Print jobs output to the document server are not counted.

8 521	T:PrtPGS/FIN	[0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages			
	printed by all applications.			
8 522	C:PrtPGS/FIN [0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Copy application.			
8 524	P:PrtPGS/FIN	[0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application.			
8 525	S:PrtPGS/FIN [0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Scanner application.			
8 526	L:PrtPGS/FIN [0~9999999/ 1]			
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.			
8 52x 1	Sort			
8 52x 2	Stack			
8 52x 3	Staple			
8 52x 4	Booklet			
8 52x 5	Z-Fold			
8 52x 6	Punch			
8 52x 7	Other			

#### Note:

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

8 531 1	Staples	This SP counts the amount of staples used		
		by the machine.		
		[0~9999999/ 1]		

8 581	T:Counter [0~9999999/ 1]				
	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in				
	the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.				
	<b>Note:</b> These SPs are supported by color MFP and LP machines only.				
		MFP Color	LP Color	Replaced:	
8 581 1	Total	Yes	Yes	SP73 1	
8 581 2	Total: Full Color	Yes	Yes	SP7003 020	
8 581 3	B&W/Single Color	Yes	Yes	SP7003 021	
8 581 4	Development: CMY	Yes	Yes	SP7003 10	
8 581 5	Development: K	Yes	Yes	SP7003 11	
8 581 6	Copy: Color	Yes	No	SP7003 026	
8 581 7	Copy: B/W	Yes	No	SP7003 027	
8 581 8	Print: Color	Yes	Yes	SP7003 028	
8 581 9	Print: B/W	Yes	Yes	SP7003 029	
8 581 10	Total: Color	Yes	Yes	SP7003 030	
8 581 11	Total: B/W	Yes	Yes	SP7003 023	

8 582	C:Counter [0~9999999/ 1]				
	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output for the Copy application only. <b>Note:</b> These SPs are supported by color copy MFP machines only. These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display on the copy machine.				
	MFP Color Replaced:				
8 582 1	B/W	Yes	SP7003 2		
8 582 2	Single Color	Yes	SP7003 12		
8 582 003	Two Color	Yes	SP7003 13		
8 582 4	Full Color	Yes	SP7003 4		

8 584	P:Counter [0~9999999/ 1]				
	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output for the Print application only. These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display on the copy machine. <b>Note:</b> These SPs are supported by color MFP and LP machines only.				
	MFP Color LP Color Replaced:				
8 584 1	B/W	Yes	Yes	SP7003 7	
8 584 2	Single Color	Yes	Yes		
8 584 3	Full Color	Yes	Yes	SP7003 8	

8 586	L:Counter		[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count the total output broken down by color for output from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display on the copy machine. <b>Note:</b> These SPs are supported only by color copy MFP machines only with the fax application installed.			
	MFP Color Replaced:			
8 586 1	B/W	Yes		
8 586 2	Single Color	Yes		
8 586 3	Two Color	Yes		
8 586 4	Single Color	Yes		

8 591	O:Counter		[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only.		
8 591 1	A3/DLT		
8 591 2	Duplex		
8 591 3	Staple		

8 651	T:S-to-E	Email PGS	[0~9999999/ 1]	
		These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached		
	to an e-	to an e-mail for both the Scan and document server applications.		
8 651 1	B/W			
8 651 2	Color	Supported by Color MFP machines only.		
8 655	S:S-to-E	Email PGS [0~9999999/ 1]		
		These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached		
	to an e-	mail for the Scan application only.		
8 655 1	B/W			
8 655 2	Color	Supported by Color MFP machines only.		

#### Notes

- The count for B/W and Color pages is done after the document is stored on the HDD. If the job is cancelled before it is stored, the pages are not counted.
- If Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to 5 addresses, the count is 10 (the pages are sent to the same SMTP server together).
- If Scan-to-PC is used to send a 10-page document to 5 folders, the count is 50 (the document is sent to each destination of the SMB/FTP server).
- Due to restrictions on some devices, if Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to a large number of destinations, the count may be divided and counted separately. For example, if a 10-page document is sent to 200 addresses, the count is 10 for the first 100 destinations and the count is also 10 for the second 100 destinations, for a total of 20.).

8 661	T·Deliv	PGS/Svr	[0~9999999/ 1]	
0.001				
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a			
	Scan Re	Scan Router server by both Scan and LS applications.		
8 661 1	B/W			
8 661 2	Color	Supported by Color MFF	P machines only.	
8 665	S:Deliv	PGS/Svr	[0~9999999/ 1]	
		hese SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a		
	Scan Re	outer server by the Scan application.		
8 665 1	B/W			
8 665 2	Color	Supported by Color MFF	P machines only.	
8 666	L:Deliv	L:Deliv PGS/Svr [0~9999999/ 1]		
	These S	SPs count by color mode t	he total number of pages sent to a	
		Scan Router server by LS applications.		
		Julei server by Lo applications.		
8 666 1	B/W			
8 666 2	Color	Supported by Color MFF	P machines only.	

#### Notes

- The B/W and Color counts are done after the document is stored on the HDD of the Scan Router server.
- If the job is canceled before storage on the Scan Router server finishes, the counts are not done.
- The count is executed even if regardless of confirmation of the arrival at the Scan Router server.

8 671	T:Deliv PGS	/PC	[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC) with the Scan and LS applications.		
8 671 1	B/W		
8 671 2	Color Supported by Color MFP machines only.		MFP machines only.
8 675	S:Deliv PGS/PC [0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent with Scan-to-PC with the Scan application.		
8 675 1	B/W		
8 675 2	Color	Supported by Color MFP machines only.	

ir		
8 691	T:TX PGS/LS	These SPs count the number of pages
8 692	C:TX PGS/LS	sent from the document server. The
8 694	P:TX PGS/LS	counter for the application that was used to
8 695	S:TX PGS/LS	store the pages is incremented.
8 696	L:TX PGS/LS	[0~9999999/1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.

#### Notes

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the count.
- If several documents are merged for sending, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.

8 701	TX PGS/Port		[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by the physical port used to send them. For example, if a 3-page original is sent to 4 destinations via ISDN G4, the count for ISDN (G3, G4) is 12.		
8 701 1	PSTN-1		
8 701 2	PSTN-2		
8 701 3	PSTN-3		
8 701 4	ISDN (G3,G4)		
8 701 5	Network		

8 711	T:Scan PGS/Comp		[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count the number of con document server, counted by the for		
8 711 1	JPEG/JPEG2000		
8 711 2	TIFF (Multi/Single)		
8 711 3	PDF		
8 711 4	Other		

8 715	S:Scan PGS/Comp		[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count the number of compressed pages scanned by the scan application, counted by the formats slisted below.		
8 715 1	JPEG/JPEG2000		
8 715 2	TIFF (Multi/Single)		
8 715 3	PDF		
8 715 4	Other		

8 741	RX PGS/Port		[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages received by the physical port		
	used to receive them.		
8 741 1	PSTN-1		
8 741 2	PSTN-2		
8 741 3	PSTN-3		
8 741 4	ISDN (G3,G4)		
8 741 5	Network		

8 771	Dev Co		[0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners.			
	Note			
	For mad	For machines that do not support color, the Black toner count is the		
	same as	is the Total count.		
8 771 1	Total	All toners (YMCK)		
8 771 2	К	Black toner		
8 771 3	Y	Yellow toner		
8 771 4	М	Magenta toner		
8 771 5	С	Cyan toner		
8 771 6	R	Red toner (Wide Format	A2 machines only)	

8 781	Toner Use Count: Color		[0~65 535]	
		These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners.		
8 781 1	К	Black toner		
8 781 2	М	Magenta toner		
8 781 3	С	Cyan toner		
8 781 4	Y	Yellow toner		

8 791 1	LS Memory Remain	This SP displays the percent of space available on the document server for
		storing documents. [0~100/ 1]

8 801	Toner Remain			[0~100/ 1]
	This SP displays the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP allows the user to check the toner supply at any time. <b>Note:</b> This precise method of measuring remaining toner supply (1% steps) is better than other machines in the market that can only measure in increments of 10 (10% steps).			
8 801 1	K Black. Supported by B/W, Color, Wide Format A2, Wide Format Roll machines.			
8 801 2	Y	Yellow	Color machi	nes only.
8 801 3	М	Magenta		
8 801 4	С	Cyan		
8 801 5	R	R	Wide Forma	t A2 machines only.

8831	Pixel Cover Ave.	Average Pixel Coverage
001	Accum. Ave. K	
002	Accum. Ave. M	
003	Accum. Ave. C	
004	Accum. Ave. Y	

8841	Pixel Cover Last	Average Pixel Coverage
001	Last Page K	
002	Last Page M	
003	Last Page C	
004	Last Page Y	

8 851	Toner C	Coverage 0-10%	[0~65 535]
	These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners.		
8 851 1	K	Black toner	
8 851 2	М	Magenta toner	
8 851 3	С	Cyan toner	
8 851 4	Y	Yellow toner	

8 861	Toner C	overage 11-20%	[0~65 535]
	These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners.		
8 861 1	К	Black toner	
8 861 2	М	Magenta toner	
8 861 3	С	Cyan toner	
8 861 4	Y	Yellow toner	

8 871	Toner C	Toner Coverage 21-30% [0~65 535]		
		These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other		
	color to	color toners.		
8 871 1	K	Black toner		
8 871 2	М	Magenta toner		
8 871 3	С	Cyan toner		
8 871 4	Y	Yellow toner		

8 881	Toner Coverage 31 -%		[0~65 535]
	These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other		
	color to	color toners.	
8 881 1	K	Black toner	
8 881 2	М	Magenta toner	
8 881 3	С	Cyan toner	
8 881 4	Υ	Yellow toner	

#### SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

8 891	Pages: Current Toner		[0~65 535]
	These SPs count the number of pages for the current set toner.		
8 891 1	К	Black toner	
8 891 2	М	Magenta toner	
8 891 3	С	Cyan toner	
8 891 4	Y	Yellow toner	

8 941	Machine Status [0~9999999/ 1]		
	These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement in their compliance with ISO Standards.		
8 941 1	Operation Time	Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating).	
8 941 2	Standby Time	Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes.	
8 941 3	Energy Save Time	Includes time while the machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 4	Low Power Time	Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine on. Includes time while machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 5	Off Mode Time	Includes time while machine is performing background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches.	
8 941 6	Down Time/SC	Total down time due to SC errors.	
8 941 7	Down Time/PrtJam	Total down time due to paper jams during printing.	
8 941 8	Down Time/OrgJam	Total down time due to original jams during scanning.	
8 941 9	Down Time/TonEnd	Total down time due to toner end.	

8 951	AddBook Register		
	These SPs count the number of events when the machine manages data registration.		
8 951 1	User Code	User code registrations.	[0~9999999/ 1]
8 951 2	Mail Address	Mail address registrations.	
8 951 3	Fax Destination	Fax destination registrations.	
8 951 4	Group	Group destination registrations.	
8 951 5	Transfer Request	Fax relay destination registrations for relay TX.	
8 951 6	F-Code	F-Code box registrations.	
8 951 7	Copy Program	Copy application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	[0~255 / 255]
8 951 8	Fax Program	Fax application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	
8 951 9	Printer Program	Printer application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	
8 951 10	Scanner Program	Scanner application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	

# 5.5.3 PRINTER SERVICE TABLE

### Group 1 (Printer)

1001	Bit Switch	
001	Bit Switch 1 Settings	Adjusts the bit switch settings. DFU
002	Bit Switch 2 Settings	
003	Bit Switch 3 Settings	
004	Bit Switch 4 Settings	
005	Bit Switch 5 Settings	
006	Bit Switch 6 Settings	
007	Bit Switch 7 Settings	
008	Bit Switch 8 Settings	

1003	Clear Setting	
001	Initialize Printer System	
	Initializes settings in the "	'System" menu of the user mode.
003	Delete Program	

1004	Print Summary
	Print Summary
	Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings).

1005	Disp. Version	Display Version
	Displays the version of the	ne controller firmware.

1006	Sample/Locked Print
	Enables and disables the document server. When you select "0," the document server is enabled or disabled in accordance with Copy Service Mode SP5-967. When you select "1," the document server is enabled regardless of Copy Service Mode SP5-967. 0: Link With Doc. Svr. 1: Enable

1101	Data Recall		
	Recalls a set of gamma settings.		
001	Factory	This can be either a) the factory setting, b) the previous setting,	
002	Previous	or c) the current setting.	
003	Current		
004	ACC		

1102	Resolution Setting		
	Selects the printing mode (reso	lution) for the printer gamm	na adjustment.
	Touch a key on the display:	[2400 x 600 Photo]	[1800 x 600 Photo]
		[600 x 600 Photo]	[2400 x 600 Photo]
		[1800 x 600 Text]	[600 x 600]

1103	Test Page	
	Prints the test page to check the color balance before and after the gamma adjustment.	
001	Color Gray Scale	
002	Color Pattern	

1104	Gamma Adjustment	
	Adjusts the printer gamma for the	e mode selected in the "Mode Selection" menu.
001	Black: Highlight	[ 0 to 30 / <u>15</u> / 1/step ]
002	Black: Shadow	
003	Black: Middle	
004	Black: IDmax	
021	Cyan: Highlight	
022	Cyan: Shadow	
023	Cyan: Middle	
024	Cyan: IDmax	
041	Magenta: Highlight	
042	Magenta: Shadow	
043	Magenta: Middle	
044	Magenta: IDmax	
061	Yellow: Highlight	
062	Yellow: Shadow	
063	Yellow: Middle	
064	Yellow: IDmax	

1105	Save Tone Control Value		
	Stores the print gamma adjusted with the "Gamma Adj." menu item as the current setting. Before the machine stores the new "current setting", it moves the data currently stored as the "current setting" to the "previous setting" memory storage location.		

1106	Toner Limit		
	Adjusts the maximum toner a	mount for image development.	
001	Toner Limit: Photo	[ 100 to 400 / <u>260</u> / 1 %/step ]	
002	Toner Limit: Text	[ 100 to 400 / <u>190</u> / 1 %/step ]	

# 5.5.4 SCANNER SERVICE TABLE

### Group 1 (Scanner)

1004	Compression Type]
	Selects the compression type for binary picture processing.
	[ 1 to 3 /1/step ]
	1: MH, 2: MR, 3: MMR

1005	Erase margin]		
	Creates an erase margin for all edges of the scanned image. If the machine has scanned the edge of the original, create a margin. [0 to 5/ 1 mm/step]		

1007	Store Priority]	[1: Send/2: Store Only/3: Send & Store]
	This program specifies how s	canned data is processed as default.

1009	Remote Scan Disable
	This SP enables and disables remote scanning.
	0:Enable 1:Diable

# Group 2 (Scanner)

2021	Compression Ratio of Gray Scale				
	This SP sets the compression ratio of grayscale images.				
001	Normal Image				
002	High Comp Image				
003	Low Comp Image				
004	High Lvl2 Comp Image				
005	Low Lvl2 Comp Image				

# 5.6 COPIER INPUT/OUTPUT CHECK

# 5.6.1 COPIER INPUT CHECK: SP5803

This procedure allows you to test sensors and other components of the machine. After you select one of the categories below by number, you will see a small 8-bit table with the number of the bit and its current setting (0 or 1). The bits are numbered 0 to 7, reading right to left.

- 1. Enter the SP mode and select SP5803.
- 2. Enter the number (1 to 13) for the item that you want to check. A small box will be displayed on the SP mode screen with a series of 0's and 1's. The meaning of the display is as follows.

Bit	76543210
Setting	11001010

.

3. Check the status of each item against the corresponding bit numbers listed in the table below.

#### 001 Tray 1

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Rear Side Fence Closed Sensor – Tray 1	Off	On
Bit 6	Rear Side Fence Open Sensor – Tray 1	Off	On
Bit 5	Front Side Fence Closed Sensor – Tray 1	Off	On
Bit 4	Front Side Fence Open Sensor – Tray 1	Off	On
Bit 3	Paper Near End Sensor – Tray 1	Off	On
Bit 2	Paper Height Sensor 1 – Tray 1	Seet	able
Bit 1	Paper Height Sensor 2 – Tray 1 below.		
Bit 0	Paper Height Sensor 3 – Tray 1		

#### **Tandem Tray Paper Height Sensors: 001**

	10	0%	50	)%	30	)%	10	)%
Near End	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
Paper Height 1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0
Paper Height 2	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0
Paper Height 3	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0

#### 002 Paper Feed 1

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Paper Size – Tray 2	See t	able
Bit 6	Paper Size– Tray 2	belov	۷.
Bit 5	Paper Size– Tray 2		
Bit 4	Paper Size– Tray 2		
Bit 3	Paper Size– Tray 2		
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

# 003 Paper Feed 3

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Paper Size – Tray 3	See t	able
Bit 6	Paper Size – Tray 3	belov	۷.
Bit 5	Paper Size – Tray 3		
Bit 4	Paper Size – Tray 3		
Bit 3	Paper Size – Tray 3		
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

# Paper Size Table: 002, 003

Size	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3
12"x18"	1	1	1	1	1
A3	1	1	0	0	1
B4	1	0	0	1	1
A4 SEF	0	1	0	0	1
A4 LEF	1	1	0	0	0
B5 SEF	1	0	1	0	1
B5 LEF	0	0	0	1	1
A5 SEF	1	1	1	0	1
A5 LEF	0	1	1	0	1
DLT (11"x17")	1	1	1	0	0
LG (8½x14")	1	0	1	1	0
LT SEF (81/2x11")	1	1	0	1	0
LT LEF	0	1	1	0	0
HLT SEF	0	1	1	1	0
HLT LEF	1	1	1	1	0
F4 (8 ½" x 13")	1	1	0	1	1
Folio (8¼ x 13")	0	1	0	1	1
F (8" x 13")	0	1	1	1	1
Executive SEF (7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> "x10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "	1	0	1	0	0
Executive LEF	0	0	1	1	1
8K SEF	0	0	1	1	0
16 SEF	1	0	0	1	0
16 LEF	1	0	1	1	1

### 004 Paper Feed 4

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7			
Bit 6			
Bit 5	Paper Height Sensor – Tray 2	See	table
Bit 4	Paper Height Sensor – Tray 3	belov	Ν.
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1	Paper Near End Sensor – Tray 2	See	table
Bit 0	Paper Near End Sensor – Tray 3	belov	Ν.

# Paper Height, Near End: 004

	100%	50%	30%	10%
Paper Height	0	1	1	0
Near End	0	0	1	1

### 005: Paper Feed 5

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7			
Bit 6			
Bit 5			
Bit 4			
Bit 3			
Bit 2	Right Tray Paper Sensor – Tray 1	No Paper	Paper
Bit 1	Number of Trays Detected	3-Trays	4-Trays
Bit 0			

### 006: Paper Feed 6

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Tray 1 Set Sensor	Off	On
Bit 6	Rear Fence HP Sensor – Right	Off	On
Bit 5	Right Tray Down Sensor	Off	On
Bit 4	Rear Fence HP Sensor – Tray 1	Off	On
Bit 3	Rear Fence Open Senor – Right	Off	On
Bit 2	Rear Fence Return Sensor – Tray 1	Off	On
Bit 1	Paper End Sensor – Right Tray	Off	On
Bit 0	Right Tray Set Sensor – Tray 1	Off	On

### 007: Paper Feed 7

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Paper Feed Sensor – Tray 1	On	Off
Bit 6			
Bit 5	Paper Feed Sensor – Tray 2	On	Off
Bit 4	Paper Feed Sensor – Tray 3	On	Off
Bit 3	Vertical Transport Sensor – Tray 1	On	Off
Bit 2			
Bit 1	Vertical Transport Sensor – Tray 2	On	Off
Bit 0	Vertical Transport Sensor – Tray 3	On	Off

On = Paper present Off = No paper

#### 008: Paper Feed 8

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Lift Sensor – Tray 1	On	Off
Bit 6			
Bit 5	Lift Sensor – Tray 2	On	Off
Bit 4	Lift Sensor – Tray 3	On	Off
Bit 3	Paper End Sensor – Tray 1	On	Off
Bit 2			
Bit 1	Paper End Sensor – Tray 2	On	Off
Bit 0	Paper End Sensor – Tray 3	On	Off

On: Tray up, No paper Off: Tray down, paper present

### 009: Used Toner Trans

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7			
Bit 6	WasteToner Lock Sensor	Off	On
Bit 5	Waste Toner Bottle Full Sensor	Off	On
Bit 4	Waste Toner Bottle Set Sensor	Off	On
Bit 3	Waste Toner Bottle Near Full Sensor	Off	On
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

# 010: Paper Trans 1

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Duplex Transport Sensor 1	Off	On
Bit 6	Duplex Transport Sensor 2	Off	On
Bit 5	Duplex Transport Sensor 3	Off	On
Bit 4	Duplex Inverter Sensor	Off	On
Bit 3	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Off	On
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

# 011: Paper Trans 2

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	LCT Relay Sensor	Off	On
Bit 6	Paper Exit Relay Sensor	Off	On
Bit 5	Registration Sensor	Off	On
Bit 4	Guide Plate Position Sensor	Off	On
Bit 3			
Bit 2	Paper Exit Sensor	Off	On
Bit 1	Paper Exit Relay Sensor	Off	On
Bit 0		Off	On

### 012: Paper Trans 3

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Copy Tray Full Sensor		
Bit 6	Double-Feed Sensor		
Bit 5	Accordion Jam Sensor		
Bit 4	Fusing Exit Sensor		
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

### 013: Paper Trans 4

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Paper Size Switch 1	See table	
Bit 6	Paper Size Switch 2	belov	۷.
Bit 5	Paper Size Switch 3		
Bit 4	Paper Size Switch 4		
Bit 3	Bypass Paper Size Switch	Off	On
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

Bypass paper end sensor: Off: Paper present, On: No paper

## Paper Size Table: 013 (Trays 1 to 3, Bit 7 to 4)

NA	EU/Asia	Tray Sensor SW				
	EGASId		2	3	4	5
Postcard (100 x 148 mm)	Postcard (100 x 148 mm)	L	Н	Н	Н	Н
5 ½ x 8 ½ SEF	A5 SEF	L	Н	Н	Н	L
5 ½ x 8 ½ SEF	A5 SEF	L	Н	Н	Н	L
8 ½ x 14 SEF	8 x 13 SEF	L	Н	Н	L	Н
8 ½ x 14 SEF	A4 SEF	L	Н	L	L	Н
8 ½ x 14 SEF	A3 SEF	L	Н	L	L	Н
11 x 17 SEF	A3 SEF	L	L	L	Н	Н
A3 SEF	A3 SEF	L	L	Н	Н	Н

### Paper Size Table: 013 (Bypass Tray Bit 3)

NA	EU/Asia	Tray Sensor SW				
	EUrAsid	1	2	3	4	5
Postcard (100 x 148 mm)	Postcard (100 x 148 mm)	L	Н	Н	Н	Н
5 1⁄2 x 8 1⁄2 SEF	A5 SEF	L	Н	Н	Н	L
5 ½ x 8 ½ SEF	A5 SEF	L	Н	Н	Н	L
8 ½ x 14 SEF	8 x 13 SEF	L	Н	Н	L	Н
8 ½ x 14 SEF	A5 LEF	L	Н	L	L	Н
8 ½ x 14 SEF	A4 LEF	L	Н	L	L	Н
11 x 8 ½ SEF	A4 LEF	L	L	L	Н	Н
A4 LEF	A4 LEF	L	L	Н	Н	Η

### 014: Drum Mtr Lock

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Drum Motor Lock – Y	Off	On
Bit 6	Drum Motor Lock – M	Off	On
Bit 5	Drum Motor Lock – C	Off	On
Bit 4	Drum Motor Lock – K	Off	On
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

Off: No Lock

On: Locked

#### 015: PCU Motor Lock

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	PCU Motor Lock – Y	Off	On
Bit 6	PCU Motor Lock – M	Off	On
Bit 5	PCU Motor Lock – C	Off	On
Bit 4	PCU Motor Lock – K	Off	On
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			
Off: No	Lock		

On: Locked

#### 016: Other Motor Lock

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	ITB Drive Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 6	PTR Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 5	Fusing/Exit Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 4	Waste Toner Bottle Collection Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 3	Waste Toner Distribution Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

Off: No Lock

On: Locked

### 017: Fan System 1

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Paper Exit Fan Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 6	Duplex Fan Motor – Front Lock	Off	On
Bit 5	Duplex Fan Motor – Rear Lock	Off	On
Bit 4			
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

Off: No Lock

On: Locked

### 018: Fan System 2

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Fusing Cooling Fan Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 6	Fusing Exhaust Fan Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 5	Fusing Fan Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 4	Peltier Cooling Fan Motor Lock	Off	On
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

Off: No Lock

On: Locked

### 019: Fan System 3

Bit	Input	0	1	
Bit 7	Controlling Box Cooling Fan Motor 2 Lock	Off	On	
Bit 6	Controlling Box Cooling Fan Motor 1 Lock	Off	On	
Bit 5				
Bit 4				
Bit 3				
Bit 2				
Bit 1				
Bit 0				
Off: No Lock				

On: Locked

# 020: Hi Volt SC1 (Drum Charge Power Pack)

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	High Voltage Output: Y	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 6	High Voltage Output: M	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 5	High Voltage Output: C	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 4	High Voltage Output: K	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

# 021: Hi Volt SC2 (Development Bias Power Pack)

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	High Voltage Output: Y	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 6	High Voltage Output: M	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 5	High Voltage Output: C	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 4	High Voltage Output: K	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

### 022: Hi Volt SC3 (Transfer Power Pack, Separation Power Pack)

Bit	Input		0	1
Bit 7	High Voltage Output: Y	Transfer PP	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 6	High Voltage Output: M		Normal	Abnormal
Bit 5	High Voltage Output: C		Normal	Abnormal
Bit 4	High Voltage Output: K		Normal	Abnormal
Bit 3	High Voltage Output: Y		Normal	Abnormal
Bit 2	Paper Separation	Separation PP	Normal	Abnormal
Bit 1				
Bit 0				

#### 023: Paper Transfer

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	ITB Lift Sensor	Separated	Contact
Bit 6			
Bit 5			
Bit 4			
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1	ITB Position Sensor 1	See table below.	
Bit 0	ITB Position Sensor 2		

#### Bit Table: 023

Bit 1/Bit 0	Function
00	Belt Scale Control
01	Encoder Control
10	Belt or Sensor Defective
11	Belt or Sensor Defective

## 024: Toner Supply

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Toner End Sensor: Y	Off	On
Bit 6	Toner End Sensor: M	Off	On
Bit 5	Toner End Sensor: C	Off	On
Bit 4	Toner End Sensor: K	Off	On
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

Off: Toner

On: Toner End

# 025: Fusing Temp Detect

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Pressure Roller Thermostat – High Temp	Off	On
Bit 6	Hot Roller Thermistor – High Temp	Off	On
Bit 5	Heating Roller Temperataure Sensor – High Temp	Off	On
Bit 4			
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

Off: Temperature within normal range

On: Temperature high, exceeded normal range

#### 026: Set Detection

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Key Card Set	Off	On
Bit 6	Key Count Set	Off	On
Bit 5	Mechanical Counter B Set	Off	On
Bit 4	Mechanical Counter FC Set	Off	On
Bit 3	Fusing Unit Set	Off	On
Bit 2	Duplex Unit Set	Off	On
Bit 1	Drawer Set	Off	On
Bit 0			

#### 027: Door

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Front Door Switches	Off	On
Bit 6			
Bit 5			
Bit 4			
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

#### 028: Peltier Unit

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	Peltier Unit Abnormal	Off	On
Bit 6	Peltier Unit Fan Motor	Off	On
Bit 5			
Bit 4			
Bit 3			
Bit 2			
Bit 1			
Bit 0			

#### 201: DIP Switches

Bit	Input	0	1
Bit 7	DIP-SW7		
Bit 6	DIP-SW6		
Bit 5	DIP-SW5		
Bit 4	DIP-SW4		
Bit 3	DIP-SW3		
Bit 2	DIP-SW2		
Bit 1	DIP-SW1		
Bit 0	DIP-SW0		

## 5.6.2 COPIER OUTPUT CHECK: SP5804

- 1. Open SP mode 5804.
- 2. Select the SP number that corresponds to the component you wish to check. (Refer to the table on the next page.)
- Press On then press Off to test the selected item.
   NOTE: You cannot exit and close this display until you press off to switch off the output check currently executing. Do not keep an electrical component switched on for a long time.

5804	Output Chk		Output	Check	
001	Fuse Fan: Front NS	M14	045	Hopper Mtr Fwd	M51
002	Fuse Fan: Front HS	"	046	P.Pump Drv CL:Y	MC6
003	Fuse Fan: Back NS	M15	047	P.Pump Drv CL:M	MC2
004	Fuse Fan: Back HS	"	048	P.Pump Drv CL:C	MC8
005	Opt. Fan: Front NS	M35	049	P.Pump Drv CL:K	MC4
006	Opt. Fan: Front HS	"	050	Used Toner Mtr 1	M23
007	Opt. Fan: Back NS	M34	051	Used Toner Mtr 1	"
008	Opt. Fan: Back HS	"	052	Chage dc:Y	PCB7
009	Exit Pipe Fan	M25	053	Chage dc:M	"
010	Sub Fuse Fan: NS	M13	054	Chage dc:C	"
011	Sub Fuse Fan: HS	"	055	Chage dc:K	"
012	PT Fan: NS	M24	056	Chage ac:Y	"
014	Dupx Fan: NS	M20	057	Chage ac:M	"
015	Dupx Fan:Front:NS	M29	058	Chage ac:C	"
016	Dupx Fan:Front:HS	"	059	Chage ac:K	"
017	Dupx Fan:Back:NS	M30	060	Dev dc:Y	PCB6
018	Dupx Fan:Back:HS	"	061	Dev dc:M	"
019	Exit Fan:NS	M28	062	Dev dc:C	"
021	PCB Box Fan1:NS	M41	063	Dev dc:K	"
023	PCB Box Fan2:NS	M42	064	Dev ac:Y	"
025	PSU Fan 1:NS		065	Dev ac:M	"
026	PSU Fan 1:HS		066	Dev ac:C	"
027	PSU Fan 2:NS		067	Dev ac:K	"
028	PSU Fan 2:HS		068	Paper Transfer	PCB8
029	PT Fan 1:NS	M27	069	Paper Separate dc	PCB9
030	PT Fan 2:NS	M26	070	Paper Separate ac	"
031	Pelt. Cool Fan:NS	M32	099	ID Sensor:3c	S2
032	Pelt. Cool Fan:HS	"	100	ID Sensor: K	S1
033	Potential Sn Fan	M31	101	QL:Y	QL4
034	Ozone Fan	M12	102	QL:M	QL3
035	PCU Fan:Y	M52	103	QL:C	QL2
036	PCU Fan:C	M53	104	QL:K	QL1
037	PCU Fan:M	M54	105	LD:Y	PCB23
038	PCU Fan:K	M55	106	LD:M	PCB25
039	Pelt. Cooling Fan	M32	107	LD:C	PCB24
040	Pelt. Cir. Fan	M33	108	LD:K PC	
041	Sub Hopper CL:Y	MC7	109	Polygon Mtr M4	
042	Sub Hopper CL:M	MC3	110	Feed Mtr 1:Fwd/Nor	M3
043	Sub Hopper CL:C	MC9	111	Feed Mtr 1:Fwd/Hi	"
044	Sub Hopper CL:K	MC5	112	Feed Mtr 1:Fwd/Haf	"

Note: " Means same as above, and --- means "not used"

5804	Output Chk		Οι	itput Check	
113	Feed Mtr 1:Rev/Nor	M3	15	5 Dup Inv M:Fwd/Hi	M22
114	Feed Mtr 1:Rev/Haf	"	15	6 Dup Inv M:Fwd/Haf	"
115	Feed Mtr 2:Fwd/Nor	M2	15	7 DupInvM:Fwd/TS	"
116	Feed Mtr 2:Fwd/Hi	"	15	B DupTrans M:Fwd/Nor	M21
117	Feed Mtr 2:Fwd/Haf	"	15	9 DupTrans M:Fwd/Hi	"
118	Feed Mtr 2:Rev/Nor	"	16	0 DupTrans M:Fwd/Haf	"
119	Feed Mtr 2:Rev/Haf	"	16	1 Dup JG SOL	SOL11
120	Feed Mtr 3:Fwd/Nor	M5	16	2 Inv Pos SOL	SOL12
121	Feed Mtr 3:Fwd/Hi	"	16	3 Dup Trans CL	
122	Feed Mtr 3:Fwd/Haf	"	16	4 Dup Jog M:HP Sn	S45
123	Feed Mtr 3:Rev/Nor	"	16	9 Drum Mtr:K	M45
124	Feed Mtr 3:Rev/Haf	"	17	0 Drum Mtr:K:Haf	"
125	Feed Mtr 4:Fwd/Nor	M4	17	1 Drum Mtr:M	M44
126	Feed Mtr 4:Fwd/Hi	"	17		"
127	Feed Mtr 4:Fwd/Haf	"	17		M43
128	Feed Mtr 4:Rev/Nor	"	17		"
129	Feed Mtr 4:Rev/Haf	"	17		M42
130	Bypass Feed CL	MC1	17		"
131	Pickup SOL:Tray 1	SOL5	17		M37
132	Pickup SOL:Tray 2		17		"
133	Pickup SOL:Tray 3	SOL1	17		M36
134	Pickup SOL:Tray 4	SOL3	18		"
135	Bypass Pickup SOL	SOL15	18		M39
136	Rev SOL:Tray 1	SOL6	18		"
137	Rev SOL:Tray 2		18		M38
138	Rev SOL:Tray 3	SOL2	18		"
139	Rev SOL:Tray 4	SOL4	18		M46
140	Tan Conn Rel SOL	SOL9	18		"
141	Tan Lock SOL	SOL10	18		M17
142	TanShift M:Fwd/Rev	M10	18		"
145	Relay Mtr:Fwd/Nor	M18	18		M16
146	Relay M:Fwd/Dup	"	19		"
147	Relay M:Fwd/Haf	"	19		"
148	Relay M:Rev/Nor	"	19		M11
149	Relay M:Rev/Haf	"		93 ITB Lift M:Rev	
150	Reg Mtr:Rev/Haf	M23	19	Ŭ	LED2
151	Reg Mrt:Half Spd	"	19		LED3
152	Guide Rel SOL	SOL13	20		M56
153	Exit JG SOL	SOL14	20		L1
154	Dup Inv M:Fwd/Nor	M22	20		M1

Note: " Means same as above, and --- means "not used"

# 5.7 ARDF INPUT/OUTPUT CHECK

## 5.7.1 ADF INPUT CHECK: SP6007

- 1. Open SP mode SP6007.
- 2. Select the SP number that corresponds to the component you wish to check. (Refer to the table below.)
- 3. Press On then press Off to test the selected item. You cannot exit and close this display until you click Off to switch off the output check currently executing.

Bit	76543210
Data	11001010

## Group 1

Bit	Part/Component		Status		
7	Registration Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
6	Interval Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
5	Skew Correction Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
4	Separation Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
3	Original Set Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
2	B5 Detection Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
1	A4 Detection Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
0	LG Detection Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On

#### Group 2

Bit	Part/Component		Sta	atus	
7	APS Start Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
6	ARDF Position Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
5	Exit Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
4	Original Width Sensor 5	0:	Off	1:	On
3	Original Width Sensor 4	0:	Off	1:	On
2	Original Width Sensor 3	0:	Off	1:	On
1	Original Width Sensor 2	0:	Off	1:	On
0	Original Width Sensor 1	0:	Off	1:	On

#### Group 3

Bit	Part/Component		St	atus	
7		0:	Off	1:	On
6		0:	Off	1:	On
5	Lower Inverter Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
4	Upper Inverter Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
3	Bottom Plate Position Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
2	Bottom Plate HP Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
1	Pick-Up Roller HP Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On
0	Feed Cover Sensor	0:	Off	1:	On

## 5.7.2 ADF OUTPUT CHECK: SP6008

- 1. Open SP mode SP6008.
- 2. Select the SP number that corresponds to the component you wish to check. (Refer to the table below.)
- 3. Press On then press Off to test the selected item. You cannot exit and close this display until you click Off to switch off the output check currently executing.

6008	ADF Output Chk	ADF Output	t Check	
		rical components individually for testing. Select the touch the "ON" button. Besure to touch the "OFF" button e component turn on.		
001	ADF Feed M:Fwd	007	ADF Bot Inv M:Fwd	
002	ADF Feed M:Rev	008	ADF Bot Inv M:Rev	
003	ADF Trans M:Fwd	009	ADF Pickup M:Fwd	
004	ADF Ext M:Fwd	010	ADF BotPlt M:Rev	
005	ADF Top Inv M:Fwd	011	ADF Top Inv SOL	
006	ADF Top Inv M:Rev	012	ADF Bot Inv SOL	

# 5.8 FINISHER 1 (B700/B701) INPUT/OUTPUT CHECK

# 5.8.1 INPUT CHECK: FINISHER 1 (B700/B701) SP6121

6121	Input Chk:Fin1		ut Check: Finisher 1 (B700/B701)		
	These are the input checks	hecks for the 2000-Sheet/3000-Sheet Finishers B700/B701.			
001	Entrance Sn	026	Punch Full Sn		
002	Proof Exit Sn	027	Punch HP Sn		
003	Proof Full Sn	028	Punch DIP SW1		
004	Up Tray Exit Sn	029	Punch DIP SW2		
005	Staple Exit Sn	030	Stack Junc HP Sn		
006	Shift Roll HP Sn	031	Stack Present Sn		
007	Exit Sn	032	Clamp Roll HP Sn		
008	Exit Guide HP Sn	033	Fold Entrance Sn		
009	Low Tray Hgt Sn	034	Bot Fence HP Sn		
010	Up Tray Hgt Sn	035	Fol Cam HP Sn		
011	Up Tray Full Sn	036	Fold Plate HP Sn		
012	Stack Roll HP Sn	037	Fold Exit Sn		
013		038	Book Full Sn 1		
014	Feed Out HP Sn	039	Book Full Sn 2		
015	Stp Tray Ppr Sn	040	BStapler 1 Op		
016	Stp Tray HP Sn	041	BStapler 1 In		
017	Stp Rotate HP Sn	042	BStaples 1 In		
018	Up Tray Limit SW	043	BStapler 2 Op		
019	Door Switch	044	BStapler 2 In		
020	Corner Stp Op	045	BStaples 2 In		
021	Corner Stp 1	046	Up TrayFull:3000		
022	Corner Staples	047	Out Jog HP Sn 1		
023	Punch HP Sn	048	Out Jog HP Sn 2		
024	Punch Unit HP Sn	049	OutJog RetractSn		
025	Punch Ppr HP Sn				

# 5.8.2 OUTPUT CHECK FINISHER 1: (B700/B701) SP6123

6123	Output Chk:Fin1	Outpu	t Check: Finisher 1 (B700/B701)
	These are the output checks for	or the 20	00-Sheet/3000-Sheet Finishers B700/B701.
001	Entrance M	017	Pos Roll SOL
002	Up Trans M	018	Stp Edge Plate SOL
003	Low Trans M	019	Book Press SOL
004	Exit M	020	Stack JG M
005	Pos Roll M	021	Fold Bot Fence M
006	Shift M	022	Book Stp M:Front
007	Exit Guide M	023	Book Stp M:Back
008	Tray Lift M	024	Fold Plate M
009	Stack Roller M	025	Fold Roll M
010	Jogger M	026	Clamp Roll M
011	Feed Out M	027	Punch M
012	Stp Shift M	028	Punch Move M
013	Stp Rot M	029	Reg M
014	Corner Stp M	030	Output Jog M: Front
015	Up JG SOL	031	Output Jog M: Rear
016	Dn JG SOL	032	Output Jog Retract M

# 5.9 FINISHER 2 (B706) INPUT/OUTPUT CHECK

# 5.9.1 INPUT CHECK FINISHER 2: (B706) SP6122

6122	Input Chk:Fin2		Input Check: Finisher 2 (B706)		
	These are the input checks for	or the 3000	-Sheet Finisher B706.		
001	Entrance Sn	021	Proof Full Sn		
002	Proof Exit Sn	022	Staple Rotate HP Sn		
003	Shift Exit Sn	023	S Hopper Full Sn		
004	Stp Exit Sn	024	PreStack Sn		
005	Tray Bot Plt Sn	025	Stack Plate HP		
006	Tray Near Bot Sn	026	Exit Guide HP Sn		
007	Release HP Sn	027	Stapler Return Sn		
008	Jogger HP Sn	028	Stapler Ready Sn		
009	Shift HP Sn	029	Stack Plate HP Sn 1		
010	Stapler Side HP Sn	030	Stack Plate HP Sn 2		
011	Stapler HP Sn	031	Stp Hammer HP Sn		
012	Staple Sn	032	Retrun Drv HP Sn		
013	Staple Tray Sn	033	Paper Hgt Sn		
014	Door Open Sn	034	Tray Limit SW		
015	Punch Sn	035	Punch HP Sn 2		
016	Punch HP Sn 1	036	Shift Jog Sn		
017	Puncout Full Sn	037	Shift Jog HP Sn		
018	Paper Hgt Sn:Stp	038	Out Jog Retract Sn		
019	Paper Hgt Sn:Shift	039	Emergency Stop SW		
020	Cart Detect Sn				

# 5.9.2 OUTPUT CHECK FINISHER 2 (B706) SP6125

6125	Output Chk:Fin2	Output Check: Finisher 2 (B706)		
	These are the input checks	for the 3	3000-Sheet Finisher B706.	
001	Off:Stop	014	Stp Lift M:1 Op	
002	Main M:Cont	015	Stp Exit M:Cont	
003	Shift Exit M:Cont	016	Open Exit M:Cont	
004	Proof SW SOL:Cont	017	Fold Plate M:1 Op	
005	Tray Lift M:1 Op	018	PrestackJG SOL:10p	
006	Jogger M:1 Op	019	Guide JG SOL:1 Op	
007	Stp M:1 Op Horiz	020	Stp Return:1 Op	
008	Stp M:1 Op	021	Fold M:Front:1 Op	
009	Punch M:1 Op	022	Fold M:Back:1 Op	
010	Stp JG SOL:Cont	023	Return Drv M:1 Op	
011	Stp Hammer M:1 Op	024	Return TransM:1Op	
012	Feed Out M:1 Op	025	Shift Jog M:1 Op	
013	Shift M:1 Op	026	ShiftJogShuntM:1Op	

Service Tables

# 5.10 USING THE DEBUG LOG

This machine provides a Save Debug Log feature that allows the Customer Engineer to save and retrieve error information for analysis.

Every time an error occurs, debug information is recorded in volatile memory but this information is lost when the machine is switched off and on.

The Save Debug Log feature provides two main features:

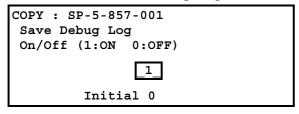
- Switching on the debug feature so error information is saved directly to the HDD for later retrieval.
- Copying the error information from the HDD to an SD card.

When a user is experiencing problems with the machine, follow the procedure below to set up the machine so the error information is saved automatically to the HDD.

## 5.10.1 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG

The debug information cannot be saved the until the "Save Debug Log" function has been switched on and a target has been selected.

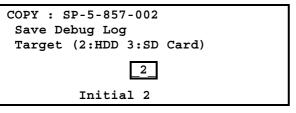
- 1. Enter the SP mode and switch the Save Debug Log feature on.
  - Press Image that the set of the s
  - Press and hold down **C** for more than 3 seconds.
  - Touch "Copy SP".
  - On the LCD panel, open SP5857.
- 2. Under "5857 Save Debug Log", touch "1 On/Off".



3. On the control panel keypad, press "1" then press <sup>⊕</sup>. This switches the Save Debug Log feature on.

**NOTE:** The default setting is "0" (OFF). This feature must be switched on in order for the debug information to be saved.

 Next, select the target destination where the debug information will be saved. Under "5857 Save Debug Log", touch "2 Target", enter "2" with the operation panel key to select the hard disk as the target destination, then press <sup>(#)</sup>.



**NOTE:** Select "3 SD Card" to save the debug information directly to the SD card if it is inserted in the service slot.

5. Now touch "5858" and specify the events that you want to record in the debug log. SP5858 (Debug Save When) provides the following items for selection.

1	Engine SC Error	Saves data when an engine-related SC code is generated.
2	Controller SC Error	Saves debug data when a controller- related SC Code is generated.
3	Any SC Error	Saves data only for the SC code that you specify by entering code number.
4	Jam	Saves data for jams.

**NOTE:** More than one event can be selected.

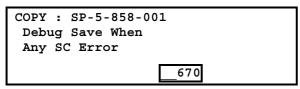
#### Example 1: To Select Items 1, 2, 4

Touch the appropriate items(s). Press "ON" for each selection. This example shows "Engine SC Error" selected.



#### Example 2: To Specify an SC Code

Touch "3 Any SC Error", enter the 3-digit SC code number with the control panel number keys, then press (#). This example shows an entry for SC670.



**NOTE:** For details about SC code numbers, please refer to the SC tables in Section "4. Troubleshooting".

6. Next, select the one or more memory modules for reading and recording debug information. Touch "5859".

Under "5859" press the appropriate key item for the module that you want to record.

Enter the appropriate 4-digit number, then press (#).

**NOTE:** Refer to the two tables below for the 4-digit numbers to enter for each key.

The example below shows "Key 1" with "2222" entered.

COPY :	SP-5-	-859-	-001	
Debug	Save	Кеу	No.	
Key 1				
				1
			_2222	

The following keys can be set with the corresponding numbers. (The initials in parentheses indicate the names of the modules.)

#### 4-Digit Entries for Keys 1 to 10

KEY NO.	COPY	PRINTER	SCANNER	WEB	
1		2222 (SC	S)		
2		2223 (SRI	M)		
3		256 (IMH	l)		
4		1000 (EC	S)		
5		1025 (MCS)			
6	4848 (COPY)	4848 (COPY) 4400 (GPS) 5375 (Scan) 5682 (NFA)			
7	2224 (BCU)	4500 (PDL)	5682 (NFA)	6600 (WebDB)	
8		4600 (GPS-PM)	3000 (NCS)	3300 (PTS)	
9		2000 (NCS) 2000 (NCS) 6666 (WebSys)			
10		2224 (BCU)		2000 (NCS)	

**NOTE:** The default settings for Keys 1 to 10 are all zero ("0"). **NOTE:** 

#### Key to Acronyms

Acronym	Meaning	Acronym	Meaning
ECS	Engine Control Service	NFA	Net File Application
GPS	GW Print Service	PDL	Printer Design Language
GSP-PM	GW Print Service – Print Module	PTS	Print Server
IMH	Image Memory Handler	SCS	System Control Service
MCS	Memory Control Service	SRM	System Resource Management
NCS	Network Control Service	WebDB	Web Document Box (Document Server)

The machine is now set to record the debugging information automatically on the HDD (the target selected with SP5857-002) for the events that you selected SP5858 and the memory modules selected with SP5859.

Please keep the following important points in mind when you are doing this setting:

- Note that the number entries for Keys 1 to 5 are the same for the Copy, Printer, Scanner, and Web memory modules.
- The initial settings are all zero.
- These settings remain in effect until you change them. Be sure to check all the settings, especially the settings for Keys 6 to 10. To switch off a key setting, enter a zero for that key.
- You can select any number of keys from 1 to 10 (or all) by entering the corresponding 4-digit numbers from the table.
- You cannot mix settings for the groups (COPY, PRINTER, etc.) for 006~010. For example, if you want to create a PRINTER debug log you must select the settings from the 9 available selections for the "PRINTER" column only.
- One area of the disk is reserved to store the debug log. The size of this area is limited to 4 MB.

## 5.10.2 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD

Retrieve the debug log by copying it from the hard disk to an SD card.

- 1. Insert the SD card into the service slot of the copier.
- 2. Enter the SP mode and execute SP5857-009 (Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)) to write the debugging data to the SD card.
- 3. After you return to the service center, use a card reader to copy the file and send it for analysis to Ricoh by email, or just send the SD card by mail.

Service Tables

## 5.10.3 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY

Since only SC errors and jams are recorded to the debug log automatically, for any other errors that occur while the customer engineer is not on site, please instruct customers to perform the following immediately after occurrence to save the debug data. Such problems would include a controller or panel freeze.

- **NOTE:** In order to use this feature, the customer engineer must have previously switched on the Save Debug Feature (SP5857-001) and selected the hard disk as the save destination (SP5857-002).
- 1. When the error occurs, on the operation panel, press 3 (Clear Modes).
- 2. On the control panel, enter "01" then hold down **C**/℗ for at least 3 sec. until the machine beeps then release. This saves the debug log to the hard disk for later retrieval with an SD card by the service representatives.
- 3. Switch the machine off and on to resume operation.

The debug information for the error is saved on the hard disk so the service representatives can retrieve it on their next visit by copying it from the HDD to an SD card.

## 5.10.4 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES

## SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key

This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number. The copy operation is executed in the log directory of the SD card inserted in the same slot. (This function does not copy from one slot to another.) Each SD card can hold up to 4 MB of file data. Unique file names are created for the data during the copy operation to prevent overwriting files of the same name. This means that log data from more than one machine can be copied onto the same SC card. This command does not execute if there is no log on the HDD for the name of the specified key.

## SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log

This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number "2225" as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the HDD when the first log is stored on the HDD, but this operation takes time. This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the HDD. With the file already created on the HDD for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded; a new log file does not require creation. To create a new log file, execute SP5857-011 to delete the debug log data from the HDD and then execute this SP (SP5857-016).

#### SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log

This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number "2225" as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the SD card when the first log is stored on the SD card, but this operation takes time. This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the SD card. With the file already created on the SD card for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded; a new log file does not require creation. To create a new log file, execute SP5857-012 to delete the debug log data from the SD card and then execute this SP (SP5857-017).

# 5.11 USER TOOLS

## 5.11.1 OVERVIEW

This section is a summary of the user tools. Refer to the operator's manual for more details.

- 1. On the operation panel, press the User Tools button.
- 2. Press the appropriate key, then access the following items:
  - System Settings
  - Maintenance
  - Copier/Document Server Features
  - Printer Features
  - Scanner Features
  - Inquiry
  - Counter

You can use these tools while the machine is operating, during a jam, or even when a warning is displayed. However, you cannot move to the user screen while in the SP mode, but you can easily switch between the SP mode screen and the operation screen by pressing Copy Window.

During machine operation, in the jam mode, or while a warning message is displayed, the display language can be changed and the counters can be displayed. However, the counters cannot be printed.

# 5.11.2 SYSTEM SETTINGS

Key press: [User Tools]> "System Settings"

## System Settings Map

General Features
Panel Tone
Warm Up Notice
Copy Count Display
Function Priority
Print Priority
Function Reset Timer
Interleave Print
Output Copier
Output: Document Server
Output: Printer
ADF Original Table Elevation
Job List Display Time
Tray Paper Settings
Paper Tray Priority: Copier
Paper Tray Priority: Printer
Tray Paper Size: Tray 2
Tray Paper Size: Tray 3
Paper Type: Bypass Tray
Paper Type: Tray 1
Paper Type: Tray 2
Paper Type: Tray 3
Paper Type: LCT
Front Cover Select Tray
Back Cover Select Tray
Slip Sheet Tray
Designation Sheet Tray 1
Designation Sheet Tray 2
Printer Bypass Paper Size
Paper Type Detect
Double Feed Detect

Service Tables

## System Settings Map (Continued)

Time of O attime of
Timer Settings
Auto Off Timer
Energy Saver Timer
Panel Off Timer
System Reset Timer
Copier/Document Server Auto Reset Timer
Printer Auto Reset Timer
Scanner Auto Reset Timer
Set Date
Set Time
Weekly Timer Code
Auto Logout Timer
Weekly Timer: Monday
Weekly Timer: Tuesday
Weekly Timer: Wednesday
Weekly Timer: Thursday
Weekly Timer: Friday
Weekly Timer: Saturday
Weekly Timer: Sunday
Interface Settings
Network
IP Address
Gateway Address
DNS Configuration
DDNS Configuration
Domain Name
WINS Configuration
Effective Protocol
NW Frame Type
SMB Computer Name
SMB Work Group
Ethernet Speed
Ping Command
Permit SNMP V3 Communication
Permit SSL/TLS Communication
Host Name
Machine Name
File Transfer
Delivery Option
SMTP Server
SMTP Authentication
POP Before SMTP
POP3 Setting
Administrator's E-mail Address
E-mail Communication Report
Default User Name/Password (Send)
Program/Change/Delete E-mail Message
Program/Change/Delete Subject
Scanner Recall Interval Time
Number of Scanner Recalls
Auto Specify Sender Name

## System Settings Map (Continued)

Administrator Tools
User Authentication Management
Administrator Authentication Management
Program/Change Administrator
Key Counter Management
External Charge Unit Management
Extended Security
Extend Change Unit Management
Enhanced Extend Change Unit Management
Display Print Counter
Display/Clear/Print Counter Per User
Address Book Management
Address Book: Program/Change/Delete/Delete Group
Address Book: Edit Title
Address Book: Change Order
Print Address Book: Destination List
Address Book: Select Title
Auto Delete File
Delete All Files
Program/Change/Delete LDAP Server
Use LDAP Server
AOF (Always ON)
Service Test Call

Service Tables

## 5.11.3 MAINTENANCE

Key press: [User Tools]> "Maintenance"

### Maintenance Map

Auto Color Calibration	
Color Registration	

## 5.11.4 COPIER/DOCUMENT SERVER FEATURES

Key press: [User Tools]> "Copier/Document Server Features"

**Copier/Document Server Features Map** 

General Features
Auto Paper Select Priority
Paper Display
Original Type Display
Original Type Priority
Original Photo Type Priority
Auto Tray Switching
Duplex Mode Priority
Copy Orientation in Duplex Mode
Original Orientation in Duplex Mode
Max. Copy Quantity
Change Initial Mode
Tone: Original Remains
Job End Call
Copy Function Key: F1
Copy Function Key: F2
Copy Function Key: F2
Copy Function Key: F4
Copy Function Key: F5
Document Server Storage Key: F1
Document Server Storage Key: F2
Document Server Storage Key: F3
Document Server Storage Key: F4
Document Server Storage Key: F5 Document Server Print Key 1: F1
Document Server Print Key 1: F1
Document Server Print Key 1: F2
Document Server Print Key 1: F3
Document Server Print Key 1: F5 Reproduction Ratio
Shortcut R/E 1
Shortcut R/E 2
Shortcut R/E 3
Enlarge 1 Enlarge 2
Enlarge 2 Enlarge 3
Enlarge 3 Enlarge 4
- 5-
Enlarge 5 Priority Setting: Enlarge
Reduce 1
Reduce 1 Reduce 2
Reduce 2 Reduce 3
Reduce 3 Reduce 4
Reduce 4 Reduce 5
Reduce 5 Reduce 6
Priority Setting: Reduce Ratio for Create Margin
R/E Priority

## Copier/Document Server Features Map (Continued)

Edit
Front Margin: Left/Right
Back Margin: Left/Right
Front Margin: Top/Bottom
Back Margin: Top/Bottom
1-Sided $\rightarrow$ 2-Sided Auto Margin: T to T
1-Sided $\rightarrow$ 2-Sided Auto Margin: T to B
Erase Border Width
Erase Original Shadow in Combine
Erase Center Width
Copy Back Cover
Front Cover Copy in Combine
Orientation: Booklet, Magazine
Copy Order in Combine
Image Repeat Separation Line
Double Copies Separation Line
Separation Line in Combine
Stamp
Background Numbering
Size
Density
Stamp Color
Preset Stamp
Stamp Priority
Stamp Language
Stamp Position: COPY
Stamp Position: URGENT
Stamp Position: PRIORITY
Stamp Position: For Your Info.
Stamp Position: PRELIMINARY
Stamp Position: For Internal Use Only
Stamp Position: CONFIDENTIAL
Stamp Position: DRAFT
Stamp Format: COPY
Stamp Format: URGENT
Stamp Format: PRIORITY
Stamp Format: For Your Info.
Stamp Format: PRELIMINARY
Stamp Format: For Internal Use Only
Stamp Format: CONFIDENTIAL
Stamp Format: DRAFT

Service Tables

#### **User Stamp** Program/Delete Stamp Stamp Position: 1 Stamp Position: 2 Stamp Position: 3 Stamp Position: 4 Stamp Format: 1 Stamp Format: 2 Stamp Format: 3 Stamp Format: 4 Stamp Color: 1 Stamp Color: 2 Stamp Color: 3 Stamp Color: 4 Date Stamp Format Font Stamp Position Stamp Setting Size Superimpose Stamp Color Page Numbering Stamp Format Font Size **Duplex Back Page Stamping Position** Page Numbering in Combine Stamp on Designating Slip Sheet Stamp Position P1, P2 Stamp Position: 1/5 ... Stamp Position: -1-, -2- ... Stamp Position: P.1, P.2 ... Stamp Position: 1, 2, ... Stamp Position: 1-1, 1-2 ... Superimpose Input/Output Switch to Batch SADF Auto Reset Rotate Sort: Auto Paper Continue Auto Sort Memory Full Auto Scan Restart Select Stapling Position (Top Left) Select Stapling Position (Bottom Left) Select Stapling Position (Top Right) Select Stapling Position (Bottom Right) Select Stack Position Select Punch Type Letterhead Setting Eject Copy Face Up/Down in Glass Mode Eject Copy Face Up/Down in Bypass Mode

#### **Copier/Document Server Features Map (Continued)**

## 5.11.5 PRINTER FEATURES

Key press: [User Tools]> "Printer Features"

## Printer Features Map

List/Test Print
Multiple Lists
Config. Page
Error Log
Menu List
PCL Config./Font Page
PS Config./Font Page
PDF Config./Font Page
Hex Dump
Maintenance
4 Color Graphic Mode
System
Print Error Report
Auto Continue
Memory Overflow
Job Separation
Memory Usage
Duplex
Copies
Blank Page Print
B&W Page Detect
Spool Image
Reserved Job Waiting
Printer Language
Sub Paper Size
Page Size
Letterhead Setting
Bypass Tray Setting Priority
Edge to Edge Printing
Default Printer Language
Host Intervace
I/O Buffer
I/O Timeout

Service Tables

#### Printer Features Map (Continued)

PCL Menu
Orientation
Form Lines
Font Source
Font Number
Point Size
Font Pitch
Symbol Set
Courier Font
Extend A4 Width
Append CR to LF
Resolution
PS Menu
Data Format
Resolution
Color Setting
Color Profile

## 5.11.6 SCANNER FEATURES

Key press: [User Tools]> "Scanner Features"

## Scanner Features Map

Scan Settings
Default Scan Settings
Wait Time for Next Orig.: Exposure Glass
Wait Time for Next Orignals: SADF
Original Setting
Switch to Batch
Mixed Original Sizes Priority
Change Initial Mode
Background Density of ADS (Full Color)
Destination List Settings
Destination List Display Priority 2
Select Title
Send Settings
TWAIN Standby Time
File Type Priority
Compression (Black & White)
Compression (Gray Scale/Full Color)
Print & Delete Scanner Journal
Print Scanner Journal
Max. E-Mail Size
Divide & Send E-Mail
E-Mail Information Language
Store File Priority
Administrator Tools

Service Tables

## 5.11.7 INQUIRY

 Key press: [User Tools]> "Inquiry"
 Machine Maintenance/Repair

 Consumables
 Machine Maintenance/Repair

 Toner <Black>
 Telephone No.

 Toner <Yellow>
 Serial No. of Machine

 Toner <Magenata>
 Sales Representative

 Toner <Cyan>
 Telephone No.

 Print Inquiry List
 Print Inquiry List

To print the Inquiry List, touch "Print Inquiry List", read the displayed message then press [Start] on the operation panel.

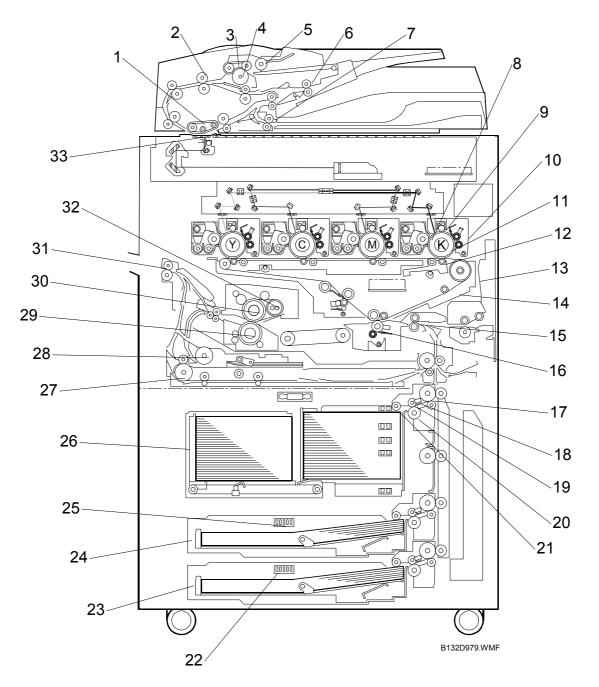
## 5.11.8 COUNTER

Total Counter	
Print Counter List	

# 6. DETAILS

## 6.1 GENERAL OVERVIEW

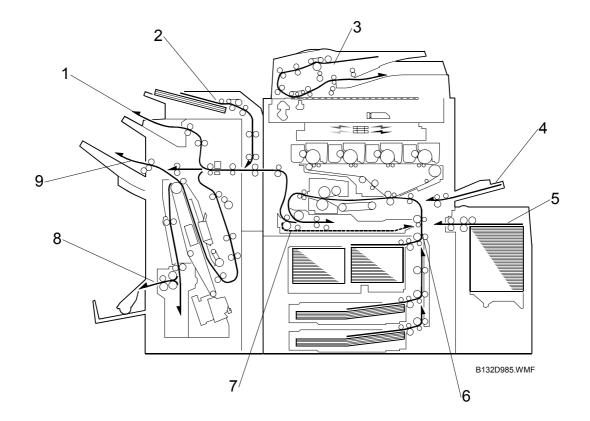
## 6.1.1 MAIN MACHINE



Detailed sscriptions

- 1. Transport Belt (ARDF)
- 2. Entrance Roller (ARDF)
- 3. Feed Belt (ARDF)
- 4. Separation Roller (ARDF)
- 5. Pick-up Roller (ARDF)
- 6. Upper Inverter Roller (ARDF)
- 7. Lower Inverter Roller (ARDF)
- 8. Development Roller
- 9. Charge Roller
- 10. PCU
- 11. OPC Drum
- 12. Image Transfer Roller
- 13. ITB Unit
- 14. Transfer Belt
- 15. Registration Roller
- 16. PTR Roller
- 17. Grip Roller

- 18. Feed Sensor (Paper Tray)
- 19. Feed Roller (Paper Tray)
- 20. Separation Roller (Paper Tray)
- 21. Pick-up Roller (Paper Tray)
- 22. Paper Size Switch (Tray 3)
- 23. Universal Tray (Tray 3)
- 24. Universal Tray (Tray 2)
- 25. Paper Size Switch (Tray 2)
- 26. Tandem Tray (Tray 1)
- 27. Inverter Exit Roller
- 28. Inverter Entrance Roller
- 29. Pressure Roller
- 30. Hot Roller
- 31. Exit Roller
- 32. Heating Roller
- 33. Exposure Glass (ARDF)



## 6.1.2 PAPER PATH: COVER INTERPOSER TRAY

- 1. Proof Tray
- 2. Cover Sheet Path
- 3. Original Path
- 4. By-pass Tray
- 5. LCT Feed
- 6. Vertical Transport Path
- 7. Duplex Transport Path
- 8. Finisher Lower Tray (Booklet)
- 9. Finisher Upper Tray 1 (Shift)

2

3

4

# <image><image>

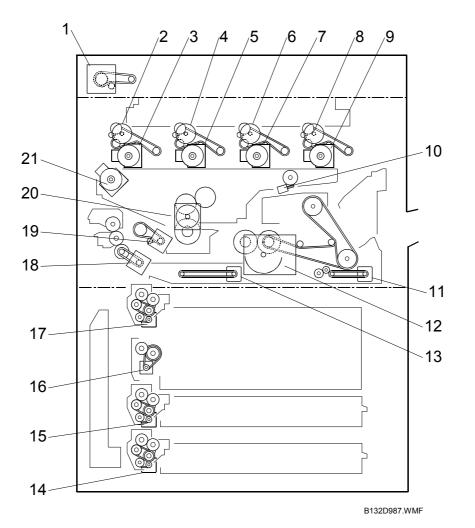
## 6.1.3 PAPER PATH: 9-BIN MAILBOX

1. Original Paper Path

- 2. Bypass Feed
- 3. LCT Feed
- 4. Vertical Transport Path
- 5. Junction Gate (Paper goes up to the mailbox or out to the finisher's proof tray)
- 6. Selected Trays
- 7. Turn Gates
- 8. Mailbox Paper Path
- Junction Gates (Two junction gates control the paper path inside the finisher)

Detailed Descriptions

## 6.1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT



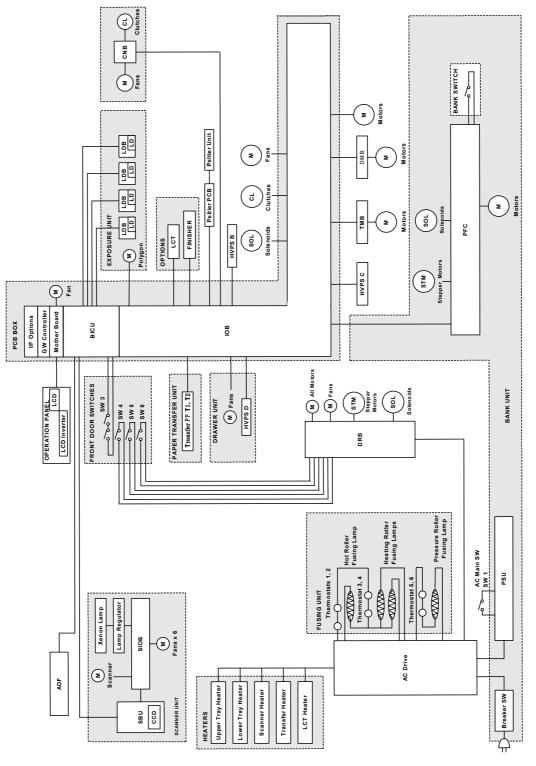
- 1. Scanner Motor
- 2. PCU Motor K
- 3. Drum Motor K
- 4. PCU Motor M
- 5. Drum Motor M
- 6. PCU Motor C
- 7. Drum Motor C
- 8. PCU Motor Y
- 9. Drum Motor Y
- 10. ITB Lift Motor
- 11. Duplex Inverter Motor

- 12. Fusing Exit Motor
- 13. Duplex Transport Motor
- 14. Paper Feed Motor 3
- 15. Paper Feed Motor 2
- 16. Lower Relay Motor
- 17. Paper Feed Motor 1
- 18. Bypass Feed Motor
- 19. Registration Motor
- 20. PTR Motor
- 21. ITB Drive Motor

Detailed Descriptions BOARDS

# 6.2 BOARDS

# 6.2.1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



B132D981.WMF

<u> Jescriptions</u>

## **6.2.2 COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS**

#### **BICU (Base Engine and Image Control Unit)**

The BICU is the main control board and controls these functions:

- Engine sequence control (all sensors, motors, fusing temperature control circuits)
- Image processing control (on the IPU)
- Scanning control
- GW controller interface
- Peripheral timing control

#### **GW** Controller and Mother Board

The controller board controls all the options. It contains the GW architecture ASICs, and connects to the BICU and PCI interface. During copying, the mother board stores compressed data, and controls these items:

- Operation panel interface
- Key card interface
- Storage of SC information in NVRAM.

The controller board also has SD card sockets. These are used for these functions:

- Download firmware for updates
- Copy optional firmware onto one SD card. (Copied from Slot 3 to Slot 2.)
- Hold the firmware for the printer or printer/scanner option. (The firmware is stored on the SD card in Slot 2.)
- Hold the machine system firmware (this is on the SD card in Slot 1, which must never be removed.

#### IOB (I/O Control Board)

The I/O control board controls these items:

- Input and output ports for all sensors, motors, solenoids
- All drivers
- High voltage power supply
- Analog input signals. Converts analog data to 10-bit digital data. The CPU on the BICU reads this data.



## **SBU (Sensor Board Unit)**

The SBU does the following:

- Takes the analog signals from the CCD and converts them to digital.
- Sends serial data to the BICU.
- Sends signals from the main CPU to the SIOB, to control the scanner components.

#### SIOB (Scanner I/O Board)

This board controls all the sensors in the scanner unit and the scanner motor. The CPU controls this board through the interfaces on the SBU and the BICU.

#### LDB (Laser Diode Drive Board)

This board contains the driver for the laser diodes.

#### **DRB (Driver Board)**

This board contains the circuits for the stepper motors that drive the printer engine, and distributes electrical power to all the other PCBs.

#### HDD (Hard Disk Drives)

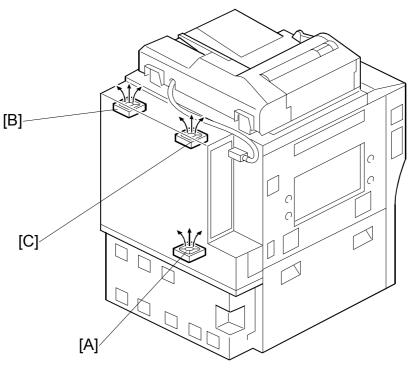
This board stores all the temporary files for job processing and all permanent files for the document server.

#### **PSU (Power Supply Unit)**

Supplies DC to the machine, and contains the AC supply that controls the power to the fusing lamps.



## 6.2.3 CONTROLLER BOX VENTILATION



B132D968.WMF

- [A]: HDD cooling fan
- [B]: Controller box exhaust fan 1
- [C]: Controller box exhaust fan 2

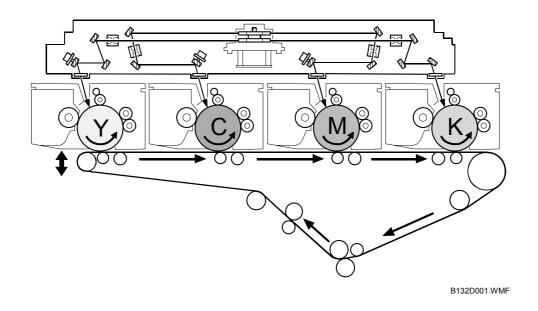
Three fans cool the PCBs in the controller box.

The HDD cooling fan [A] pulls cool air into the bottom of the PCB box.

The controller box exhaust fans [B] and [C] pull the hot air out of the top of the controller box.



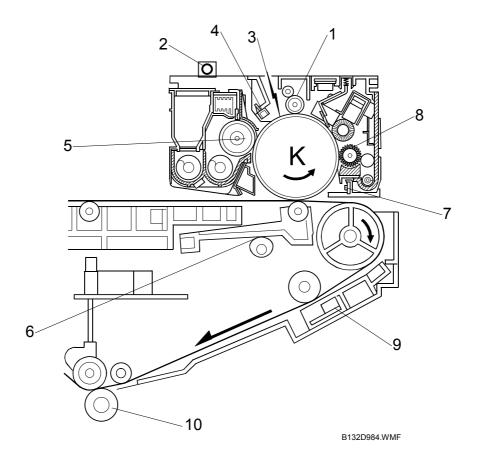
# 6.3 COPY PROCESS OVERVIEW



This machine has four PCUs in a straight line: Y, M, C, K.

- The ITB lift motor raises and lowers the ITB unit.
- The ITB lift motor raises ITB for full-color copying. The drum of every PCU contacts the ITB below.
- The ITB lift motor lowers the ITB for black-and-white copying. Only the black PCU (on the far right) contacts the ITB below.
- During black-and-white copying, the drums of the other PCUs (Y, M, C) are separated from the ITB and do not rotate. This reduces wear on the moving parts of these PCUs during black-and-white copying.
- If a job contains black-and-white pages and full-color pages, the action of the ITB is controlled by **SP5880 001**. See section 6.12.3

Detailed Description



Here is a general description of the copy process in the black PCU. These mechanisms are identical in each PCU (Y, C, M, K).

#### 1. DRUM CHARGE

In the dark, the charge roller gives a negative charge to the drum. The charge stays on the surface of the drum because the OPC layer has a high electrical resistance in the dark.

#### 2. EXPOSURE

A xenon lamp exposes the original. Light reflected from the original passes to the CCD, where it is converted into an analog data signal. This data is converted to a digital signal, processed, and stored in the memory. At the time of printing, the data is taken from the memory and sent to the laser diode. For multi-copy runs, the original is scanned once and stored in a temporary file on the hard disk.

## 3. LASER EXPOSURE

The processed image data from the scanned original is taken from the hard disk and two laser beams send it to the drum. The lasers write an electrostatic latent image on the drum surface. The amount of charge remaining as a latent image on the drum depends on the laser beam pulse duration and the laser power (controlled by the BICU). Detailed Descriptions

#### 4. DRUM POTENTIAL SENSOR

The drum potential sensor in each PCU detects the drum potential. Changes in conditions near the drum (heat, humidity, drum condition) change the drum potential. The machine uses the output from this sensor to adjust the voltages that are used during auto process control.

#### 5. DEVELOPMENT

The magnetic developer brush of the development roller contacts the latent image on the drum surface. Toner particles are electrostatically attracted to the areas of the drum surface where the laser reduced the negative charge on the drum.

#### 6. IMAGE TRANSFER

The developed toner images are transferred from the drums to the ITB. Rollers inside the ITB apply a high positive charge to the reverse side of the ITB. This positive charge pulls the toner particles from the drum to the ITB.

#### 7. QUENCHING

The light from the quenching lamp electrically neutralizes the charge on the drum surface. After cleaning and quenching, the drum surface is ready for the next cycle.

#### 8. DRUM CLEANING

First, a soft cleaning brush roller removes toner from the drum. Next, a lubrication roller, with a lubricant bar behind it, cleans the drum. Finally, an opposing cleaning blade removes remaining toner.

## 9. ID SENSORS, MUSIC SENSORS

Two ID sensors and three MUSIC sensors are in a straight line across the ITB. At fixed intervals, the laser in each PCU writes an ID sensor pattern on each drum surface (Y, M, C, K). These patterns are transferred to the ITB. The two ID sensors above the ITB (one for black and one for Y, M, C) measure the light reflected from each of the four patterns and output this data (Vsp) to the CPU. This Vsp is used for toner supply control. The MUSIC sensors read a different set of patterns to make adjustments to the laser main scan start timing, angle of the 3<sup>rd</sup> mirror, and the drum drive speeds. The MUSIC sensors ensure that the alignment of the images on the ITB is correct.

# Detailed Descriptions

#### **10. PAPER TRANSFER AND SEPARATION**

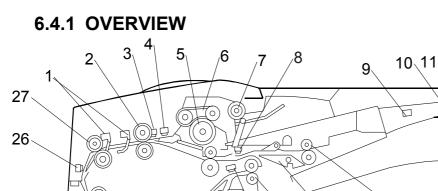
A strong negative charge applied to the PTR idle roller repulses the image from the ITB onto the paper. A paper discharge plate neutralizes the charge on the paper and ITB. Then the curvature of the feed path allows the paper to separate from the ITB.

# 6.4 ARDF

25

24

23



22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 B132D119.WMF

- 1. Original Width Sensors (x 5)
- 2. Entrance Roller
- 3. Skew Correction Sensor
- 4. Separation Sensor
- 5. Separation Roller
- 6. Feed Belt
- 7. Pick-up Roller
- 8. Upper inverter sensor
- 9. Original Length Sensor 1
- 10. Original Length Sensor 2
- 11. Original Length Sensor 3
- 12. Original Tray
- 13. Exit Tray
- 14. Upper Inverter Roller

- 15. Lower Inverter Sensor
- 16. Upper Junction Gate
- 17. Exit Roller
- 18. Lower Inverter Roller
- 19. Exit Sensor
- 20. Lower Junction Gate
- 21. Scanning Exit Roller
- 22. ARDF Transport Belt
- 23. ARDF Exposure Glass
- 24. Registration Sensor
- 25. Scanning Entrance Roller
- 26. Interval Sensor
- 27. 1st Transport Roller

**Original Separation and Feed**. The standard FRR system for paper separation and feed. (Implicitly Handling Paper> Handling Originals> Document Feed> FRR with Feed Belt

**Original Size Detection**. The combinations of 3 original length sensors on the original tray and 5 original width sensors in the paper feed path are used to detect the size of originals. (In Handling Paper> Handling Originals> Original Size Detection> Dynamic Original Size Detection)

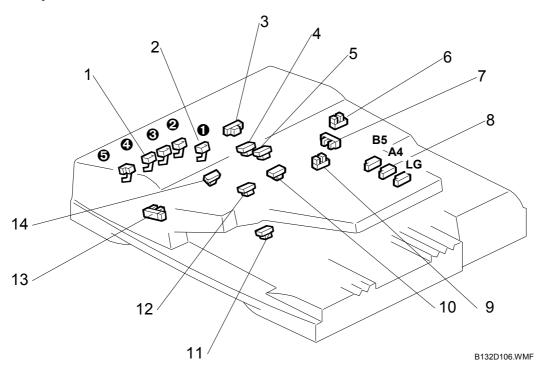
**Duplex Scanning**. Two junction gates (16, 20) control the direction of the original in the paper path for duplex scanning. (rec 6.4.10)

13

12

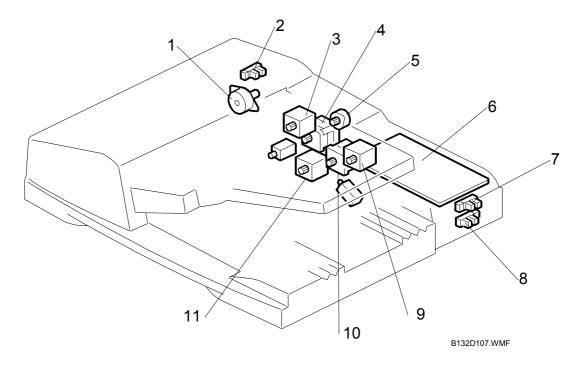
## 6.4.2 ARDF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

## **Components View 1: Sensors**



- 1. Original Width Sensors (**2** to **5**)
- 2. Original Width Sensor 1 (for B6 SEF)
- 3. Interval Sensor
- 4. Skew Correction Sensor
- 5. Separation Sensor
- 6. Feed Cover Open Sensor
- 7. Bottom Plate Position Sensor

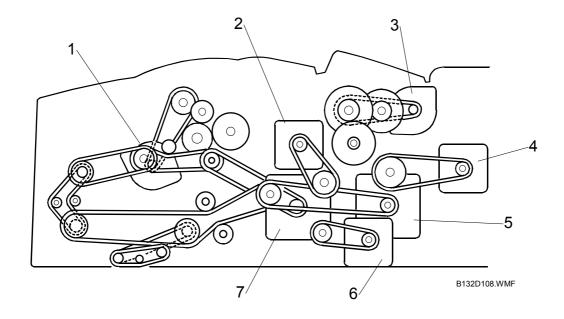
- 8. Original Length Sensors (x3)
- 9. Original Set Sensor
- 10. Upper Inverter Sensor
- 11. Lower Inverter Sensor
- 12. Exit Sensor
- 13. Bottom Plate HP Sensor
- 14. Registration Sensor



## Components View 2: Motors, Sensors, Other

- 1. Pick-up Motor
- 2. Pick-up Roller HP Sensor
- 3. Exit Motor
- 4. Feed Motor
- 5. Bottom Plate Lift Motor
- 6. ARDF Main Board

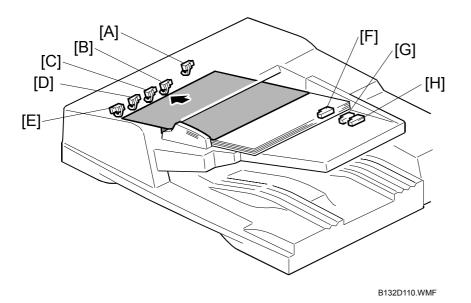
- 7. ARDF Position Sensor
- 8. APS Start Sensor
- 9. Upper Inverter Motor
- 10. ARDF Transport Motor
- 11. Lower Inverter Motor



## **ARDF** Components View 3: Drive Motors

- 1. Pick-up Motor
- 2. Exit Motor
- 3. Bottom Plate Lift Motor
- 4. Upper Inverter Motor
- 5. ARDF Transport Motor
- 6. Lower Inverter Motor
- 7. Feed Motor

Detailed Descriptions

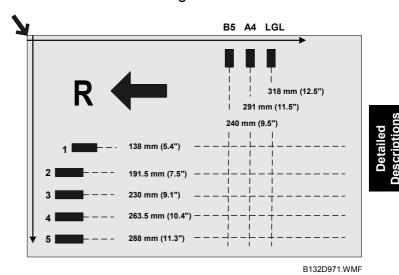


6.4.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION

The original size is detected by 5 width sensors and 3 length sensors.

When the leading edge of the paper passes the skew correction sensor, the CPU reads the outputs from the original width sensors.

- [A]: Original width sensor 1
- [B]: Original width sensor 2
- [C]: Original width sensor 3
- [D]: Original width sensor 4
- [E]: Original width sensor 5
- [F]: B5 length sensor
- [G]: A4 length sensor
- [H]: LG length sensor



#### **Original Size Detection Table**

Size (W x L)			inal W ensor			Original Length Sensors			Region		
	1	2	3	4	5	B5	A4	LG	NA	EU	
A3 SEF (297 x 420 mm)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	Ο	
B4 SEF (257 x 364 mm)	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	x	Ο	
A4 SEF (210 x 297 mm)	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	
A4 LEF (297 x 210 mm)	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	Ο	
B5 SEF (182 x 257 mm)	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	х	Ο	
B5 LEF (257 x 182 mm)	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	x	Ο	
A5 SEF (148 x 210 mm) *1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	х	0	
A5 LEF (210 x 148 mm)	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	х	Ο	
B6 SEF (128 x 182 mm) *1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	х	Ο	
B6 LEF (182 x 128 mm) *1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	х	Ο	
11" x 17" SEF (DLT)	1	1	1	1	-	1	1	1	0	Θ	
11" x 15" SEF	1	1	1	1	-	1	1	1	0	X	
10" x 14" SEF	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	О	Ο	
81/2" x 14" SEF (LG)	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	4	X	
81/2" x 13" SEF (F4)	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	4	Ο	
81/4" x 13" SEF	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	(4)	X	
8" x 13" SEF (F)	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	(4)		
81/2" x 11" SEF (LT)	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	€	0	
11" x 81/2" LEF (LT)	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	
71/4" x 101/2" SEF	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	X	
101/2" x 71/4" LEF	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	X	
8" x 10" SEF (F)	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	X	
51/2" x 81/2" SEF (HLT)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	
81/2" x 51/2" LEF (HLT)	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	О	X	ed
8 K SEF (267 x 390 mm)	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	X	0	tail
16 K SEF (195 x 267 mm)	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	X	0	Detailed
16 K LEF (267 x 195 mm)	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	X	0	

Descriptions

- 1: Actuated (ON)
- 0: Not actuated (OFF)
- O: Yes. Size detected.
- **x**: No. Size not detected.
- NA: Detected paper size is set with Bit 0 of SP 6016
- NA: Detected paper size is set with Bit 1 of SP 6016
- NA: Detected paper size is set with Bit 2 of SP 6016
- NA: Detected paper size is set with Bit 3 of SP 6016. (•): This size can be selected with SP 5126 (the default for this SP is F4).
- EU: Detected paper size is set with Bit 0 of SP 6016
- EU: Detected paper size is set with Bit 1 of SP 6016
- EU: Detected paper size is set with Bit 2 of SP 6016

#### Changing the Default Selection with SP6016 and SP5126

Some original sizes are almost the same. The machine cannot detect a difference between these sizes. Because of this, you can force the machine to detect one size or the other size with **SP6016**.

- 1. Enter the SP mode.
- 2. Select **SP6016**.

On the screen you will see an 8-digit binary setting bar: 00000000

The default settings are all "0".

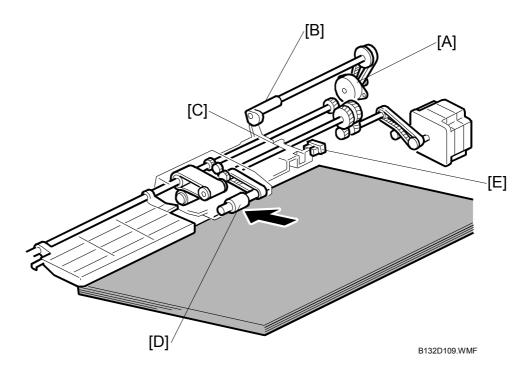
In North America, the size recognition is changed with Bits 3 to 0 (other bits are ignored):

Bit7	Bit6	Bit5	Bit4	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0
				0 = LG SEF	0 = LT SEF	0 = LT LEF	0 = DLT SEF
				1 = SP 5126 (default = F4 SEF)	1 = 8" x 10" SEF	1 = EXE LEF	1 = 11" x 15" SEF

In Europe, the size recognition is changed with Bits 2 to 0 (other bits are ignored):

Bit7	Bit6	Bit5	Bit4	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0
					0 = LT LEF	0 = LT SEF	0 = DLT SEF
					1 = 16 Kai LEF	1 = 16 Kai SEF	1 = 8 Kai SEF

## 6.4.4 PICK-UP ROLLER



- [A]: Pick-up roller lift motor
- [B]: Cam
- [C]: Pick-up roller release lever
- [D]: Pick-up roller
- [E]: Bottom plate position sensor

When there are no originals, the pick-up roller [D] stays up at the home position.

When an original is put on the tray:

- Original set sensor  $\rightarrow$  On  $\rightarrow$  Pick-up motor [A]  $\rightarrow$  On.
- Cam [B] releases lever [C] then pick-up roller [D] drops onto the paper.
- Pick-up roller [D] feeds an original  $\rightarrow$  feed belt and separation roller.

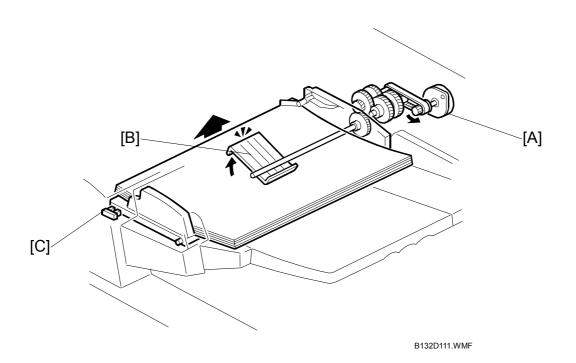
The pick-up roller lowers when:

- An original is put on the tray.
- The trailing edge of the original passes the skew correction sensor, if there are originals in the ARDF entrance for scanning.

The pick-up roller rises when:

- The leading edge of the original passes the skew correction sensor
- Power is turned on
- The feed cover is opened
- · An original jam occurs

## 6.4.5 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT



- [A]: Bottom plate lift motor
- [B]: Lift lever
- [C]: Bottom plate HP sensor

When an original is placed on the original tray:

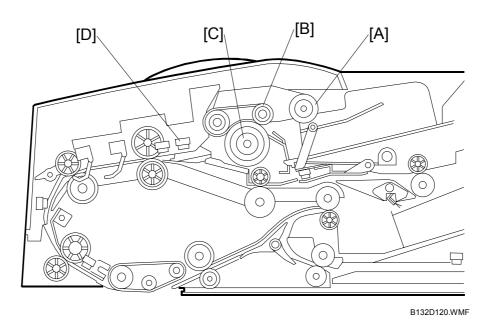
- Original set sensor  $\rightarrow$  On  $\rightarrow$  pick-up roller drops
- Bottom plate position sensor ([E] on the previous page) → Off.
- Motor [A] lifts lever [B] and raises the bottom plate.

When the bottom plate reaches the correct feed height for feeding:

- Bottom plate position sensor ([E] on the previous page) → On → Stops bottom plate lift.
- Motor [A] stops

During original feeding:

- Pick-up roller descends as the top of the stack lowers
- The descended pick-up roller → bottom plate position sensor ([E] on the previous page) → Off
- Bottom plate lift motor [A] → On → motor [A] raises the stack to the correct height for feeding
- Bottom plate position sensor ([E] on the previous page)  $\rightarrow$  On
- Bottom plate lift motor [A] stops



# 6.4.6 ORIGINAL FEED AND SEPARATION

- [A]: Pick-up roller
- [B]: Feed belt
- [C]: Separation roller
- [D]: Separation sensor

Because of this mechanism, the machine does not feed more than one sheet at a time.

(CM Handling Paper> Handling Originals> Document Feed> FRR with Feed Belt)



## 6.4.7 ORIGINAL FEED AND SKEW CORRECTION

- [A]: Skew correction sensor
- [B]: Entrance roller
- [C]: Feed roller (Transport Roller 1)
- [D]: Interval sensor
- [E]: Scanning entrance roller

After pick-up and separation:

- Skew correction sensor [A] detects the leading edge of the original
- The detection signal stops the entrance roller [B] for a set number of pulses to buckle the original and correct skew.

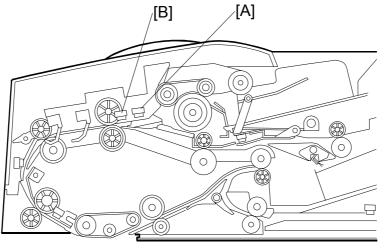
If the originals are small (B6, A5, or HLT) (because small sizes skew easily), and during duplex scanning for all original sizes:

- Interval sensor [D] detects the leading edge of the original
- Scanning entrance roller [E] is stopped for the set number of pulses to buckle the original and correct skew.

#### Important

- The roller [E] stops when B6, A5, or HLT paper is fed.
- However, you can use **SP6020** to make the roller stop for other paper sizes to correct skew at this position.

## 6.4.8 SLIP DETECTION



B132D120.WMF

- [A]: Separation sensor
- [B]: Skew correction sensor

These two sensors are used to measure the amount of slippage and to correct for this.

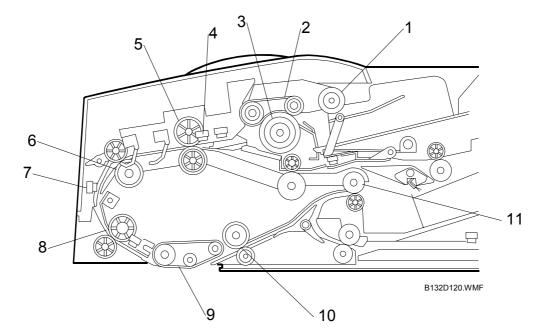
The machine measures the time it takes for the original to get to the separation sensor [A] after the [Start] key is pressed.

- If the original arrives at the correct time, it feeds normally.
- If the original arrives late, the machine enters the slip mode.

In the slip mode, the machine measures the time for the leading edge of the original to move from the separation sensor to the skew correction sensor [B].

The machine uses this time to adjust the length of time that the entrance roller stays off to correct skew. This stops feed for enough time for the original to be in the correct position for feeding.

Detailed Descriptions



## 6.4.9 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT (ONE-SIDED)

The pick-up roller [1] feeds the original to the feed belt [2] and separation roller [3].

When the skew correction sensor [4] detects the leading edge of the original, it stops the feed motor for a set number of pulses to stop the entrance roller [5]. This buckles the leading edge of the original against the entrance roller to correct skew.

The feed motor increases the speed of 1st transport roller [6] to feed the paper faster and reduce the interval between the original that was just fed and the original ahead that is now being scanned.

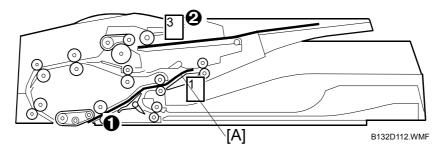
When the interval sensor [7] detects the leading edge of the original approaching the scanning entrance roller [8], it slows the rotation of the scanning entrance roller [8]. To this point the rate of feed is high. The interval sensor slows the paper so it does not collide with the trailing edge of the paper ahead of it in the paper path.

Next, the transport belt [9] pulls the original across the ARDF scanning glass.

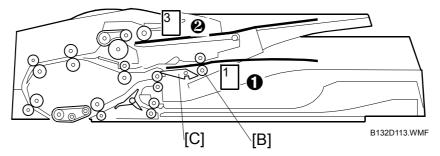
The 2nd transport roller [10] feeds the paper to the exit rollers [11]. The exit rollers feed to paper out onto the original exit table.

Detailed Descriptions

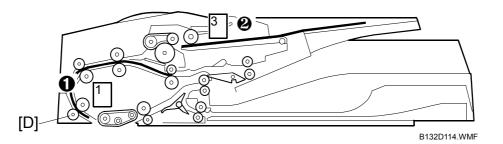
## 6.4.10 DUPLEX SCANNING



1. Side 1 of original **①** is scanned, original **②** waits. Upper junction gate [A] opens and sends **①** to the upper inverter rollers.

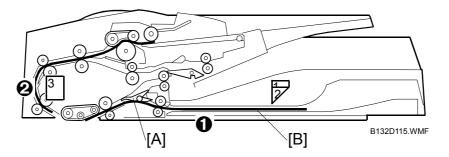


2. Original ① feeds past the upper inverter rollers [B] and stops. Upper inverter junction gate [C] closes. The upper inverter rollers reverse and feed the original ① into the feed path.

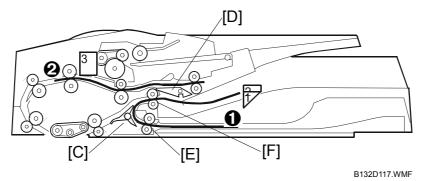




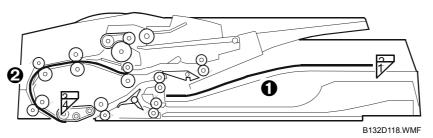
3. Original **①** feeds to rollers [D], where skew is corrected. (*■*6.4.7) Skew is corrected only for small paper sizes (B6, A5, HLT). Other sizes can be selected for this function with **SP6020**.



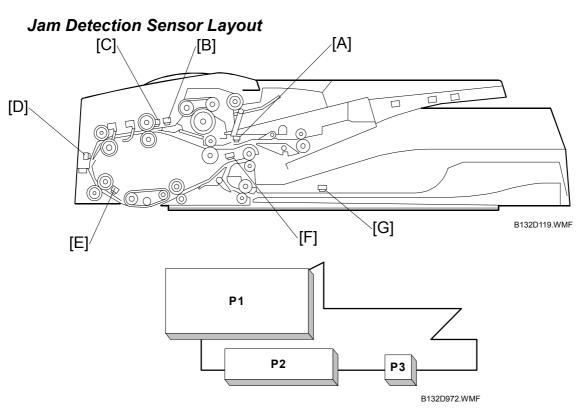
4. Side 2 of original **①** is scanned, lower inverter junction gate [A] opens and directs **①** to lower inverter table [B]. Original **②** feeds.



5. Steps 1, 2, 3 repeat for original ②. Lower inverter junction gate [C] and upper inverter junction gate [D] remain closed. Lower inverter rollers [E] feed original ① to exit rollers [F]



- Detailed Description
- 6. The exit rollers feed original **1** to the original exit tray. Original **2** is corrected for skew and is scanned. Skew is corrected only for small paper sizes (B6, A5, HLT). Other sizes can be selected for this function with **SP6020**.



# 6.4.11 ARDF JAM DETECTION

Seven sensors detect jams in the original path at **P1**, **P2**, and **P3** (These notations appear on the operation panel display when a jam occurs):

- [A]: Upper Inverter Sensor
- [B]: Separation Sensor
- [C]: Skew Correction Sensor
- [D]: Interval Sensor
- [E]: Registration Sensor
- [F]: Exit Sensor
- [G]: Lower Inverter Sensor

#### Jam Detection Table

The following notations are used in the table below:

- **Orig. late**: Leading edge not detected. The original fails to arrive at the sensor site at the correct time.
- **Orig. lag**: Trailing edge not detected. The original fails to leave the sensor site at the correct time.

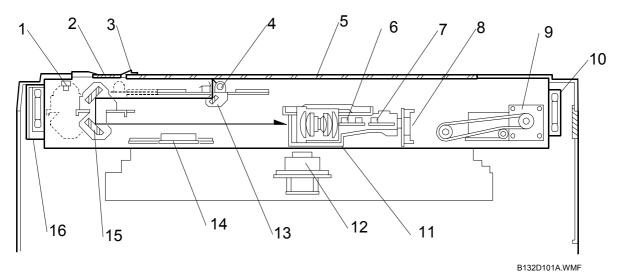
Area	Sensor	Jam Type
P1	Separation sensor	Orig. late
	Skew correction sensor	Orig. late
	Interval sensor	Orig. late
	Upper inverter sensor	Orig. late
	Registration sensor	Orig. late
	Skew correction sensor	Orig. lag
	Interval sensor	Orig. lag
	Upper inverter sensor	Orig. lag
P2	Exit sensor	Orig. late
	Lower inverter sensor	Orig. late
	Registration sensor	Orig. lag
	Exit sensor	Orig. lag
P3	Lower inverter sensor	Orig. lag

If a problem occurs in the ARDF, either SC701 or SC705 will be issued. For details on SCs, please refer to Section 4 of this manual.



# 6.5 SCANNER UNIT

## 6.5.1 OVERVIEW



- 1. Scanner HP Sensor
- 2. ARDF Exposure Glass
- 3. White Plate
- 4. Exposure Lamp (Xenon)
- 5. Exposure Glass
- 6. APS2 (Org. Length Sensors 1, 2)
- 7. APS3 (Org. Length Sensor 3)
- 8. SBU (CCD: 600 dpi)

- 9. Scanner Motor
- 10. Scanner Fan Motor Right
- 11. Lens Block
- 12. Polygon Mirror Motor
- 13. 1st Scanner
- 14. APS1 (Org. Width Sensors 1, 2)
- 15. 2nd Scanner
- 16. Scanner Fan Motor Left

Detailed Description

The light reflected from the original is sent to the CCD:

1st Mirror> 2nd Mirror> 3rd Mirror> Lens Block> CCD

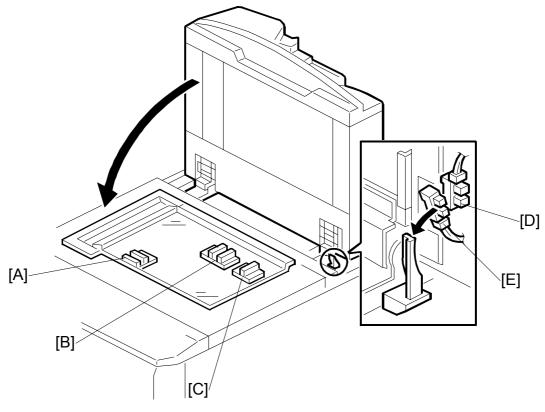
The lens block consists of the scanner lens and SBU (CCD).

The CCD converts the light that was reflected from the original and converts it to three color analog signals (R, G, B).

The SBU converts the analog signals to digital signals, then sends the digital signals to the BICU.

**NOTE:** The lens block is replaced as a unit and requires no adjustment in the field.

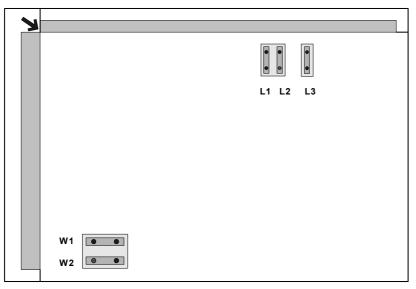
## 6.5.2 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION



B132D102.WMF

The machine uses five sensors on three APS boards to detect the size of the original on the exposure glass.

- [A]: APS1. (W1 and W2) detects original width
- [B]: APS2. (L1 and L2) detects original length
- [C]: APS3. (L3) detects original length
- [D]: ARDF position sensor. Detects whether the ARDF is open or closed.
- [E]: APS start sensor. Triggers automatic paper size detection.



B132D973.WMF

The table shows the sensor output for each paper size.

If an original is on the exposure glass, you can check the sensor output with **SP4301** (APS Confirm).

A4/A3	LT/DLT	L3	L2	L1	W1	W2	SP4301 Display
A3	11" x 17"	1	1	1	1	1	000 11111
B4	_	1	1	1	1	0	000 11110
A4 SEF	81/2" x 11"	0	1	1	0	0	000 01100
	8½ x 14"	1	1	1	0	0	000 11100
A4 LEF	11" x 81/2"	0	0	0	1	1	000 00011
B5 SEF		0	0	1	0	0	000 00100
B5 LEF		0	0	0	1	0	000 00010
A5 SEF	51/2" x 81/2"	0	0	0	0	0	000 0000
A5 LEF	81/2" x 51/2"	0	0	0	0	0	000 00000

1: On (Paper Detected), 0: Off (Paper Not Detected)

**NOTE:** If the original is small (such as A5-LEF), all sensors are off and the machine shows that the original size cannot be detected. However, you can force the machine to detect A5/HLT in this situation if you adjust **SP4303** (there are settings for A5/HLT SEF and A5/HLT LEF).

#### **Detection Timing**

When the power is on, the APS sensors are always active, but the CPU checks their signals only after the platen is lowered.

#### **Book Mode**

In the Book mode (when the ARDF is open), the CPU checks the APS sensors and determines the original size after [Start] is pressed.

#### **ARDF Mode**

The CPU checks the APS sensors after the platen is lowered.

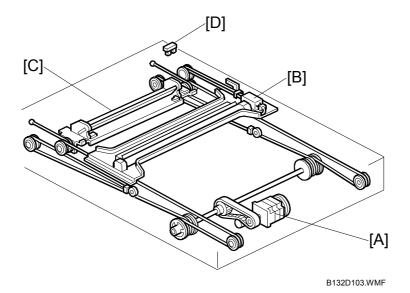
#### **By-pass Mode**

The APS sensors are ignored when copy paper is fed from the by-pass tray, but the by-pass tray can handle a variety of sizes and orientations. To accomplish this:

- The machine always assumes short-edge feed for paper on the by-pass tray.
- Width is measured by a sensor inside the by-pass tray.
- The bypass tray cannot measure length, so the registration sensor determines the length of the paper using clock pulses.

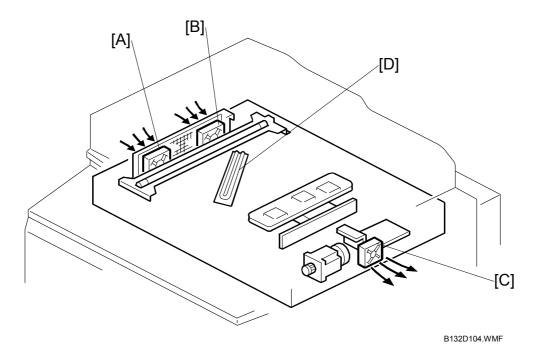


## 6.5.3 SCANNER DRIVE



- [A]: Scanner motor (a dc stepper motor) drives the 1st and 2nd scanner with wires and pulleys.
- [B]: 1st scanner
- [C]: 2nd scanner
- [D]: Scanner HP sensor. Stops and reverses the scanner motor when the scanner reaches the home position. The machine measures distance from home position by counting scanner motor pulses.

Detailed Descriptions



## 6.5.4 SCANNER UNIT FANS AND ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER

- [A]: Scanner cooling fan (front)
- [B]: Scanner cooling fan (rear)
- [C]: Scanner exhaust fan
- [D]: Anti-condensation heater (option)

Condensation on the mirrors can cause:

- Running, smearing and image borders
- Printing completely black or gray pages

Fans

- The scanner cooling fans (front, rear) pull cool air into the scanner unit.
- The scanner exhaust fan expels hot air from the scanner unit

Anti-condensation heater turns on:

- When the main power switch is turned off.
- When the operation switch is turned on.
- When the machine enters the auto off mode.

## 6.5.5 DUST DETECTION

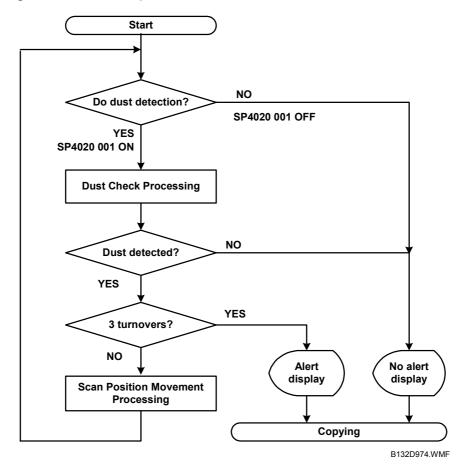
#### Overview

When an original is put on the original feed table of the ARDF, the ARDF exposure glass is checked for dust.

The dust check is done before the first original is scanned. This is done only once at the beginning of a job. The check is not done for originals added during a long scanning job.

The ARDF transport belt turns with no paper fed across the ARDF scanning glass. The surface (white) of the ARDF transport belt is scanned. The IPU checks if dust is present.

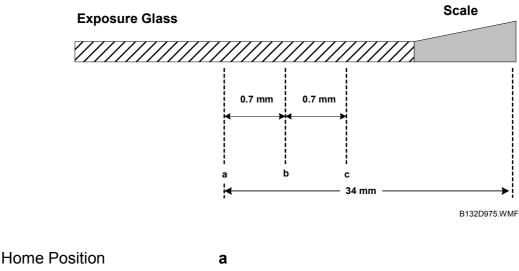
- If dust is detected, the scanner carriage position for ARDF scanning is moved by 0.7 mm.
- The next time that dust is detected, the scanning position is moved again by 0.7 mm.
- The third time that dust is detected, the scanning position is not moved. An alert message is displayed but the job does not stop.
- Then, at the start of the next job, the procedure starts again, but the scanner does not go back to home position.



## What Happens if Dust is Detected?

If dust is detected, the position where the scanner stops below the ARDF exposure glass to scan the original is moved by 0.7 mm.

The scanning position can be shifted two times in 0.7 mm increments, towards the scanning reference point at the upper left corner of the exposure glass.



Home Position	а
From Book Read Position:	34 mm
Shift Direction:	$a \rightarrow b \rightarrow c$

If dust is detected after the scanner has been moved two times, an alert is displayed, but the job does not stop.

Then, at the start of the next job, the scanner stays at position c. But if dust is detected at c, the scanner goes back to home position (a) and the dust detection process starts again.



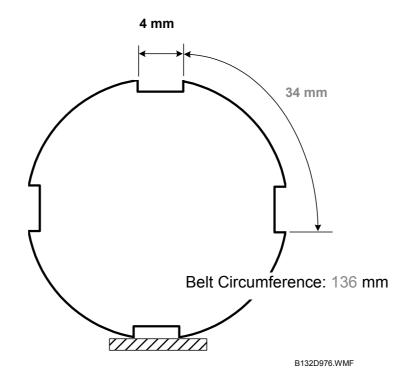
## How is the Dust Detected?

To detect dust on the ARDF exposure glass, the ARDF transport belt turns and the CCD scans this belt.

The ARDF transport belt has four grooves cut across it in the main scan direction.

These grooves are recessed. Because of this, they are not easily contaminated with dust, and they are used as reference points during dust detection. Another part of the belt could have dust on it, and give an incorrect reference.

**NOTE**: The illustration shows the belt if it were a perfect circle.



To detect dust, the belt turns one time. The IPU (through the CCD) checks for dust. If a dark spot is detected for 96% of this rotation, the IPU determines that dust is present on the ARDF exposure glass.

#### The Effects of SP Mode Settings on Dust Detection

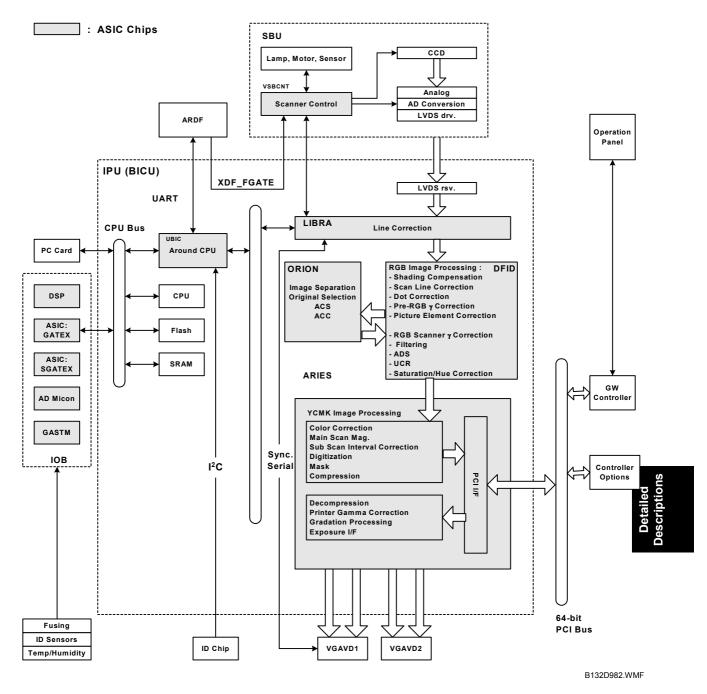
The settings of some SP codes control how dust detection is done.

- **SP4020 001**. Switches the dust warning on and off (default: off). When this SP is on, a warning is issued if the check detects dust on the ARDF scan glass or the white plate above the scanning glass. Always clean the ARDF scanning glass and white plate before turning this SP on.
- **SP4020 002**. Adjusts the sensitivity of the check. If you see black streaks in copies when no warning has been issued, raise the setting to increase the level of sensitivity. If warnings are issued when you see no black streaks in copies, lower the setting.
- **SP4020 003**. Sets the level for vertical line correction caused by dust. A high setting can eliminate unwanted vertical lines caused by dust but it can also thin vertical lines of the original.
- **SP7852**. Displays the count for the number of times the machine has detected dust on the ARDF scanning glass at the beginning of copy jobs. This SP operates only after **SP4020 001** has been turned on.
- **NOTE:** Dust that triggers a warning could be removed from the glass by the originals in the feed path. If the dust is removed by passing originals, this is not detected and the warning remains on.



# 6.6 IMAGE PROCESSING

## 6.6.1 OVERVIEW



# 6.6.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)

## SBU

The VPU (Video Processor Unit) does the following functions:

- Black level correction
- White level correction
- Gradation calibration
- ADS control (Background Density)
- Creating the SBU test pattern

## **Operation Summary**

The signals from the 3-line CCD, one line for each color (R, G, B) and 2 analog signals per line (ODD, EVEN), are sampled by the ASIC and converted to digital signals in the 10-bit A/D converter. This is the first phase of processing the data scanned from the original.

## Storing Operation Settings

The controller stores the SBU settings. These values must be restored after the lens block is replaced:

SP4008 001	Sub Scan Mag	Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment
SP4010 001	Sub Scan Reg	Sub Scan Registration Adjustment
SP4011 001	Main Scan Reg	Main Scan Registration Adjustment

Also, before lens block replacement, enter the SP mode and note the settings of **SP4800 001** to **003** (ARDF density adjustments for R, G, B). After lens block replacement, do some copy samples with the ARDF, then check the copies. If the copies have background, change **SP4800 001** to **003** to their previous settings, or adjust until the background is acceptable. These SP codes are also used to adjust the ARDF scanning density, if the scanning densities of the ARDF and the platen mode are not the same.

Detailed Description

## SBU Test Mode

There are two SP codes to create a test pattern which can be used as a diagnostic tool to troubleshoot problems in the SBU:

- SP4907 001 SBU Pattern Test Pattern
- SP4907 002 SBU Pattern Select Fixed Pattern

To print the pattern:

- Select the pattern to print.
- Touch "Copy Window" then press the Start key twice.

## 6.6.3 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)

The IPU does the following:

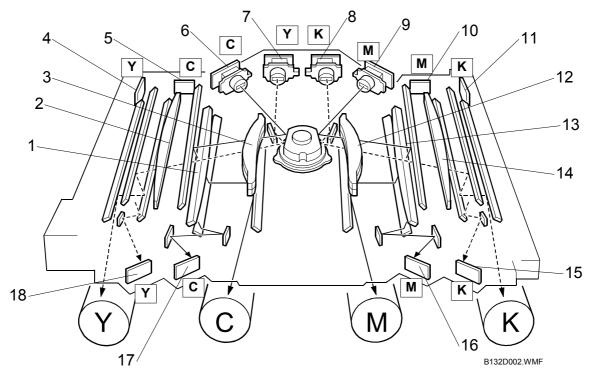
- Controls the scanner
- Processes the image signals from the SBU and sends them over the PCI bus to the controller memory
- Receives the image processing signals sent over the PCI bus from the controller memory, processes them, then outputs them to the VGAVD.
- Outputs the control signals for the ARDF
- Controls the relay of power and signals

Image processing, ADS correction, and line width correction are done on the BICU board for all the digital data sent from the SBU. Finally, the processed data is sent to the printer as digital signals (2 bits/pixel).



# 6.7 LASER UNIT

# 6.7.1 OVERVIEW



NOTE: LSDB = Laser Synchronization Detection Board

- 1. WTL Lens (C)
- 2. WTL Lens (Y)
- 3. Dual-Layer f $\theta$  Lens (C, Y)
- 4. LSDB (Y Front)
- 5. LSDB (C Front)
- 6. LD Unit (C)
- 7. LD Unit (Y)
- 8. LD Unit (K)
- 9. LD Unit (M)
- LD U

12. Dual-Layer fθ Lens (M, K) 13. WTL Lens (M) 14. WTL Lens (K) 15. LSDB (K Front) 16. LSDB (M Front) 17. LSDB (C Rear) 18. LSDB (Y Rear)

10. LSDB (M Rear)

11. LSDB (K Rear)

Units	4, One two-beam LD unit for each color (C, M, Y, K)
e Scan Mechanism	Main scanning with polygon mirror

Line Image Position Correction

MUSIC sensor patterns read from ITB with **MUSIC** sensors

# 6.7.2 LD UNIT

There is an LD unit for each color, and each LD unit uses a two-beam system. A photo diode (PD) in each LD unit detects the light emitted from the LD unit. The output of the PD is fed back to the LD control board. The LD control board uses this information to control the amount of light to make sure that it remains at the correct level.

## **Dual Beam Writing**

In each LD unit, two beams move across the drum in the main scan direction.

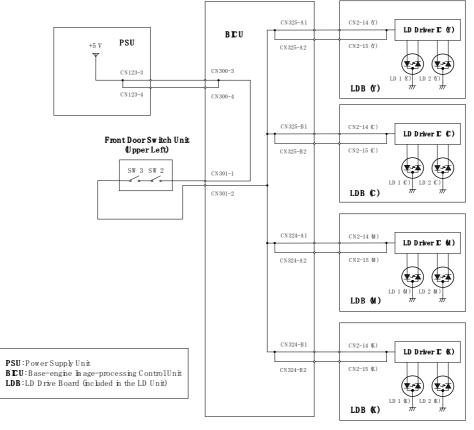
The use of two beams does the following:

- · Lets the machine print quickly
- Reduces the number of turns of the polygon mirror for a page, which gives the motor a longer life.
- Reduces the amount of noise from the motor.

The beam pitch is fixed at 600 dpi and is not adjustable.

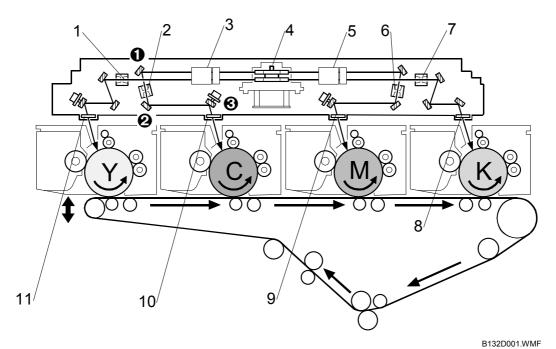
## LD Safety Switches

To ensure the safety of customers and customer engineers, two switches inside the cover prevent the laser beams from switching on accidentally. When the front cover is open, the 5V line connecting each LD driver on the LD control board is disconnected.



B132D900.WMF

## 6.7.3 OPTICAL PATHS



- 1. WTL Lens (Y)
- 2. WTL Lens (C)
- 3. Dual-layer f $\theta$  Lens (C, Y)
- 4. Polygon Mirror Motor
- 5. Dual-layer f $\theta$  Lens (M, K)
- 6. WTL Lens (M)

- 7. WTL Lens (K)
- 8. Dust-shield Glass
- 9. Dust-shield Glass
- 10. Dust-shield Glass
- 11. Dust-shield Glass

Detailed Descriptions

## **Optical Path**

All four latent images (C, M, Y, K) are written at approximately the same time. The laser diode turn-on times for each color are timed with drum rotation and paper feed. Refer to the illustration on the previous page. The optical path for each color is as follows:

Cylindrical lens (laser beam correction in each LD unit)	(Not shown)
v Polygon mirror (main scanning line)	4
↓ Fθ lens (dot position correction)	3
↓ 1st Mirror	0
↓ WTL lens (surface distortion correction)	2
`↓ 2nd Mirror	0
↓ 3rd Mirror	0
$\downarrow$	
Dust-shield Glass ↓	10
Drum	

Each  $f\theta$  lens has two layers. Because of this, it can correct both beams from the LD units. Each WTL lens corrects for image distortion.

The polygon mirror turns at high speed. The laser beams are reflected from the polygon mirror to a pair of mirrors (upper and lower), then to one more mirror and out to the drum through the dust-shield glass. The polygon mirror has six faces.

The polygon mirror motor rotates at 33,307 rpm for full-color and for black-andwhite copying.

**Important**: Because of its high rotation speed, the mirror continues to turn for about 3 minutes after the machine is turned off. Allow enough time for the mirror to stop before you start to remove the polygon motor.

# 6.7.4 IMAGE POSITION CORRECTION (MUSIC)

### What does MUSIC do?

MUSIC is the *Mirror Unit for Skew and Interval Correction*. Three MUSIC sensors above the ITB read three MUSIC sensor patterns made by the machine on the ITB.

The machine uses the results to adjust:

- The machine adjusts the start timing for the laser at the start of the main scan. This adjusts the main scan. If skew is detected in the main scan direction, the machine adjusts the angles of the 3<sup>rd</sup> mirrors (C, M, and Y only).
- The speed of the drum motors to correct the intervals between the patterns. This adjusts the sub scan.

If the vertical alignment of the patterns is not correct, or if the intervals are not correct, this causes color registration errors.

The MUSIC adjustment is done for each color (Y, M, C, K).

### When is MUSIC done?

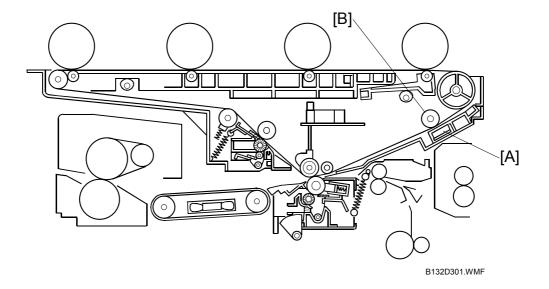
Normally, MUSIC executes automatically:

- Immediately after the machine is turned on or returns from an energy save mode.
- At the start of a job, if the temperature in the laser exposure unit changed since the end of the job by the amount set with **SP2153 012** (Default: 1.5 °C)
- If the cover is open for longer than the time set with **SP2153 015** (Default: 8 min.)
- After process control (enable/disable with **SP2153 002**).
- Every 100 pages during a long color job (you can change the interval with SP2153 010) if the temperature in the laser exposure unit has changed since the end of the most recent MUSIC adjustment by the amount set with SP2153 012 (Default: 1.5°C)
- Forced MUSIC (manually by the user or a technician)
  - User Tools Maintenance Color Registration
  - SP 2111 001

#### Important

- Immediately after the machine is turned on, MUSIC requires time to complete processing. But you can do a black-and-white job immediately.
- If a job is started before the MUSIC process has completed, a message ("Now Self Checking") will appear on the operation panel display.
- The job will not be done until the MUSIC process is finished. Wait for MUSIC to complete.

### Location of the MUSIC Sensors



The sensors [A] are below the ITB.

A roller [B] opposite the sensors pushes the transfer belt against the sensors. This makes sure that the sensors read the patterns accurately.

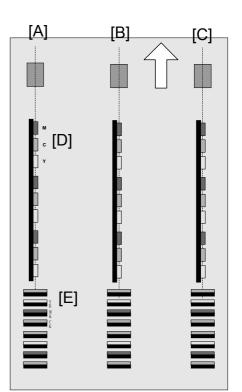
### How is MUSIC Done?

- [A]: Rear MUSIC sensor
- [B]: Center MUSIC sensor
- [C]: Front MUSIC sensor
- [D]: Main scan MUSIC patterns
- [E]: Sub scan MUSIC patterns

The MUSIC sensors [A], [B], and [C] read the MUSIC patterns from the ITB.

The main scan MUSIC sensor pattern [D] consists of patches for each color (M, C, Y) beside the black (K) color patch.

The sub scan MUSIC sensor pattern [E] consists of patches for each color (M, C, Y) above a black (K) patch.



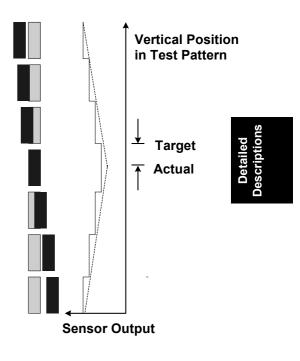
This diagram shows a close-up view of the mainscan test pattern.

K is the reference, and the positions of CMY are adjusted with reference to the K pattern.

The CMY patterns are vertical (shown in grey in the diagram), but the K pattern overlaps the CMY patterns as shown.

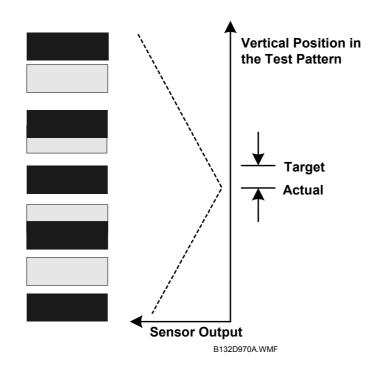
The MUSIC sensor response is measured. The output is the lowest when the K pattern fully overlaps the color pattern (the dotted lines in the diagram cross at this point). This is the "Actual" position as shown in the diagram. But there is a "Target" value in the machine's software (an example is shown on the diagram; this is not the real target, it is just an example to explain the process). The machine compares the "Actual" and "Target" values, and adjusts the laser timing in response to the results of this comparison.

Skew is also measured in the main scan direction using the patterns at the left and right of the ITB. If skew is detected, the machine adjusts the angle of the 3<sup>rd</sup> mirrors.



B132D969.WMF

B132D969A.WMF

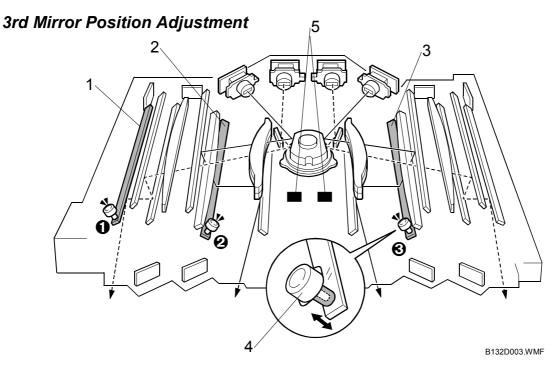


This diagram shows a close-up view of the sub-scan test pattern.

K is the reference, and the positions of CMY are adjusted with reference to the K pattern.

The CMY patterns are at constant intervals, but the K pattern overlaps the CMY patterns as shown.

The MUSIC sensor response is measured. The output is the lowest when the K pattern fully overlaps the color pattern (the dotted lines in the diagram cross at this point). This is the "Actual" position as shown in the diagram. But there is a "Target" value in the machine's software (an example is shown on the diagram; this is not the real target, it is just an example to explain the process). The machine compares the "Actual" and "Target" values, and adjusts the main motor speed in response to the results of this comparison.



- 1. 3rd Mirror (Y)
- 2. 3rd Mirror (C)
- 3. 3rd Mirror (M)
- 4. Mirror Adjustment Motors (000)
- 5. Temperature Sensors

Each color Yellow [1], Cyan [2], Magenta [3] has a mirror. The machine uses the mirror motors (**023**) to adjust the position of each mirror to correct color registration errors on the ITB in the main scan direction. Color registration errors occur if all four color-toner images do not cover each other exactly on the ITB.

The 3rd mirror for black (K) does not have an adjustment motor. (The position of black toner on the ITB is used as a reference point to adjust the positions of the other colors.)

#### **Exposure Unit Temperature Sensors**

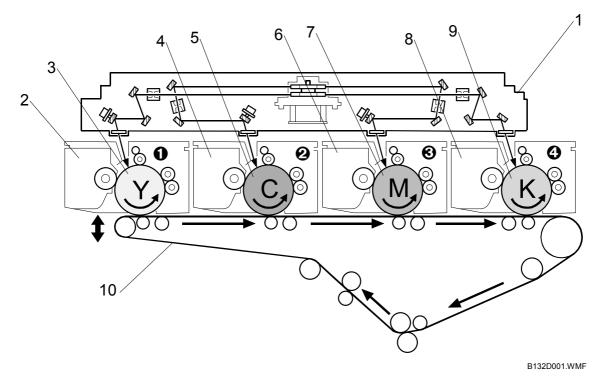
There are temperature sensors [5] near the  $f\theta$  lenses to monitor the temperature inside the exposure unit.

The f $\theta$  lenses are made of plastic. The magnification ratio of plastic lenses may vary slightly with temperature. The CPU uses the feedback from these temperature sensors to adjust the mirror positions during MUSIC calibration. This corrects color registration errors on the ITB.



# 6.8 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNITS (PCU)

## 6.8.1 OVERVIEW OF TANDEM PCU UNITS



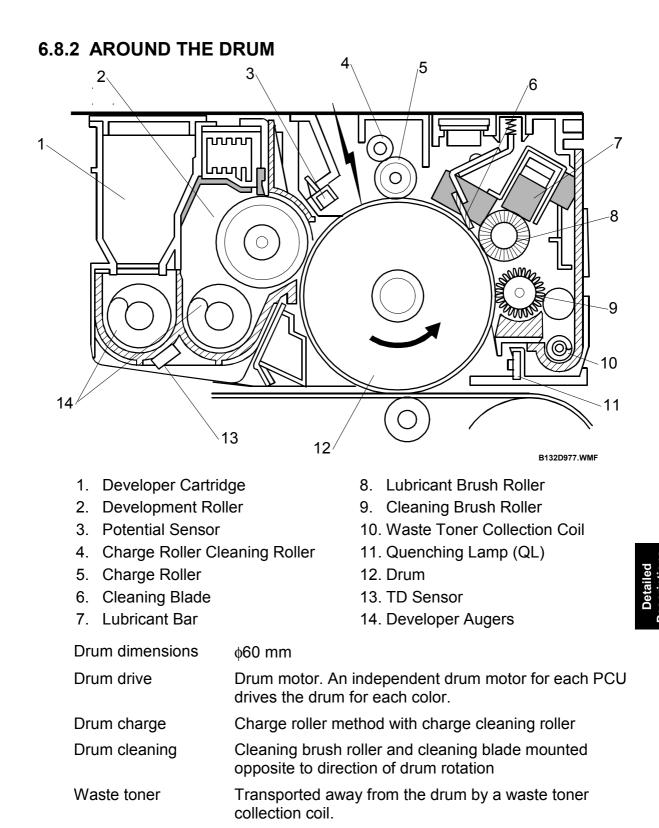
- 1. Laser Unit
- 2. Development Unit (Y)
- 3. Drum (Y)
- 4. Development Unit (C)
- 5. Drum (C)

:

- 6. Development Unit (M)
- 7. Drum (M)
- 8. Development Unit (K)
- 9. Drum (K)
- 10. ITB

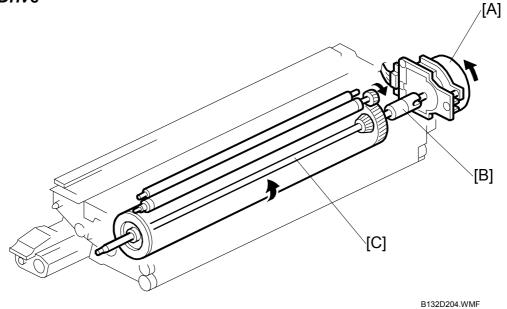
Four PCUs **1 2 3 4** (Y, C, M, K) are arranged in tandem. There is one PCU for each color. The image that is developed on the drum transfers to the ITB (10). All four colors transfer during the same rotation of the ITB. Then the color images transfer to the paper. The color images are transferred from the PCUs to the ITB in the order Y, C, M, K.

Each PCU contains identical components. The only difference is that the K PCU has a temperature sensor that is used to correct process control parameters (charge roller voltage, for example).



**NOTE:** The drum unit does not contain an ID sensor.

### Drum Drive



[A]: Drum motor

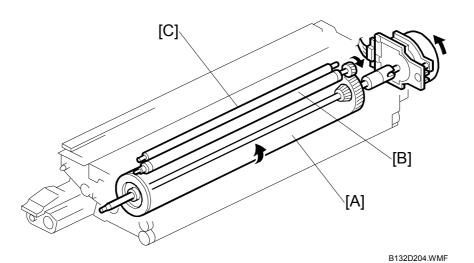
- [B]: Drum motor coupling
- [C]: Drum shaft

Each PCU (Y, C, M, K) has an independent drum motor.

The drum motor [A] rotates the drum motor coupling [B] and drum motor shaft [C].

- During black-and-white copying and printing, only the black drum (K) rotates. The other color drums (Y, M, C) do not rotate.
- The drum shaft must be locked with a special tool attached to the front end of the shaft in order to remove the drum motor. The special tool is attached to the bottom of the PCU stand. For more, please refer to Section "3. Removal and Replacement".

## Drum Charge



[A]: Drum

[B]: Charge roller

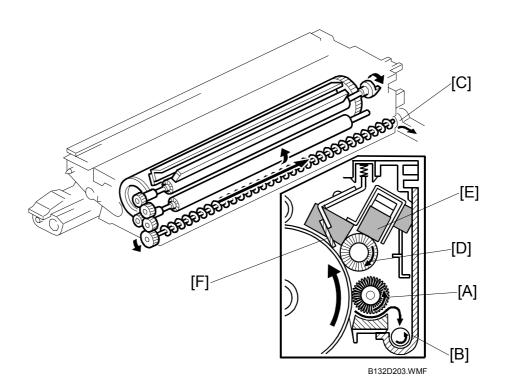
[C]: Charge roller cleaning roller

The charger roller [B] above the drum [A] charges the drum.

The charge roller cleaning roller [C] touches the charge roller and cleans it.

- A gear on the rear of the drum shaft turns the charge roller in the opposite direction of the drum.
- The gap between drum and charge roller is 0.05 mm.
- The charge roller is the same length as the drum to ensure an even charge along the entire length of the drum.
- The charge roller receives its charge from the charge roller power pack. The power pack is connected at a receptacle attached to the rear end of the charge roller shaft.

### Drum Cleaning



Each drum unit has a cleaning brush roller [A] and a cleaning blade [F] to remove toner from the drum after image transfer.

[A]: Cleaning brush roller

Turns counter-clockwise, brushes unused toner from the drum surface, and pushes the toner into a well where it is caught by the waste toner coil

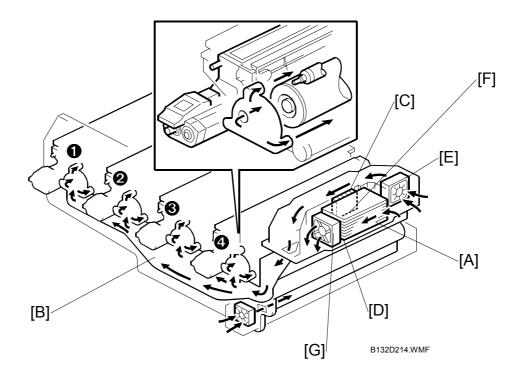
- [B]: Waste toner coil The rotation of this spiral coil moves the waste toner away from the drum toward the waste toner port
- [C]: Waste toner port The toner is moved away from this port to the waste toner collection bottle. (#6.10)
- [D]: Lubricant brush roller To improve the efficiency of cleaning, the rotating lubricant brush roller lubricates the surface of the drum.
- [E]: Lubricant bar

Provides the lubricant transferred to the drum surface by the lubricant brush roller.

[F]: Cleaning blade

A counter blade in direct contact with the drum surface, gently scrapes away remaining toner from the surface of the drum after the lubricant brush roller cleaning and lubrication.

## **Drum Ventilation**



A Peltier unit [A] on the right side of the copier dries air before it is sent through a common duct [B] to the PCUs. This prevents condensation around the drums.

The polarity of this Peltier is set so the left side [C] is the cold side and the right [D] is the hot side.

The Peltier intake fan [E] pulls air into the machine. The air passes through the cold side where the moisture condenses and drains into a small reservoir [F]. The four PCU fan motors  $\mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{O}$ 

The moisture is absorbed by an absorbent pad (not shown) below the Peltier unit.

The hot laminated plates on the right side of the Peltier unit evaporate the moisture. The Peltier circulation fan [G] sends the hot air out of the machine. The temperature/humidity sensor at the black PCU detects the relative humidity inside the machine.

When the relative humidity stays at 60% for 10 minutes:

- 1) The Peltier unit turns ON.
- 2) The Peltier circulation fan and PCU fans turn on together and run at halfspeed.
- 3) The Peltier cooling fan turns on and runs at full speed.

The operation changes when the relative humidity goes below 50% for 5 minutes:

- 1) The Peltier unit turns OFF.
- 2) The Peltier circulation fan turns OFF.

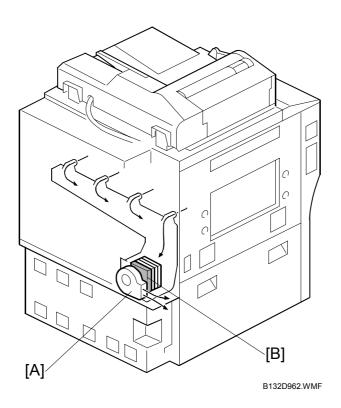
When the humidity stays below 50% for another 5 minutes:

- 1) The Peltier cooling fan turns OFF.
- 2) The PCU fans turn OFF.

# F



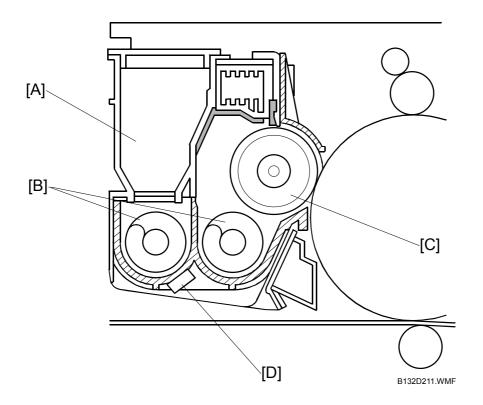
### **Ozone Ventilation**



The ozone fan [A] pulls air from around the drums through the ozone filter [B] and then expels the filtered air from the machine.

# 6.8.3 DEVELOPMENT UNIT

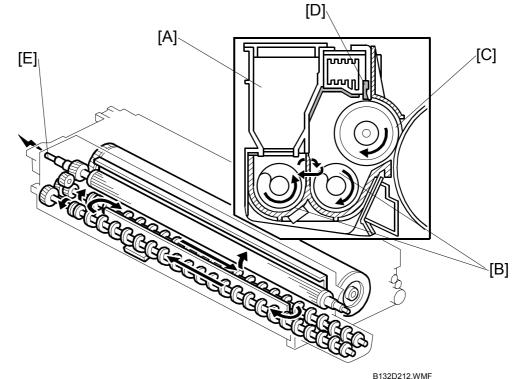
### **Overview**



- [A]: Developer Cartridge
- [B]: Developer Augers [C]: Development Roller
- [D]: TD Sensor

Development method	Dual-component development
Agitation	Two augers
Development unit drive	PCU motor, 1 motor for each PCU (Y, C, M, K)
Development bias	Development bias power pack
•	

### **Development Unit Operation**



- [A]: Developer Cartridge
- [B]: Developer Augers
- [C]: Development Roller
- [D]: Doctor Blade
- [E]: Development Bias Terminal

Each PCU is supplied by a separate developer cartridge [A] (Y, C, M, K). When a new developer cartridge is installed and the tape is removed, all the developer falls into the development unit, across the full width of the development unit. Toner is supplied through a small square port at the front of the development unit (see section 6.9).

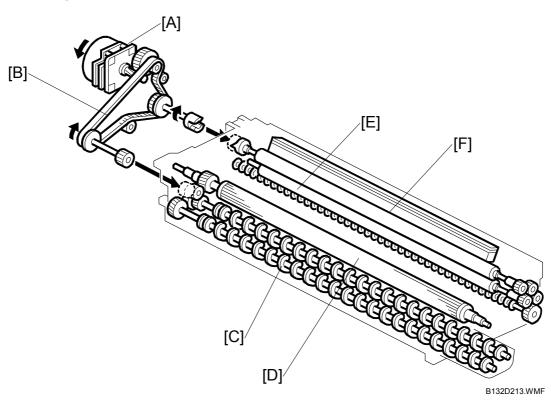
Detailed escriptions

Two development augers [B] cross-mix the toner from the toner cartridge with the developer and then send the mixture to the development roller.

The magnetic development roller [C] pulls the developer-toner mixture onto its surface as it rotates.

Near the top of the development unit, the doctor blade [D] cuts and smoothes the developer-toner mixture to the correct thickness.

The bias from the development bias power pack is applied to the development bias terminal [E] that is attached to the shaft of the development roller



### Development, PCU Unit Drive

[A]: PCU Motor

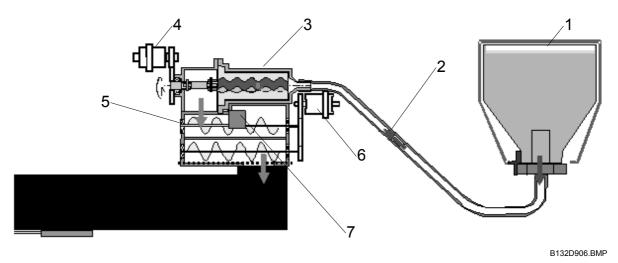
A motor and timing belt behind each PCU drives all the rollers in the PCU. (The drum is driven by the drum motor.)

- [B]: Timing Belt
- [C]: Development Augers
- [D]: Development Roller
- [E]: Cleaning Brush Roller
- [F]: Lubricant Brush Roller

# 6.9 TONER SUPPLY

# 6.9.1 OVERVIEW

Each PCU has a toner supply unit.



1. Toner Cartridge (STC)

- 2. Flexible Tubing
- 3. Toner Pump
- 4. Toner Pump Clutch

- 5. Sub Hopper
- 6. Sub Hopper Clutch
- 7. Toner End Sensor

Toner supply:	Sub hopper, sub hopper clutch	Detaile
Toner transport:	Toner pump, toner pump clutch	
Toner container	Soft Toner Cartridge (STC), sides collapse automatically as toner is pumped from each cartridge	
Toner level detection	Toner end sensor	
Toner cartridge ID	Built-in chip identifies color and type of cartridge, to prevent installation at incorrect location.	

- Toner Cartridge (STC) Four toner cartridges are set in the toner hopper. They are inserted left to right in this order Y, C, M, K.
- 2. Flexible Tubing A flexible tube connects the toner cartridge to the toner pump.
- 3. Toner Pump

Consists of a rotor mounted on a drive shaft that creates a vacuum between itself and the toner cartridge. The rotor is idle until it is engaged by the toner pump clutch.

4. Toner Pump Clutch

The toner pump clutch is driven by the toner hopper motor. This clutch engages the drive shaft and rotor of the toner pump when more toner is needed.

- 5. Sub Hopper Receives the toner from the toner pump. The sub hopper functions as a reserve tank for the development unit.
- 6. Sub Hopper Clutch

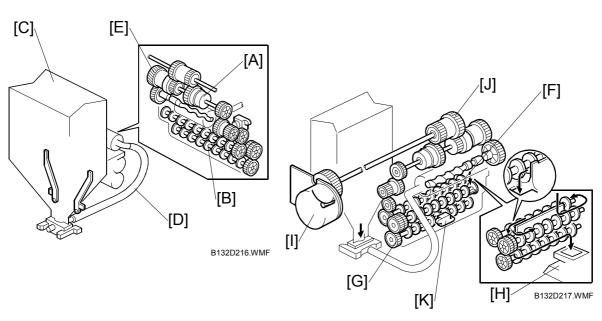
The sub hopper clutch is driven by the toner hopper motor. Engages the toner supply auger in the sub hopper to send the toner from the sub hopper into the development unit below.

7. Toner End Sensor

This sensor is on the sub hopper, and detects toner end. The number of pages that can be printed is based on page count or pixel count, whichever limit is exceeded first.

8. Toner Hopper Motor

The toner hopper motor is on the right side of the toner hopper. This motor drives all the toner pump clutches and sub hopper clutches in each toner hopper (Y, M, C, K).



6.9.2 TONER SUPPLY MECHANISM

The toner pump [A] pulls toner into the sub hopper [B] from the toner cartridge [C], through the flexible tube [D]. The toner hopper motor controls the mechanism, through the toner pump clutch [E].

Toner cartridge  $\rightarrow$  sub hopper

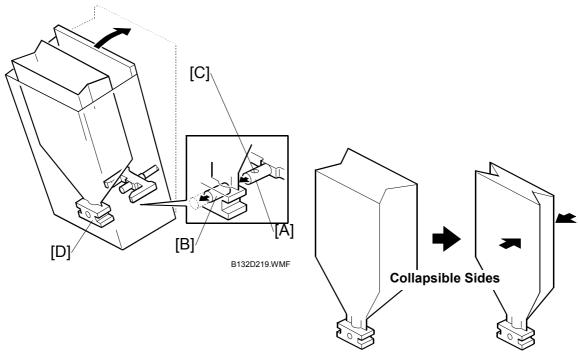
The toner pump supplies toner to the sub hopper. If the toner end sensor [K] output detects "No Toner", the toner pump switches on for 2 seconds, and pumps toner from the toner cartridge to the sub hopper.

Sub hopper  $\rightarrow$  development unit

Based on the toner coverage of the previous print (detected by the TD sensor) the machine determines how much toner was consumed, compares it with the amount remaining, and then switches on the toner supply clutch for the correct time to increase the amount of toner in the development unit.

The toner supply augers [F] move toner from the hopper [G] into the development unit [H]. The toner hopper motor [I] controls the mechanism through the toner supply clutch [J].

# 6.9.3 TONER CARTRIDGE



- [A]: Shutter pin
- [B]: Toner supply port plug
- [C]: Toner supply port
- [D]: ID chip

Each toner cartridge is installed in a bin of the toner hopper.

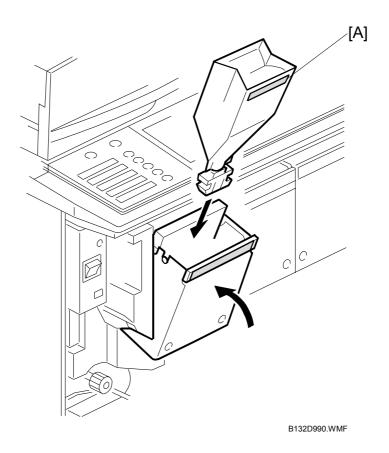
When the bin door is closed, a shutter pin [A] forces open a plug [B]. This opens the toner supply port [C] and toner can flow from the cartridge.

When the cartridge is removed from the machine, the plug [B] moves to its original position and covers the toner supply port of the toner cartridge. This prevents toner leakage from the bottom of the STC when the STC is removed.

The sides of a toner cartridge gradually collapse as toner is pulled out of the cartridge by the toner pump.

The built-in ID chip [D] near the toner supply port holds information about the color and type of toner, the location of the factory where it was produced, and other information.

B132D218.WMF



An STC must be set with its color ID label [A] facing out.

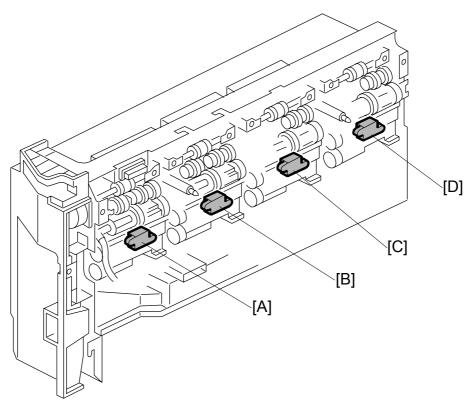
If an STC is inserted with its label facing into the machine, this will cause a "Toner Cartridge Setting Error".

#### Important

- At elevations 1,000 meters (3,280 ft.) above sea level, the toner cartridge packs may expand due to the difference in air pressure, preventing them from being installed in their bins.
- After approximately 24 hours, the cartridges should shrink to normal size.
- If the customer cannot wait for the STCs to collapse naturally, the STC Air Release Kit is available as a service part. For more, contact your technical supervisor.



# 6.9.4 TONER END SENSORS



B132D217A.WMF

The toner end sensors are below the sub hoppers for each color

- [A]: K (Black)
- [B]: M (Magenta)
- [C]: C (Cyan)
- [D]: Y (Yellow)

The toner end sensor monitors the amount of toner in the sub hopper and issues the near-end alert when toner runs low in the sub hopper.

### Toner near-end

When a toner end sensor detects no toner in a sub hopper, the toner supply clutch in that sub hopper engages and operates the toner pump for 2 seconds to supply more toner from the STC to the sub hopper.

If the toner end sensor cannot detect toner in a sub hopper after 10 consecutive readings, this triggers the toner near-end alert (this number of readings can be adjusted with **SP3411 007-008**).

### Toner end

After a toner near-end alert is output, the number of pages that can be printed until toner end is determined by the amount of toner that remains in the sub hopper. After the toner near-end alert has been issued, the toner end alert is issued by one of two counters, whichever goes over the limit first:

- Page count. After the near-end alert, the number of pages that can be printed is based on page count regardless of coverage. The default is 600 (this can be adjusted with SP3411 003~004). Up to 10 A4 pages at 5% coverage can be printed (SP 3411 001-002).
- **Pixel count (coverage)**. The number of pages that can be printed is determined by a calculation of the coverage (30 A4 pages at 100% coverage). The default setting can be adjusted with **SP3411 005~006**.

#### Important

• The number of pages that actually print after the toner near-end alert is issued varies, of course, with paper size and amount of coverage on each page.

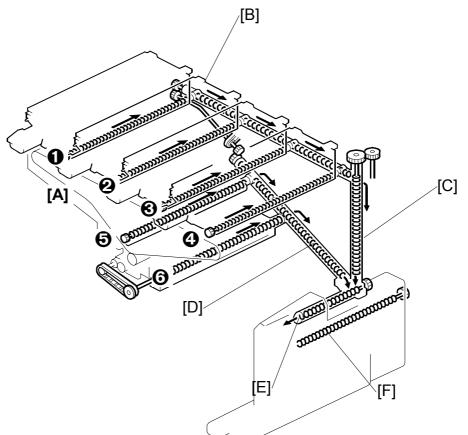
#### **Toner End Recovery**

After a new cartridge is installed, the machine supplies toner from the new cartridge to the sub hopper. If the toner end sensor detects that toner was supplied, the machine goes out of the toner end condition.



# 6.10 WASTE TONER COLLECTION

## 6.10.1 WASTE TONER PATH



B132D215.WMF

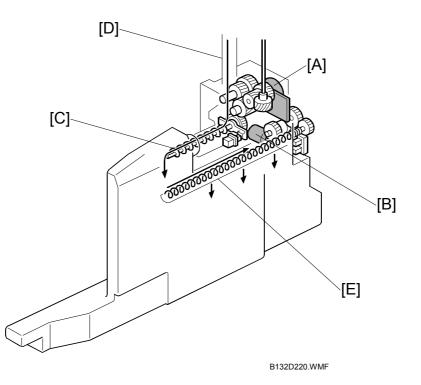
- [A]: Waste Toner Collection Coils
  - **1** PCU (Y)
  - **2** PCU (C)
  - PCU (M)
  - PCU (K)
  - **6** ITB Unit
  - **O** PTR Unit
- [B]: Horizontal Waste Toner Transport Coil
- [C]: Vertical Waste Toner Transport Coil
- [D]: Diagonal Waste Toner Transport Coil
- [E]: Waste Toner Bottle Transport Coil
- [F]: Waste Toner Distribution Coil

[A]: Waste Toner Collection Coils

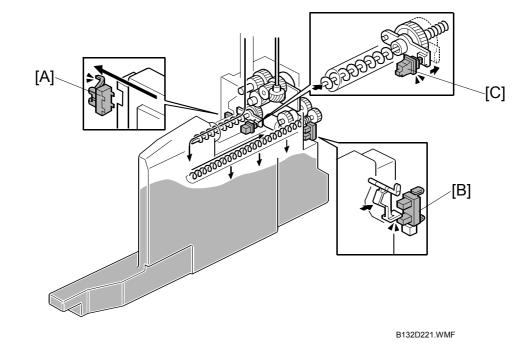
Six waste toner collection coils (1 for each PCU and 1 each for the ITB and transfer roller) transport waste toner away from these components after cleaning. The PCU motors drive coils **1** to **2**. The PTR motor drives coils **3** and **3**.

- **1** PCU (Y)
- **2** PCU (C)
- **O** PCU (M)
- PCU (K)
- **G** ITB Unit
- **O** PTR Unit
- [B]: Horizontal Waste Toner Transport Coil Driven by the PTR motor, this transports waste toner from the PCU waste toner collection coils to the vertical waste toner transport coil.
- [C]: Vertical Waste Toner Transport Coil Driven by a parallel vertical shaft connected to the waste toner bottle transport motor, this transports waste toner from the horizontal waste toner collection coil to the central collection point above the waste toner bottle.
- [D]: Diagonal Waste Toner Transport Coil Driven by the PTR motor, this transports waste toner from the ITB unit and PTR unit waste toner collection coils to the central collection point above the waste toner bottle.
- [E]: Waste Toner Bottle Transport Coil Driven by the waste toner bottle transport motor, this transports waste toner from the central collection point to entrance of the waste toner bottle.
- [F]: Waste Toner Bottle Distribution Coil This coil at the top of the waste toner bottle is driven by the waste toner bottle near full motor. The coil distributes the waste toner evenly across the length of the waste toner bottle.

# 6.10.2 WASTE TONER UNIT MOTORS



- [A]: Waste Toner Transport Motor Drives the waste toner bottle transport coil [C] and the vertical waste toner transport coil [D].
- [B]: Waste Toner Distribution Motor Drives the waste toner bottle distribution coil [E]. This motor does not constantly turn.



# 6.10.3 WASTE TONER COLLECTION UNIT SENSORS

Three sensors in the waste toner monitor the operation of waste toner collection and trigger an alert on the operation panel or issue an SC code.

- [A]: Waste Toner Bottle Set Sensor
- [B]: Waste Toner Bottle Near-Full Sensor
- [C]: Waste Toner Bottle Full Sensor

#### Waste Toner Bottle Set Sensor

This sensor [A] detects the position of the waste toner bottle, and checks if it is set correctly. When the waste toner bottle is set in the machine, the bottle pushes the feeler of this sensor away from the sensor and turns the sensor on.

The machine issues SC487 if the waste toner bottle is not installed or if it is not installed correctly.

#### Waste Toner Bottle Near-Full Sensor

When the level of the waste toner rises high enough:

- The pressure of the top of the stack of waste toner pushes a piece of silicone rubber, then the film pushes a feeler into the gap of the sensor [B].
- The blocked sensor signals the machine that the waste toner bottle is nearly full.
- The machine issues a near-full alert and switches off the waste toner distribution motor.

### Waste Toner Bottle Full Sensor

Monitors the level of the waste toner in the waste toner bottle. Signals an alert when the pressure of the waste toner releases the bottle full sensor [C].

After the alert is issued, the machine can print up to 100 additional copies. After 100 copies, the machine issues SC484.

#### Waste Toner Lock Sensor

This sensor is located on the PTR motor bracket. It detects when the waste toner bottle transport coil locks and stops rotating because of clogged toner in the waste toner transport path. The machine issues SC488 if there is no change 3 seconds after the lock occurs.

#### Waste Toner Bottle Transport Motor

If the waste toner bottle transport motor does not turn for 600 ms, the motor control board sends a motor lock signal to the CPU and the machine issues SC485.

# 6.11 PROCESS CONTROL

# 6.11.1 OVERVIEW

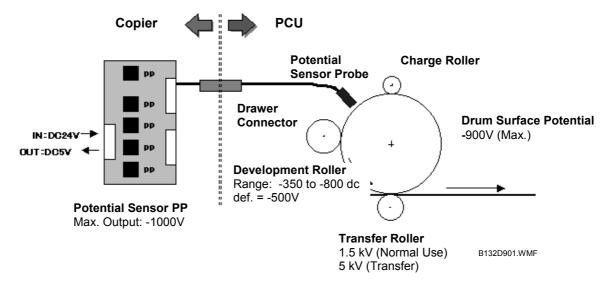
In this machine, there are two processes.

- **Potential control**. Adjusts the image creation process (charge, development bias, and LD power) to achieve the target toner coverage. During potential control several series of patterns are created at prescribed times. The potential sensor and ID sensor read these patterns. The readings of these sensors are used to determine the development capacity (development gamma), and then adjust the conditions around the drum to reproduce the best possible images. Potential control also puts the machine in the best possible condition to begin toner supply control.
- **Toner supply control**. Detects the amount of toner applied to ID sensor patterns between pages and adjusts the amount of toner supplied to the development unit to maintain consistency in the amount of toner.
- **NOTE:** MUSIC (Mirror Unit Skew Interval Correction) done to correct the horizontal and vertical skewing of the print images on the ITB is not part of process control.



# 6.11.2 COMPONENTS USED DURING PROCESS CONTROL

### **Potential Sensor**



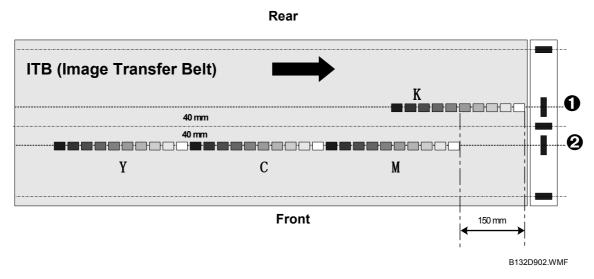
There is a potential sensor in each PCU above the surface of the drum.

Each potential sensor consists of a probe and small power pack. A drawer connector connects the probe and the power pack as shown above.

The potential sensor measures the potential of the drum immediately after it is charged by the charge roller. It also measures a series of patterns (undeveloped latent images) exposed on the drum by the laser diodes:

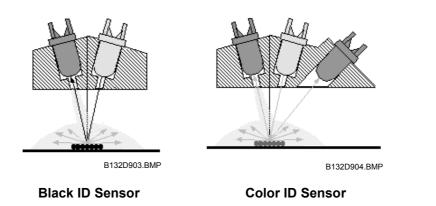
- A detector in the center of a very small window measures the strength of the electrostatic charge on the drum surface. The strengths of the charges vary, depending on the surface potential of the drum.
- A feedback circuit applies voltage to the probe until the strength of this charge equals (offsets) the strength of the charge on the drum.

## **ID Sensors**



There are two ID sensors above the surface of the ITB:

- The black ID sensor **1** (rear) detects the black ID sensor pattern (K).
- The color ID sensor 2 (front) detects the three color ID sensor patterns (C, M, Y).



Detailed Descriptions

The black ID sensor is a *direct reflection* sensor.

The color ID sensor is a combination of a direct reflection sensor and a *diffused reflection* sensor. This combination of a direct reflection sensor pair and an additional diffused reflection sensor achieves more accurate readings for Y, M, C colors.

During process control, the creation of the patterns is timed so the Magenta, Cyan and Yellow patterns are transferred to the ITB at approximately the same time. The color ID sensor <sup>(2)</sup> then reads the color ID sensor patterns in the order M, C, Y.

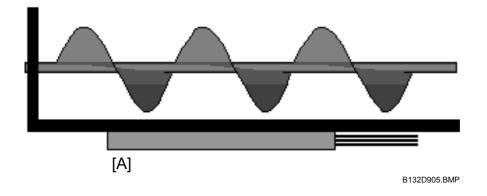
Note that the K pattern is read by the black ID sensor ① at approximately the same time the Cyan pattern is being read.

These ID sensors read the following patterns from the ITB:

- 10-grade patterns (x4) during process control
- 16-grade patterns (x4) during process control gamma correction
- ID sensor patterns (x4) at 10 page (and other intervals) for toner supply control

#### 31 March 2005

# TD Sensor



There is a TD sensor [A] below the development unit of each PCU.

The TD sensor directly measures the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture. Unlike previous machines, this TD sensor is not in direct contact with the developer/toner mixture.

Vt is the output voltage of the TD sensor. When Vt goes high, toner is added to the developer to bring Vt back to the Vtref value.

### **Temperature/Humidity Sensors**

Two temperature/humidity sensors are used for process control. One is above the black PCU, and one is below the waste toner bottle.

### Temperature/humidity sensor – PCU K

This sensor is in the black PCU (the last PCU on the right).

The output of this sensor is used to:

- Set the level of the ac charge applied to the charge roller of each PCU
- Set the length of time the agitator in the development unit rotates to mix the developer and toner.
- Controls the Peltier unit

#### Bottom temperature/humidity sensor

This sensor is below the waste toner bottle.

The output of this sensor is used to control the amount of current applied to the ITB and paper transfer roller. It is also used to correct the fusing idling temperature.

## List of Process Control Acronyms

The potential control phase of process control involves many adjustments. Here is list of acronyms used in the descriptions of process control adjustments.

Acronym	Description
Cdc	Charge dc bias
Vb	Development charge bias
Vb <b>*</b> <sup>1</sup>	Development charge bias after Vr (residual potential) adjustment
Vd	Drum potential after the drum is charged by the charge roller.
Vd <b>*</b> <sup>1</sup>	Drum potential after Vr (residual potential) adjustment
Vdhome	The electrical potential of the drum after a fixed dc bias (dc –700V) is applied by the drum charge roller.
Vdp	Development potential (Vb – Vpl). This is the ability to attract toner to the drum.
Vk	Development start voltage (checks the developer at the beginning of process control to determine whether it has deteriorated)
VI	Light potential. Development potential of areas on the drum exposed by the laser diodes. Maximum laser power has been applied to the diodes.
Vpl	Electrical potential after laser exposure, with 24/63 of maximum laser power (power is controlled with PWM).
Vpl <b></b> * <sup>1</sup>	Electrical potential (VpI) after Vr (residual potential) adjustment
Vpp	Charge ac bias.
Vr	Residual potential
Vsg_dif	Vsg after checking the bare surface of the ITB by the diffused reflection sensor.
Vsg	ID sensor output after reading bare surface of the ITB
Vsg_reg	Vsg after checking the bare surface of the ITB by the direct reflection ID sensor.
Vsp	ID sensor output from the most recent ID sensor pattern.
Vt	TD sensor output at the present time.
Vtcnt	Gain value calculated during TD sensor initialization. This is used to adjust the Vt (TD sensor output). A large gain increases Vt, and a small gain decreases it. The result of this calculation is also used to calibrate Vt during TD sensor initialization.
Vtref	Target output of the TD sensor. The machine always tries to adjust the toner WT% in the developer to bring Vt closer to Vtref.

<sup>1</sup> Adjustment done for each color Y, M, C, K

# Important SP Codes Related to Process Control

This table lists the SP codes that are associated with the most important elements of process control. For more, please refer to Section "5. Service Tables".

		SP3501 001 Potential Control Type Selection		Initial	Range	Target Effect in Process Control
		0: Auto	1: Fixed			
Charge					·	
Charge dc bias	Cdc	SP3576	SP2201	-700V	-450 to -950V	Potential control
Charge ac bias	Vpp	SP3577	SP2202	2.2 kV	1.8 to 2.4 kV, 2.2 kHz	Prevention of abnormal images
Exposure						
PM (LD power)	Ldp	SP3581	SP2211	0	-117 to +127	Potential control
Development						
Development bias	Vb	SP3575	SP2212	–500 V	-300 to -800 V	Potential control



## 6.11.3 POTENTIAL CONTROL

### When is Potential Control Done?

1. **Initial process control self-check.** The process control self-check is done automatically after the machine is turned on, if the pressure roller thermistor detects that the fusing temperature is below 100°C (adjust this temp with **SP3554 001**).

**NOTE:** The initial process control self-check is not done when the machine is turned on with the front door open.

2. At the end of every job, if the number of pages since the previous process control is more than the value of SP3551.

There are separate counters for black-and-white and colour pages.

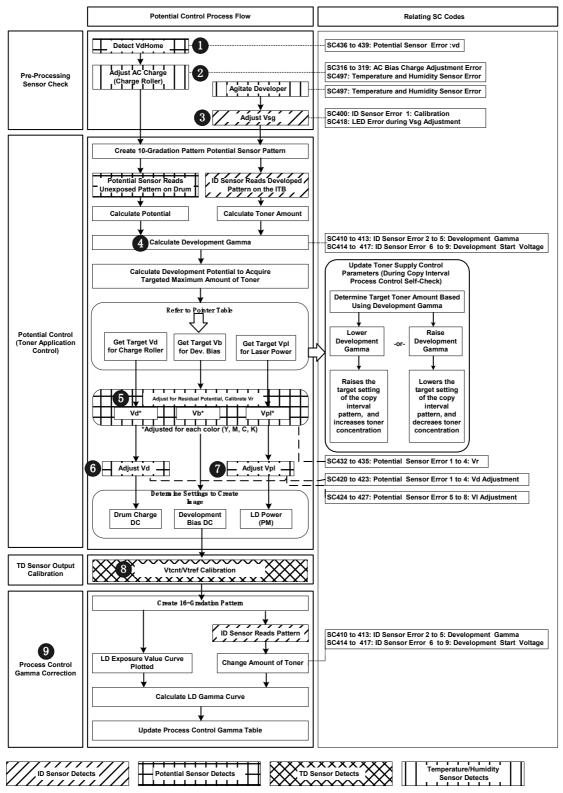
- Black-and-white: After 250 pages (adjust with SP3551 001)
- Color: After 200 pages (adjust with **SP3551 002**)

Either SP code can be set to "0", which disables this feature.

3. **Before ACC (Automatic Color Calibration)** The process control self-check is done after touching [Execute] on the operation panel to start ACC and just before the ACC pattern prints. However, this operation can be changed with **SP3501 004**:

0	Process control self-check is not done before the ACC pattern prints.
1	A partial self-check (only potential control) is done before the ACC pattern prints. This takes about 24 seconds.
2	The full process control self-check (potential control and toner density control) is done before the ACC pattern prints (default). This takes between 24 seconds and 180 seconds.

- 4. **Immediately after initialization of the TD sensor.** The process control selfcheck is done automatically every time a TD sensor is initialized.
  - Done after **SP3801 001-006** is executed (after replacing the developer).
  - Done after **SP3811** is executed (at machine installation, or after replacing developer). See section 3.5.7 for details on the SPs to do after you replace a part.
- 5. Potential control process control self-check. This is done with SP3820 001.
- 6. **Potential control and toner density adjustment process control self-check**. This is done with **SP3820 002**. This SP must be done manually when the drum is replaced without replacing the developer at the same time.



#### What is Done During Potential Control?

B132D988.WMF

First, a check confirms that all the PCU units are set correctly.

**NOTE:** Please keep in mind that all the readings and calculations described below are done in each of the four PCUs. For simplicity, however, the discussions are limited to what occurs in a single PCU.

### • Detect Vdhome

A charge of –700V is applied to the drum. The potential sensor detects the potential of the drum and checks if the potential sensor, drum, and charge roller are functioning normally.

If the charge is within the range -700V to -500V, the drum is functioning normally.

#### **Potential Sensor Calibration Errors**

SC Codes	SP3821 Procon OK?	For More Details:	
SC436~SC439	15~17	See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in	
		Section "4. Troubleshooting".	

## **2** Adjust AC Charge

The machine finds the current that is necessary for the optimum AC charge (Vpp). The optimum charge depends on the ambient temperature and humidity. The optimum charge for each temperature and humidity range is set with **SP2204** (ACC Charge Correction).

Insufficient charge causes white spotting and too much charge causes toner to film on the surface of the drum.

This check ensures that the average value of Vpp after 20 samplings is Vpp > 2.8 kV.

### **AC Charge Errors**

SC Codes	SP3821 Procon OK?	For More Details:
SC316~SC319	31~32	See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in Section "4. Troubleshooting".

## Adjust Vsg

Before the gradated patterns are read, the strength of the ID sensor output (LED PWM) is adjusted to bring the value of Vsg\_reg to the specified value.

An abnormal condition is detected when:

- Before Vsg adjustment begins, Vsg\_reg < 0.5V
- After Vsg adjustment, Vsg\_reg cannot be adjusted to 4.0±0.2V

#### ID Sensor Errors

SC Codes	SP3821 Procon OK?	For More Details:	
SC400, SC418	21~23	23 See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in Section "4. Troubleshooting".	
		Section 4. Houbleshooting.	

#### 31 March 2005

### **Ocalculate Development Gamma**

The laser diodes write a 10-grade potential sensor pattern on each drum. To make the different densities, the machine changes the PWM duty of the laser diodes.



At this step, the development gamma (development capacity) is measured. The necessary potentials are calculated. Next, the target values (necessary potentials) for Vd (charge potential), Vb (development bias), and Vpl (drum potential after exposure) are retrieved from the Potential Reference Table.

At this time:

- Development gamma must be in the range 0.3 to 6.0 V
- Development start voltage (Vk) must be in the range –150 to 150 V. This development start voltage is used to indicate whether the developer has deteriorated. However, this is only a rough measurement that can be affected by ambient conditions and the condition of other electrical components.

#### **ID Sensor Pattern Detection Errors**

SC Codes	SP3821 Procon OK?	For More Details:
SC410~SC413	55~56, 59	See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in Section "4. Troubleshooting".
SC414~SC417	57~58	Section 4. Houseshooting .

### Adjust for Residual Potential

The laser unit fires at full power (PM = +127, PWM = 63) to compensate for a possible high residual potential on the drum. Next, the amount of residual potential is detected, and the charge is adjusted to achieve the target potential.

The detected Vr must be less than -200V.

#### Vr (Residual Potential) Errors

SC Codes	SP3821 Procon OK?	For More Details:	
SC432~SC435	62	See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in	
		Section "4. Troubleshooting".	

## **6** Adjust Vd

This step adjusts Cdc, the charge applied to adjust dc bias target Vd**\***. Vd**\*** is the targeted bias after Vr (residual potential correction).

The targeted potential of Vd $\ast$  must be within  $\pm$ 5V.

#### Vd (Development Bias) Errors

SC Codes	SP3821 Procon OK?	For More Details:
SC420~SC423	63	See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in Section "4. Troubleshooting".

## Adjust Vpl

The LD power is adjusted in order to get to the target Vpl\* (the Vpl value after correction for Vr)

After correction for Vr, the value of Vpl\* must be within ±5V.

### Vpl (LD Power) Adjust Errors

SC Codes	SP3821 Procon OK?	For More Details:
SC424~SC427	64	See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in Section "4. Troubleshooting".

### **③** Vtref/Vtcnt Calibration

Vtref calibration: Calibrates Vtref to the value of Vt

Vtcnt calibration: If Vt is not within the range of 2 to 3 V, Vtcnt is changed to bring it within this range.

This lets the machine use the results of the process control calculations to get the correct toner amount.

There is no check for abnormal conditions at this step.

### **9** Process Control Gamma Correction

The following adjustments are done, based on the development gamma correction, to achieve the target values (Vd**\***, Vl**\***, Vb**\***)

- To adjust Vd\* (drum bias), the voltage of the charge roller is raised.
- To adjust VI\* (laser power), the input current of the laser diodes (Ild) is raised.
- To adjust Vb\* (development bias), the charge on the development roller is increased.

At this time:

- Development gamma must be in the range 0.3 to 6.0.
- Development start voltage must be in the range –150 to 150 V.

#### Potential Control Errors

SC Codes	For More Details:
SC410~SC417	See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in Section "4. Troubleshooting".

## 6.11.4 TONER SUPPLY CONTROL

### Overview

The toner supply method can be selected with SP3301 001-004.

- 0: Fixed supply mode (used for testing only; do not use this mode except during some troubleshooting procedures as described in section 4)
- 1: PID (Proportional Integral Differentiation) control mode (default)

This section describes only PID control because only PID control is used in the field.

PID control uses inputs from pixel count, and from the TD and ID sensors. If the TD or ID sensor is broken, the machine uses PID control with inputs from pixel count only.

The following three functions comprise toner supply control for this machine.

#### 1. At the end of every job (at the same time as potential control)

This is done if the number of pages since the previous toner supply control is more than the number that is set with SP 3551.

Black-and-white	After 250 pages (adjustable with <b>SP3551 001</b> )
Full color	After 200 pages (adjustable with <b>SP3551 002</b> )

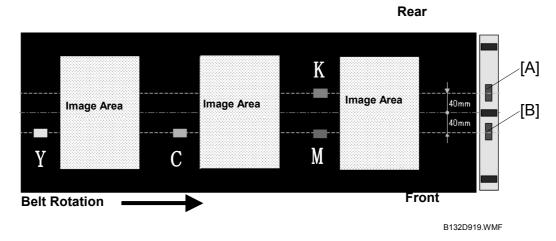
Using the development gamma that was calculated during potential control, the machine determines the target amount of toner (M/A):

- Low development gamma: Raises the target image density of the sensor pattern and increases the toner concentration.
- High development gamma: Lowers the target image density of the sensor pattern and decreases the toner concentration.

Detailed Descriptions

#### 2. Page interval process control (Vsp detection between pages)

This function operates only when **SP3042 001** (Vtref correction) is set to "ON" (default). The Vsp ID sensor pattern is created between the page images on the ITB (Default: Every 10 pages). This interval can be adjusted with **SP3171**.



[A]: ID Sensor – K

[B]: ID Sensor – Y, C, M

See Section 6.12.9 for the actual locations of the ID sensors.

The toner M/A is calculated from this sensor pattern after every 10th page:

Target M/A K Toner		Uses the setting of SP3161 001.	
	Y, M, C Toner	Uses the settings of SP3531 002 to 004	

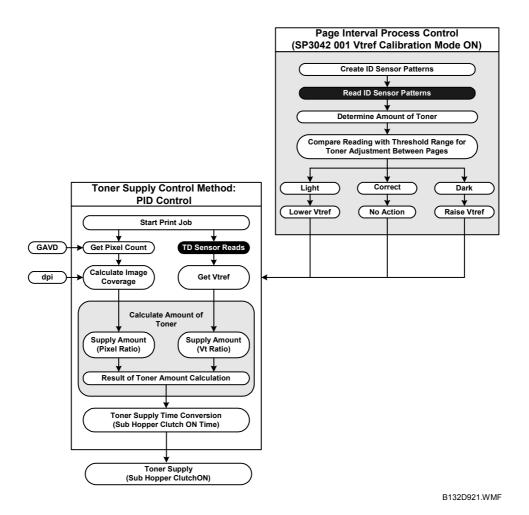
Toner supply is based on Vt - Vtref

- If the pattern is too dark (too much toner):
  - $\rightarrow$  Vtref is increased  $\rightarrow$  Toner supply amount decreases
- If the pattern is too light (not enough toner):
   → Vtref is reduced → Toner supply amount increases

Also, the TD sensor detection is done for every page:

- If Vt < Vtref, the toner supply amount is lowered.
- If Vt > Vtref, the toner supply amount is raised.

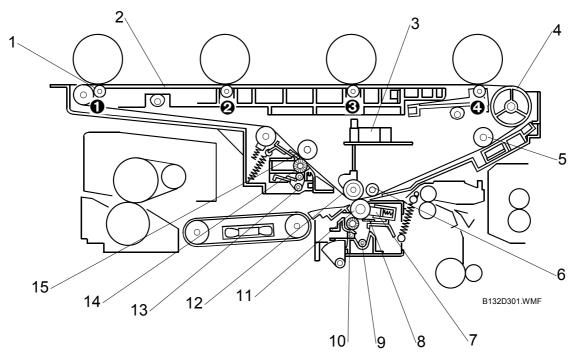
## **Toner Supply Operation Flow**



Detailed Descriptions

# 6.12 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER TRANSFER

## 6.12.1 OVERVIEW



- 1. Image Transfer Rollers (● Y, ❷ C, ❸ M, ④ K)
- 2. ITB
- 3. Transfer Power Pack
- 4. ITB Drive Roller
- 5. ID/MUSIC Sensor Roller
- 6. Belt Pressure Roller
- 7. Lubricant Bar

- 8. PTR Cleaning Blade
- 9. PTR Waste Toner Collection Coil
- 10. Paper Transfer Roller Cleaning Brush
- 11. PTR (Paper Transfer Roller)
- 12. ITB Bias Roller
- 13. ITB Waste Toner Collection Coil
- 14. ITB Cleaning Brush Roller
- 15. ITB Cleaning Blade

- Image Transfer Rollers (① Y, ② C, ③ M, ④ K) The positive charge applied by the transfer power pack to these sponge rollers (one for each PCU) pulls the developed images from the drums down onto the ITB.
- 2. ITB

Receives the toner images from the four drums and holds them until they are transferred to paper. During a full-color job, all the drums (Y, C, M, K) are in contact with the ITB. During a black-and-white job, the ITB is lowered and the Y, C, M drums separate from the ITB and only the black (K) drum contacts the ITB.

- 3. Transfer Power Pack Applies the positive bias to the image transfer rollers to pull the developed toner images off the drums and onto the ITB. Also applies a negative bias to the ITB bias roller to push the images off the ITB and onto the paper.
- 4. ITB Drive Roller The ITB drive motor turns this roller, which drives the ITB belt.
- 5. ID/MUSIC Sensor Roller

This idle roller is directly opposite the two ID sensors and three MUSIC sensors. It ensures that the belt is positioned correctly close to the sensors for accurate readings of the ID sensor patterns and MUSIC patterns on the ITB.

- Belt Pressure Roller Presses down on the ITB and paper to hold them in place as they enter the nip between the PTR and PTR idle roller (this is where the images are transferred from the ITB to paper).
- 7. Lubricant Bar Lubricates the PTR to facilitate cleaning.
- PTR Cleaning Blade Removes residual toner on the PTR after the PTR cleaning brush roller cleans the PTR.
- PTR Waste Toner Collection Coil Toner removed from the PTR by the PTR cleaning brush roller and PTR cleaning blade falls into the rotating coils. It is then moved to the transverse waste toner collection coil and finally to the waste toner bottle.
- Paper Transfer Roller Cleaning Brush Removes residual toner from the PTR after the image is transferred from the ITB to paper.

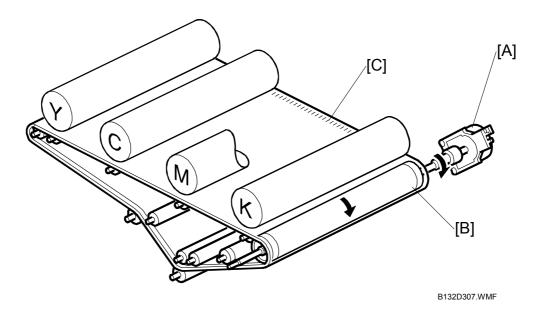
11. PTR (Paper Transfer Roller)

Provides pressure when the ITB and paper pass between this roller and the PTR below during image transfer from ITB to paper.

- 12. ITB Bias Roller The transfer power pack applies a negative charge to this roller to push the negatively-charged toner image from the ITB to the paper.
- 13. ITB Waste Toner Collection Coil Toner removed from the ITB by the cleaning brush roller and ITB cleaning blade falls into the rotating coils. It is then moved to the transverse waste toner collection coil and finally to the waste toner bottle.
- 14. ITB Cleaning Brush Roller Removes residual toner from the ITB after the image is transferred from the ITB to paper.
- 15. ITB Cleaning Blade

Removes residual toner from the belt after the ITB cleaning brush roller cleans the belt.

## 6.12.2 ITB DRIVE

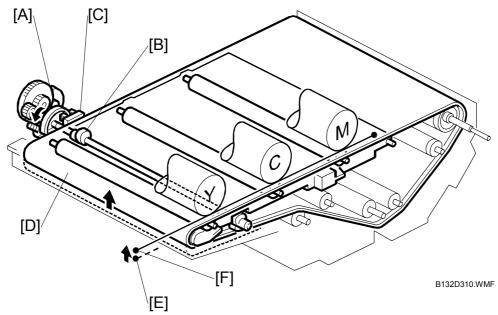


[A]: ITB drive motor [B]: ITB drive roller [C]: ITB

The ITB drive motor [A] drives the ITB drive roller [B]. All the other rollers inside the ITB are idle rollers.



## 6.12.3 ITB LIFT



- [A]: ITB lift motor
- [B]: ITB lift cam
- [C]: ITB lift sensor
- [D]: ITB
- [E]: Black print position
- [F]: Full-color print position

The ITB lift motor [A] (a stepper motor) turns the ITB lift cam [B]. This cam lifts and lowers the ITB [C]. The operation of the ITB lift motor is controlled by the ITB lift sensor [D].

When the machine is turned on, the ITB stays at position [E]. The Y, C, M drums are separated from the ITB.

#### When Full Color Mode is Selected:

- The motor turns the cam until the actuator goes into the ITB lift sensor.
- The motor stops.
- The raised cam holds the ITB at position [F]. All drums (Y, C, M, K) contact the ITB.
- The machine automatically adjusts the paper feed timing for full color copying with all the drums.
- While the Y, M, C drums are separated from the ITB, they do not turn. This reduces wear on these drums while they are not being used.

#### When Black-and-White Mode is Selected:

- The motor turns the cam until the actuator goes out of the ITB lift sensor.
- The motor stops.
- With the left side of the ITB down, only the black (K) drum contacts the ITB.
- The machine automatically adjusts paper feed timing for black-and-white copying with only one drum.
- The ITB stays down until the next full-color job starts

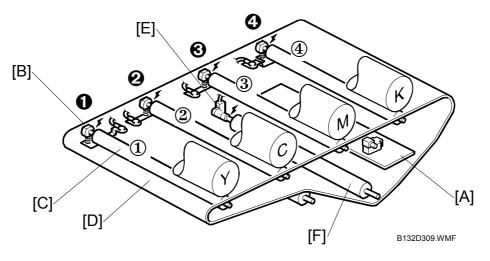
#### When ACS Mode is Selected:

If the job has color pages and black-and-white pages, the ITB operation is controlled by **SP 5880 001**.

- The default is 0 (low productivity). In this mode, the ITB changes position each time the page type changes. This makes printing slower, but decreases wear on the color PCUs.
- If you set the SP to 1, then the machine will not move away from the color PCUs if a black-and-white page is next. This makes printing faster, but increases wear on the color PCUs.



## 6.12.4 TRANSFER POWER PACK



- [A]: Transfer power pack
- [B]: ITB transfer roller terminals **0**, **2**, **3**, **4**
- [C]: Image transfer rollers (1), (2), (3), (4)
- [D]: ITB
- [E]: ITB bias roller terminal
- [F]: ITB bias roller

To transfer the images from drum to ITB:

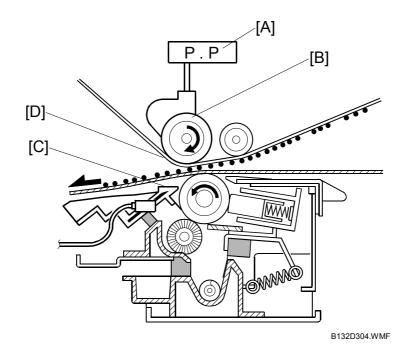
- The transfer power pack [A] supplies a positive charge (1 kV 24 to 30 μA) to the image transfer roller terminals [B] ①, ②, ③, ④.
- The four terminals charge the image transfer rollers [C] ①, ②, ③, ④ which transfer the charge to the back of the ITB [D].
- The positively charged ITB pulls the negatively charged toner off the drums and onto the ITB.

To transfer the images from ITB to paper:

- The transfer power pack [A] supplies a negative charge to the ITB bias roller terminal [E].
- The terminal applies the negative charge to the ITB bias roller [F].
- The high negative charge of the ITB bias roller is applied to the back of the ITB. This repulses the low negative charge of the toner, forcing the images onto the paper.

#### NOTE

- The transfer power pack supplies the positive charge for image transfer to the ITB and the negative charge for image transfer from the ITB to paper.
- A temperature/humidity sensor under the waste toner bottle motor controls the amount of the charge applied to the image transfer and ITB bias rollers.



## 6.12.5 PAPER TRANSFER AND SEPARATION

This machine employs a *repulsive force bias system* to transfer the image on the ITB to paper.

The transfer power pack [A] applies a negative bias to the ITB bias roller [B].

The negative bias from the back side of the ITB applies a repulsive force to the toner on the ITB surface. This repulsive force pushes the toner from the ITB surface onto the paper.

This system has two advantages:

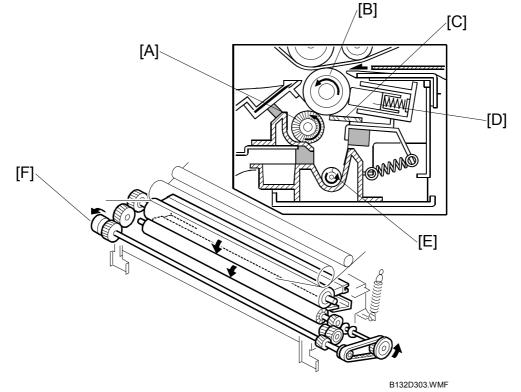
- The repulsive bias from the front side of the paper has no effect on the moisture in the paper.
- Because the bias is applied from the front side of the paper, the bias can be applied more effectively, regardless of the level of humidity around the paper.

After the image has been transferred to the paper:

- The paper discharge plate [C] (connected to the separation power pack) applies an ac charge to neutralize the charges on the paper and the ITB.
- Next, curvature separation at [D] separates the paper from the belt when the ITB makes its abrupt turn toward the top of the machine for the next copy cycle.

Detailed Description

## 6.12.6 PTR CLEANING



- [A]: PTR brush cleaning roller
- [B]: PTR
- [C]: PTR cleaning blade
- [D]: PTR lubricant bar
- [E]: PTR waste toner collection coil
- [F]: PTR motor

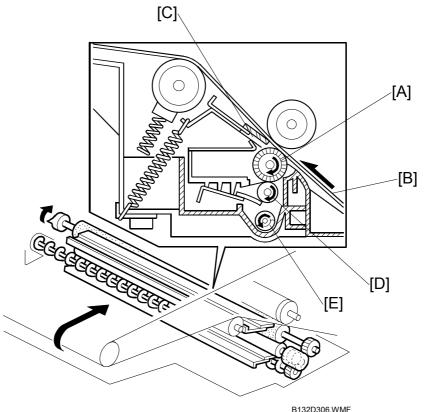
The brush cleaning roller [A], driven by the PTR motor [F], removes toner from the PTR [B] because these rollers rotate in opposite directions.

The PTR cleaning blade [C] removes toner that remains after brush cleaning.

The PTR lubricant bar [D] lubricates the surface of the PTR to facilitate cleaning.

The removed toner falls into the PTR waste toner collection coil [E]. The coils move the toner to the transverse waste toner collection coil at the back of the machine, and this coil sends the waste toner to the waste toner bottle.

## 6.12.7 ITB CLEANING



- [A]: ITB brush cleaning roller
- [B]: ITB
- [C]: ITB cleaning blade
- [D]: Brush roller cleaning roller
- [E]: Waste toner collection coil

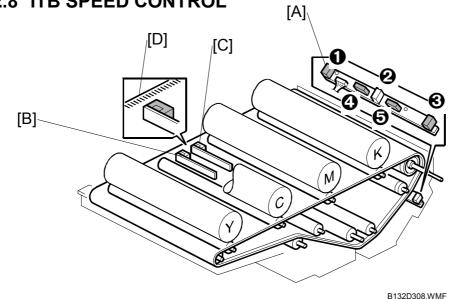
The PTR motor (•6.12.6) rotates the ITB brush cleaning roller [A] against the bottom of the ITB [B] while it passes above.

The ITB cleaning blade [C] removes toner that remains on the belt after the brush roller cleaning.

The brush roller cleaning roller [D] removes toner from the rotating brush roller.

Toner removed from the ITB falls into the rotating waste toner collection coil [E]. The coil moves the toner to the transverse waste toner collection coil at the back of the machine. This coil sends the waste toner to the waste toner bottle.

There is no lubricant bar.



6.12.8 ITB SPEED CONTROL

[A]: MUSIC sensors **()**, **(2)**, **(3)** 

ID Sensor – K (), ID Sensor Y, M, C () (•6.7.4, 6.11.3)

- [B]: ITB position sensor 1
- [C]: ITB position sensor 2

[D]: ITB encoder strip

For full color and black-and-white printing on plain paper, and for thin paper, the ITB speed is 282 mm/s.

For OHPs, and Thick Paper 1 and 2, the speed is 141 mm/s (1/2 speed).

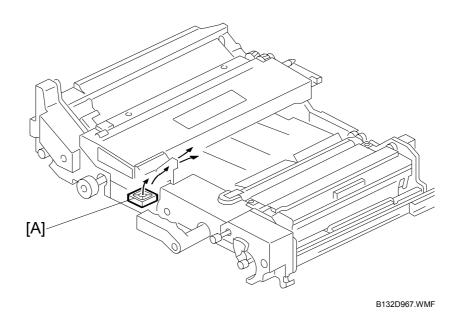
**NOTE:** For OHPs, the fusing unit line speed is 100 mm/s (1/3 speed). (#6.14.1)

The machine uses three MUSIC sensors [A] to control the speed of the drum motor to prevent color registration errors during full color printing. (See section 6.7.4.)

There are two ITB position sensors Sensor 1 [B] and Sensor 2 [C] above the encoder strip scale [D] on the rear edge of the ITB.

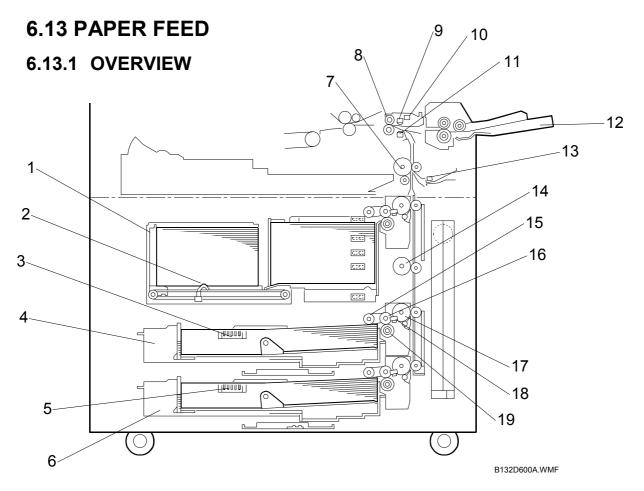
- ITB position sensor 1 monitors the belt speed. The CPU uses this information to adjust the speed of the belt to account for eccentricity of the image transfer roller, differences in the thickness of the belt, belt slippage, and the load placed on the ITB by friction between the rollers at paper transfer.
- ITB position sensor 2, located 20 mm from sensor 1, ensures that the number of gradations on the edge of the ITB in this 20 mm gap remain constant. This detects stretching or shrinking of the belt, and the ITB drive motor speed is adjusted to compensate.

# 6.12.9 ITB VENTILATION



The image transfer fan [A] draws in cool air and blows it across the top of the drawer unit to cool the ITB.

Detailed Descriptions



- 1. Tandem Tray (Tray 1)
- 2. Left Tray Paper Sensor
- 3. Paper Size Switch (Tray 2)
- 4. Universal Tray (Tray 2)
- 5. Paper Size Switch (Tray 3)
- 6. Universal Tray (Tray 3)
- 7. Upper Relay Roller
- 8. Registration Roller
- 9. Double-Feed Sensor
- 10. Registration Sensor

- 11. Double Feed Detection LED
- 12. By-pass Tray
- 13. Relay Sensor
- 14. Lower Relay Roller
- 15. Pick Up Roller
- 16. Feed Roller
- 17. Grip Roller
- 18. Paper Feed Sensor
- 19. Separation Roller
- **NOTE:** Items (15)~(19) use the standard FRR feed system, which is used for Trays 1, 2, and 3. This machine uses motor on/off time (not clutches) to control paper feed.

### **Tray Capacities**

The machine has four paper trays:

- Tandem LCT (Tray 1). 1550 + 1550 sheets
- Universal Tray (Tray 2) 550 sheets
- Universal Tray (Tray 3) 550 sheets
- By-pass feed tray. 100 sheets.

### **Built-in Feed Stations**

- Paper feed and separation. Standard FRR system with a torque limiter for paper separation and feed. Each tray has an independent stepper motor to drive its paper feed mechanisms. In Handling Paper> Paper Feed Methods> Forward and Reverse Roller (FRR)
- **Tray lift motors**. Provided for each tray, easily disengage when a tray is removed and engage once again when the tray is re-installed. In trays 2 and 3, the lift of the motors on the bottom plates is also used for paper near-end detection.
- Tandem tray paper end. A sensor near the top of the right rail detects paper near end and another sensor under the bottom tray detects paper end after the last sheet is fed. Three paper height sensors, on the left rail, are actuated as the actuator rises with the bottom plate. The combinations of actuating and deactuating these sensors as the plate rises are used to detect the paper supply display on the operation panel.
- **Paper size detection**. For the tandem tray (Tray 1), an SP setting is required (**SP 5959 001**). For the universal trays (Tray 2, 3), there is size detection switch on each tray.
- Vertical Transport. A grip roller at each feed station feeds the paper into the vertical paper path.
- Heaters. There are two anti-condensation heaters for the built-in paper feed stations.

### **By-pass Feed**

- Capacity: 100 sheets.
- **Paper feed and separation**: Standard FRR system with a torque limiter for paper separation and feed. By-pass tray motor and clutch.
- Paper end detection: Photointerrupter and feeler.
- **Size detection**: Side fence is used for width detection, registration sensor pulse count is used for length detection.
- Thick paper feed: The by-pass feed clutch switches on twice.

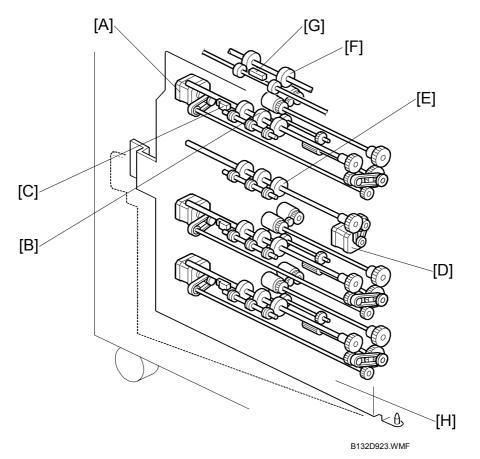
#### **Paper Registration**

- Paper is guided to the registration roller from five sources: the 3 built-in paper trays, 1 by-pass tray, and 1 duplex tray.
- There is a mylar strip over the entire length of the registration roller.

#### Jam Removal

Pulling out a paper tray releases the pressure on the rollers, making it easy to remove paper jams.

## 6.13.2 DRIVE



An independent paper feed motor [A] drives the rollers in each tray. The motor also drives grip rollers [B], which pull the paper out of the tray. This mechanism is identical for each tray.

A vertical transport sensor [C] at each feed station detects paper jams.

The paper feed motors of each tray drive the vertical transport rollers, opposite to each feed station (not shown).

The lower relay motor [D] drives the lower relay roller [E], halfway between trays 1 and 2. The lower relay roller is added here because the paper path is very long.

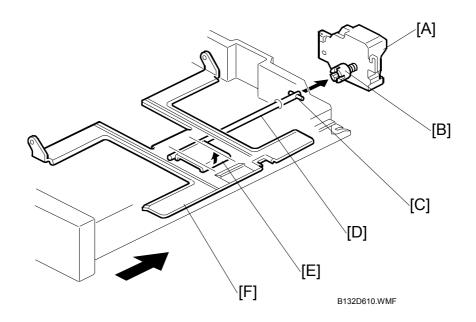
The upper relay roller [F] feeds each sheet to the registration roller. The by-pass feed motor (not shown) drives the upper relay roller [F].

The relay sensor [G], at the top of the vertical transport path, triggers the start of image exposure on the OPC drum, and detects jams in the paper path.

The transport guide plate [H] swings against the side of the machine and locks in place.

## 6.13.3 TRAY AND PAPER LIFT MECHANISM – TRAY 2,3

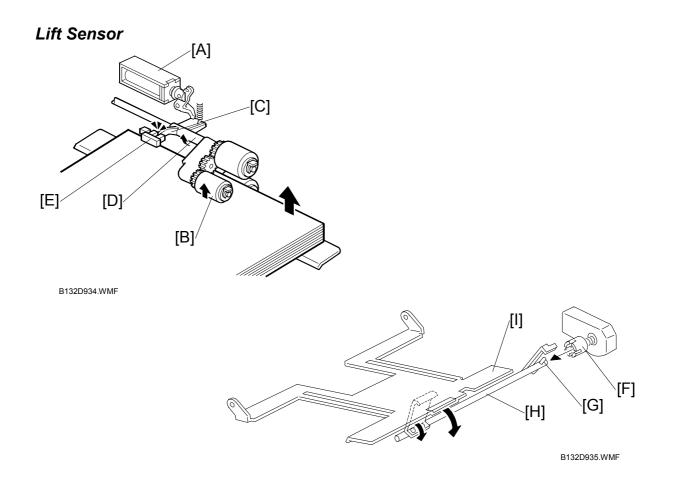
### **Bottom Plate Lift**



Tray lift operates in this order:

- [A]: Tray lift motor switches on
- [B]: Coupling rotates
- [C]: Pin locks coupling at shaft
- [D]: Shaft rotates
- [E]: Lift arm raised by the rotation of the shaft
- [F]: Bottom plate pushed up by lift arm
- **NOTE:** The universal trays (Tray 2, Tray 3) each have a paper near end sensor inside the lift motor assembly. The sensor measures the angle of the lift shaft. There are four possible readings from this sensor, to indicate four levels of remaining paper.

Detailed )escriptions



Tray lift motor  $\rightarrow$  on, pick-up solenoid [A]  $\rightarrow$  on, pick-up roller [B] lowers.

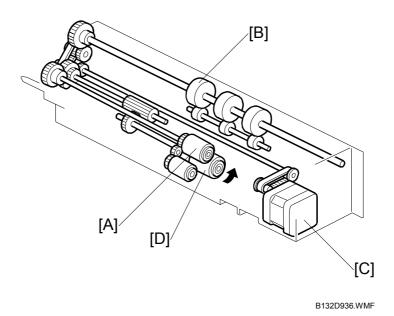
When the top sheet of paper reaches the proper paper feed level, actuator [C] on the pick-up roller support [D] activates the tray lift sensor [E], and the lift motor stops.

After several paper feeds, the paper level gradually lowers and the lift sensor deactivates. Next, the lift motor turns on again until the lift sensor once again activates.

When the tray is pulled out of the feed unit, coupling [F] disengages pin [G] on shaft [H], and the tray bottom plate [I] drops by its own weight.

## 6.13.4 PAPER FEED AND SEPARATION MECHANISM

Feed and Separation at Standby: No Paper Present



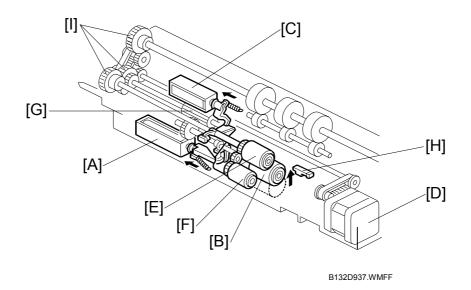
While waiting for the first sheet to feed and between sheets, the feed roller [A] must not rotate. However, the grip roller [B] must turn, so that any paper coming up the vertical transport path can continue to feed. To do this, the paper feed motor [C] rotates in reverse. The feed roller cannot turn because of a one-way clutch. The separation roller [D] is free to rotate in the direction shown by the arrow, because the separation roller solenoid is off.

When the feed motor reverses:

Feed roller [A]	$\rightarrow$	No rotation
Separation roller [D]	$\rightarrow$	Free to rotate
Grip roller [B]	$\rightarrow$	Rotates
	-	

The feed motor cannot be replaced easily. Because of this, an assembly is available as a spare part.

### Paper Feed and Separation



If a paper feed station is not selected, its separation roller solenoid [A] stays off and the separation roller [B] can turn freely.

When the paper feed station is selected and the start key is pressed, the following mechanisms activate:

- Separation roller solenoid  $[A] \rightarrow$  separation roller [B] contacts feed roller [E]
- Pick-up solenoid  $[C] \rightarrow$  pick-up roller [F] lowers to contact the paper
- Paper feed motor [D]  $\rightarrow$  turns feed roller [E]  $\rightarrow$  turns pick-up roller [F] via gear [G]

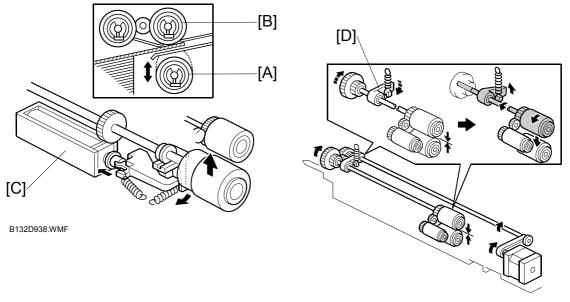
When the paper feed sensor [H] detects the leading edge of the paper:

- Pick-up solenoid [C] switches off, and pick-up roller [F] lifts.
- The feed roller [E] then feeds the sheet to the registration roller.

Note the three one-way clutches [I]: One for the grip roller, one for the feed roller, and one for the gear [G], which drives the pickup roller.

When the feed motor rotates forward:

Feed roller	$\rightarrow$	Rotates
Separation roller	<i>&gt;</i>	Rotates in accordance with the FRR principle Image Handling Paper> Paper Feed Methods> Forward and Reverse Roller (FRR)
Grip roller	$\rightarrow$	Rotates



Separation Roller Release Mechanism

B132D939.WMF

Normally, the separation roller [A] and feed roller [B] are not in contact. However, when the feed station is selected, the separation roller solenoid [C] pushes the separation roller against the feed roller.

This mechanism has advantages:

- When the paper feed motor turns on, the separation roller rotates. If the separation roller is away from the feed roller, it reduces the load on the paper feed motor and drive mechanism, and it also reduces wear to the rubber surface of the separation roller caused by friction between the separation roller and the feed roller.
- After a job, paper sometimes remains between the feed and separation rollers. If the paper tray is pulled out of the machine, this paper might be torn if the two rollers do not separate.
- The operator can easily pull out jammed paper between the feed and separation rollers if the separation roller is away from the feed roller.

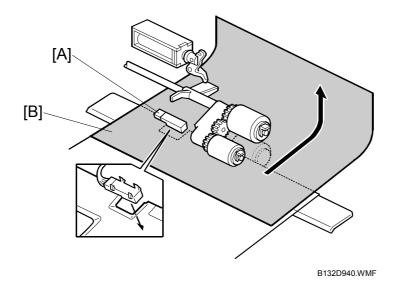
Normally, the feed and separation roller separate when the separation roller solenoid switches off.

However, if the rollers stick together after paper passes between them, the separation roller could rotate the feed roller in reverse before the motor and solenoid switch off. To prevent this, if the feed roller starts to reverse, a small brake arm [D] on the feed roller shaft rotates down, strikes a stopper, and drives the feed roller forward slightly to separate it from the separation roller below.

The rollers are composed of rubber and may stick occasionally. This mechanism prevents excessive wear on the rollers.

Detailed )escriptions

## 6.13.5 PAPER NEAR-END AND PAPER END – TRAYS 2 AND 3



The paper near end sensor is in the lift motor assembly. It can detect four levels of remaining paper. F

The paper end sensor [A] receives light reflected from the paper below [B] until the last sheet has been fed. Then, paper end is detected.

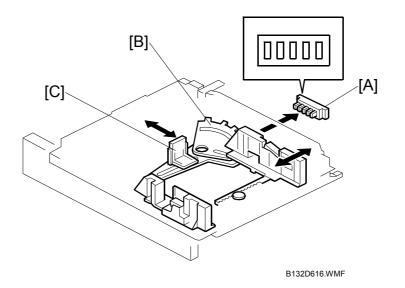
For more, see section 6.13.3.

## 6.13.6 PAPER SIZE DETECTION

### Tandem Tray (Tray 1)

The tandem tray does not have paper size switches. Every time the paper size is changed by moving the front and back fences, you must enter the selected paper size with **SP5959-001**.

### Universal Cassettes (Tray 2, 3)



The output from the switch depends on the position of the dial (see the table on the following page)

The paper size switch [A] detects the paper size with 5 microswitches. The actuator plate [B], attached to the rear of the paper tray, actuates the paper size switch, and the side fence [C] changes position.

Detailed Descriptions

#### Paper Size Switch Output

Paper	Size	Switch
12" x 18" SEF	12" x 18"	11111
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	11001
B4 SEF	257 x 394 mm	10011
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	01001
A4 LEF	210 x 297 mm	11000
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	10101
B5 LEF	182 x 257 mm	00011
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	11101
A5 LEF	148 x 210 mm	01101
DLT	11" x 17"	11100
LG SEF	8½" x 14"	10110
LT SEF	8½" x 11"	11010
LT LEF	8½" x 11"	01100
HLT SEF	5½" x 8½ "	01110
HLT LEF	5½" x 8½ "	11110
F4	8½" x 13"	11011
Folio	8¼" x 13"	01011
F	8" x 13"	01111
Executive LEF	7¼" x 10 ½"	10100
Executive SEF	7¼" x 10 ½"	00111
8-Kai	267 x 390 mm	00110
16-Kai LEF	267 x 195 mm	10010
16-Kai SEF	195 x 267 mm	10111

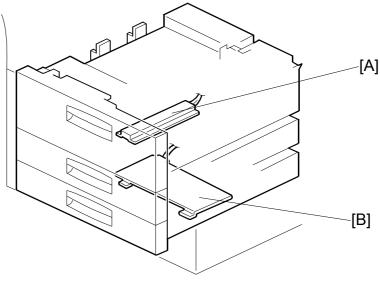
0: OFF (Sensor Output HIGH)

1: ON (Sensor Output LOW)

If the user does not put the fences at the correct position, a jam can occur.

To use a paper size that is not in this table, select the size with this user tool: System Settings> Tray Paper Size. If the paper size is not the same as the setting, a jam can occur. Note that SP 5112 must be set to 'enabled' or non-standard sizes cannot be selected for trays 2 and 3.

## 6.13.7 PAPER TRAY HEATERS



B132D608A.WMF

Two heaters, one below the tandem tray [A] and one below the bottom tray [B], prevent condensation around the feed rollers and keep paper dry.

This tray heater turns on automatically:

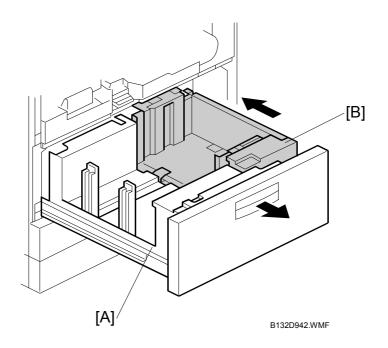
- When the main power switch is turned off
- When the machine enters auto off mode

**NOTE**: These tray heaters are not connected before the machine is shipped from the factory. The heaters are installed in the machine but their connection is optional. If the trays are needed, you must connect them at machine installation or at any time after installation. For more see Section "1. Installation".

Detailed Descriptions

### 6.13.8 TANDEM TRAY – TRAY 1

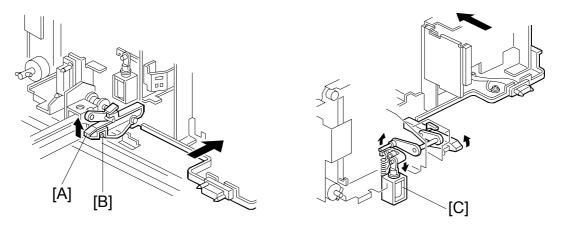
#### Overview



The left tray [A] and right tray [B] each hold 1,550 sheets. Paper feeds from the right tray. When the paper in the right tray runs out, paper in the left tray is automatically pushed into the right tray and paper feed resumes.

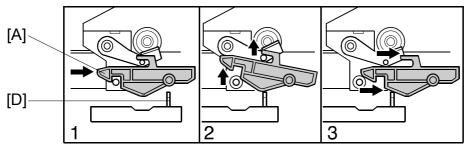
Normally, both the right and the left trays are joined together. However, if there is no paper in the left tray during copying, the left tray can be pulled out to load paper without interrupting the copy job in progress. The right tray remains in the machine and paper feed continues.

### Connecting the Left and Right Sides of the Tray



B132D943.WMF

B132D944.WMF



B132D945.WMF

When there is paper in the left tray, lock lever [A] in the left tray catches the pin [B] in the right tray.

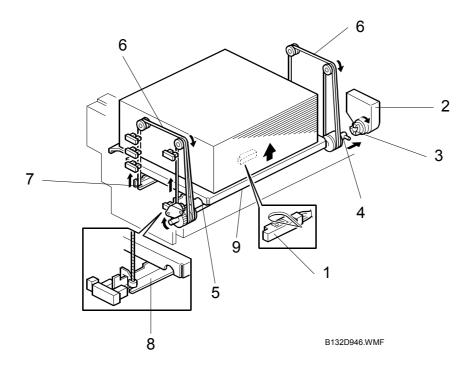
During copying if there is no paper in the left tray:

- Right tray lock solenoid [C] turns on, which releases lock lever [A].
- The left tray can be pulled out to load paper, even while paper is feeding from the right tray.

When the tandem tray is drawn out fully while the machine is not copying, projection [D] pushes up lock lever [A] so both trays separate. This makes paper loading easier.

#### Paper Lift/Remaining Paper Detection

The machine detects when the 1st tray has been placed in the machine by monitoring the tray set signal through the connector.



When the machine detects that the tray is in the machine, the right tray paper sensor [A] (under the tray) checks immediately whether there is paper in the right tandem tray.

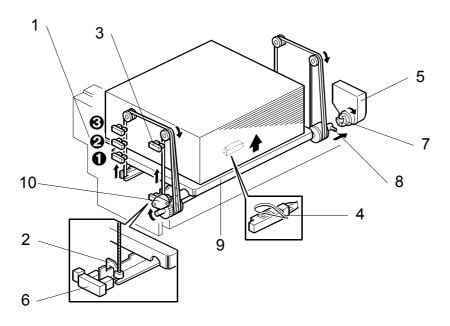
**NOTE**: This immediate detection saves time. If sensor [1] was not present and the tray was empty, the bottom plate would have to lift until the 1st tray lift paper end sensor (at the top of the tray) detected that there was no paper.

The lift operation begins as soon as paper is detected:

1st tray Lift motor [2]  $\rightarrow$  Coupling gear [3]  $\rightarrow$  Pin [4] on the lift shaft [5]  $\rightarrow$  Wires [6]  $\rightarrow$  Slots at the ends of the tray support rods [7], [8]  $\rightarrow$  Tray bottom plate [9].

The tray goes up until both of the following occur:

- The paper pushes up the pick-up roller and the lift sensor is activated
- The paper end sensor at the top of the tray is deactivated.



B132D947.WMF

**Paper remaining**: The amount of paper remaining in the tray is detected by which combination of the three paper height sensors [1]  $\mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{2}$ ,  $\mathbf{3}$  are actuated by the actuator on the left rail as the bottom plate rises.

- With the actuator below paper height sensor ① (the bottom sensor), no sensor is actuated and the display indicates the tray is full.
- When the actuator passes paper height sensor, the display indicates 50% of the paper supply remaining.
- When the actuator passes paper height sensor ❷ (the middle sensor), the display indicates 30% of the paper supply remaining.

**Paper near-end**: Detected when the actuator [2] on the right rail activates the paper near end sensor [3]. When the actuator passes this sensor, the display indicates 10% of the paper supply remaining.

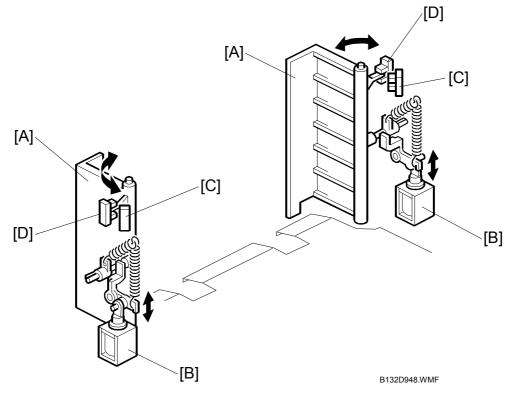
**Paper end**: After the last sheet feeds, the right tray paper sensor [4] below the bottom of the tray actuates and signals paper end. When paper runs out in the right tray, the stack must be moved across from the left tray. To do that, the tray must first be lowered. The 1st tray lift motor [5] reverses until actuator [2] activates the right tray down sensor [6].

When removing the tray manually, if paper is still present, the tray lowers under its own weight as follows:

- Coupling [7] separates from pin [8] → Tray bottom plate [9] moves down.
- Damper [10] lets the tray bottom plate drop slowly.

Detaile Descript

#### Fence Drive

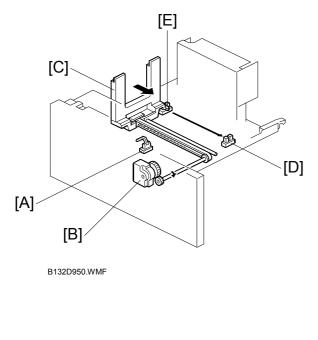


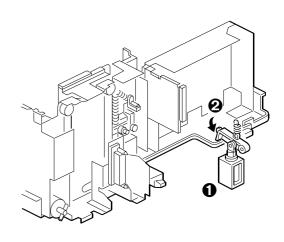
The side fences [A] of the right tray open only when paper in the left tray goes to the right tray.

The side fence solenoids [B] turn on and open the side fences. The side fences move out until the open sensors [C] activate.

After the stack has been moved into the right tray: The side fence solenoids turn off and the side fences close. The side fences move in until the close sensors [D] activate. Next, the LCD prompts the operator to set paper in the left side of the tandem tray.

#### Rear Fence Drive

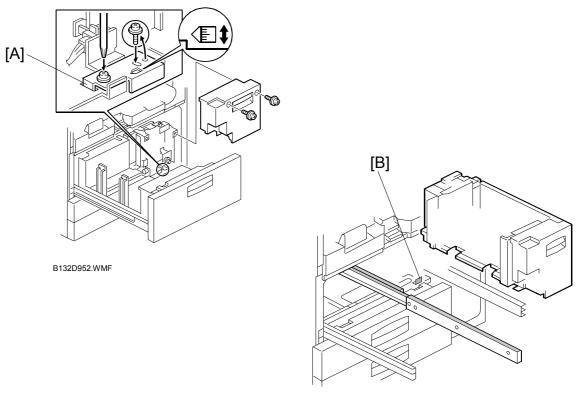




B132D949.WMF

Left tray paper sensor [A] detects paper, right tray paper sensor does not detect paper:

- Rear fence motor [B] (a dc motor in the left tray) turns on and rotates counterclockwise
- Rear fence motor drives rear fence against the paper stack, paper stack moves toward right tray
- As soon as rear fence starts to move, left ray lock solenoid ① turns on and locks lever ② to hold the left tray in place
- Rear fence [C] pushes the paper stack completely into the right tray.
- Rear fence return sensor [D] detects the actuator on the rear fence
- Motor [B] stops, reverses, and turns clockwise
- Rear fence moves back to the left tray until rear fence HP sensor [E] detects the actuator.
- HP sensor turns the rear fence motor off.
- As soon as rear fence stops moving, left tray lock solenoid ❶ turns off and releases lever ❷ to unlock the left tray.



Tray Side-to-side Positioning

B132D951.WMF

When the feed tray is set in the paper feed unit, the side-to-side positioning plate [A] presses the feed tray against the stopper [B].

By moving the positioning plate, the tray position can be changed to adjust the side-to-side registration.

# Image: Constrained state Image: Constate Image: Constate</t

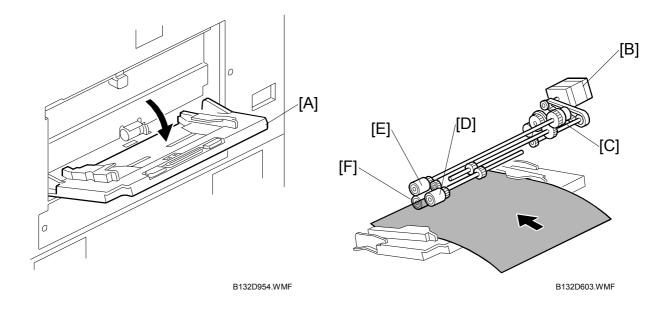
# 6.13.9 TRAY POSITIONING MECHANISM - TRAYS 1 TO 3

When the tray is placed in the paper feed unit, the lock lever [A] drops behind the lock plate [B] on the support bracket to lock the tray in the proper position.

Detailed Descriptions

# 6.13.10 BY-PASS TRAY

#### **By-pass Feed and Separation**



The by-pass tray [A] opens from the right side of the machine.

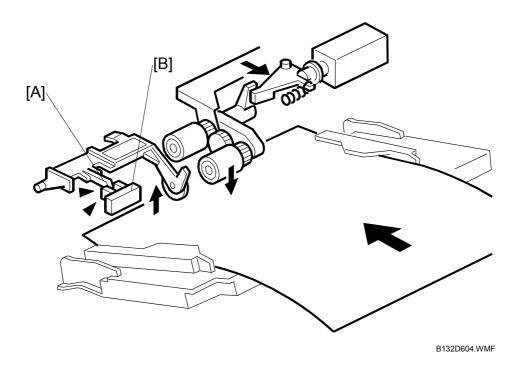
**Bypass Tray Operation Sequence:** 

Bypass feed motor  $[B] \rightarrow$  By-pass feed clutch  $[C] \rightarrow$  Pick-up roller [D] Pick-up solenoid (see the next page) $\rightarrow$  Feed roller [E] and separation roller [F]

The by-pass tray uses the standard FRR feed system. (In Handling Paper> Paper Feed Methods> Forward and Reverse Roller (FRR) or By-pass Feed Tray)

**NOTE:** The direction of feed in the by-pass tray is opposite from that of the other paper trays, so their parts (with the exception of the separation roller) are not interchangeable.

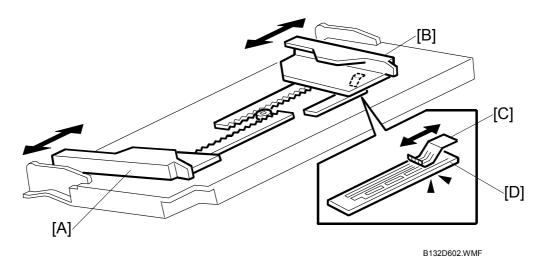
# By-pass Tray Paper End Detection



When the paper runs out, the paper end feeler [A] drops through the cutout in the by-pass paper end sensor [B].

Detailed Descriptions

#### **By-pass Paper Size Detection**



#### **Paper Width**

When the front fence [A] and rear fence [B] are moved to the sides of the paper in the bypass tray:

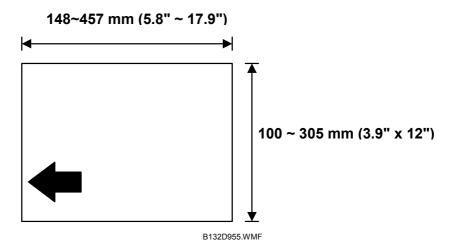
- The metal actuator [C] moves to a position on the sensor strip [D].
- The machine reads the position of the actuator on the strip to determine the paper size.

#### Paper Length

Paper length is determined with pulse counts read from the registration sensor.

**NOTE:** Use **SP1007** to check the size of the paper detected in the by-pass tray if paper is skewing during feeding.

The operator can specify non-standard paper sizes for feeding from the by-pass tray. The size must be within the range shown in the illustration.

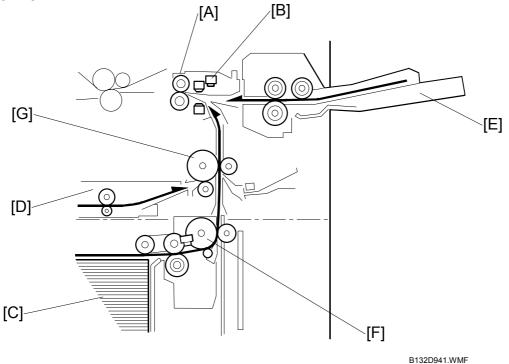


#### NOTE:

- Use **SP1905** to adjust the by-pass feed clutch operation if thick paper often jams at the registration roller. For more, see "5. Service Tables".
- Use SP5150 to enable paper length up to 600 mm (23.6").

#### 6.13.11 PAPER REGISTRATION

#### Overview



The registration rollers [A] and registration sensor [B] handle paper fed from six sources:

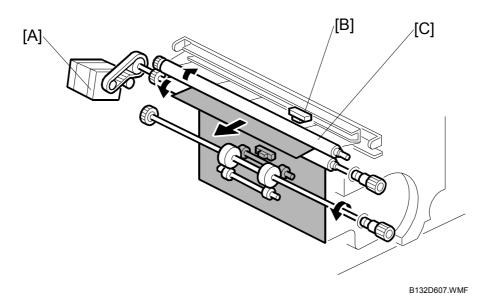
- [C]: Tandem tray and two universal trays
- [D]: Duplex unit
- [E]: By-pass tray

The by-pass tray feeds paper directly to the registration rollers.

The grip rollers [F] feed paper from the trays into the vertical transport path to the registration rollers.

The upper relay roller [G] feeds all paper exiting the vertical transport path. It also feeds paper from the duplex unit and LCT.

#### Paper Registration Drive

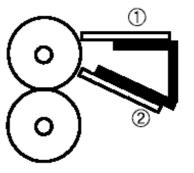


The registration motor [A] stops when the registration sensor [B] detects the paper at the registration rollers [C].

Because the paper is still feeding, the paper buckles against the registration rollers and corrects skew.

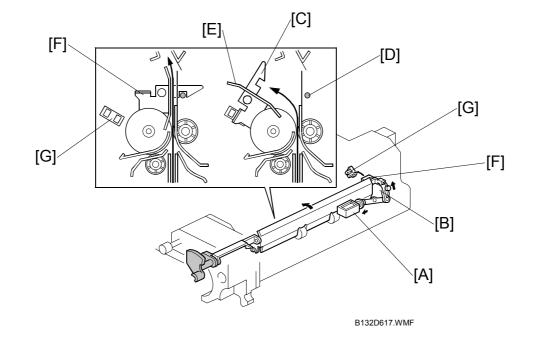
**NOTE:** Use **SP1003** to adjust the registration motor timing for each paper feed station or the duplex tray. For details see "5. Service Tables".

Two mylars ① and ② at the registration rollers collect dust from the paper and other rollers to reduce the amount of paper dust in the paper feed path after the registration rollers.



Detailed Descriptions

B132D940.BMP



#### Jam Removal at Paper Registration

If a paper misfeed occurs between the vertical transport rollers and the registration rollers, the next sheet is already on its way up from the paper tray. The paper in the feed path must be stopped to avoid paper jams.

When a jam occurs, a guide plate falls open to divert paper into the duplex tray. When the registration sensor signals that a jam has occurred at the registration rollers:

- Guide plate solenoid [A] turns on and raises lever [B].
- Lock lever [C] on the guide plate releases pin [D] on the rear side frame
- The guide plate [E] falls open. The open plate diverts paper from the feed path below into the duplex tray.
- As soon as the guide plate opens, actuator [F] on the guide plate activates the guide plate position sensor [G]

The operator must remove the paper jammed in the feed path, remove the diverted paper in the duplex tray, and close the guide plate.

To prevent the guide plate from being left open, copying is disabled and a caution is displayed on the LCD panel as long as the guide plate remains open with the guide plate sensor activated.

# 

6.13.12 PAPER TYPE AND DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION

- [A]: Registration Rollers
- [B]: Double-Feed Sensor 1 (LED)
- [C]: Double-Feed Sensor 2 (Receptor)

After skew correction at the registration rollers, a sensor pair checks the translucence of each sheet. This function makes sure that each sheet of paper fed is of the same type and also detects double-feeds. If a sheet of a different type or a double-feed is detected, the machine stops the job and a copy jam error message is shown.

After buckle adjustment, double-feed sensor 1 [B] (an LED) emits light that passes through the sheet above. The light is received by double-feed sensor 2 [C].



The amount of light received by the double-feed sensor is referred to a lookup table that stores the values of the translucence of paper types.

- **Paper type check**. If the amount of light measured is within the range of translucence for the paper selected for the copy job, no action is taken. If the value is out of range, the machine stops the job.
- **Double-feed check**. The translucence of the paper at the registration roller is compared to the reading of the previous sheet. If the translucence of the sheet at the registration rollers is less than that of the previous sheet (greater opacity), the CPU determines that a double-feed has occurred and stops the job.
- In either case, after the job halts, the sheets must be cleared, just as if a jam occurred at the registration rollers.
- **SP1110 001-012** enables/disables double-feed and paper type detection for the paper feed sources (trays 1 to 3, the LCT, and bypass tray). For more, see Section "5. Service Tables".
- You can also switch these features on and with User Tool settings: [User Tools/Counter]> System Settings> Tray Paper Setting> Next (3 times)> Double Feed Detect/Paper Type Detect> Off (or On)> for Bypass Tray; Tray 1, 2, 3; or LCT.

#### Paper Types

The machine can distinguish between the following paper types using the output from the double-feed sensors.

Paper Type Selection (UP Mode)	Paper Weight Range g/m <sup>2</sup>	Translucence			
OHP		HIGH			
Tracing Paper		$\downarrow$			
Thin Paper	14 to 19 lb Bond 52 to 71 g/m <sup>2</sup>	$\downarrow$			
Normal	19 to 33 lb Bond 72 to 126 g/m <sup>2</sup>	$\downarrow$			
Thick Paper 1	33 to 41 lb Bond 127 to 156 g/m <sup>2</sup>	$\downarrow$			
Thick Paper 2	41 to 68 lb Bond 157 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>	LOW			

The paper type selection is reset:

- When the machine is switched off and on, the paper type setting for the bypass tray is reset. The paper type settings for other trays are not reset.
- When the tray is set, or LCT cover is set
- When using bypass feed (paper set in the bypass tray)
- After a double-feed error and the paper has been removed
- When the paper type setting is changed.

#### **UP Mode Settings**

The operator can select either "Paper Type Detection" or "Double-Feed Detection" in the Operator Tools (UP) mode for each paper feed station (default: ON).

Neither paper type recognition nor double-feed detection operates when feeding paper shorter than 160 mm from the from the bypass tray.

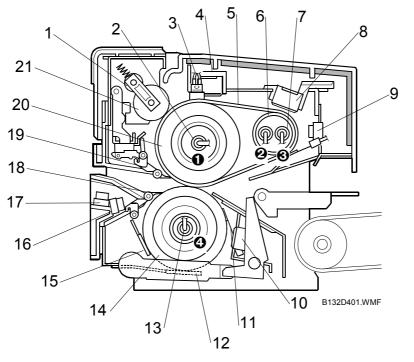
Paper type detection operates only for paper types that are available for this feature ("None", "Recycled", "Tracing Paper", or "OHP") is selected. For example, this function cannot operate for these paper type selections: Reused, Color Paper, Adhesive Labels, Tab Paper.

For slip sheet mode, the tray that contains the slip sheets must be set to 'OFF' with the user tools for "Paper Type Detection" or "Double-Feed Detection".

# 6.14 FUSING, PAPER EXIT

#### 6.14.1 OVERVIEW





- 1. Cleaning Roller Fusing Belt Lubrication Roller
- 2. Fusing Lamp (x1 –Hot Roller)
- 3. Thermistor (Hot Roller)
- 4. Thermostat (Hot Roller)
- 5. Fusing Belt
- 6. Heating Roller (\$28.5)
- 7. Fusing Lamps (x2 Heating Roller)
- 8. Thermostat (Heating Roller)
- 9. Heating Roller Temperature Sensor
- 10. Thermostat (Pressure Roller)
- 11. Thermistor (Pressure Roller)

#### **Fusing Lamps**

Hot Roller	<b>0</b> 350W
Heating Roller	<b>2 8</b> 590W
Pressure Roller	<b>4</b> 350W

- 12. Cleaning Felt Large
- 13. Fusing Lamp (x1 Pressure Roller)
- 14. Pressure Roller ( $\phi$ 50)
- 15. Cleaning Felt Small
- 16. Accordion Jam Sensor
- 17. Fusing Exit Sensor
- 18. Pressure Roller Strippers
- 19. Fusing Belt Strippers
- 20. Hot Roller (\$52)
- 21. Fusing Belt Lubrication Roller

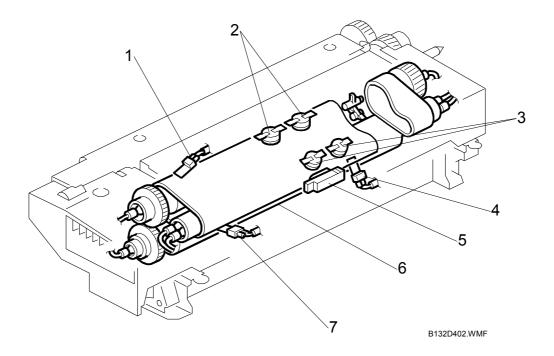
The fusing belt system applies heat to the belt at three points: the hot roller, the heating roller, and the pressure roller. This allows the use of smaller rollers and conserves space. As less pressure is necessary during fusing, less torque is required.

- The fusing belt, composed of silicone and Teflon layers, applies heat directly to fuse the toner to the paper.
- The heating roller is an aluminum roller with two fusing lamps (590W + 350W). It applies heat to the fusing belt after it passes the hot roller, and maintains the heat of the fusing belt while the machine is in standby mode.
- The pressure roller has a metal core to provide rigidity, and is covered with Teflon to prevent toner from adhering to its surface. It applies heat with one fusing lamp (350W) to maintain the temperature of the fusing belt while the machine is in standby mode.
- The accordion jam sensor detects accordion jams where the paper exits at the nip between the hot roller and pressure roller.
- The fusing exit sensor detects jams at the fusing exit by confirming that paper arrives the fusing exit at the correct time.
- The hot roller is a solid rubber roller with one fusing lamp (350W) that heats and drives the fusing belt. Maintains the temperature of the fusing belt while the machine is in the standby mode.

The fusing/exit motor speed depends on the paper type, as shown in the table below.

Paper Type Selection (User Tools)	Paper Weight Range g/m <sup>2</sup>	Line Speed
Thin	14 to 19 lb Bond 52 to 71 g/m <sup>2</sup>	282 mm/s
Normal	19 to 33 lb Bond 72 to 126 g/m <sup>2</sup>	282 mm/s
Thick 1	33 to 41 lb Bond 127 to 156 g/m <sup>2</sup>	141 mm/s
Thick 2	41 to 68 lb Bond 157 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>	141 mm/s
OHP		100 mm/s

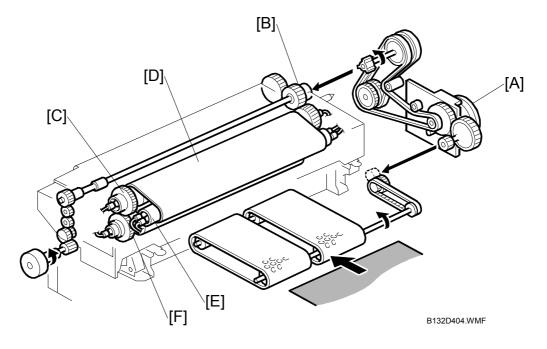




- 1. Hot Roller Thermistor
- 2. Hot Roller Thermostats
- 3. Heating Roller Thermostats
- 4. Pressure Roller Thermistor
- 5. Heating Roller Temperature Sensor
- 6. Pressure Roller Thermostats
- 7. Heating Roller Thermistor

Each roller in the fusing unit has one thermistor and two thermostats.

# 6.15.1 FUSING UNIT DRIVE



- [A]: Fusing/exit motor
- [B]: Idle roller
- [C]: Hot roller
- [D]: Fusing belt
- [E]: Heating roller
- [F]: Pressure roller

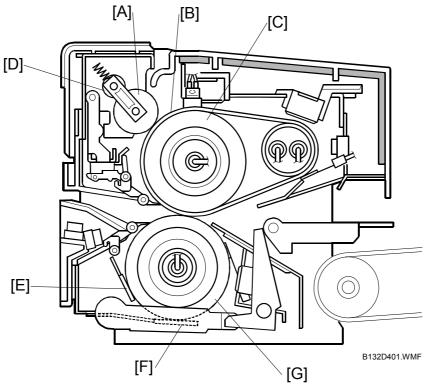
The fusing/exit motor [A] drives the fusing unit.

Fusing exit motor [A]> Idle Roller [B]> Hot Roller [C]> Fusing Belt [D], Heating Roller [E], Pressure Roller [F].





# 6.15.2 LUBRICATION AND CLEANING



- [A]: Fusing belt lubrication roller
- [B]: Fusing belt
- [C]: Hot roller
- [D]: Cleaning roller fusing belt lubrication roller
- [E]: Cleaning felt small
- [F]: Cleaning felt large
- [G]: Pressure roller

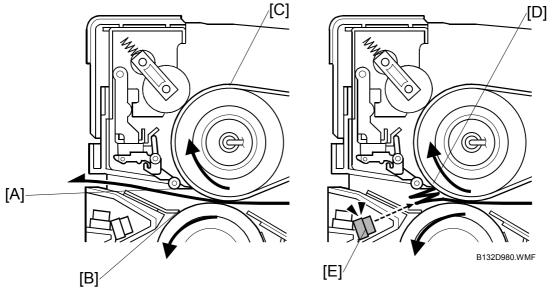
The fusing unit uses two lubrication rollers saturated with silicone oil to prevent toner and paper dust from clinging to the fusing belt.

The fusing belt lubrication roller [A], contacts the fusing belt [B] above the hot roller [C]. This lubrication roller applies a very thin coat of silicone oil to the fusing belt where the belt contacts the roller.

A cleaning roller [D] cleans the surface of the fusing belt lubrication roller.

Felt pads [E], [F] clean the surface of the pressure roller [G].

#### Stripper Retraction



The pawls of the fusing belt strippers [A] and pressure roller strippers [B] touch the surfaces of the fusing belt and pressure roller during normal operation.

These strippers are held in place with small springs. If paper does not separate from the fusing belt at [C], for example, the point of the stripper separates the paper from the fusing belt.

The strippers retract immediately under the slightest pressure [D] if an accordion jam occurs. This prevents the points of the strippers from damaging the surfaces of the fusing belt or the pressure roller if a jam occurs where the paper emerges from the nip of the hot roller and pressure roller.

The accordion jam sensor [E] checks for jams around the fusing unit strippers when:

- The machine is turned on
- The front door is opened and closed

# 6.15.3 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL

#### **Basic Temperature Control**

The fusing unit has four fusing lamps: one in the hot roller (350W), two in the heating roller ( $590W x^2$ ), and one in the pressure roller (350W).

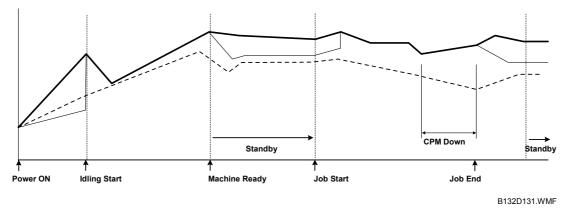
- The heating roller is the main source of heat to the fusing belt for fusing.
- The hot roller provides additional heat for fusing.
- The pressure roller maintains the temperature of the fusing belt while the machine is in standby mode.

The feedback from these thermistors controls the fusing temperature.

Heating roller	A temperature sensor located at the center and a thermistor at the front end of the heating roller.

- Hot roller A thermistor located at the front end of the hot roller.
- Pressure roller A thermistor located at the center of the pressure roller.

#### **Temperature Control Graph**



——— Heating Roller Temperature

Hot Roller Temperature

----- Pressure Roller Temperature

This table shows how temperature control is done in the different operation modes.

	Mode		Heating	g Roller	Hot F	Roller	Pressu	re Roller	
			°C	°F	°C	°F	°C	°F	
Plain Pap	ber	B&W	175 (175)	347 (347)			160 (120)	320 (248)	]
		FC	175 (175)	347 (347)			160 (120)	320 (248)	]
Thick Pa	per 1	B&W	175 (175)	347 (347)			160 (120)	320 (248)	]
		FC	175 (175)	347 (347)			160 (120)	320 (248)	]
Thick Pa	per 2	B&W	180	356			160 (120)	320 (248)	]
		FC	180	356			160 (120)	320 (248)	]
OHP		B&W	170	338			100	212	
		FC	170	338			100	212	
Thin Pap	er	B&W	160 (160)	320 (320)			150 (120)	302 (248)	su
		FC	160 (160)	320 (320)			150 (120)	302 (248)	iled
Idling Sta	art		160	320					etai crip
FCIdling StartReady (machine ready; lamps on, rollers turning)			180	356			165	329	Detailed Descriptions
· · ·	,	0,	177	351	145	269.6	152	306	
Energy	ì	<b>,</b>	-185	-333	-50	-90	-60	-108	1
Save	B&W       FC       Paper     B&W       FC       g Start       dy (machine ready; os on, rollers turning)       idby (between jobs)       rgy     Low Power Mode		C	off	C	Off	(	Off	

#### Notes:

The parentheses indicate the temperatures for duplexing. Example: 150 (120) 120C during duplexing.

If a part of the table is blank, it means that the lamp is not used. For example, the hot roller lamp is only used during standby (between jobs).

#### Correction for Machine Internal Temperature

If the temperature inside the machine is less than 20 °C, all target fusing temperatures are increased by 5 °C.

If the temperature inside the machine is more than 20 °C, the standby temperature is decreased by 5 °C.

The temperature inside the machine is measured with the temperature sensor that is near the waste toner bottle.

#### Copy Speed Reduction (CPM Down Mode)

During copying, the target temperature is 175 °C (plain paper).

If the room temperature is low (less than 10 °C), the fusing unit temperature can become too low.

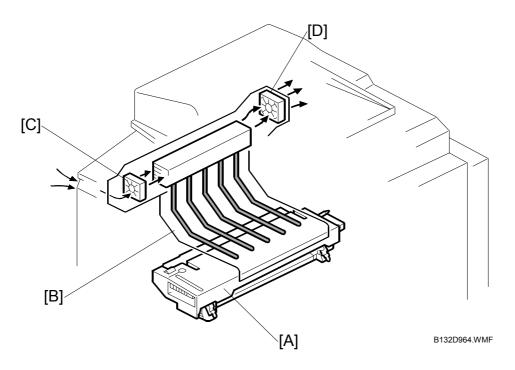
To compensate for this, copy speed is reduced, as explained below.

After 20 copies, if the fusing unit temperature is 165 °C or less, the copier goes into **1st CPM Down Mode**. At this time, the copy speed decreases to 55 cpm (black-and-white) and 30 cpm (color).

After 10 more copies, if the fusing unit temperature is less than 165 °C, the copier goes into **2nd CPM Down Mode**. At this time, the copy speed decreases to 45 cpm (black-and-white) and 25 cpm (color).

If the fusing temperature increases to 175 °C, the copier speed goes back up one level (to 1st CPM Down Mode, or to full copying speed).

# 6.15.4 FUSING UNIT VENTILATION



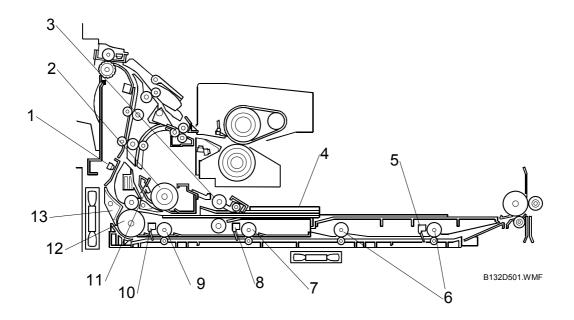
- [A]: Fusing unit
- [B]: Heat sink
- [C]: Fusing cooling fan
- [D]: Fusing exhaust fan

Heat rising from the fusing unit [A] collects around a heat sink [B]. The heat sink contains pipes with water that help to cool the hot air.

The fusing cooling fan [C] pulls cool air into the machine and blows it over the heat sink. The fusing exhaust fan [D] pulls the heated air away from the heat sink and expels it through a vent.

Detailed Descriptions

# 6.16 DUPLEX UNIT 6.16.1 OVERVIEW

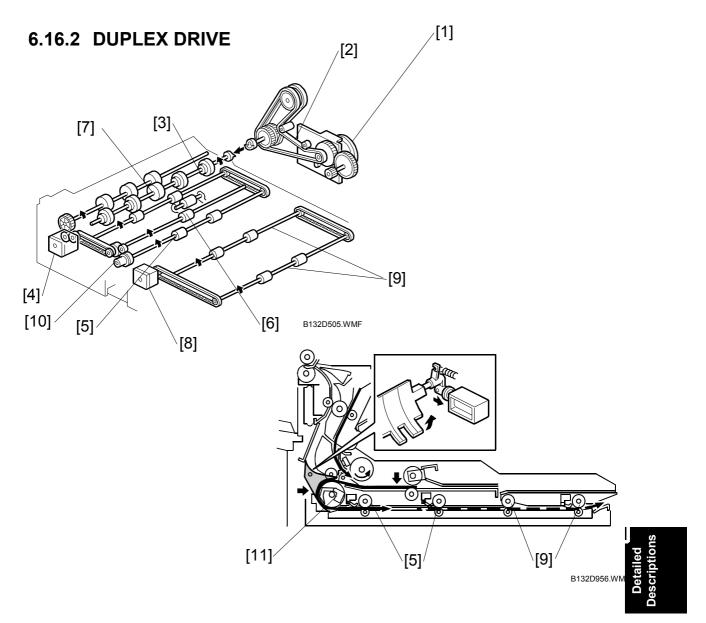


- 1. Relay Sensor
- 2. Inverter Entrance Roller
- 3. Reverse Trigger Roller
- 4. Jogger Fences
- 5. Duplex Transport Sensor 3
- 6. Duplex Transport Rollers 3, 4
- 7. Duplex Transport Roller 2

- 8. Duplex Transport Sensor 2
- 9. Duplex Transport Roller 1
- 10. Duplex Transport Sensor 1
- 11. Duplex Inverter Sensor
- 12. Inverter Exit Roller
- 13. Duplex Junction Gate

For one-sided printing, pages are fed out face-down (default). For face-down output, the exit junction gate sends the page to the inverter, and the inverter inverts the page.

If the operator selected duplex mode, the inverter inverts the page, then the duplex junction gate directs the page into the duplex unit. The duplex unit feeds the page back to the machine to print on the second side.



Fusing/exit motor [1]  $\rightarrow$  Timing belt [2]  $\rightarrow$  Inverter entrance roller [3]

Duplex inverter motor [4]  $\rightarrow$  Timing belt  $\rightarrow$  Transport rollers 1, 2 [5] + duplex positioning roller [6]

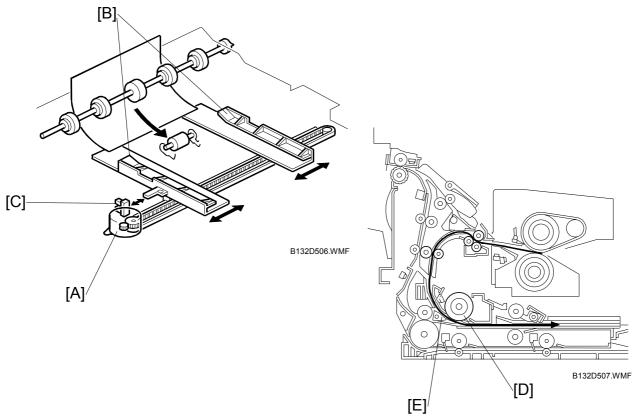
Duplex Inverter motor [4]  $\rightarrow$  Inverter exit roller [7]

Duplex transport motor [8]  $\rightarrow$  Timing belt  $\rightarrow$  transport rollers 3, 4 [9]

Duplex transport clutch [10]:

- Stops transport rollers 1, 2 [5] during interleaving →Allows the sheet in front to be fed out of the duplex unit by motor [8] and rollers [9].
- Controlled by the duplex inverter sensor [11]

# 6.16.3 INVERTER OPERATION



#### Inverter Feed-in and Jogging

Just after the main switch is turned on:

• Jogger motor [A] (a stepper motor) moves the jogger fences [B] to home position (determined by the duplex jogger HP sensor [C]).

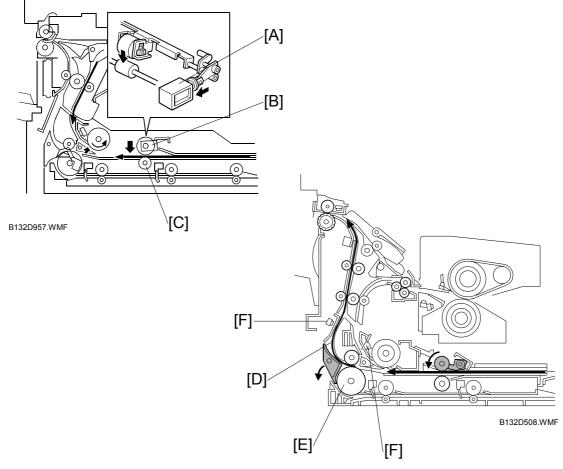
When the Start key is pressed:

- Motor [A] positions fences [B] 12 mm away from the selected paper size to wait for the paper.
- Inverter entrance roller [D] feeds paper to the jogger section → The paper pushes down the junction gate [E].

After the paper passes through the gate:

- Motor [A] moves the jogger fences [B] in to square the paper. This happens every page.
- Next, the jogger fences move back to the previous position (12 mm away from the paper)

#### Inverter Feed-out



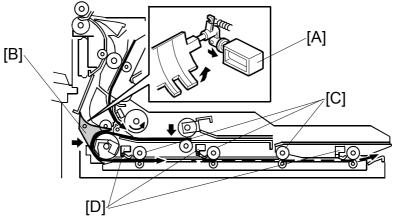
- [A]: Reverse trigger roller solenoid
- [B]: Reverse trigger roller
- [C]: Reverse roller
- [D]: Paper
- [E]: Inverter exit roller
- [F]: Relay sensor

After jogging, each page is fed back as follows:

- Solenoid [A] pushes down roller [B].
- Roller [B] contacts roller [C], catching the paper between the two rollers.
- Roller [C] always turns counter-clockwise, and feeds the paper [D] backwards to roller [E].

When the leading edge of the paper, now caught by roller [E], passes sensor [F], solenoid [A] switches off and roller [B] returns to its home position.

#### 6.16.4 DUPLEX TRAY FEED



B132D958.WMF

- [A]: Junction gate solenoid
- [B]: Duplex junction gate
- [C]: Transport rollers 1, 2, 3, 4
- [D]: Duplex transport sensors 1, 2, 3

After inversion:

- If duplex mode is not selected, the duplex junction gate solenoid [A] does not switch on to open the duplex junction gate [B]. The paper goes to the output tray or finisher face down.
- If duplex mode is selected, after the paper leaves the inverter, the solenoid [A] switches on and opens the junction gate [B]. The paper goes down to the duplex tray.

# 6.16.5 DUPLEX INTERLEAVE FEED

The number of sheets that can be processed at a time depends on the size of the paper. The table below shows the order of page processing for a 14-page job. Odd numbers are the front sides of the pages, even numbers are the back sides.

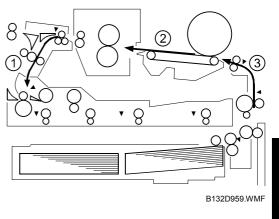
	Order of Page Processing 🔶													
Scanning Order	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
A4/LT LEF or smaller <sup>*1</sup>	1	3	5	2	7	4	9	6	11	8	13	10	12	14
Longer than A4/LT(LEF) *2	1	3	2	5	4	7	6	9	8	11	10	13	12	14

<sup>\*1</sup>: 3 pages can be interleave processed at once.

<sup>\*2</sup>: Only 2 pages can be interleave processed at once.

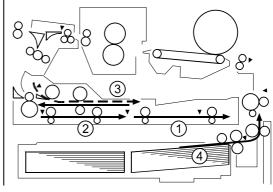
The following diagrams show where the 7 sheets are located at every step during a 14-page duplex print job with A4/LT LEF paper (three pages can be in the feed path at once).

- 1. First 3 sheets 123 fed.
  - 1) 1st sheet, front page printed (pg. 1)
  - 2) 2nd sheet, front page printed (pg. 3)
  - 3) 3rd sheet, front page printed (pg. 5)



Detailed Descriptions

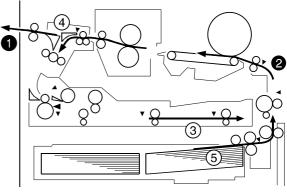
- 2. 1st, 2nd, 3rd sheet fed to duplex tray and inverter table.
- 3. 4th sheet feeds.



- 4. 1st sheet, back page printed (pg. 2)

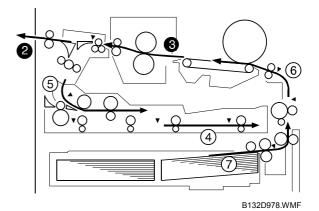
B132D961.WMF

- 5. 4th sheet feeds, front page printed (pg.7)
- 6. 1st sheet exits (pp. 1, 2)
- 7. 4th sheet feeds to duplex tray.
- 8. 2nd sheet, back page printed (pg. 4)
- 9. 5th sheet feeds.

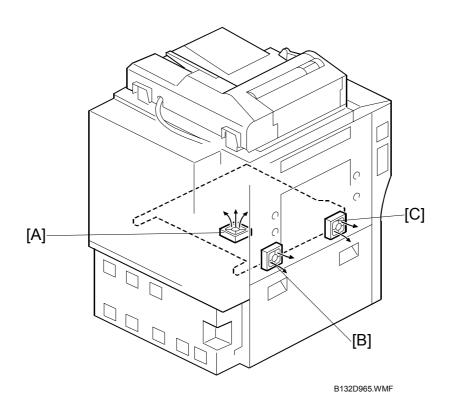


B132D963.WMF

- 10. 2nd sheet exits.
- 11. 5th sheet, back page printed (pg. 9), feeds to duplex tray.
- 12. 3rd sheet, back page printed (pg. 6)
- 13. 6th sheet, front page printed (pg. 11)
- 14. 4th sheet, back page, (pg. 8), 7th sheet front page (pg. 13) copied in order, the process above repeats.



# 6.16.6 DUPLEX UNIT VENTILATION



- [A]: Duplex Fan Motor
- [B]: Rear Duplex Fan
- [C]: Front Duplex Fan

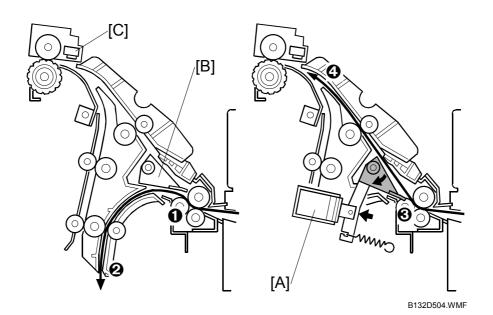
The duplex fan [A] draws cool air into the duplex unit.

The rear duplex fan [B] and front duplex fan [C] expel the heated air through vents on the left side of the machine.



# 6.17 PAPER EXIT

### 6.17.1 FACE UP EXIT MECHANISM



- [A]: Inverter Junction Gate Solenoid
- [B]: Inverter Junction Gate
- [C]: Exit Sensor

When the inverter is used (duplex mode, or face-down output):

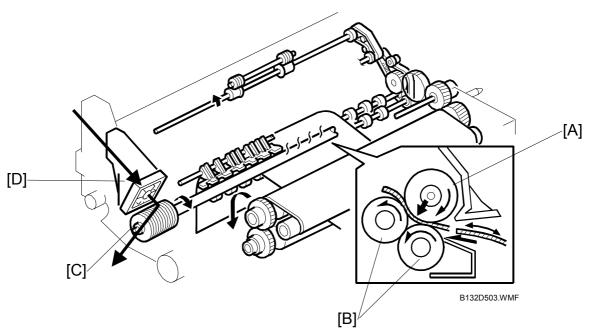
- Inverter junction gate solenoid  $[A] \rightarrow Off$
- Inverter junction gate [B] → Open ①
- Paper goes down to the inverter **2**

When the inverter is not used (face-up output, or when paper was fed from the bypass tray):

- Inverter junction gate solenoid [A] → On
- Inverter junction gate  $\Theta \rightarrow$  Closed
- Paper goes up to the output tray ④

The exit sensor [C] detects the leading and trailing edge of each sheet as it feeds out and triggers a jam if the paper is late or stops.

# 6.17.2 DE-CURL MECHANISM



- [A]: Heat Pipe Roller
- [B]: Exit Rollers
- [C]: Heat Pipe Roller Fins
- [D]: Cooling Pipe Fan

Immediately after paper leaves the fusing unit, it passes between the heat pipe roller [A] and the exit rollers [B].

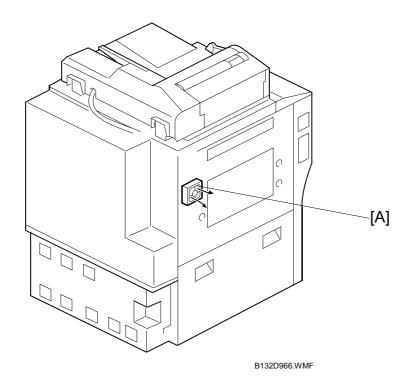
The heat pipe roller absorbs heat from the paper.

Fins [C] attached to the front end of the heat pipe roller conduct heat away from the heat pipe roller.

The cooling pipe fan [D] draws in cool air and blows it through the fins to dissipate the heat conducted away from the heat pipe roller.

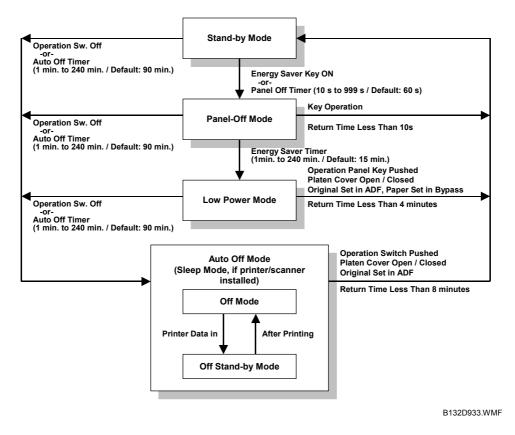
Detailed Descriptions

# 6.17.3 PAPER EXIT COOLING



The paper exit fan [A] draws hot air from the paper exit area and expels it through a vent on the left side of the machine.

# 6.17.4 ENERGY SAVER MODES



When the machine is not being used, the energy saver function reduces power consumption by decreasing the fusing temperature.

This machine has three types of energy saver mode as follows.

- 1) Panel-off mode (operation panel off, fusing lamps on)
- 2) Low power mode (fusing lamps go to a lower temperature)
- 3) Auto off mode (fusing lamps turn off)



These modes are controlled by the following user tools.

- Panel off timer: User Tools System Settings Timer Settings Panel Off Timer (default 60 seconds). Maximum recovery time: 10 seconds
- Low power mode timer: User Tools System Settings Timer Settings Energy Saver Timer (default 15 minutes). Maximum recovery time: 4 minutes
- Auto off timer: User Tools System Settings Timer Settings Auto Off Timer (default 90 minutes). Maximum recovery time: 8 minutes
- If the printer and scanner are installed, the machine uses 'Sleep Mode' instead of Auto Off mode. This is the same as Auto Off Mode, but if a print job comes in, the printer wakes up to print the data. But if you wish to make copies, first press the operation switch.

# SPECIFICATIONS

# 1. MAINFRAME

## 1.1 COPYING

		81⁄2" x 13", 8K				
	EU, Asia	A3, B4 SEF A4, B5, A5, B6	3 SEF/LEF			
		A4 SEF/LEF				
		8 <sup>1</sup> ⁄ <sub>2</sub> " x 11", 5 <sup>1</sup> ⁄ <sub>2</sub> 7 <sup>1</sup> ⁄ <sub>4</sub> " x 10 <sup>1</sup> ⁄ <sub>2</sub> ", A		_EF	Spec.	
Original size detection (ARDF)	NA	11" x 17", 10"				
	_,			ailable with SP		
	EU, Asia		-/SEF 34 SEF, A4/B5 LEF/SEF,			
Original size detection (book mode)	NA	11" x 17", 8½" 8½" x 11" LEF				
	Max. Capacity		8,300	LCT: 4,000		
	Max. Capacity		4,300			
	Bypass tray		100			
	Tray 3 (Univer	,	550		1	
	Tray 2 (Univer	• ·	550			
Paper capacity (80 g/m2 or 20 lb.)	Tray 1 (Tande	m tray)	tray) 3,100 1,550 x 2			
Zoom	25% to 400%		,,	,		
	EU, Asia 93%, 82%		, 75%, 71%, 65%, 50%, 25%, %, 141%, 200%, 400%			
Magnification	NA	93%, 85%,	n, 5 Enlargement 78%, 73%, 65%, 50%, 25%, %, 155%, 200%, 400%			
Max. image size		(11.7" x 23.6")			4	
	Printing	600 dpi 4-b	•			
	Copying	600 dpi 6-b				
Resolution	Scanning	600 dpi 10-				
Max. original size	A3/11" x 17"					
Original types	Sheet, book, c	object			1	
	Monochrome	6.5 sec.			1	
First copy	Full color	7.5 sec.			1	
Warm-up time	300 sec.				1	
		Full color 55 cpm				
Engine speed		Full color 45 cpm	/Monochrome	e 60 com	-	
Fusing	Oil-less belt fu	-		Jinent	-	
Development	belt Dry dual-comr	onent magnetic	hrush davalar	oment	-	
Copy Process	4-drum dry electrostatic transfer system with internal transfe					
Original Scanning	Flatbed with moving 3-line CCD array, image scanning					
Weight (with ARDF)	Less than 298 kg (655.6 lb.)					
Dimensions (w x d x h) (no ARDF)	750 x 850 x 1050 mm (29.5 x 33.5 x 41.3 in.)			)		
Configuration	Console					

Ę

Paper Sizes	For more, se	e "Paper Sizes"	
Paper weight	Tray 1 (Tandem tray)		52.3 – 127.9 g/m2
			14 – 34 lb. bond
	Tray 2 (Unive	ersal cassette)	52.3 – 127.9 g/m2
			14 – 34 lb. bond
	Tray 3 (Unive	ersal cassette)	52.3 – 127.9 g/m2
			14 – 34 lb. bond
			(up to 163 g/m2, 44 lb.
			index/ 60 lb.)
	Bypass		52.3 – 256 g/m2
			14 – 68.5 lb. bond
	Duplex mode	)	64 – 127.9 g/m2
			17 – 34 lb. bond
Output capacity	500 sheet (A	4, 8½" x 11")	With Copy Tray B756
Power	NA	120V 20A 50 H	łz
	EU, Asia	220-240V 10A	50-60 Hz
Max. power consumption	NA	Less than 1920	0 W
	EU, AsiaLess than 1920NAElectric counter		0 W
Counter			er, mechanical counter x2
	EU, Asia	er, mechanical counter x1	
Counterfeit prevention	Bill recognition	on, invisible marl	king function

#### Paper Sizes

_			Tander	n Trav	2nd & 3	Brd Tray	LCT		Bypass		
			1100 sł		550 she each	•	1000 sl	heet	100 she	eet	×
Paper Size	Direction	Measurement	NA	EU Asia	NA	EU Asia	NA	EU Asia	NA	EU Asia	Duplex
A3	SEF	297 x 420 mm	OP_T	OP_T	A_AD	A_AA	х	х	A_WD	A_WD	
B4	SEF	257 x 364 mm	OP_T	OP_T	A_AD	A_AA	OP_L	OP_L	#_S	#_S	
A4	LEF	297 x 210 mm	A	A	A_AD	A_AD	A	A	#_S	#_S	
A4	SEF	210 x 297 mm	OP_T	OP_T	A_AD	A_AD	OP_L	OP_L	#_S	A_WD	
B5	LEF	257 x 182 mm	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	A	A	#_S	#_S	
B5	SEF	182 x 257 mm	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	х	х	#_S	#_S	
A5	LEF	210 x 148 mm	Х	Х	UP	UP	х	х	#_S	#_S	
A5	SEF	148 x 210 mm	Х	Х	UP	A_AD	Х	х	#_S	A_WD	
B6	SEF	128 x 182 mm	Х	Х	Х	х	х	х	#_S	#_S	х
A6	SEF	105 x 148 mm	Х	Х	Х	Х	х	х	#_S	#_S	х
DTL	SEF	8½" x 11"	OP_T	OP_T	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	A_WD	#_S	
LG	SEF	8½" x 14"	OP_T	OP_T	A_AD	A_AD	OP_L	OP_L	A_WD	#_S	
LT	LEF	11" x 8½"	А	А	A_AD	A_AD	А	А	#_S	#_S	
LT	SEF	8½" x 11"	OP_T	OP_T	A_AD	A_AD	OP_L	OP_L	#_S	#_S	
HLT	LEF	8½" x 5½"	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	Х	Х	
HLT	SEF	5½" x 8½"	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	A_WD	#_S	
Foolscap	SEF	8½" x 13"	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	#_S	#_S	
Folio	SEF	8¼" x 13"	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	#_S	#_S	
F	SEF	8" x 13"	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	#_S	#_S	
Executive	LEF	10½" x 7¼"	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	#_S	#_S	
Executive	SEF	7¼"" x 10½"	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	#_S	#_S	
8K	SEF	267 x 390 mm	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	х	х	#_M	#_M	
16K	LEF	267 x 195 mm	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	х	х	#_M	#_M	
16K	SEF	195 x 267 mm	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	х	х	#_M	#_M	
A3 Wide	SEF	12" x 18"	Х	Х	A_AD	A_AD	Х	Х	#_S	#_S	

## Table Key

SEF:	Short Edge Feed	
LEF:	Long Edge Feed	
А	Paper size to be set in copier	
A_AD	Paper size detected automatically	
A_WD	Paper size detected by width	
OP_T	Paper size set in Tray 1 with A3 / 11"x17" B331 installed.	Sner
OP_L	Paper size set in LCT B473 with 8 1/2"x14" Paper Size Tray B474 installed.	S
#_S	Paper size setting is required. Press [#] key then select paper size from the list on touch panel	
#_M	Paper size setting is required. To press [#] then enter actual paper size of paper manually.	
Х	NG	

### **1.2 PRINTING**

CPU	Intel Celeron LV	′ 733 MHz				
RAM	1384 MB (share	1384 MB (shared with copying, scanning)				
HDD	320 GB (80 GB	x 4)				
PDL	RPCS, PCL5c,	PCL6				
Print Resolution (max.)	600 x 600 dpi (4	bit)				
Fonts	Standard	48 PCL fonts				
	Option	With PS3, 136 Adobe PostScript Type 1 fonts				
Connectivity						
Host interface	Standard	Ethernet RJ-45, 10-BaseT, 100BaseTX, USB 2.0				
	Options* <sup>1</sup>	IEEE1284 ECP, IEEE1394 (FireWire),				
		IEEE802.11b (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth				
Network Protocol		TCP IP, IPX/SPX, SMB (NetBEUI* <sup>2</sup> , NetBIOS over				
		TCP/IP), AppleTalk (auto switching)				
MIB support	Private MIB	Ricoh original				
	Standard MIB	MIB-II (RFC1213), HostResource (RFC1514),				
		PrinterMib (RFC1759)				
Network, operating syste	ems	Windows 95, 98SE, NT 4.0, 2000, Me, XP, Server				
		2003				
		NetWare 3.12, 3.2, 4.1, 4.11, 5.0, 5.1, 6				
		Unix, Sun Solaris, HP-UX, SCO Open Server, Red				
		Hat Linux, IBM AIX, Mac OS 8.6 to 9.2x, OS X 10.1				
		or later				

\*<sup>1</sup> Only 1 option can be installed at a time.
 \*<sup>2</sup> Smart Device Monitor for Client is necessary for NetBEUI.

### 1.3 SCANNER

Optical resolution	100, 150, <b>200</b> (de	efault), 300, 400, 600 dpi				
Scanning speed	ТВА	ГВА				
Max. scan area	297 x 432 mm (1	1.7" x 17")				
Auto scan size detection	Exposure glass	Supported (conforms with copier specifications)				
	ARDF	Supported (conforms with copier specifications)				
Original size	Standard	A3, A4 SEF, A4 LEF, A5 SEF/LEF, B4, B5 SEF, B5 LEF, 11" x 17" SEF, 8½" x 14" SEF, 8½" x 13" SEF, 8½" x 11" SEF/LEF, 5½ " x 8½" SEF/LEF				
	Customized	Min. 10 x 10 mm (0.04" x 0.04")				
		Max. 297 x 432 mm (11.7" x 17")				
Compression Method	BW Binary: TIFF	MH, MR, MMR				
	Grayscale/Full Co	olor: JPEG				
Interface support	10/100BaseTX, II	EEE802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1394 (FireWire)				
Scan mod	Default	BW Text				
	Supported	BW OCR, BW Text-Photo, BW Photo, Grayscale, FC Photo, FC Text Photo				
	Options* <sup>1</sup>	Auto Color Selection, sRGB Photo, sRGB Text Photo				
Image Density	Auto Density Sele	ection, Manual Setting (7 levels)				
Image Rotation	ТВА					
SADF/Batch mode	Supported					
Mixed size originals	Supported					

\*<sup>1</sup> File Format Converter (MLB) is necessary.

# 2. ARDF B652

Dimensions (w x d x h)	680 x 560 x	180 mm (26.8 x 22 x 7.1 in.)			
Weight		9.5 kg (42.9 lb.)			
Power consumption		Less than 59 W			
Noise	Less than 71				
Stack capacity	100 sheets				
		A2 A4 A5 B5 B6			
Original size	Simplex	A3, A4, A5, B5, B6 5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11", 8½" x 14", 11" x 17"			
	Duplex	A3, A4, A5, B4, B5			
		5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11", 8½" x 14", 11" x 17"			
Original weight	Simplex	40 – 128 g/m2			
0 0		11 – 34 lb. bond			
	Duplex	52 – 128 g/m2			
		14 – 34 lb. bond			
Auto Original Size	NA	11" x 17", 10" x 14", 8 ½ x 14" SEF			
Detection		81/2" x 11", 51/2" x 81/2" SEF/LEF			
		7¼" x 10½", A3 SEF			
		A4 SEF/LEF			
	EU, Asia	A3, B4 SEF			
		A4, B5, A5, B6 SEF/LEF			
		81⁄2" x 13", 8K SEF			
		16K SEF			
Original set position	Face-up, left-rear corner				
Special original setting	Batch, mixed	d sizes			
Feeding speed	Full color	45 cpm			
	Black	60 cpm			
Power source	From copier	·			

# 3. OPTIONAL PERIPHERALS

## 3.1 LARGE CAPACITY TRAY B473

Installation of the LCT Adapter B699 is necessary for the LCT.

Dimension (w x d x h)	Stand-alone	314 x 458 x 659 mm (12.4 x 18 x 25.9 in. )		
	With LG/B4 Option	462 x 458 x 659 mm (18.2 x 18 x 25.9 in.))		
Weight	Standalone	Less than 20 kg (44 lb.)		
	With LG/B4 Option	Less than 27 kg (59.4 lb.)		
Power Consumption	•	Less than 50 W		
Noise		Less than 74dB		
Paper Size		A4, B5, 11"x 8½" LEF		
Paper Weight		52 - 128g/m² 14 lb – 34 lb Bond		
Paper Capacity (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> or 20 lb. bond)		4,000 sheets** 2,500 sheets*		
Paper Weight		50 - 128g/m² 14 lb – 34 lb Bond		

#### 3.2 81/2 X 14" PAPER SIZE TRAY B474

This is the option for the LCT B473 that allows it to accept LG size paper.

Paper Size	8 1/2"x14", 8 1/2"x11", A4, B4 SEF
Paper Weight	52 - 128g/m² 14 lb – 34 lb Bond

#### 3.3 9-BIN MAILBOX B762

The mailbox can be installed on top of the 2000-Sheet Finisher B700, the 3000-Sheet Finisher B701, or the 3000-Sheet Finisher B706.

Dimension (w x d x h)	540 x 600 x 660 mm (21.3 x 23.6 x 26 in.)
Weight	Less than 15 kg (33 lb.)
Power Consumption	Less than 48 W
Noise	Less than 74 dB
Number of Bins	9 bins
Stack Capacity of each Bin	100 sheets*
Paper Size	A5. A4, A3 5½" x 8½", 8½" x11", 8½" x14", 11"x17"
Paper Weight	52 - 128g/m² 14 lb – 34 lb Bond

#### 3.4 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B704

The cover interposer tray can be used with the 2000-Sheet Finisher B700, 3000-Sheet Finisher B701, 3000-Sheet Finisher B706. The interposer tray is installed between the copier and the finisher. The interposer tray and the Mailbox B762 cannot be installed together.

Dimension (w x d	x h)	500 x 600 x 600 mm (19.7 x 23.6 x 23.6 in.)			
Weight		Less than 12 Kg (26.4 lb.)			
Power Consumpt	tion	Less than 43 W			
Noise		Less than 65 db			
Stack Capability*		200 Sheets			
Paper Size		A5-A3, 5½" x 8½" - 11" x 17"			
Paper Weight		64 g/m²-216 g/m²			
		17 lb. Bond- 58 lb. Index, 80 lb Cover			
Original Set Posit	tion	Center			
Original Set	Normal Feed	Face-up			
	Booklet Feed	Face-down			

## 3.5 3000-SHEET FINISHER B706

This finisher is compatible with other copiers without special items. However, this copier requires installation of the Finisher Adapter B698 on this finisher.

Finisher							
Dimension (w x	d x h)		800 x 730	x 980 mm	(31.5 x 2	28.7 x 38.6 in.)	
Weight		Less than 65 kg (143 lb.)					
Power Consumption		Less than	100W				
Noise			Less than	75 dB			
Configuration			Console t	ype attache	d base-	unit with Finisher Ada	pter
Power Source			From bas	e-unit			
Proof Tray	Stack Capaci	ty*	500 sheet	s A4, 8½	' x 11" o	or smaller	
			250 sheet	s B4, 8½	' x 14" o	or larger	
	Paper Size		A6 SEF-A				
				""- 11"x17"			
	Paper Weigh	t	52 g/m²-2	•			
						Ib Index / 90 Ib Cover	
Shift Tray	Stack Capaci	ty*	3000 shee			<sup>−</sup> , B5 LEF, 8½"x11" L	EF
			1500 shee	ets		, B4, B5 SEF	
					′", 8½"x14", 8½" x 11"		
			SEF				
			500 sheets         A5 LEF, 5½"x8 1/2" LEF				
			100 sheets         A5 SEF, 5½"x8½" SEF				
	Paper Size		A5 - A3 SEF				
			5½"x8½"- 11"x17"				
	Paper Weigh	t	52 g/m <sup>2</sup> -256 g/m <sup>2</sup>				
Stanlag			14 lb Bond- 68 lb Bond / 140 lb Index / 90 lb Cover				
Staples			0"214" 14	·v.1 フ"			
Paper Size Paper Weight			1/2"x11"-11"x17"				
Staple Position			4 g/m², 17 lb Bond-20 lb Bond om, 2 Staple, Top-slant				
Staple Replenish	hment		exchange / 5000 pins per cartridge				
Stack Capacity v		Cartinago	ononango /		or our a	1490	
	I	Paper Siz	ze	Pages/Se	t	Sets	
		A4, B5		10-100 pa	ges	200-30 sets	
		8½"x11"		2-9 pages	-	150 sets	
		A3, B4, 11	" x 17",	10-50 pag	es	150-30 sets	
		8½" x 14"		2-9 pages		150 sets	

### 3.6 PUNCH UNIT B531

This punch unit is for the 3000-Sheet Finisher B706. The Punch Units A821 and Output Jogger Unit B513 are also available for this B706.

Punch Unit Types		NA		2/3 holes
		EU		2/4 holes
		Scand	inavia	4 holes
Punch Waste He	opper Capacity	NA 2 ł	nole	10,000 sheets
		NA 3 ł	nole	15,000 sheets
		EU 2 ł	nole	40,000 sheets
		EU 4 ł	nole	15,000 sheets
		Scand	inavia 4 hole	15,000 sheets
Paper Weight		52 g/m	1²-127.9 g/m²	
		14 lb E	14 lb Bond –34 lb Bond	
Paper Size	NA 2-holes	SEF	A6 - A3, 5½" x 8½" - 8½"x11"	
		LEF	A5 - A4, 5½" x 8½", 8½"x11"	
	NA 3-holes	SEF	A3, B4, 11"x17"	
		LEF	A4, B5, 8½"x	. 11"
	EU 2-holes	SEF	A6 - A3, 5½"x8½" - 11"x17"	
		LEF	A5 - A4, 5½" x 8½", 8½"" x 11"	
EU 4-holes		SEF	A3, B4, 11" x 17"	
		LEF	A4, B5, 81/2" >	x 11"
	Scandinavia 4-holes	SEF	B6 - A3, 5½"	x 8½" - 11" x 17"
		LEF	A5 - A4, 5½"	x 8½", 8½" x 11"

## 3.7 3000-SHEET FINISHER B701

This finisher provides corner stapling only.

Finisher					
Dimension (w x d x h)		657 x 613 x 960 mm			
Weight		Less than 54 kg Less than 56 kg with Punch Unit			
Power Consump	otion	Less than 96 V	V		
Noise		Less than 75 d	b		
Configuration		Console type a	attached base-unit		
Power Source	-	From base-uni	t		
	Stack Capacity*		4, 8 1/2"x11" or smaller 4, 8 1/2"x14 or larger		
Proof Tray	Paper Size		6 SEF, A6 SEF 1"x17"SEF, 12"x18" SEF		
	Paper Weight	52 g/m²-163 g/ 14 lb Bond- 43	′m² i lb Bond / 90 lb Index / 60 lb Cover		
		3,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 1⁄2" x11" LEF "		
	Stack Capacity*	1,500 sheets	A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5, 11"x17" SEF, 8½" x14" SEF, 8½" x 11" SEF, 12"x18" SEF		
		500 sheets	A5 LEF**		
Shift Tray		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5½" x 8½",SEF		
	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, A 12" x 18" SEF	A6 SEF, B6 SEF, 5½" x 8½"- 11"x17" SEF,		
	Paper Weight	52 g/m <sup>2</sup> -256 g/m <sup>2</sup> 14 lb Bond- 68 lb Bond / 140 lb Index / 90 lb Cover			
Staples					
Paper Size		B5-A3 8 1/2"x11"-11"x17", 12"x18"			
Paper Weight		64 g/m²-90 g/m² 17 lb Bond-28 lb Bond			
Staple Position		Top, Bottom, 2	Staple, Top-slant		
	Same Paper Size		A4, <sup>1</sup> ⁄ <sub>2</sub> " x11" or smaller		
Stapling			B4, 1⁄2" x14" or larger		
Capacity	Mixed Paper Size		A4 LEF + A3 SEF, B5 LEF + B4 SEF, 8½" x11" LEF + 11" x17" SEF		

Staple Replenishment	Cartridge exchange / 5000 pins per cartridge				
	Paper Size	Pages/Set	Sets		
		20-50 pages	150-60 sets		
	A4 LEF, 8 1/2 X11 LEF		150 sets		
Stapled Stack Capacity (same size)	A4 SEF, B5, 8 /12"x11" SEF	15-50 pages	100-30 sets		
	A4 SEF, 65, 6712 XTT SEF	2-14 pages	100 sets		
	Others	15-30 pages	100-33 sets		
	Others	2-14 pages	100 sets		
Stapled Stack Capacity (mixed sizes)	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8 1/2"x11" LEF & 11" x17" SEF	2-30 pages	50 set		

## 3.8 2000-SHEET FINISHER B700

This finisher provides booklet as well as corner stapling. Equipped with two trays, the upper tray holds stapled and shifted copies, and the lower tray holds booklet stapled and folded copies.

	-	1		
Finisher				
Dimension W x D x H		657 x 613 x 960 mm (25.9 x 24.1 x 37.8")		
Weight			3 kg (138.6 lb.) (no punch unit)	
weight			5 kg (143 lb.) (with punch unit)	
Power Consumption		Less than 96	3 W	
Noise		Less than 75	5 db	
Configuration		Console type	e attached base-unit	
Power Source		From base-u	ınit	
	Stack Capacity*		A4, 8 1/2"x11" or smaller	
			B4, 8 1/2"x14 or larger A6 SEF, A6 LEF	
Proof Tray	Paper Size	,	A0 SEF, A0 LEF 11" x 17" SEF, 12"x18" SEF	
	Paper Weight	52 g/m <sup>2</sup> -163	0	
	Paper Weight		43 lb Bond / 90 lb Index / 60 lb Cover	
		2,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 8 1/2"x11" LEF	
	Stack Capacity*		A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5	
		1,000	11"x17" SEF, 8½" x14" SEF, 8½" x	
		sheets	11" SEF,	
			12"x18" SEF	
Shift Tray		500 sheets	A5 LEF	
		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5½" x8½" SEF	
	Deper Size	A5 - A3 SEF	, A6 SEF, B6 SEF	
	Paper Size	51/2" x81/2" to 11" x 17" SEF, 12" x 18" SEF		
	Paper Weight	52 g/m <sup>2</sup> -256 g/m <sup>2</sup>		
		14 lb Bond- 68 lb Bond / 140 lb Index / 90 lb Cover		
Staple		1		
Paper Size		B5-A3, 8 1/2"x11"-11"x17", 12"x18"		
Paper Weight		64 g/m <sup>2</sup> -90 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 17 lb Bond-28 lb Bond		
Staple Position			2 Staple, Top-slant	
Staples Capacity*	Same Paper Size	50 sheets	A4, 8½" x 11" or smaller	
	Missed Demon Circ	30 sheets	B4, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " x 14" or larger	
	Mixed Paper Size	30 sheets	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8½"x11" LEF & 11" x17" SEF	
	Booklet Stapling	15 sheets	A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF,	
			8 1/2"x11" SEF, 8 1/2"x14" SEF,	
			11"x17" SEF, 12"x18" SEF	

Staple Replenishment		Corner staple	5,000 staples per cartridge
		Booklet staple	2,000 staples per cartridge
Corner Staple	Same Size	A4 LEF, 8 1/2"x11" LEF	13-50 pages
Capacity			2-12 pages
		A4 SEF, B5, 8 /12"x11" SEF	10-50 pages
			2-9 pages
		Others	10-30 pages
			2-9 pages
	Mixed Size	A4 LEF + A3 SEF	2-30 pages
		B5 LEF + B4 SEF	
		8 1/2"x11" LEF + 11" x17" SEF	
Booklet Staple	A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF		2-5 pages
Capacity 8 1/2"x11" SEF,		8 1/2"x14" SEF, 11"x17" SEF	6-10 pages
	12"x18" SEF		11-15 pages

#### B700/B701 Paper Specifications

Paper Size	Plain Paper			Pa	per Type
	Copier	Used	Recycled	Colored	Translucent
	PPC	Paper	Paper	Paper	Blueprint
A3 SEF	•		•	•	
B4 SEF	•		•	•	
A4 SEF	•		•	•	
A4 LEF	۲		۲	۲	
B5 SEF	•		•		
B5 LEF	٨		٩	٩	
A5 SEF	0	—	—	—	—
A5 LEF	0	—	—	—	—
B6 SEF		—	—	—	—
B6 LEF			_	—	_
12" x 18" SEF	•	_	•	•	—
11" x 17" SEF	•	—	•	•	
8½" x 14"	•	—	•	•	
81/2" x 11" SEF	•		•		
81⁄2" x 11" LEF	٨		۲	٩	
5½" x 8½"	0		_	0	_
5½" x 8½"	0	_		0	_

- & •
- Corner stapling, Shift, YES Booklet stapling/folding, Shift, YES Shift ONLY
- Ō
- Shift NO
- Not available

#### 3.9 PUNCH UNIT B702

This punch unit is designed for use with the 2000-Sheet Stapler B700 (both corner and booklet stapling) and 3000-Sheet Stapler B701 (corner stapling only).

Available Punch Units		NA		2/3 hole switchable	
		EU		2/4 holes switchable	
		Scandir	navia	4 holes	
Punch Waste	Replenishment	NA 2-ho	ole	Up to 5,000 sheets	
		NA 3-ho	ble	Up to 5,000 sheets	
		EU 2-ho	ole	Up to 14,000 sheets	
		EU 4-ho	ble	Up to 7,000 sheets	
		Scandir	navia 4-hole	Up to 7,000 sheets	
Paper Weight		•	•	b Bond –43 lb Bond / 90 lb Index / 60	
		lb Cove	lb Cover		
Paper Sizes	NA 2-hole	SEF	A5 to A3, 51/2" x81/2" to 11"x17"		
		LEF	A5 - A4, 5½" x 8½" , 8½" x 11"		
	NA 3-hole	SEF	A3, B4, 11"x17"		
		LEF	A4, B5, 81⁄2" x 11"		
	EU 2-hole	SEF	A5 - A3, 5½" x 8½" to 11" x 17"		
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11"		
EU 4-hole		SEF	A3, B4, 11"x17"		
		LEF	A4, B5, 81⁄2" x 11"		
	Scandinavia 4-hole	SEF	A5 to A3, 5½" x 8½" to 11" x 17"		
		LEF	A5 - A4, 5½"	x8½", 8½" x 11"	

## 3.10A3/11" X 17" TRAY B331

This option is installed in Tray 1 (tandem tray) of the copier so Tray 1 can feed larger paper. Tray 1 normally feeds LT or A4 only.

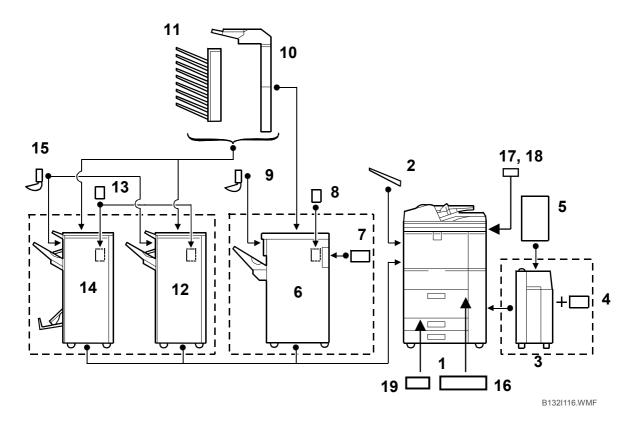
Dimension (w x d x h)	495 x 215 x 535 mm (19.5 x 8.5 x 21.1 in.)
Weight	11 kg (24.2 lb.)
Paper Size	A3 SEF, B4 SEF, A4 11"x17" SEF, 8½" x 14" SEF, 8½" x 11"
Paper Capacity	1,000 Sheets

#### **3.11COPY TRAY B476**

The copy tray is installed receive copies when the copier is used without a finisher.

Dimension (w x d x h)	400 x 335 x 70 mm (15.8 x 13.2 x 2.8 in.)		
Weight	640 g (1.4 lb.)		
Paper Capacity	500 Sheets	A4, 8½" x 11"	
Paper Capacity	250 Sheets	A3, 11"x 17"	

# 4. MACHINE CONFIGURATION



This is a list of the peripheral devices that can be installed with the copier.

No.	Model	Name	Comments	1
1	B132/B181/B200	Copier	Main machine	
2	B756	Copy Tray Attached to main machine		1
3	B473	LCT	Paper bank	1
4	B699	LCT Adapter	Required for LCT	
5	B474	81/2" x 14"/B4 Paper Size Tray	LCT Option	1
6	B706	3000-Sheet Finisher	No saddle-stitching (100-sheet stapling)	
7	B698	Finisher Adapter	Replacement motor for B706	
8	B531/A821	Punch Unit	For B706 only	1
9	B513	Output Jogger Unit	For B706 only.	
10	B704	Cover Interposer Tray	For B700, B701, B706	
11	B762	Mail Box For B700, B701 only		1
12	B701	3000-Sheet Finisher	No saddle-stitching, Tray x1, 50-sheet stapling	
13	B702	Punch Unit	For B700, B701	
14	B700	2000-Sheet Finisher	Saddle-stitching, Trays x2, 50-sheet stapling	
15	B703	Output Jogger Unit	For B700, B701	i
16	B331	A3 /11"x17" Paper Size Tray	For Tandem Tray (Tray 1)	pec.
17	B452	Key Counter Bracket		S
18	B498	Key Card Bracket		
19	B499	Tab Sheet Holder		

SPEC-17

## 4.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

## 4.2 COPIER

No.	Component	Function				
CIRCUIT	CIRCUIT BREAKER					
CB1	Circuit Breaker	Breaks the main power supply to the machine if there is an overload or short circuit.				
COUNT	COUNTERS					
TC1	Total Counter - FC	The mechanical counter for full color printing.				
TC2	Total Counter - K	The mechanical counter for black-and-white printing.				
HEATER	RS					
H1	Lower Tray Heater	Keeps paper dry. Provided with machine, connection is optional.				
H2	Anti-condensation Heater – Scanner (Option)	Prevents the formation of condensation in the scanner unit.				
H3	Anti-condensation Heater – Transfer	This options removes moisture from the air around the paper transfer unit.				
H4	Upper Tray Heater	Keeps paper dry. Provided with machine, connection is optional.				
HARD D	DISKS					
HDD1	HDD 1	The HDDs hold temporary files spooled for processing and also store permanent files for the document server application.				
HDD2	HDD 2	2nd HDD in a set of 4.				
HDD3	HDD 3	3rd HDD in a set of 4.				
HDD4	HDD 4	4th HDD in a set of 4.				
LAMPS						
L1	Exposure Lamp	Projects high intensity light on the original for exposure.				
L2	Heating Roller Fusing Lamp 1	590W fusing lamp in the heating roller.				
L3	Heating Roller Fusing Lamp 2	590W fusing lamp in the heating roller.				
L4	Hot Roller Fusing Lamp	350W fusing lamp inside the hot roller.				
L5	Pressure Roller Fusing Lamp	350W fusing lamp inside the pressure roller.				

No.	Component	Function
MOTOF	-	
M1	Scanner Motor	Drives the scanner unit
M2	Lower Relay Motor	Drives the lower relay roller of the relay unit at the
		vertical transport section.
M3	Paper Feed Motor - Tray 1	Drives the paper feed roller and grip roller of tray 1 (tandem tray).
M4	Paper Feed Motor - Tray 3	Drives the paper feed roller and grip roller of tray 3 (bottom tray).
M5	Paper Feed Motor - Tray 2	Drives the paper feed roller and grip roller of tray 2 (middle tray).
M6	Waste Toner Distribution Motor	Drives the coil that spans the top of the waste toner bottle.
M7	Lift Motor - Tray 2	Switches on and drives a shaft and coupling that raises a lift arm against the bottom plate under the paper stack in tray 2
M8	Lift Motor - Tray 3	Drives a shaft and coupling that raises a lift arm against the bottom plate under the paper stack in tray 3.
M9	Lift Motor - Tray 1	Drives pulleys and cables that lift the bottom plate of tray 1 (tandem tray) until the top of the paper stack reaches the correct height for feeding.
M10	Rear Fence Motor - Tray 1	Switches on when the right paper tray sensor of the tandem paper tray unit detects paper out and the left paper tray sensor detects paper present.
M11	ITB Lift Motor	Rotates the cam that raises and lowers the ITB belt.
M12	Ozone Fan Motor	Draws air from around the drums and through the ozone filter.
M13	Fusing Fan Motor	Cools the fusing unit.
M14	Fusing Cooling Fan Motor	Draws cool air into the fusing unit through a vent and past a heat sink mounted above the fusing unit.
M15	Fusing Exhaust Fan Motor	Draws the hot air away from the heat sink mounted above the fusing unit and expels the hot air through a vent
M16	Fusing/Exit Motor	Drives the fusing unit and paper exit.
M17	PTR Motor	Drives the paper transfer roller (PTR).
M18	Bypass Feed Motor	Drives the upper relay roller that feeds each sheet to the registration roller.
M19	Duplex Jogger Motor	Moves the jogger fences in the duplex unit.
M20	Duplex Unit Fan Motor	Cools the duplex unit.
M21	Duplex Transport Motor	Drives transport rollers 3, 4 in the duplex unit.
M22	Duplex Inverter Motor	Feeds paper to the jogger section.
M23	Registration Motor	Rotates the registration roller.
M24	Image Transfer Fan Motor	Cools the upper area of the transfer unit where the PCUs contact the ITB.
M25	Pipe Cooling Fan Motor	Pulls in air draws it over the fins attached to the front end of the heat pipe roller.
M26	Paper Transport Fan Motor - Rear	1 of 2 vacuum fans that produce suction to kepp paper on the transport belt.
M27	Paper Transport Fan Motor - Front	1 of 2 vacuum fans that produce suction to kepp paper on the transport belt.
M28	Paper Exit Fan Motor	Draws hot air from around the paper exit area and expels it from the left side of the machine.

No.	Component	Function	
M29	Front Duplex Fan Motor	Draws hot air out of the duplex unit.	
M30	Rear Duplex Fan Motor	Draws hot air out of the duplex unit.	
M31	ID Sensor Dust Fan Motor	Blows air around the ID sensors to prevent dust from collecting.	
M32	Peltier Cooling Fan Motor	Draws dehumidified air out of the Peltier unit and sends it through a duct to the four PCU cooling fans.	
M33	Peltier Circulation Fan Motor	Draws that passes below the Peltier unit to cool it.	
M34	Laser Unit Cooling Fan Motor - Front	Draws cool air into the machine.	
M35	Laser Unit Cooing Fan Motor - Rear	Expels hot air from the machine on the left side.	
M36	PCU Motor - M	Drives all the rollers in the Magenta PCU.	
M37	PCU Motor - K	Drives all the rollers in the Black PCU.	
M38	PCU Motor - Y	Drives all the rollers in the Yellow PCU.	
M39	PCU Motor - C	Drives all the rollers in the Cyan PCU.	
M40	Controller Box Exhaust Fan Motor 2	1 of 2 fans that cool the printed circuit boards at the back of the machine.	
M41	Controller Box Exhaust Fan Motor 1	1 of 2 fans that cool the printed circuit boards at the back of the machine.	
M42	Drum Motor - Y	Drives the drum in the Yellow PCU.	
M43	Drum Motor - C	Drives the drum in the Cyan PCU.	
M44	Drum Motor - M	Drives the drum in the Magenta PCU.	
M45	Drum Motor - K	Drives the drum in the Black PCU.	
M46	ITB Drive Motor	Rotates the image transfer roller that drives the ITB.	
M47	3rd Mirror Motor - M	Fine adjusts the position of the 3rd mirror of the optics for M (magenta) during MUSIC adjustment.	
M48	Polygon Mirror Motor	Rotates the polygon mirror in the laser optics unit	
M49	3rd Mirror Motor - Y	Fine adjusts the position of the 3rd mirror of the optics for Y (Yellow) during MUSIC adjustment.	
M50	3rd Mirror Motor - C	Fine adjusts the position of the 3rd mirror of the optics for C (Cyan) during MUSIC adjustment.	
M51	Toner Hopper Motor	Drives the <b>toner</b> pump clutch and sub hopper clutch of each PCU.	
M52	PCU Fan Motor - Y	Cools the Yellow PCU.	
M53	PCU Fan Motor - C	Cools the Cyan PCU.	
M54	PCU Fan Motor - M	Cools the Magenta PCU	
M55	PCU Fan Motor - K	Cools the Black PCU.	
M56	Scanner Unit Fan Motor - Rear Left	Cools the left, rear corner of the SIOB.	
M57	Scanner Unit Fan Motor - Rear Center	Cools the rear, center area of the SIOB.	
M58	Scanner Unit Fan Motor - Front Left	Cools the front, left area of the SIOB.	
M59	Scanner Unit Fan Motor - Right	Exhausts warm air from the SIOB area.	
M60	Waste Toner Collection Bottle Motor	Drives the waste toner bottle transport coil that moves the toner from the central collection point into the waste toner bottle.	

No.	Component	Function	
MECHA	MECHANICAL CLUTCHES		
MC1	Bypass Feed Clutch	Engages and operates the pick-up roller at the bypass feed tray.	
MC2	Toner Pump Clutch - M	Engages the and drives the Magenta toner pump to pull toner from the Magenta STC.	
MC3	Toner Supply Clutch - M	Engages the toner supply coils in the sub hopper of the Magenta PCU to send toner to the development unit below.	
MC4	Toner Pump Clutch - K	Engages the and drives the Black toner pump to pull toner from the Black STC.	
MC5	Toner Supply Clutch - K	Engages the toner supply coils in the sub hopper of the Black PCU to send toner to the development unit below.	
MC6	Toner Pump Clutch - Y	Engages the drive shaft and rotor of the Yellow toner pump to pull toner from the Yellow STC when more toner is needed.	
MC7	Toner Supply Clutch - Y	Engages the toner supply coils in the sub hopper of the Yellow PCU to send toner to the development unit below.	
MC8	Toner Pump Clutch - C	Engages the and drives the Cyan toner pump to pull toner from the Cyan STC.	
MC9	Toner Supply Clutch - C	Engages the toner supply coils in the sub hopper of the Cyan PCU to send toner to the development unit below.	

No.	Component	Function
PCBs		
PCB1	PFC (Paper Feed Control)	Controls paper feed.
PCB2	AC Drive Board	Controls the power supply to the fusing lamps, heaters, and PSU.
PCB3	PSU (Power Supply Unit)	Supplies DC current to the machine and contains the AC drive that controls the fusing lamp power supply.
PCB4	DRB (Drive Board)	Contains the circuits for the stepping motors that drive the printer engine, and distributes electrical power to all other PCBs.
PCB5	IOB (Input/Output Board)	The I/O control board controls 1) Input and output ports for all sensors, motors, solenoids of the engine, 2) drivers, 3) high voltage power supply for PWM, and 4) analog input signals.
PCB6	Power Pack: Development Bias	Supplies the voltage for the bias applied to the developer in the PCUs by the development rollers.
PCB7	Power Pack: Charge	Supplies the voltage for the charge applied to the OPC drums by the charge roller.
PCB8	Power Pack: Transfer	Supplies charge to 1) the four image transfer rollers that pull the toner images from the four from the four drums (Y, M, C, K), and 2) to the paper transfer roller that pulls the image off the ITB onto paper.
PCB9	Power Pack - Separation	Supplies the dc/ac charges for paper separation.
PCB10	DMB (Drum Motor Board)	Controls the motors that drive the OPC drums.
PCB11	TMB (Transfer Motor Board)	Controls the motor that drives the ITB.
PCB12	Potential Sensor Board	Processes data from the Y, M, C, K, potential sensors.
PCB13	PPB (Peltier Board)	Controls the operation of the Peltier unit.
PCB14	CNB (Connector Board)	Sorts and routes signals to electrical components.
PCB15	IDCB - C1	One of two ID control boards at the base of the Cyan STC. The CPU reads the board to confirm that the correct STC is inserted into the correct bin.
PCB16	IDCB - M1	One of two ID control boards at the base of the Magenta STC. The CPU reads the board to confirm that the correct STC is inserted into the correct bin.
PCB17	IDCB - K1	One of two ID control boards at the base of the Black STC. The CPU reads the board to confirm that the correct STC is inserted into the correct bin.
PCB18	IDCB - Y1	One of two ID control boards at the base of the Yellow STC. The CPU reads the board to confirm that the correct STC is inserted into the correct bin.
PCB19	SBU (Sensor Board Unit)	Contains the CCD. Converts CCD analog signals to digital signals.
PCB20	SIOB (Scanner Interface Board)Controls all the sensors in the scanner unit an controls the carriage drive stepping motors.	
PCB21	Lamp Regulator	Converts the ac power input to a stable, high frequency ac output to the exposure lamp.

No.	Component	Function
PCB22	BICU	Performs: 1) Engine sequence control (all
		sensors, motors, fusing temperature monitoring
		circuits), 2) Scanning control, 3) Exposure control,
		3) Image processing control, 4) GW controller I/F,
		5) Peripheral timing control
PCB23	LD 1 (2/2)	Laser Diode 1, 2nd of a pair, 1 of 8.
	LD 1 (1/2)	Laser Diode 1, 1st of a pair, 1 of 8.
PCB24	LD 2 (2/2)	Laser Diode 2, 2nd of a pair, 1 of 8.
	LD 2 (1/2)	Laser Diode 2, 1st of a pair, 1 of 8.
PCB25	LD 3 (2/2)	Laser Diode 3, 2nd of a pair, 1 of 8.
	LD 3 (1/2)	Laser Diode 3, 1st of a pair, 1 of 8.
PCB26	LD 4 (2/2)	Laser Diode 4, 2nd of a pair, 1 of 8.
	LD 4 (1/2)	Laser Diode 4, 1st of a pair, 1 of 8.
PCB27	LSDB - K Front	Front Laser Synchronization Detector Board for
		Laser Diode 4.
PCB28	LSDB - M Front	Front Laser Synchronization Detector Board for
		Laser Diode 3.
PCB29	LSDB - C Front	Front Laser Synchronization Detector Board for
		Laser Diode 2.
PCB30	LSDB - Y Front	Front Laser Synchronization Detector Board for
		Laser Diode 1.
PCB31	LSDB - Y Rear	Rear Laser Synchronization Detector Board for
		Laser Diode 1.
PCB32	LSDB - C Rear	Rear Laser Synchronization Detector Board for
		Laser Diode 2.
PCB33	LSDB - M Rear	Rear Laser Synchronization Detector Board for
		Laser Diode 3.
PCB34	LSDB - K Rear	Rear Laser Synchronization Detector Board for
		Laser Diode 4.
PCB35	Controller Board	Incorporates the GW architecture, and connects
		to the BICU and PCI I/F. All the options for the
DODOG	Mather Deard	printer are controlled by this board.
PCB36	Mother Board	Interfaces the controller and the BICU.
PCB37	RAPI EXT Board	Interface the copy connector and EFI controller.
PCB38	OPU (Operation Panel Unit)	Controls the operation panel.
PCB39	PI Board	Interfaces the IPU and RDS.

No.	Component	Function
QUENCHIN	IG LAMPS	
QL1	Quenching Lamp - K	Eliminates electrical charge and neutralizes the surface of the drum in the Black PCU.
QL2	Quenching Lamp - C	Eliminates electrical charge and neutralizes the surface of the drum in the Cyan PCU.
QL3	Quenching Lamp - M	Eliminates electrical charge and neutralizes the surface of the drum in the Magenta PCU.
QL4	Quenching Lamp - Y	Eliminates electrical charge and neutralizes the surface of the drum in the Yellow PCU.

No.	Component	Function
SENSORS		
S1	ID Sensor - Black	Reads 1) light reflected from the bare surface of the ITB, and 2) reads light reflected from the black ID sensor patterns on the ITB.
S2	ID Sensor - Color	Reads 1) light reflected from the bare surface of the ITB, and 2) reads light reflected from the color ID sensor patterns on the ITB. This sensor has one additional receptor to collect diffuse light reflected from color toner to improve calculation of the toner density.
S3	ITB Lift Sensor	This sensor switches the ITB lift motor off when the ITB comes into contact the drums of the four PCUs.
S4	MUSIC Sensor - Center	Reads the center MUSIC pattern. This feedback is used to control the MUSIC process to correct color registration errors.
S5	MUSIC Sensor - Front	Reads the front MUSIC pattern. This feedback is used to control the MUSIC process to correct color registration errors.
S6	MUSIC Sensor - Rear	Reads the Rear MUSIC pattern. This feedback is used to control the MUSIC process to correct color registration errors.
S7	Paper Feed Sensor - Tray 2	Detects the leading edge of each sheet of paper from the pick–up roller of tray (middle tray) and switches off the pick–up roller solenoid so the pick– up roller lifts.
S8	Vertical Transport Sensor - Tray 2	Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet fed from tray 2 and signals a jam if the edges do not pass at the prescribed time.
S9	Paper End Sensor - Tray 2	Receives light reflected from the paper until the last sheet is fed from tray 2 (middle tray), then signals paper end.
S10	Lift Sensor - Tray 2	Detects when the pick- up roller (pushed up by the top of the paper stack in the right side of the tandem tray) has reached the correct height for paper feed and then switches off the tray 2 (middle tray) lift motor.
S11	Paper Feed Sensor - Tray 3	Detects the leading edge of each sheet of paper from the pick–up roller of tray 3 (bottom tray) and switches off the pick–up roller solenoid so the pick– up roller lifts.

No.	Component	Function
S12	Vertical Transport Sensor - Tray 3	Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet fed from tray 3 and signals a jam if the edges do not pass at the prescribed time.
S13	Paper End Sensor - Tray 3	Receives light reflected from the paper until the last sheet is fed from tray 3 (bottom tray), then signals paper end.
S14	Lift Sensor - Tray 3	Detects when the pick- up roller (pushed up by the top of the paper stack in the right side of the tandem tray) has reached the correct height for paper feed and then switches off the tray 3 (bottom tray) lift motor.
S15	Bottom Temperature/Humidity Sensor	Near the waste toner bottle. Detects ambient temperature and humidity and then this output is used to control the amount of current applied to the paper transfer roller and ITB when the image is transferred to paper. Also used to correct the fusing temperature, and to extend the fusing unit idle time at low room temperatures.
S16	Waste Toner Bottle Set Sensor	Detects the position of the waste toner bottle and confirms whether it is set correctly.
S17	Waste Toner Bottle Near-Full Sensor	When the level of the waste toner rises high enough to move the actuator of this sensor out of its normal position, the sensor signals the machine that the waste toner bottle is nearly full.
S18	Waste Toner Bottle Full Sensor	Signals an alert when the waste toner bottle is full.
S19	Paper Feed Sensor - Tray 1	Detects the leading edge of each sheet of paper from the pick–up roller of tray 1 (tandem tray) and switches off the pick–up roller solenoid so the pick– up roller lifts.
S20	Vertical Transport Sensor - Tray 1	Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet fed from tray 1, 2, and 3 and signals a jam if the edges do not pass at the prescribed time.
S21	Paper End Sensor - Tray 1	Detects when the last sheet is fed from tray 1.
S22	Lift Sensor - Tray 1	Detects when the pick- up roller (pushed up by the top of the paper stack in the right side of the tandem tray) has reached the correct height for paper feed and then switches off the tray 1 (tandem tray) lift motor.
S23	Paper Near End Sensor - Tray 2	Detects the near end condition for tray 2 (middle tray, a universal cassette).
S24	Paper Near End Sensor - Tray 3	Detects the near end condition for tray 3 (middle tray, a universal cassette).
S25	Front Side Fence Open Sensor	Detects the actuator on the front side fence after it has reached the open position in the tandem tray.
S26	Front Side Fence Closed Sensor	Detects the actuator on the front side fence after it has reached the closed position in the tandem tray.
S27	Rear Side Fence Open Sensor	Detects the actuator on the rear side fence after it has reached the open position in the tandem tray.
S28	Rear Side Fence Closed       Detects the actuator on the rear side fence after has reached the closed position in the tandem tr	
S29	Right Tray Down Sensor	Detects the bottom plate of the right tray and switches off the tray 1 lift motor and stops the bottom plate.

No.	Component	Function
S30	Paper Near End Sensor - Tray 1	Signals 10% paper remaining when the actuator on the right rail of the right tray in the tandem tray
S31	Paper Height Sensor	passes. Signals 100% paper remaining until activated. Signals 50% paper remaining when the actuator on the left rail of the right tray in the tandem tray passes.
S32	Paper Height Sensor	Signals 30% paper remaining when the actuator on the left rail of the right tray in the tandem tray passes.
S33	Paper Height Sensor	When near end sensor 1 on right rail of the right tray of the tandem tray is actuated, and paper height sensor 3 has detected the passing of the actuator on the left rail, then the near end sensor signals 10% paper remaining.
S34	Right Tray Paper Sensor	Detects paper in the right side of the tandem paper tray.
S35	Rear Fence HP Sensor	Detects the actuator on the rear fence in the tandem tray and switches off the rear fence motor.
S36	Rear Fence Return Sensor	Detects the actuator on the rear fence in the tandem tray and reverses the rear fence motor.
S37	Left Tray Paper Sensor	Detects the presence of paper in the left tray of the tandem tray.
S38	Heating Roller Temperature Sensor	Monitors the surface temperature of the heating roller and breaks the circuits to the fusing lamps if the heating roller overheats.
S39	Waste Toner Lock Sensor	Signals an alert if the waste toner collection coil locks and stops rotating.
S40	Duplex Transport Sensor 1	The feeler of this sensor detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet as it passes from the jogger unit above and into the horizontal feed path of the duplex unit below. Signals a jam if the paper does not arrive at or reach the sensor location at the prescribed time.
S41	Duplex Inverter Sensor	1) Detects the leading edge of the paper at the inverter exit roller, signals to switch off the duplex transport clutch and retracts the reverse trigger roller, and 2) Controls the operation of the duplex transport clutch.
S42	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Detects paper jams at the entrance of the duplex unit.
S43	Duplex Transport Sensor 3	Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet as it passes from the jogger unit above through the horizontal feed path of the duplex unit below. Signals a jam if the paper does not arrive at or reach the sensor location at the prescribed time.
S44	Duplex Transport Sensor 2	Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheets as it passes from the jogger unit above and into the horizontal feed path of the duplex unit below. Signals a jam if the paper does not arrive at or reach the sensor location at the prescribed time.
S45	Duplex Jogger HP Sensor	At power on, detects the actuators on the jogger fences of the duplex unit, switches off the jogger motor and stops the fences at their home positions.

No.	Component	Function
S46	Double-Feed Detection Sensor	Receives the light emitted from the double- feed detection LED and reflected from the surface of each sheet in the paper path. Signals an error if the thickness of the paper is not the same as the previous sheet.
S47	Guide Plate Position Sensor	
S48	Relay Sensor	Detects jams at the top of the vertical paper path.
S49	Registration Sensor	Detects the leading edge of the paper and switches off the registration motor and stops the registration roller briefly but long enough to correct buckle the paper.
S50	Paper Exit Sensor	Detects the leading and trailing edge of each sheet at the paper exit slot to check timing and detect jams.
S51	Bypass Paper Sensor	Detects the presence of paper in the bypass tray.
S52	Bypass Paper End Sensor	Signals paper out when the last sheet feeds from the bypass tray.
S53	Bypass Paper Size Sensor	Reads the positions of the side fences (manually adjusted) to detect the width of the paper in the bypass tray. (Paper length is read with pulse counts from the registration sensor.)
S54	Paper Exit Relay Sensor	Detects paper jams at the paper exit if the paper does not arrive or leave the machine at the prescribed time.
S55	Copy Tray Full Sensor (Option)	Detects when the Copy Paper Tray B75 is full and temporarily pauses printing so the operator can remove the stack from the tray and continue.
S56	TD Sensor - M	Monitors the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture in the development unit of the Magenta PCU.
S57	TD Sensor - K	Monitors the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture in the development unit of the Black PCU.
S58	Temperature/Humidity Sensor - PCU K	The temperature and humidity readings of this sensor are referenced to a lookup table stored in the ROM to 1) Correct the charge roller voltage 2) Adjust the operation of the Peltier unit, and 3) Set the length of time the agitators in the development unit rotate to mix the toner and developer.
S59	TD Sensor - Y	Monitors the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture in the development unit of the Yellow PCU.
S60	TD Sensor - C	Monitors the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture in the development unit of the Cyan PCU.
S61	ITB Position Sensor 2	Reads the encoder film strip on the front edge of the ITB and sends the sub scan scale signal to the CPU.
S62	ITB Position Sensor 1	Reads the encoder film strip on the front edge of the ITB and sends the main scan scale signal to the CPU.
S63	Potential Sensor - K	Reads the potential sensor pattern from the surface of the drum in the black PCU.
S64	Potential Sensor - M	Reads the potential sensor pattern from the surface of the drum in the magenta PCU.
S65	Potential Sensor - C	Reads the potential sensor pattern from the surface of the drum in the cyan PCU.

No.	Component	Function
S66	Potential Sensor - Y	Reads the potential sensor pattern from the surface of the drum in the yellow PCU.
S67	Temperature Sensor - Optics 1	1 of 2 sensors (located near the <u>left</u> f-theta lens) that monitors the temperature in the optics unit. The results are used in the MUSIC process.
S68	Temperature Sensor - Optics 2	1 of 2 sensors (located near the <u>right</u> f-theta lens) that monitors the temperature in the optics unit. The results are used in the MUSIC process.
S69	Toner End Sensor - M	Detects toner end for magenta toner.
S70	Toner End Sensor - K	Detects toner end for black toner.
S71	Toner End Sensor - Y	Detects toner end for yellow toner.
S72	Toner End Sensor - C	Detects toner end for cyan toner.
S73	Scanner HP Sensor	Detects the home position of the scanner.
S74	Original Width Sensors	APS1 (a board) holds <u>two</u> original width sensors under the exposure glass. The detection combinations of these sensors determine the width of the original on the exposure glass positioned for LEF.
S75	Original Length Sensors - 1	APS2 (a board) holds <u>two</u> original length sensors under the exposure glass. The detection combinations of these sensors determine the length of the original on the exposure glass positioned for SEF.
S76	Original Length Sensor -2	APS3 (a board) holds <u>one</u> original length sensor under the exposure glass. The detection combination of this sensor and other sensors determine the length of the original on the exposure glass positioned for SEF.
S77	Accordion Jam Sensor	Detects jams at the fusing exit by confirming that paper arrives at the prescribed time.
S78	Fusing Exit Sensor	Detects jams at the fusing exit by confirming that paper leaves at the prescribed time.
S79	LCT Relay Sensor	Confirms whether the LCT is set correctly.

No.	Component	Function
LEDs		
LED1	Double-Feed Detection LED	Emits light which is reflected from the paper to the double- feed detection sensor to test the translucence of each sheet for double-feed detection.
LED2	Accordion Jam Sensor (LED)	Flashes to show the user which lever to release to remove a paper jam from the fusing rollers.
LED3	Fusing Exit Sensor (LED)	Flashes to show the user which lever to release to remove a paper jam from the fusing unit.

No.	Component	Function
SOLENOID	S	
SOL1	Pick- up Solenoid - Tray 2	Switches on when the tray 2 (middle tray) lift motor switches on. This solenoid lowers the pick–up roller of tray 3.
SOL2	Separation Roller Solenoid - Tray 2	When tray 2 (middle tray) is selected as the paper source, this solenoid energizes and brings the separation roller in contact with the feed roller until the leading edge of the sheet feeds to the paper feed sensor.
SOL3	Pick- up Solenoid - Tray 3	Switches on when the tray 3 (bottom tray) lift motor switches on. This solenoid lowers the pick–up roller of tray 3.
SOL4	Separation Roller Solenoid - Tray 3	When tray 3 (bottom tray) is selected as the paper source, this solenoid energizes and brings the separation roller in contact with the feed roller until the leading edge of the sheet feeds to the paper feed sensor.
SOL5	Pick- up Solenoid - Tray 1	Switches on when the tray 1 (tandem tray) lift motor switches on. This solenoid lowers the pick–up roller of tray 1.
SOL6	Separation Roller Solenoid - Tray 1	When tray 1 (tandem tray) is selected as the paper source, this solenoid energizes and brings the separation roller in contact with the feed roller until the leading edge of the sheet feeds to the paper feed sensor.
SOL7	Front Side Fence Solenoid -Tray 1	When the right tray paper sensor in the tandem tray signals paper out, and the left tray paper sensor signals paper present, this energizes this solenoid which pulls open the front side fence until the front side fence open sensor detects the actuator of the front side fence and switches off the solenoid, leaving it locked in the open position, to allow the rear fence to push the paper stack from the left tray into the right tray.
SOL8	Rear Side Fence Solenoid - Tray 1	When the right tray paper sensor in the tandem tray signals paper out, and the left tray paper sensor signals paper present, this energizes this solenoid which pulls open the rear side fence until the rear side fence open sensor detects the actuator of the rear side fence and switches off the solenoid, leaving it locked in the open position, to allow rear fence to push the paper stack from the left tray into the right tray.
SOL9	Right Tray Lock Solenoid - Tray 1	Releases the lock lever when the left tray paper sensor in the tandem tray signals that there is no paper in the left tray.
SOL10	Left Tray Lock Solenoid - Tray 1	When the rear fence motor in the tandem tray switches on, this energizes the left tray lock solenoid. This locks the left tray so it does not move while the rear fence pushes the stack from the left tray to the right tray.
SOL11	Duplex Junction Gate Solenoid	Controls the opening and closing of the duplex junction gate at the mouth of the inverter unit.
SOL12	Positioning Roller Solenoid	After a sheet has been aligned by the fences of the duplex unit, this solenoid energizes and pushes down the positioning roller (a sponge roller).
SOL13	Guide Plate Solenoid	Energizes when a jam occurs between the vertical transport rollers and registration roller to force the guide plate open and divert paper fed from below into the duplex tray.
SOL14	Inverter Junction Gate Solenoid	Operates the inverter junction gate. The inverter injunction gate turns paper into the path to the inverter unit below where it is 1) inverted for face- down output or 2) inverted for 2nd side printing.

No.	Component	Function
SOL15	Bypass Pick- up	Switches on and lowers the pick- up roller to the top of the
	Solenoid	stack in the bypass tray

No.	Component	Function		
SWITCHES				
SW1	Lower Front Door Switch	Detects whether the front door is open or closed.		
SW2	Main Power Switch	Switches the machine off and on.		
SW3	Upper Front Door Switches (x5)	Detect whether the front door is open or closed.		
SW4	Paper Size Switch - Tray 2	The switch detects the position of the dial (set manually), and signals the paper size with a simple 5– digit binary code.		
SW5	Paper Size Switch - Tray 3	The switch detects the position of the dial (set manually), and signals the paper size with a simple 5– digit binary code.		

No.	Component	Function		
THERMISTORS				
TH1	Heating Roller Thermistor	Monitors the end of the heating roller and breaks the circuit to the heating lamps if a lamp overheats.		
TH2	Hot Roller Thermistor	Detects and monitors the temperature of the hot roller for fusing temperature control.		
TH3	Pressure Roller Thermistor	Detects the temperature of the hot roller for fusing temperature control.		
THERMOSTATS				
TS1	Pressure Roller Thermostat 1	Monitors the temperature of the pressure roller and cuts the circuit if the pressure roller fusing lamp overheats.		
TS2	Pressure Roller Thermostat 2	Monitors the temperature of the pressure roller and cuts the circuit if the pressure roller fusing lamp overheats.		
TS3	Thermostat 1	Monitors the temperature of the fusing belt nd cuts the circuit if the fusing unit overheats.		
TS4	Thermostat 2	Monitors the temperature of the fusing belt nd cuts the circuit if the fusing unit overheats.		
TS5	Thermostat 3	Monitors the temperature of the fusing belt nd cuts the circuit if the fusing unit overheats.		
TS6	Thermostat 4	Monitors the temperature of the fusing belt nd cuts the circuit if the fusing unit overheats.		

## 5. ARDF

No.	Component	Function	
MOTORS			1
M01	Feed Motor	Drives the feed belt, and the separation, pick-up, and transport as far as the 1st transport roller.	
M02	Transport Motor	Controls the original scanning speed.	1
M03	Exit Motor	Feeds paper out of the ARDF and onto the original exit table.	1
M04	Upper Inverter Motor		
M05	Lower Inverter Motor	Controls the rotation of the lower inverter roller that feeds the original in and out of the lower inverter path.	
M06	Pick-up Motor	Raises and lowers the pick-up roller.	1
M07	Bottom Plate Lift Motor	Raises and lowers the bottom under the original stack.	
РСВ			
PCB01	ARDF Main Board	Controls the ARDF and communicates with the main copier boards.	
SENSOR			4
S01	Original Width Sensor 2	Detects paper wider than 191.5 mm (7.5 in.) measured from the reference point.	
S02	Original Width Sensor 3	Detects paper wider than 230 mm (9.1 in.) measured from the reference point.	
S03	Original Width Sensor 4	Detects paper wider than 263.5 mm (10.4 in.) measured from the reference point.	
S04	Original Width Sensor 5	Detects paper wider than 288 mm (11.3 in.) measured from the reference point.	
S05	Original Width Sensor 1	Detects paper wider than 138 mm (5.4 in.) measured from the reference point.	
S06	Original Set Sensor	Detects whether an original is on the table.	
S07	Bottom Plate HP Sensor	Detects whether the bottom plate is in the down position or not.	
S08	Feed Cover Sensor	Detects whether the feed cover is open or not.	
S09	Bottom Plate Position Sensor	Detects when the original is at the correct position for feeding.	
S10	Upper Inverter Sensor	Detects leading and trailing edge of the paper as it enters and leaves the upper path of the inverter.	
S11	LG Detection Sensor	Detects paper longer than 318 mm (12.5 in.) on the original table.	
S12	A4 Detection Sensor	Detects paper longer than 291 mm (11.5 in.) on the original table.	
S13	B5 Detection Sensor	Detects paper longer than 240 mm (9.5 in.) on the original table.	
S14	Interval Sensor	Adjusts the timing of the original transport speed to the original scanning speed after the original feeds. During duplex scanning, or if original is small (B6, A5, or HLT) the interval sensor detects the leading edge of the original and delays the pre-scanning motor for the prescribed number of pulses to buckle the original and correct skew.	Snec

No.	Component	Function
S15	Skew Correction Sensor	After pick-up and separation, the skew correction sensor detects the leading edge of the original. This signal slows the rotation of the entrance roller for a prescribed number of pulses to buckle the original and correct skew.
S16	Separation Sensor	Detects the separation of the original.
S17	Exit Sensor	Detects the leading and trailing edges of paper feed out to the original table and detects misfeeds. Also signals when to stop the scanning belt.
S18	Registration Sensor	Detects the leading edge and trailing edges of the original to detects jams and stops the original at the ADF exposure glass to correct buckle.
S19	Pick-up Roller HP Sensor	Detects whether the pick-up roller is up or not.
S20	Lower inverter sensor	Detects the original in the path of the lower inverter before it feeds to the inverter rollers for 2nd side scanning, or feeds to the exit rollers for exit.
S21	ARDF Position Sensor	Detects whether the ARDF unit is up or down for scanning on the main exposure glass (book mode).
S22	APS Start Sensor	Signals the CPU when the DF is opened and closed (for platen mode) so that the original size sensors in the copier can check the original size.
SOLENOI	DS	
SOL01	Upper Inverter Solenoid	Opens and closes the upper junction gate at the entrance of the upper inverter path. During simplex scanning, closes the upper inverter path so the original exits straight to the exit tray. During duplex scanning, opens to allow the original to enter the upper inverter path and closes to direct it once again into the feed path for 2nd side scanning.
SOL02	Lower Inverter Solenoid	Opens and closes the lower junction gate. During duplex scanning opens after the 2nd side is scanned to direct the original into the lower inverter path while the next sheet is fed to the upper inverter path above, then closes to direct the original out onto the original exit tray.